













Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



# English Works.

## Historical, &c.

	£	s.	d.
Adair's Five Hundred Questions on Goldsmith's History of England. 18mo, sewed, . . . . .	0	1	0
Ditto. To be filled up in writing by the pupil. In thick post copy book, . . . . .	0	2	0
Key to ditto, 18mo, sewed, . . . . .	0	0	9
Adam's History of Great Britain. Sixth Edition, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	4	6
Adam's Roman History, including Antiquities, &c. Fourth Edition, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	4	6
Bigland's Ancient and Modern History, in a series of Letters. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	6	0
Browning's History of the Huguenots, being a complete account of the sufferings and progress of Protestantism in France, from the Reformation to the present time. Third Edition, with numerous Additions and Corrections. Large 8vo sewed. Formerly 3 vols. 8vo, price 1 <i>l.</i> 1 <i>s.</i> 6 <i>d.</i> (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . .	0	6	0
D'Aubigné's History of the Reformation in Europe, Translated from the last Paris Edition. By Walter K. Kelly, Esq. B.A. Trinity College, Dublin. Arranged with head-lines, full chapter-heads, and a copious Index, to facilitate reference. Containing the whole of the original Text and Notes, with such additional elucidations by the Translator as may be necessary for the English Reader. Printed on a very fine paper, in an excellent clear type. Parts I. II. and III. (corresponding with Vols. I, II. and III. of the original.) Large 8vo, sewed. Each, . . . . .	0	3	6
The concluding Parts will be issued immediately they are published in France.			
Ditto. Bound in cloth. Forming First Portion, from the earliest progress of the Reformation to its introduction into France. 1 Vol. 8vo. (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . .	0	10	6
Dodd's Beauties of History. Eighth Edition, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	4	6
Galt's Historical Pictures. 2 vols. 18mo, bound, . . . . .	0	12	0
Geijer's History of the Swedes. Translated from the Swedish of Eric Gustave Geijer, Historiographer Royal of Sweden, and Professor of History in the University of Upsala, &c. With an Introduction and Notes, by J. H. Turner, Esq. M.A. Three parts. Parts I. and II. 2 <i>s.</i> 6 <i>d.</i> each; Part III. 3 <i>s.</i> 6 <i>d.</i> Sewed. (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . .			
To be completed as soon as issued in Sweden.			
Ditto. Bound together. Comprising three vols. of the original, forming, with Preliminary Dissertation by the Translator, Vol. I. cloth, . . . . .	0	8	6

# Historical, &c. continued.

	£	s.	d.
Gibbon's History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. Trade Edition. Eight vols. 8vo, cloth, . . .	3	0	0
Ditto. One vol. 8vo, cloth, . . . . .	0	18	0
Goldsmith's History of England, continued to the present time. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	3	6
Goldsmith's History of Rome. 12mo, bound, . . .	0	3	6
Goldsmith's History of Greece. 12mo, bound, . . .	0	3	6
History and Description of Fossil Fuel, the Collieries and Coal Trade of Great Britain. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, . . .	0	14	0
Hume and Smollett's History of England. 10 vols. 8vo. (Trade Edition.) . . . . .	4	0	0
Ditto. Abridged by Robinson, Twelfth Edition, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	9	0
Ireland—Historical and Statistical; by George Lewis Smyth, Esq. Vol. I. comprising an analysis of the state of Ireland and an Outline of the History of its connexion with England. (To be completed in three Volumes.) Demy, 8vo, cloth, . . .	0	10	6
Keightley's History of England, 2 vols. 12mo, cloth, . . .	0	14	0
*.* The volumes are sold separately.			
Keightley's Questions on History of England, in two Parts. 12mo. sewed, each, . . . . .	0	1	0
Keightley's Elementary History of England. 12mo, bd. . . . .	0	5	0
Keightley's History of Rome, to the End of the Republic. 12mo, bound, cloth, . . . . .	0	6	6
Keightley's Questions on Ditto. 12mo, sewed, . . .	0	1	0
Keightley's History of the Roman Empire. Second Edition. 12mo, cloth, . . . . .	0	6	6
Keightley's Elementary History of Rome. 18mo, bd. . . . .	0	3	6
Keightley's History of Greece. 4th Edition, 12mo, cl. . . . .	0	6	6
Keightley's Questions on Ditto. 3rd Ed. 12mo. sd. . . . .	0	1	0
Keightley's Elementary History of Greece. 18mo, bd. . . . .	0	3	6
Keightley's Mythology of Ancient Greece and Italy. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, . . . . .	1	0	0
Ditto. Abridged. Fifth Edition, 18mo, bound, . . .	0	4	0
Keightley's Fairy Mythology. 2 vols. 12mo, hf. bd. . . . .	0	15	0
Koch's History of Europe, being an Historical View of the European Nations, from the Subversion of the Roman Empire in the West, to the Abdication of Napoleon. By Christopher W. Koch. Formerly Professor of Public Jurisprudence at Strasburg. Translated by Andrew Crichton. Third Edition. Large 8vo, sewed, (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . .	0	6	0

# Historical, &c. continued.

	£	s.	d.
Lyttleton's History of England, in a series of letters. Two volumes. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	9	0
Michelet's Complete History of France. From the French of M. Michelet, Professeur-suppléant à la Faculté des Lettres, Professeur à l'Ecole Normale, Chef de la Section His- torique aux Archives du Royaume, &c. Translated by G. H. Smith, F.G.S., &c. In Parts. Large 8vo, sewed. (Whittaker's Popular Library.) each, . . . . .	0	3	6
Ditto. Bound together, (comprising 3 vols. of the original) Vol. I. Cloth. . . . .	0	10	6
Middleton's Life of Cicero. <i>New Edition.</i> 8vo, bds.	0	14	0
Mitchell's Dictionary of Universal History, &c. double column, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	10	6
Monastic and Social Life in the Twelfth Century, as exemplified in the Chronicles of Jocelin of Brakelond, Monk of St. Edmundsbury, from A.D. 1173 to 1202. Translated, with Notes, Introduction, &c. By T. E. Tomlins, Esq., Editor of "Littleton's Tenures," &c. From the original Latin, as printed by the Camden Society, under the superintendence of J. G. Rokewode, Esq., F.R.S., &c. Second Edition. Large 8vo, sewed. (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . .	0	2	0
Paul's Antiquities of Greece. Second Ed. 12mo, cl.	0	7	0
Procter's History of Italy. From the Fall of the Western Empire to the Wars of the French Revolution. By the late Colonel Procter, formerly of Sandhurst College. New Edi- tion. Large 8vo, sewed. (Formerly 2 vols. 8vo, 30s.) (Whitta- ker's Popular Library.) . . . . .	0	6	0
Potter's Antiquities of Greece. 2 vols. 8vo, bds.	1	2	0
Prince's Parallel History. An Outline of the His- tory and Biography of the World. 3 Vols. 8vo, bds., each, . . .	1	1	0
Prince's Monthly Examinations in History, &c. 12mo, cloth, . . . . .	0	3	0
Ranke's Sovereigns and Nations of Southern Europe, in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries. Now first completely translated from the last Edition of the German. By Walter K. Kelly, Esq., B.A., of Trinity College, Dublin. 1 vol. large 8vo, (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . .	0	16	0

Sold also separately, as

Ranke's History of the Popes, of the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries. In Three Parts. Large 8vo, each, . . .	0	4	0
Ditto. Bound together. 1 vol. large 8vo, . . . . .	0	12	0

And

The Ottoman and Spanish Empires in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries. In one Part, large 8vo, . . . . .	0	3	0
--	---	---	---



## Historical, &amp;c. continued,

	£	s.	d.
Reynard's History made Easy. On a sheet, in case, plain, 3s. Coloured, 3s. 6d. On a sheet plain, 2s. Coloured,	. 0	2	6
Key to ditto. 18mo, sewed,	. 0	1	0
Robinson's Universal Modern History. 12mo, bound,	0	6	0
Robinson's Questions on ditto. To be filled up in writing by the pupil. Thick post copy book, sewed,	. 0	2	0
Key to ditto. 18mo, sewed,	. 0	0	9
Robinson's Questions on Hume and Smollett's History of England. To be filled up in writing by the pupil. Thick post copy book. Twelfth Edition, sewed,	. 0	2	0
Key to ditto. 18mo, sewed,	. 0	0	9
Robinson's Grammar of Universal History. With Questions. 18mo, bound,	. 0	3	6
Robinson's Questions on ditto. To be filled up in writing by the pupil. Thick post copy book, sewed,	. 0	2	0
Key to ditto. 18mo, sewed,	. 0	0	9
Rundall's Grammar of Sacred History. 18mo, bound,	0	4	0
Key to ditto. 18mo, sewed,	. 0	0	9
Rundall's Sequel to Sacred History. 12mo, bound,	0	4	6
Russell's Modern Europe. 4 vols. 8vo, cloth,	2	12	0
Stow's Survey of London. A Survey of London, containing the Original, Antiquity, Increase, Modern Estate, and Description of that City. Printed in the years 1598 and 1603. By John Stow, Citizen of London. Reprinted from the two editions published by Stow himself. With Notes, a Memoir, and Copious Index. By William J. Thoms, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Camden Society, &c. Large 8vo, sewed. (The old copies of the best Edition sell from 20s. to 30s. each.) (Whittaker's Popular Library.)	. 0	5	6
Stream of History, mounted on a roller. With the Companion coloured,	1	16	0
Taylor's History of France and Normandy. On the plan of Whittaker's Improved edition of Pinnock's Histories. By W. Cooke Taylor, LL.D., &c., &c. Third edition with additions. 12mo, bound, and lettered,	. 0	6	0
Taylor's History of the Overthrow of the Roman Em- pire, and the Formation of the principal European States. By W. Cooke Taylor, LL.D. This work is intended to connect Ancient and Modern History, and should be used after the Histories of Greece and Rome, as preliminary to entering on the study of our own history, and that of other European states. 12mo, cloth,	. 0	6	0

# Historical, &c. continued.

£ s. d.

**Thierry's History of the Conquest of England by the Normans.** With its Causes, from the earliest period; and its Consequences, to the present time. By M. Augustin Thierry, Member of the Institute. Third Edition. Translated from the last Paris Edition. Large 8vo, sewed. (Formerly 3 vols., price 36s.) (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . . 0 7 0

**Thierry's Narratives of the Merovingian Era, and Ten Years' Historical Studies.** Translated, with Notes, &c. Large 8vo. Sewed, . . . . . 0 4 6

The foregoing Two, bound together, forming

**Augustin Thierry's Historical Works.** In cloth, . . . . . 0 12 6

**Thiers' History of the French Revolution.** By Mons. Thiers, late Minister of France, &c. &c. Translated from the last Paris edition (the Twelfth, in Ten volumes, 8vo), containing the Author's latest emendations and corrections, and the entire Appendixes, "Pieces Justificatives," &c. To which will be added, by the English translator, for the first time, "A copious Index of Persons and Events." To be completed in Ten Parts. Large 8vo, sewed, each. (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . . 0 2 6

**Thiers' History of the Consulate and Empire of Napoleon.** Translated from the French of Mons. Thiers, late Minister of France, &c. &c. Large 8vo, sewed, in parts, . . . . . 0 2 6

**Tytler's Elements of History, Ancient and Modern.** Thoroughly Revised and Enlarged. With Notes Corrective and Illustrative, and a Continuation to the present Time. Large 8vo. Sewed. (Comprising the quantity of a thick 8vo volume.) (Whittaker's Popular Library.) . . . . . 0 4 6

**Tytler's Elements of General History.** 8vo. (Trade Edition.) . . . . . 0 14 0

**Questions on ditto.** 8vo, cloth, . . . . . 0 5 0

**Whittaker's Improved Edition of Pinnock's History of England.** From the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the present time. With a Biography and Historical Dictionary, Questions for Examination, Genealogical Tables, Progress of Literature, and the Constitution, &c. Illustrated by Coloured Maps, Portraits, and Wood-cuts. The Thirty-fifth Edition. 12mo, handsomely bound, . . . . . 0 6 0

**Whittaker's Improved Edition of Pinnock's History of Rome,** with an Introduction, the Geography of the Roman Empire, Notices of the Roman Manners, and Illustrations, Questions for Examination, Chronological Index, &c. Illustrated by coloured Maps, Portraits, and numerous Wood-cuts. The Twenty-third Edition. 12mo, handsomely bound, . . . . . 0 5 6

**Whittaker's Improved Edition of Pinnock's History of Greece,** with an Introduction on the Natural and Political Geography of Greece, Dictionary of difficult terms, Questions for Examination, Genealogical Tables, &c. Illustrated with Maps, Plans, and numerous Wood-cuts. The Twentieth Edition. 12mo, handsomely bound, . . . . . 0 5 6

**Whittaker's Improved Editions of Pinnock's Catechisms.** On History, viz.—Modern, Ancient, Universal, Bible and Gospel, Chronology, England, Scotland, Ireland, France, America, Rome, Greece, Jews. Sewed, each, . . . . . 0 0 9



# Historical, &c. continued.

	£	s.	d.
Wilson's (Professor) Manual of Universal History. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	4	6
Wilson's (Mrs.) Letters on Ancient History. Third Edition, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	5	0

## Geography and Travels.

Adam's Ancient and Modern Geography. 8vo, bd.	0	15	0
Arrowsmith's Compendium of Ancient and Modern Geography. 8vo, boards, . . . . .	0	16	0
Arrowsmith's Grammar of Modern Geography. 12mo bound, . . . . .	0	6	0
With Coloured Maps, . . . . .	0	12	0
Arrowsmith's Grammar of Ancient Geography. 12mo.	0	6	0
With Coloured Maps, . . . . .	0	12	0
Arrowsmith's Praxis on the Grammar of Modern Geography. 12mo, sewed, . . . . .	0	1	3
Arrowsmith's Praxis on the Grammar of Ancient Geography. 12mo, sewed, . . . . .	0	1	3
Clarke's Tour in France, Italy, and Switzerland. 8vo,	0	10	6
Geography and History. By a Lady. Nineteenth Edition. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	4	6
Geography and History for Children. For the use of Schools. Thirty-third Edition. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	2	0
Goldsmith's Geographical and Astronomical Copy- book. Parts I. and II. 4to, sewed, . . . . .	0	3	6
Goldsmith's Present State of the United Kingdom; or, a Grammar of British Geography. 44th Ed. 18mo, bound, . . . . .	0	4	6
Guthrie's Geographical, Historical, and Commercial Grammar. Twenty-fourth Edition. 8vo, boards, . . . . .	0	18	0
Guy's School Geography. Illustrated with Seven Maps. Seventeenth Edition. 18mo, red sheep, . . . . .	0	3	0
Key to ditto. 12mo, sewed, . . . . .	0	1	6
Keith's System of Geography. <i>New Edition</i> . 12mo, bd.	0	6	0
Landmann's Universal Gazetteer. 8vo, cloth, . . . . .	0	14	0
Lynch's World described in Easy Verse. 12mo, hf. bd.	0	5	0
Molineux's Concise Introduction to the Knowledge of the Globes. Eleventh Edition. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	3	0

## Geography and Travels, continued,

	£	s.	d.
Morrell's Narrative of a Voyage to the South and West Coast of Africa. 12mo, cloth, . . . . .	0	6	0
Picquot's Elements of Universal Geography. 12mo, bd.	0	5	0
Prior's Popular History of all the Voyages round the World. Twentieth Edition. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	10	6
Prior's Universal Traveller. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	10	6
The Hundred Wonders of the World. With Engravings, 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	10	6
Turner's Easy Introduction to Geography. 18mo, bound, . . . . .	0	3	6
Whittaker's Improved Edition of Pinnock's Catechisms relating to Geography; viz.			
Modern Geography. ( <i>Improved edit.</i> ) Ten Maps.			
Ditto. <i>Original Edition.</i> Ten Maps.			
Ancient Geography. Map of Ancient World.			
Sacred Geography. Map of Palestine, &c.			
Geography of England and Wales. Ten Maps.			
Geography of Ireland. Map and Woodcuts.			
Geography of Scotland. Map and Woodcuts.			
Colonies. Two parts in One. Maps.			
Use of the Globes. Illustrated.			
Each Catechism in a strong wrapper, . . . . .	0	0	9
Woodbridge's Rudiments of Geography, on a New Plan, designed to assist the memory by comparison and classification. Embellished with numerous engravings, illustrating manners, customs, and curiosities. Third edition, 18mo, bound, . . . . .	0	3	6
Young's Life and Voyages of Captain James Cook. 12mo, cloth, . . . . .	0	6	0

## Atlases.

### Arrowsmith's Atlases—

Modern Geography. 12mo, coloured, half-bound, . . . . .	0	7	0
Ancient Geography. 12mo, coloured, half-bound, . . . . .	0	7	0
London General Atlas. half-russia, . . . . .	13	13	0
Ancient Geography with Index. 8vo, half-bound, . . . . .	0	12	0
Bible Atlas. 4to, half-bound, . . . . .	1	1	0
Ditto. large 8vo, half-bound, . . . . .	0	12	0
Comparative Atlas with two Indexes. demy 4to, cloth, . . . . .	1	4	0
Ditto. Full coloured, . . . . .	1	11	6
Eton Comparative Atlas, Ancient and Modern. Imperial 4to, cl. . . . .	2	2	0
Ditto. Full coloured, . . . . .	2	15	0
Index to Ditto. 8vo, boards, . . . . .	0	12	0
Atlas of Modern Geography, with Index. 8vo, half-bound, . . . . .	0	12	0

# Atlases, continued,

	£	s.	d.
Betts's School Atlas. Half-bound morocco, . . . . .	0	16	0
Black's General Atlas, comprehending Sixty-one Maps. Half-bound morocco, gilt leaves, . . . . .	2	16	0
Donne's Outline Maps of the World, Europe, Asia, Africa, America, as First Exercises. Medium drawing paper, each, . . . . .	0	1	0
Guthrie's Atlas of Modern Geography, containing Thirty-one Maps 8vo, half-bound, . . . . .	0	10	6
Goldsmith's School Atlas with Problems and Tables. Demy, 8vo, boards, . . . . .	0	6	6
Maps coloured, . . . . .	0	8	6
Ditto. Royal 8vo, half-bound, . . . . .	0	12	0
Maps coloured, . . . . .	0	15	0
Imperial Outline Maps of Europe, Asia, Africa, Ame- rica, and England and Wales, printed on extra superfine drawing paper; intended as a finished Exercise for senior pupils. The size, 25 inches by 20. Each, . . . . .	0	5	0
Johnson's National Atlas of Historical, Commercial, Political and Physical Geography, with Notes on Physical Geogra- phy, &c. &c., and also an Ethnographical Map of Europe, &c. Imperial folio, half-russia, . . . . .	8	8	0
Lizars' Modern and Ancient General Atlas, with a Geographical Index. Royal 4to, half-bound, . . . . .	0	18	0
Full coloured, . . . . .	1	1	0
Middleton's Celestial Atlas, containing Maps of all the Constellations visible in Great Britain. Oblong folio, half- bound, plain, . . . . .	1	1	0
Coloured, . . . . .	1	8	0
Middleton's Companion to Ditto. 12mo, bound, . . . . .	0	5	0
Projection Maps of the Eastern and Western He- mispheres, Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and England and Wales. Printed on fine medium drawing paper; particularly adapted for School Exercises. each, . . . . .	0	1	0
Walker's Universal Atlas, 8vo, half-bound, . . . . .	0	10	6
Woodbridge's Atlas to Rudiments of Geography, Ex- hibiting, in connexion with the Outlines of Countries, the prevailing Religions, Forms of Government, Degrees of Civilization, the com- parative Size of Towns, Rivers, and Mountains; and the Climates and Productions of the Earth. Royal 4to, coloured half-bound, . . . . .	0	8	0

# A NEW METHOD

OF

LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK

A LANGUAGE IN SIX MONTHS,

ADAPTED TO

## THE FRENCH:

FOR

THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TEACHERS.

---

BY

H. G. OLLENDORFF, PH. DR.

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES.

---

SECOND EDITION.

---

LONDON:

WHITTAKER AND CO. AVE MARIA LANE; AND DULAU AND CO.  
SOHO SQUARE.

---

1846.

[Each copy has its number and the Author's signature.]

N<sup>o</sup> 832 .

Ellendorff.



## LE SANSONNET PRUDENT.

UN sansonnet altéré trouva un flacon d'eau. Il essaya de boire ; mais l'eau arrivait à peine au col du flacon, et le bec de l'oiseau n'atteignait pas jusque-là.

Il se mit à becqueter le dehors du vase, afin d'y pratiquer un trou. Ce fut en vain, le verre était trop dur.

Alors il chercha à renverser le flacon. Cela ne lui réussit pas davantage : le vase était trop pesant.

Enfin le sansonnet s'avisa d'une idée qui lui réussit : il jeta dans le vase de petits cailloux qui firent hausser l'eau insensiblement jusqu'à la portée de son bec.

\*

\*

\*

L'adresse l'emporte sur la force ; la patience et la réflexion rendent faciles bien des choses qui au premier abord paraissent impossibles.

## THE SEA-COMPASS.

"How is the wind, Jack?" asked the captain of a ship, addressing the steersman. "North-east-by-North, sir," was the instantaneous answer of the tar. A jocular monk, who was a passenger, drew near the sailor. "My son," said he to him, "I heard thee swear like a demon during the storm; dost thou know thy prayers as well as thy sea-compass?" "No," replied Jack, "for I can tell you, father, that I know my sea-compass a great deal better than even *you* know your prayers."—"Thou art joking, son."—"Quite in earnest, father."—Upon this, our tar began thus:—"North—north-west-by-North—North-north-west," and so on, till he had gone round and got to the North again. "Now, father," said Jack, "'tis your turn." The monk recited his *pater noster* in a very ready manner. "That is clever," observed the son of Neptune; "'tis mine now." Then he went on, "North—north-east-by-North—North-north-east, &c.," till he had come to the word again. "Well, father," said he, with a grin, "give

us your prayer backwards.”—“Backwards ! I can’t, boy : I have never learnt it but in one way ; it is not necessary.” “Then,” observed the triumphant sailor, “I know my sea-compass better than you know your prayers, for I can tell it in a thousand ways.”

\*

\*

\*

Jack has just told us how a language ought to be learnt and known.



## P R E F A C E.

---

MY system of acquiring a living language is founded on the principle, that each question contains nearly the answer which one ought or which one wishes to make to it. The slight difference between the question and the answer is always explained before the question: so that the learner does not find it in the least difficult, either to answer it, or to make similar questions for himself. Again, the question being the same as the answer, as soon as the master pronounces it, it strikes the pupil's ear, and is therefore easily reproduced by his speaking organs. This principle is so evident, that it is impossible to open the book without being struck by it.

Neither the professor nor his pupils lose an instant of their time. When the professor reads the lesson, the pupil answers; when he examines the lesson written by the pupil he speaks again, and the pupil answers; also when he examines the exercise which the pupil has translated, he speaks

and the pupil answers ; thus both are, as it were, continually kept in exercise.

The phrases are so arranged that, from the beginning to the end of the method, the pupil's curiosity is excited by the want of a word or an expression : this word or expression is always given in the following lesson, but in such a manner as to create a desire for others that render the phrase still more complete. Hence, from one end of the book to the other, the pupil's attention is continually kept alive, till at last he has acquired a thorough knowledge of the language which he studies.

The French language being much more cultivated in England than the German, there have been many more demands for this, the English and French part of my work, than for the English and German part. But I shall consider myself amply rewarded for the many years of labour that this work has cost me, if it should meet with as great a measure of approbation as the public have already expressed in favour of my former efforts.


67, RUE DE RICHELIEU, PARIS.

February 20, 1843.

## EXPLANATION OF SOME SIGNS USED IN THIS BOOK.

---

Expressions which vary either in their construction or idiom from the English are marked thus : †.

A hand () denotes a rule of syntax or construction.



# FIRST LESSON <sup>1</sup>.

## *Première Leçon.*

### DEFINITE ARTICLE.

#### MASCULINE SINGULAR.

<i>Nominative,</i>	the.	<i>Nominatif.</i>	le.
<i>Genitive,</i>	of or from the.	<i>Génitif,</i>	du.
<i>Dative,</i>	to the.	<i>Datif,</i>	au.
<i>Accusative,</i>	the.	<i>Accusatif,</i>	le.

Have you ?

Yes, Sir, I have.

*The.*

The hat.

Have you the hat ?

Yes, Sir, I have the hat.

The bread.

The salt.

The soap.

The sugar.

The paper.

Avez-vous ?

Oui, Monsieur, j'ai.

*Le*, and, before a vowel or *h*  
mute, *l'*.

Le chapeau.

Avez-vous le chapeau ?

Oui, Monsieur, j'ai le chapeau.

Le pain.

Le sel.

Le savon.

Le sucre.

Le papier.

<sup>1</sup> TO PROFESSORS.—Each lesson should be dictated to the pupils, who should pronounce each word as soon as dictated. The professor should also exercise his pupils by putting the questions to them in various ways. Each lesson includes three operations: the teacher, in the first place, looks over the exercises of the most attentive of his pupils, putting to them the questions contained in the printed exercises; he then dictates to them the next lesson; and, lastly, puts fresh questions to them on all the preceding lessons. The teacher may divide one lesson into two, or two into three, or even make two into one, according to the degree of intelligence of his pupils.

*Obs.* *I* means *je*; but the apostrophe ('), which in *j'ai*, I have, is substituted for the letter *e*, is always used when a vowel has been suppressed before another vowel, or before *h* mute.

---

My hat.	Mon chapeau.
Your bread.	Votre pain.
Have you my hat?	Avez-vous mon chapeau?
Yes, Sir, I have your hat.	Oui, Monsieur, j'ai votre chapeau.
Have you your bread?	Avez-vous votre pain?
I have my bread.	J'ai mon pain.

---

<i>Which or What?</i>	<i>Quel.</i>
Which hat have you?	Quel chapeau avez-vous?
I have my hat.	J'ai mon chapeau.
Which bread have you?	Quel pain avez-vous?
I have your bread.	J'ai votre pain.

---

## EXERCISE.

## 1.

Have you the bread?—Yes, Sir, I have the bread.—Have you your bread?—I have my bread.—Have you the salt?—I have the salt.—Have you my salt?—I have your salt.—Have you the soap?—I have the soap.—Have you your soap?—I have my soap.—Which soap have you?—I have your soap.—Have you your sugar?—I have my sugar.—Which sugar have you?—I have your sugar.—Which paper have you?—I have my paper.—Have you my paper?—I have your paper.—Which bread have you?—I have my bread.—Which salt have you?—I have your salt<sup>2</sup>.

---

<sup>2</sup> Pupils desirous of making rapid progress may compose a great many phrases, in addition to those we have given in the exercises; but they must pronounce them aloud, as they write them. They should also make separate lists of such substantives, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs, as they meet with in the course of the lessons, in order to be able to find those words more easily, when they require to refer to them in writing their lessons.

## SECOND LESSON.

*Seconde Leçon.**It.*

Have you my hat ?

Yes, Sir, I have it.

*Le.*

Avez-vous mon chapeau ?

Oui, Monsieur, je l'ai. (See Obs.  
Lesson I.)

Good.

Bad.

Pretty.

Handsome or fine.

Ugly.

Old.

The cloth.

The shoe.

The wood.

The stocking.

The thread.

The dog.

The horse.

Have you the pretty dog ?

Bon.

Mauvais.

Joli.

Beau.

Vilain.

Vieux.

Le drap.

Le soulier.

Le bois.

Le bas.

Le fil.

Le chien.

Le cheval.

Avez-vous le joli chien ?

*Not.*

I have not.

I have not the bread.

No, Sir.

Have you my old hat ?

No, Sir, I have it not.

*Ne—pas.*

Je n'ai pas.

Je n'ai pas le pain.

Non, Monsieur.

Avez-vous mon vieux chapeau ?

Non, Monsieur, je ne l'ai pas.

*What or Which ?*

What or which paper have you ?

I have the good paper.

Which dog have you ?

I have my fine dog.

*Quel ?*

Quel papier avez-vous ?

J'ai le bon papier.

Quel chien avez-vous ?

J'ai mon beau chien.



*Of.*  
The thread stocking.

*De.*  
Le bas de fil.

*Obs.* The preposition *de* is always put between the name of the thing and the name of the matter of which it is made, and this is in French always the last.

The paper hat.  
The gun,  
The leather.  
The wooden gun.  
The leather shoe.  
Which gun have you?  
I have the wooden gun.  
Which stocking have you?  
I have my thread stocking.  
Have you my leather shoe?  
No, Sir, I have it not.

Le chapeau *de* papier.  
Le fusil.  
Le cuir.  
Le fusil *de* bois.  
Le soulier *de* cuir.  
Quel fusil avez-vous?  
J'ai le fusil *de* bois.  
Quel bas avez-vous?  
J'ai mon bas *de* fil.  
Avez-vous mon soulier *de* cuir?  
Non, Monsieur, je ne l'ai pas.

### EXERCISE.

#### 2.

Have you my fine horse?—Yes, Sir, I have it.—Have you my old shoe?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Which dog have you?—I have your pretty dog.—Have you my bad paper?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Have you the good cloth?—Yes, Sir, I have it.—Have you my ugly gun?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Which gun have you?—I have your fine gun.—Which stocking have you?—I have the thread stocking.—Have you my thread stocking?—I have not your thread stocking.—Which gun have you?—I have the wooden gun.—Have you my wooden gun?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Have you the old bread?—I have not the old bread.—Which shoe have you?—I have my fine leather shoe.—Which soap have you?—I have my old soap.—Which sugar have you?—I have your good sugar.—Which salt have you?—I have the bad salt.—Which hat have you?—I have my bad paper hat.—Have you my ugly wooden shoe?—No, Sir, I have it not.

## THIRD LESSON.

*Troisième Leçon.**Something, any thing.*

Have you any thing ?

I have something.

*Nothing, not any thing.*

I have nothing.

The wine.

My money or silver.

The gold.

The string.

The ribbon.

The golden ribbon.

The button.

The coffee.

The cheese.

The coat.

My coat.

The silver candlestick.

*Quelque chose.*

Avez-vous quelque chose ?

J'ai quelque chose.

*Ne—rien.*

Je n'ai rien.

Le vin.

Mon argent.

L'or. (See Obs. Lesson I.)

Le cordon.

Le ruban.

Le ruban d'or.

Le bouton.

Le café.

Le fromage.

L'habit. (See Obs. Lesson I.)

Mon habit.

Le chandelier d'argent. (See Obs. Lesson I.)

Are you hungry ?

I am hungry.

I am not hungry.

Are you thirsty ?

I am thirsty.

I am not thirsty.

Are you sleepy ?

I am sleepy.

I am not sleepy.

† Avez-vous faim ?

† J'ai faim.

† Je n'ai pas faim.

† Avez-vous soif ?

† J'ai soif.

† Je n'ai pas soif.

† Avez-vous sommeil ?

† J'ai sommeil.

† Je n'ai pas sommeil.

*Any thing or something good.*

Have you any thing good ?

*Nothing or not any thing bad.*

I have nothing good.

*Quelque chose de bon.*

Avez-vous quelque chose de bon ?

*Ne—rien de mauvais.*

Je n'ai rien de bon.

*Obs.* *Quelque chose* and *ne—rien* require *de* when they are before an adjective. *Ex.*

Have you any thing pretty ?  
I have nothing pretty.

Avez-vous quelque chose de joli ?  
Je n'ai rien de joli.

*What ?*

What have you ?  
What have you good ?  
I have the good coffee.

*Que ? (Quoi ?)*

Qu'avez-vous ? (*See Obs. Les. I.*)  
Qu'avez-vous de bon ?  
J'ai le bon café.

### EXERCISE.

#### 3.

Have you my good wine ?—I have it.—Have you the gold ?—I have it not.—Have you the money ?—I have it.—Have you the gold ribbon ?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Have you your silver candlestick ?—Yes, Sir, I have it.—What have you ?—I have the good cheese. I have my cloth coat.—Have you my silver button ?—I have it not.—What button have you ?—I have your good gold button.—What string have you ?—I have the gold string.—Have you any thing ?—I have something.—What have you ?—I have the good bread. I have the good sugar.—Have you any thing good ?—I have nothing good.—Have you any thing handsome ?—I have nothing handsome. I have something ugly.—What have you ugly ?—I have the ugly dog.—Have you any thing pretty ?—I have nothing pretty. I have something old.—What have you old ?—I have the old cheese.—Are you hungry ?—I am hungry.—Are you thirsty ?—I am not thirsty.—Are you sleepy ?—I am not sleepy.—What have you beautiful ?—I have your beautiful dog.—What have you bad ?—I have nothing bad.—Which paper have you ?—I have your good paper.—Have you the fine horse ?—Yes, Sir, I have it.—Which shoe have you ?—I have my old leather shoe.—Which stocking have you ?—I have your fine thread stocking.

## FOURTH LESSON.

*Quatrième Leçon.*

*That.*  
That book.

*Ce.*  
Ce livre.

*Of the.*

Of the dog.  
Of the tailor.  
Of the baker.  
Of the neighbour.

*Du* (genitive), before a  
vowel, or *h* mute, *de l'.*

Du chien.  
Du tailleur.  
Du boulanger.  
Du voisin.

*That or the one.*

The neighbour's, or that of the  
neighbour.  
The baker's, or that of the baker.  
The dog's, or that of the dog.

*Celui.*  
Celui du voisin.

Celui du boulanger.  
Celui du chien.

*Or.*

Have you my book or the neigh-  
bour's?  
I have the neighbour's.  
Have you my bread or that of the  
baker?  
I have yours.  
I have not the baker's.

*Ou.*

Avez-vous mon livre ou celui du  
voisin?  
J'ai celui du voisin.  
Avez-vous mon pain ou celui du  
boulanger?  
J'ai le vôtre.  
Je n'ai pas celui du boulanger.

Mine or my own. { *Nominative,* } Le mien.  
                          { *Accusative,* }

Of mine. *Genitive.* Du mien

Yours. { *Nom.* } Le vôtre.  
          { *Accus.* }

Of yours. *Genitive.* Du vôtre.

*Obs. A.* Put a circumflex accent (^) over a long vowel. Ex. Le vôtre, yours; le nôtre, ours.

---

Are you warm ?	† Avez-vous chaud ?
I am warm.	† J'ai chaud.
I am not warm.	† Je n'ai pas chaud.
Are you cold ?	† Avez-vous froid ?
I am not cold.	† Je n'ai pas froid.
Are you afraid ?	† Avez-vous peur ?
I am afraid.	† J'ai peur.
I am not afraid.	† Je n'ai pas peur.

---

### DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE,

MASCULINE AND FEMININE SINGULAR,

WHEN THE NOUN BEGINS WITH A VOWEL OR AN *h* MUTE.

<i>Nom.</i>	the.	<i>N.</i>	l'.
<i>Gen.</i>	of or from the.	<i>G.</i>	de l'.
<i>Dat.</i>	to the.	<i>D.</i>	à l'.
<i>Acc.</i>	the.	<i>A.</i>	l'.

---

The man.	L'homme. (See Obs. Lesson I.)
The friend.	L'ami. (See Obs. Lesson I.)
That, or the one, of the man.	Celui de l'homme.

*Obs. B.* Always translate *of the* before a vowel, or *h* mute—thus: de l'.

Of the friend	De l'ami.
That of the friend.	Celui de l'ami.

---

The stick.	Le bâton.
The thimble.	Le dé.
The coal.	Le charbon.
My brother.	Mon frère.
My brother's, or that of my brother.	Celui de mon frère.
Your friend's, or that of your friend.	Celui de votre ami.

---



## EXERCISES.

## 4.

Have you that book?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Which book have you?—I have that of the neighbour.—Have you my stick, or that of my friend?—I have that of your friend.—Have you my bread or the baker's?—I have not yours; I have the baker's.—Have you the neighbour's horse?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Which horse have you?—I have that of the baker.—Have you your thimble or the tailor's?—I have my own.—Have you the pretty gold string of my dog?—I have it not.—Which string have you?—I have my silver string.—Have you my gold button or the tailor's?—I have not yours; I have the tailor's.—Have you my brother's coat or yours?—I have your brother's.—Which coffee have you?—I have the neighbour's.—Have you your dog or the man's?—I have the man's.—Have you your friend's money?—I have it not.—Are you cold?—I am cold.—Are you afraid?—I am not afraid.—Are you warm?—I am not warm.—Are you sleepy?—I am not sleepy; I am hungry.—Are you thirsty?—I am not thirsty.

## 5.

Have you my coat or the tailor's?—I have the tailor's.—Have you my gold candlestick or that of the neighbour?—I have yours.—Have you your paper or mine?—I have mine.—Have you your cheese or the baker's?—I have my own.—Which cloth have you?—I have that of the tailor.—Which stocking have you?—I have my own.—Have you the old wood of my brother?—I have it not.—Which soap have you?—I have my brother's good soap.—Have you my wooden gun or that of my brother?—I have yours.—Which shoe have you?—I have my friend's leather shoe.—Have you your thread stocking or mine?—I have not yours; I have my own.—What have you?—I have nothing.—Have you any thing good?—I have nothing good.—Have you any thing bad?—I have nothing bad.—What have you pretty?—I have my friend's pretty dog.—Have you my handsome or my ugly stick?—I have your ugly stick.—Are you hungry or thirsty?

## FIFTH LESSON.

*Cinquième Leçon.*

The merchant.  
Of the shoemaker.  
The boy.  
The pencil.  
The chocolate.

Le marchand.  
Du cordonnier.  
Le garçon.  
Le crayon.  
Le chocolat.

Have you the merchant's stick or  
yours ?

Avez-vous le bâton du marchand  
ou le vôtre ?

*Neither.*

*Ne—ni.*

*Nor.*

*Ni.*

I have neither the merchant's  
stick nor mine.

Je n'ai ni le bâton du marchand  
ni le mien.

Are you hungry or thirsty ?

† Avez-vous faim ou soif ?

I am neither hungry nor thirsty.

† Je n'ai ni faim ni soif.

Are you warm or cold ?

† Avez-vous chaud ou froid ?

I am neither warm nor cold.

† Je n'ai ni chaud ni froid.

Have you the wine or the bread ?

Avez-vous le vin ou le pain ?

I have neither the wine nor the  
bread.

Je n'ai ni le vin ni le pain.

I have neither yours nor mine.

Je n'ai ni le vôtre ni le mien.

I have neither my thread nor that  
of the tailor.

Je n'ai ni mon fil ni celui du  
tailleur.

The cork.  
The corkscrew.  
The umbrella.  
The honey.  
The cotton.  
The Frenchman.  
Of the carpenter.  
The hammer.  
The iron.  
The nail.  
The iron nail.

Le bouchon.  
Le tire-bouchon.  
Le parapluie.  
Le miel.  
Le coton.  
Le Français.  
Du charpentier.  
Le marteau.  
Le fer.  
Le clou.  
Le clou de fer.



What have you? or  
 What is the matter with you? } Qu'avez-vous?

*Nothing.* | *Ne—rien.*  
 I have nothing, or  
 Nothing is the matter with me. } Je n'ai rien.

Is any thing the matter with you? | † Avez-vous quelque chose?  
 Nothing is the matter with me. | † Je n'ai rien.

## EXERCISES.

## 6.

I am neither hungry nor thirsty.—Have you my shoe or the shoemaker's?—I have neither yours nor the shoemaker's.—Have you your pencil or the boy's?—I have neither mine nor the boy's.—Which pencil have you?—I have that of the merchant.—Have you my chocolate or the merchant's?—I have neither yours nor the merchant's; I have my own.—Have you the honey or the wine?—I have neither the honey nor the wine.—Have you your thimble or the tailor's?—I have neither mine nor the tailor's.—Have you your corkscrew or mine?—I have neither yours nor mine; I have the merchant's.—Which cork have you?—I have the neighbour's.—Have you the iron or the silver nail?—I have neither the iron nor the silver nail; I have the gold nail.—Are you warm or cold?—I am neither warm nor cold; I am sleepy.—Are you afraid?—I am not afraid.—Have you my hammer or the carpenter's?—I have neither yours nor the carpenter's.—Which nail have you?—I have the iron nail.—Which hammer have you?—I have the wooden hammer of the carpenter.—Have you any thing?—I have something.—What have you?—I have something fine.—What have you fine?—I have the Frenchman's fine umbrella.—Have you the cotton or the thread stocking?—I have neither the cotton nor the thread stocking.

## 7.

Have you my gun or yours?—I have neither yours nor mine.—Which gun have you?—I have my friend's.—Have you my cotton ribbon or that of my brother?—I have neither yours nor your brother's.—Which string have you?—I have my neighbour's thread string.—Have you the book of the Frenchman or that of the merchant?—I have neither the Frenchman's nor the merchant's.—Which book have you?—I have my own.—What is the matter with you?—Nothing.—Is any thing the matter with you?—Nothing is the matter with me.—Are you cold?—I am not cold; I am warm.—Have you the cloth or the cotton?—I have neither the cloth nor the cotton.—Have you any thing good or bad?—I have neither any thing good nor bad.—What have you?—I have nothing.

X

## SIXTH LESSON.

*Sixième Leçon.*

The beef, the ox.  
The biscuit.  
Of the captain.  
Of the cook.

Le bœuf.  
Le biscuit.  
Du capitaine.  
Du cuisinier.

Have I?  
You have.  
You have not.

Ai-je?  
Vous avez.  
Vous n'avez pas.  
† Ai-je faim?  
† Vous avez faim.  
† Vous n'avez pas faim.  
† Ai-je peur?  
† Vous avez peur.  
† Vous n'avez pas peur.  
† Ai-je honte?  
† Vous n'avez pas honte.  
† Avez-vous honte?  
† J'ai honte.  
† Ai-je tort?  
† Vous avez tort.  
† Vous n'avez pas tort.  
† Ai-je raison?  
† Vous avez raison.  
† Vous n'avez pas raison.  
Ai-je le clou?  
Vous l'avez.  
Vous ne l'avez pas.  
Ai-je quelque chose de bon?  
Vous n'avez rien de bon.  
Vous n'avez rien de bon ni de mauvais.  
Qu'ai-je? (For: quoi ai-je?)  
Ai-je le marteau du charpentier?  
Vous ne l'avez pas.  
L'avez-vous?  
Je l'ai.  
Je ne l'ai pas.  
L'ai-je?

Am I hungry?  
You are hungry.  
You are not hungry.  
Am I afraid?  
You are afraid.  
You are not afraid.  
Am I ashamed?  
You are not ashamed.  
Are you ashamed?  
I am ashamed.  
Am I wrong?  
You are wrong.  
You are not wrong.  
Am I right?  
You are right.  
You are not right.  
Have I the nail?  
You have it.  
You have it not.  
Have I any thing good?  
You have nothing good.  
You have neither any thing good  
nor bad.  
What have I?  
Have I the carpenter's hammer?  
You have it not.  
Have you it?  
I have it.  
I have it not.  
Have I it?

The butter.

The mutton.

The knife.

*Which one?*

That of the captain, or the captain's.

That of the cook, or the cook's.

The fine one.

The ugly one.

Le beurre.

Le mouton.

Le couteau.

*Lequel?*

Celui du capitaine.

Celui du cuisinier.

Le beau.

Le vilain.

Am I right or wrong?

You are neither right nor wrong.

You are neither hungry nor thirsty.

You are neither afraid nor ashamed.

Have I your butter or mine?

You have neither yours nor mine.

† Ai-je raison ou tort?

† Vous n'avez ni raison ni tort.

† Vous n'avez ni faim ni soif.

† Vous n'avez ni peur ni honte.

Ai-je votre beurre ou le mien?

Vous n'avez ni le vôtre ni le mien.

## EXERCISES.

## 8.

I have neither the baker's dog nor that of my friend.—Are you ashamed?—I am not ashamed.—Are you afraid or ashamed?—I am neither afraid nor ashamed.—Have you my knife?—Which one?—The fine one.—Have you my beef or the cook's?—I have neither yours nor the cook's.—Which (*lequel*) have you?—I have that of the captain.—Have I your biscuit?—You have it not.—Am I hungry or thirsty?—You are neither hungry nor thirsty.—Am I warm or cold?—You are neither warm nor cold.—Am I afraid?—You are not afraid. You are neither afraid nor ashamed.—Have I any thing good?—You have nothing good.—What have I?—You have nothing.—Which pencil have I?—You have that of the Frenchman.—Have I your thimble or that of the tailor?—You have neither mine nor that of the tailor?—Which one have I?—You have your friend's.—Which umbrella have I?—You have mine.—Have I the baker's good bread?—You have it not.—Which honey have I?—You have your own.—Have you my iron

gun?—I have it not.—Have I it?—You have it.—Have I your mutton or the cook's?—You have neither mine nor the cook's.—Have I your knife?—You have it not.—Have you it?—I have it.—What biscuit have I?—You have that of the captain.—Which cloth have I?—You have the merchant's.—Have you my coffee or that of my boy?—I have that of your good boy.—Have you your cork or mine?—I have neither yours nor mine.—What have you?—I have my brother's good candlestick.

## 9.

Am I right?—You are right.—Am I wrong?—You are not wrong.—Am I right or wrong?—You are neither right nor wrong; you are afraid. You are not sleepy. You are neither warm nor cold.—Have I the good coffee or the good sugar?—You have neither the good coffee nor the good sugar.—Have I any thing good or bad?—You have neither any thing good nor bad.—What have I?—You have nothing.—What have I pretty?—You have my friend's pretty dog.—Which butter have I?—You have that of your cook.—Have I your corkscrew or the merchant's?—You have neither mine nor the merchant's.—Which chocolate have you?—I have that of the Frenchman.—Which shoe have you?—I have the shoemaker's leather shoe.—Which one have I?—You have that of the old baker.—Which one have you?—I have that of my old neighbour.—What is the matter with you?—I am afraid.—Have I any thing?—You have nothing.



## SEVENTH LESSON.

*Septième Leçon.**Who ?*

Who has ?  
 Who has the pencil ?  
 The man has the pencil.  
 The man has not the pencil.  
 Who has it ?  
 The boy has it.  
 The boy has it not.

*Qui ?*

Qui a ?  
 Qui a le crayon ?  
 L'homme a le crayon.  
 L'homme n'a pas le crayon.  
 Qui l'a ?  
 Le garçon l'a.  
 Le garçon ne l'a pas.

The chicken.  
 The chest, the trunk.  
 The bag, the sack.  
 The waistcoat.  
 The ship.  
 The young man.  
 The youth.

Le poulet.  
 Le coffre.  
 Le sac.  
 Le gilet.  
 Le vaisseau, le bâtiment.  
 Le jeune homme.  
 L'adolescent.

*He.*

He has.  
 He has the chest.  
 He has not the chest.  
 He has it.  
 He has it not.

*Il.*

Il a.  
 Il a le coffre.  
 Il n'a pas le coffre.  
 Il l'a.  
 Il ne l'a pas.

*Has he ?*

Has he the knife ?  
 Has the man ?  
 Has the friend ?

*A-t-il ?*

A-t-il le couteau ?  
 † L'homme a-t-il ?  
 † L'ami a-t-il ?

*Obs. A.* In French, interrogative propositions begin with the verb when the subject is a pronoun, as in English ; but when a noun, this must stand at the head of the sentence, and the pronoun *il* must be repeated after the verb, as shown by the above examples.

Has the baker?

† Le boulanger a-t-il?

Has the young man?

† Le jeune homme a-t-il?

*Obs. B.* The letter *t*, between *a* and *il*, is inserted for the sake of euphony, and to avoid a too harsh pronunciation.

Is the man hungry?

† L'homme a-t-il-faim?

He is hungry.

† Il a faim.

He is neither hungry nor thirsty.

† Il n'a ni faim ni soif.

Is your brother warm or cold?

† Votre frère a-t-il chaud ou froid?

Is the man afraid or ashamed?

† L'homme a-t-il peur ou honte?

Is the man right or wrong?

† L'homme a-t-il raison ou tort?

Has the boy the hammer of the carpenter?

† Le garçon a-t-il le marteau du charpentier?

He has it.

Il l'a.

Has the baker it?

† Le boulanger l'a-t-il?

What has my friend?

† Mon ami qu'a-t-il?

The rice.

Le riz.

The countryman, the peasant.

Le paysan.

The servant.

Le domestique.

His or her shoe.

Son soulier.

His or her dog.

Son chien.

The broom.

Le balai.

The bird.

L'oiseau.

His foot.

Son pied.

His eye.

Son œil.

His money.

Son argent.

*His* or *hers* (absolute possessive pronouns).

*Le sien.*

Has the servant his trunk or mine?

† Le domestique a-t-il son coffre ou le mien?

He has his own.

Il a le sien.

*Somebody* or *any body*, *some one* or *any one* (indefinite pronouns).

*Quelqu'un.*

Has any body my book?

† Quelqu'un a-t-il mon livre?

Somebody has it.

Quelqu'un l'a.

Who has my stick?

Qui a mon bâton?

<i>No one, nobody, not any body.</i>	<i>Personne-ne.</i>
Nobody has your stick.	Personne n'a votre bâton.
Nobody has it.	Personne ne l'a.

## EXERCISES.

## 10.

Who has my trunk?—The boy has it.—Is he thirsty or hungry?—He is neither thirsty nor hungry.—Has the man the chicken?—He has it.—Who has my waistcoat?—The young man has it.—Has the young man my ship?—The young man has it not.—Who has it?—The captain has it.—What has the youth?—He has the fine chicken.—Has he the knife?—He has it not.—Is he afraid?—He is not afraid.—Is he afraid or ashamed?—He is neither afraid nor ashamed.—Is the man right or wrong?—He is neither right nor wrong.—Is he warm or cold?—He is neither warm nor cold.—Who has the countryman's rice?—My servant has it.—Has your servant my broom or his?—He has neither yours nor his.—Which broom has he?—He has that of his neighbour.—Who has my old shoe?—Your shoemaker has it.—What has your friend?—He has his good money.—Has he my gold?—He has it not.—Who has it?—The baker has it.—Has your baker my bird or his?—He has his.—Who has mine?—The carpenter has it.—Who is cold?—Nobody is cold.—Is any body warm?—Nobody is warm.—Has any body my chicken?—Nobody has it.—Has your servant your waistcoat or mine?—He has neither yours nor mine.—Which one has he?—He has his own.

## 11.

Has any one my gun?—No one has it.—Has the youth my book?—He has it not.—What has he?—He has nothing.—Has he the hammer or the nail?—He has neither the hammer nor the nail.—Has he my umbrella or my stick?—He has neither your umbrella nor your stick.—Has he my coffee or my sugar?—He has neither your coffee nor your sugar; he has your honey.—Has the boy my brother's biscuit or that of the Frenchman?—He

has neither that of your brother nor that of the Frenchman ; he has his own.—Have I your bag or that of your friend ?—You have neither mine nor my friend's ; you have your own.—Who has the peasant's bag ?—The good baker has it.—Who is afraid ?—The tailor's boy is afraid.—Is he sleepy ?—He is not sleepy.—Is he cold or hungry ?—He is neither cold nor hungry.—What is the matter with him ?—Nothing.—Has the peasant my money ?—He has it not.—Has the captain it ?—He has it not.—Who has it ?—Nobody has it.—Has your neighbour any thing good ?—He has nothing good.—What has he ugly ?—He has nothing ugly.—Has he any thing ?—He has nothing.

## 12.

Has the merchant my cloth or his ?—He has neither yours nor his.—Which cloth has he ?—He has that of my brother.—Which thimble has the tailor ?—He has his own.—Has your brother his wine or the neighbour's ?—He has neither his nor the neighbour's.—Which wine has he ?—He has his own.—Has any body my gold ribbon ?—Nobody has it.—Who has my silver string ?—Your good boy has it.—Has he my paper horse or my wooden horse ?—He has neither your paper nor your wooden horse ; he has his friend's leathern horse ?—Is any body wrong ?—Nobody is wrong.—Who has the Frenchman's good chocolate ?—The merchant has it.—Has he it ?—Yes, Sir, he has it.—Are you afraid or ashamed ?—I am neither afraid nor ashamed.—Has your cook his mutton ?—He has it.—Have you my bread or my cheese ?—I have neither your bread nor your cheese.—Have I your salt or your butter ?—You have neither my salt nor my butter.—What have I ?—You have your mutton.—Has any one my gold button ?—No one has it.

## EIGHTH LESSON.

*Huitième Leçon.*


---

The sailor.	Le matelot.
His tree.	Son arbre.
His looking-glass.	Son miroir.
His pocket-book.	Son porte-feuille.
His mattress.	Son matelas.
The pistol.	Le pistolet.
The stranger, the foreigner.	L'étranger.
The garden.	Le jardin.
His glove.	Son gant.

---

This or that ox.	Ce bœuf.
This or that hay.	Ce foin.
This or that friend.	Cet ami.

---

*Obs.* Always translate *this* or *that* before a vowel, or *h* mute, thus :  
Cet. Ex.

This or that man.	Cet homme.
This or that ass.	Cet âne.

---

<i>This book.</i>	<i>Ce livre-ci.</i>
<i>That book.</i>	<i>Ce livre-là.</i>

---

Have you this or that book ?	Avez-vous ce livre-ci ou celui-là ?
I have this one, I have not that one.	J'ai celui-ci, je n'ai pas celui-là.

---

<i>This one, that one.</i>	<i>Celui-ci, celui-là.</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------

---



Have I this one or that one?	Ai-je celui-ci ou celui-là?
You have this one, you have not that one.	Vous avez celui-ci, vous n'avez pas celui-là.
Has the man this hat or that one?	L'homme a-t-il ce chapeau-ci ou celui-là?

*But.*

He has not this one, but that one.

He has this one, but not that one.

*Mais.*

Il n'a pas celui-ci, mais il a celui-là.

Il a celui-ci, mais il n'a pas celui-là.

Il a celui-ci, mais non celui-là.

The note, the billet, or the ticket.

The garret, the granary.

The corn.

Have you this note or that one?

I have not this one, but that one.

I have this one, but not that one.

Has the neighbour this looking-glass or that one?

He has this one, but not that one.

The horse-shoe.

Le billet.

Le grenier.

Le grain.

Avez-vous ce billet-ci ou celui-là?

Je n'ai pas celui-ci,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mais j'ai} \\ \text{celui-là.} \\ \text{mais celui-} \\ \text{là.} \end{array} \right.$

J'ai celui-ci,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mais je n'ai pas} \\ \text{celui-là.} \\ \text{mais non celui-là.} \end{array} \right.$

Le voisin a-t-il ce miroir-ci ou celui-là?

Il a celui-ci, mais il n'a pas celui-là.

Le fer de cheval.

*That or which* (relative pronoun).

Have you the note which my brother has?

*Que.*

Avez-vous le billet que mon frère a<sup>1</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> When the subject is composed of several words, the verb must be placed before it. Ex. Avez-vous le ruban d'or *qu'a* le joli petit garçon de mon bon voisin?—Have you the golden ribbon which my neighbour's pretty little boy has? Here the verb would be too far away from the relative pronoun *que*.

I have not the note which your  
brother has.

Have you the horse which I have?

I have the horse which you have.

Je n'ai pas le billet que votre  
frère a.

Avez-vous le cheval que j'ai?

J'ai le cheval que vous avez.

*That which, the one which.*

I have not that which you have.

I have not that which he has.

Have I the glove which you have?

You have not the one which I  
have.

*Celui que.*

Je n'ai pas celui que vous avez.

Je n'ai pas celui qu'il a.

Ai-je le gant que vous avez?

Vous n'avez pas celui que j'ai.

## EXERCISES.

### 13.

Which hay has the stranger?—He has that of the peasant.—Has the sailor my looking-glass?—He has it not.—Have you this pistol or that one?—I have this one.—Have you the hay of my garden or that of yours?—I have neither that of your garden nor that of mine, but I have that of the stranger.—Which glove have you?—I have that of the sailor.—Have you his mattress?—I have it.—Which pocket-book has the sailor?—He has his own.—Who has my good note?—This man has it.—Who has that pistol?—Your friend has it.—Have you the corn of your granary or that of mine?—I have neither that of your granary nor that of mine, but I have that of my merchant.—Who has my glove?—That servant has it.—What has your servant?—He has the tree of this garden.—Has he that man's book?—He has not the book of that man, but he has that of this boy.—Has the peasant this or that ox?—He has neither this nor that, but he has the one which his boy has.—Has this ass his hay or that of the horse?—He has neither his nor that of the horse.—Which horse has this peasant?—He has that of your neighbour.—Have I your note or his?—You have neither mine nor his, but you have that of your friend.—Have you this horse's hay?—I have not his hay, but his shoe.—Has your brother my note or his?—He has neither yours nor his own, but he has the sailor's.—Has the foreigner my bird

or his own?—He has that of the captain.—Have you the tree of this garden?—I have it not.—Are you hungry or thirsty?—I am neither hungry nor thirsty, but I am sleepy.

## 14.

Has the sailor this bird or that one?—He has not this, but that one.—Has your servant this broom or that one?—He has this one, but not that one.—Has your cook this chicken or that one?—He has neither this one nor that one, but he has that of his neighbour.—Am I right or wrong?—You are neither right nor wrong, but your good boy is wrong.—Have I this knife or that one?—You have neither this nor that one.—What have I?—You have nothing good, but you have something bad.—Have you the chest which I have?—I have not that which you have.—Which horse have you?—I have the one which your brother has.—Have you the ass which my friend has?—I have not that which he has, but I have that which you have.—Has your friend the looking-glass which you have, or that which I have?—He has neither that which you have nor that which I have, but he has his own.

## 15.

Which bag has the peasant?—He has the one which his boy has.—Have I your golden or your silver candlestick?—You have neither my golden nor my silver candlestick, but you have my iron candlestick.—Have you my waistcoat or that of the tailor?—I have neither yours nor that of the tailor.—Which one have you?—I have that which my friend has.—Are you cold or warm?—I am neither cold nor warm, but I am thirsty.—Is your friend afraid or ashamed?—He is neither afraid nor ashamed, but he is sleepy.—Who is wrong?—Your friend is wrong.—Has any one my umbrella?—No one has it.—Is any one ashamed?—No one is ashamed, but my friend is hungry.—Has the captain the ship which you have or that which I have?—He has neither that which you have, nor that which I have.—Which one has he?—He has that of his friend.—Is he right or wrong?—He is neither right nor wrong.—Has the Frenchman any thing good or bad?—He has neither any thing good nor bad, but he has something pretty.—What has he pretty?—He has the pretty chicken.—Has he the good biscuit?—He has it not, but his neighbour has it.

## NINTH LESSON.

*Neuvième Leçon.*

## DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IN THE PLURAL,

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE,

BEFORE A CONSONANT, AS WELL AS BEFORE A VOWEL, OR AN *h* MUTE.

PLURAL.		PLURIEL.	
		<i>Masculin et Féminin.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	the.	<i>Nom.</i>	les.
<i>Gen.</i>	of or from the.	<i>Gén.</i>	des.
<i>Dat.</i>	to the.	<i>Dat.</i>	aux.
<i>Acc.</i>	the.	<i>Acc.</i>	les.

## THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

*Rule.* The plural number is formed by adding an *s* to the singular. But in French this rule is not only applicable to the nouns, but also to the article, the adjectives, and many of the pronouns. Ex.

The books.	Les livres.
The good books.	Les bons livres.
Of the books.	Des livres.
The sticks.	Les bâtons.
The good sticks.	Les bons bâtons.
Of the sticks.	Des bâtons.
The neighbours.	Les voisins.
The good neighbours.	Les bons voisins.
The friends.	Les amis.
The good friends.	Les bons amis.
Of the friends.	Des amis.
Of the neighbours.	Des voisins.

*Obs. A.* There are, however, some exceptions to this rule, viz.—

FIRST EXCEPTION.—Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural: Ex.

The stockings.	Les bas.
The woods or forests.	Les bois.
The Frenchmen (the French).	Les Français.
The Englishman, the Englishmen (the English).	L'Anglais, les Anglais.
The nose, the noses.	Le nez, les nez.

SECOND EXCEPTION.—Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, or *ou*, form their plural by adding *x* instead of *s*<sup>1</sup>. Ex.

The hats.	Les chapeaux.
The birds.	Les oiseaux.
The place, the places.	Le lieu, les lieux.
The fire, the fires.	Le feu, les feux.
The jewel, the jewels.	Le bijou, les bijoux.

THIRD EXCEPTION.—Nouns ending in *al*<sup>2</sup> or *ail*<sup>3</sup>, change these terminations in the plural into *aux*. Ex.

The horses.	Les chevaux.
The work, the works.	Le travail, les travaux.

<sup>1</sup> Of the nouns ending in *ou*, the following only take *x* in the plural: *le chou*, the cabbage; *le caillou*, the pebble; *le bijou*, the jewel; *le genou*, the knee; *le hibou*, the owl; *le joujou*, the toy; *le pou*, the louse. All others that have this termination now follow the general rule, taking *s* in the plural; e. g. *le clou*, the nail, plur. *les clous*, the nails; *le verrou*, the bolt, plur. *les verrous*, the bolts, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Of the nouns ending in *al*, several follow the simple general rule, simply taking *s* in the plural, particularly the following: *le bal*, the ball; *le cal*, the callosity; *le pal*, the pale; *le régal*, the treat; *le carnaval*, the carnival; &c.

<sup>3</sup> The nouns ending in *ail*, which make their plural in *aux*, are particularly the following: *le bail*, the lease; *le sous-bail*, the under-lease; *le corail*, the coral; *l'émail*, the enamel; *le soupirail*, the air-hole; *le travail*, the work; *le vantail*, the leaf of a folding-door; *le ventail*, the ventail. All others having this termination follow the general rule, i. e. take *s* in the plural; e. g. *l'attirail*, the train; *le détail*, particulars; *l'éventail*, the fan; *le gouvernail*, the rudder; *le portail*, the portal; *le sérail*, the seraglio; &c.



*Obs. B.* There are a few more exceptions in the formation of the plural of nouns and adjectives, which will be separately noted, as they will, by degrees, occur in the Method.

The ships. | Les bâtiments *or* bâtimens.

*Obs. C.* According to some grammarians, nouns of more than one syllable (polysyllables), ending in the singular in *nt*, drop *t* in the plural, but nouns of one syllable (monosyllables) having this ending never do.

The gloves. | Les gants.

My books.	Mes livres.
Your books.	Vos livres.
Have you my small knives?	Avez-vous mes petits couteaux?
I have not your small knives, but	Je n'ai pas vos petits couteaux,
I have your large knives.	mais j'ai vos grands couteaux.

	<i>Singular Masculine.</i>	<i>Plural for both genders.</i>
My.	Mon,	mes.
Your.	Votre,	vos.
His or her.	Son,	ses.
Our.	Notre,	nos.
Their.	Leur,	leurs.

His or her books.	Ses livres.
Our book, our books.	Notre livre, nos livres.
Their book, their books.	Leur livre, leurs livres.

Which books?	Quels livres?
Which ones?	Lesquels?

These or those books. | Ces livres.

The eye, the eyes.	L'œil, les yeux.
The scissors.	Les ciseaux.

Which horses have you ?  
 I have the fine horses of your  
 good neighbours.  
 Have I his small gloves ?  
 You have not his small gloves,  
 but you have his large hats.

Which gloves have I ?  
 You have the pretty gloves of  
 your brothers.  
 Have you the large hammers of  
 the carpenters ?  
 I have not their large hammers,  
 but their large nails.  
 Has your brother my wooden  
 guns ?  
 He has not your wooden guns.  
 Which ones has he ?  
 Have you the Frenchmen's fine  
 umbrellas ?  
 I have not their fine umbrellas,  
 but I have their fine sticks.

Quels chevaux avez-vous ?  
 J'ai les beaux chevaux de vos bons  
 voisins.  
 Ai-je ses petits gants ?  
 Vous n'avez pas ses petits gants,  
 mais vous avez ses grands cha-  
 peaux.  
 Quels gants ai-je ?  
 Vous avez les jolis gants de vos  
 frères.  
 Avez-vous les grands marteaux  
 des charpentiers ?  
 Je n'ai pas leurs grands marteaux,  
 mais j'ai leurs grands clous.  
 Votre frère a-t-il mes fusils de  
 bois ?  
 Il n'a pas vos fusils de bois.  
 Lesquels a-t-il ?  
 Avez-vous les beaux parapluies  
 des Français ?  
 Je n'ai pas leurs beaux parapluies,  
 mais j'ai leurs beaux bâtons.

The oxen.  
 The asses.  
 Of my gardens.  
 Of your woods or forests.  
 Have you the trees of my gar-  
 dens ?  
 I have not the trees of your  
 gardens.  
 Of my pretty gardens.  
 Of my fine horses.  
 Have you my leathern shoes ?  
 I have not your leathern shoes,  
 but I have your cloth coats.  
 The bread, the loaves.

Les bœufs.  
 Les ânes.  
 De mes jardins.  
 De vos bois.  
 Avez-vous les arbres de mes jar-  
 dins ?  
 Je n'ai pas les arbres de vos  
 jardins.  
 De mes jolis jardins.  
 De mes beaux chevaux.  
 Avez-vous mes souliers de cuir ?  
 Je n'ai pas vos souliers de cuir,  
 mais j'ai vos habits de drap.  
 Le pain, les pains.

## EXERCISES.

## 16.

Have you the gloves?—Yes, Sir, I have the gloves.—Have you my gloves?—No, Sir, I have not your gloves.—Have I your looking-glasses?—You have my looking-glasses.—Have I your pretty pocket-books?—You have not my pretty pocket-books.—Which pocket-books have I?—You have the pretty pocket-books of your friends.—Has the foreigner our good pistols?—He has not our good pistols, but our good ships.—Who has our fine horses?—Nobody has your fine horses, but somebody has your fine oxen.—Has your neighbour the trees of your gardens?—He has not the trees of my gardens, but he has your handsome jewels.—Have you the horses' hay?—I have not their hay, but their shoes (*leurs fers*).—Has your tailor my fine golden buttons?—He has not your fine golden buttons, but your fine golden threads.—What has the sailor?—He has his fine ships.—Has he my sticks or my guns?—He has neither your sticks nor your guns.—Who has the tailor's good waistcoats?—Nobody has his waistcoats, but somebody has his silver buttons.—Has the Frenchman's boy my good umbrellas?—He has not your good umbrellas, but your good scissars.—Has the shoemaker my leathern shoes?—He has your leathern shoes.—What has the captain?—He has his good sailors.

## 17.

Which mattresses has the sailor?—He has the good mattresses of his captain.—Which gardens has the Frenchman?—He has the gardens of the English.—Which servants has the Englishman?—He has the servants of the French.—What has your boy?—He has his pretty birds.—What has the merchant?—He has our pretty chests.—What has the baker?—He has our fine asses.—Has he our nails or our hammers?—He has neither our nails nor our hammers, but he has our good loaves.—Has the carpenter his iron hammers?—He has not his iron hammers, but his iron nails.—Which biscuits has the baker?—He has the biscuits of his friends.—Has our friend our fine pencils?—He has not our fine

pencils.—Which ones has he?—He has the small pencils of his merchants.—Which brooms has your servant?—He has the brooms of his good merchants.—Has your friend the small knives of our merchants?—He has not their small knives, but their golden candlesticks.—Have you these jewels?—I have not these jewels, but these silver knives.—Has the man this or that note?—He has neither this nor that.—Has he your book or your friend's?—He has neither mine nor my friend's; he has his own.—Has your brother the wine which I have or that which you have?—He has neither that which you have nor that which I have.—Which wine has he?—He has that of his merchants.—Have you the bag which my servant has?—I have not the bag which your servant has.—Have you the chicken which my cook has or that which the peasant has?—I have neither that which your cook has nor that which the peasant has.—Is the peasant cold or warm?—He is neither cold nor warm.

## TENTH LESSON.

*Dixième Leçon.**Those.*

Have you my books or those of  
the man?  
I have not yours, I have those of  
the man.

*Ceux.*

Avez-vous mes livres ou ceux de  
l'homme?  
Je n'ai pas les vôtres, j'ai ceux de  
l'homme.

*Those which.*

Have you the books which I  
have?  
I have those which you have.  
Has the Englishman the knives  
which you have, or those which  
I have?  
He has neither those which you  
have, nor those which I have.  
Which knives has he?  
He has his own.

*Ceux que.*

Avez-vous les livres que j'ai?  
J'ai ceux que vous avez.  
L'Anglais a-t-il les couteaux que  
vous avez ou ceux que j'ai?  
Il n'a ni ceux que vous avez, ni  
ceux que j'ai.  
Quels couteaux a-t-il?  
Il a les siens.

*Sing. & Plur.*

Mine.  
Yours.  
His or hers (his own, her own).  
Ours.  
Theirs (their own).

*Singular.*

Le mien,  
Le vôtre,  
Le sien,  
Le nôtre,  
Le leur,

*Plural.*

les miens.  
les vôtres.  
les siens.  
les nôtres.  
les leurs.

These books.  
Those books.

Ces livres-ci.  
Ces livres-là.



Have you these books or those ?		Avez-vous ces livres-ci ou ceux-là ?
---------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------

*Obs. A.* It is to be remarked, that the pronouns *ce, cet, ces*, are never used without a substantive. (See Lessons VIII. and IX.)

I have neither these nor those.		Je n'ai ni ceux-ci ni ceux-là.
---------------------------------	--	--------------------------------

<i>These</i> (Plur. of <i>this one</i> ).		<i>Ceux-ci</i> (Plur. of <i>celui-ci</i> ).
<i>Those</i> (Plur. of <i>that one</i> ).		<i>Ceux-là</i> (Plur. of <i>celui-là</i> ).

Have I these or those ?		Ai-je ceux-ci ou ceux-là ?
You have these; you have not those.		Vous avez ceux-ci; vous n'avez pas ceux-là.

Have I the looking-glasses of the French, or those of the English ?		Ai-je les miroirs des Français ou ceux des Anglais ?
---	--	--

You have neither these nor those.	}	Vous n'avez ni ceux-ci ni ceux-là.
You have neither the one nor the other.		
You have neither the former nor the latter.		

*Obs. B.* The English phrases, *the former and the latter, the one and the other*, are generally expressed in French by *celui-ci*, plur. *ceux-ci*, and *celui-là*, plur. *ceux-là*, but in an inverted order, *celui-ci* referring to the latter and *celui-là* to the former.

Has the man these or those jewels ?		L'homme a-t-il ces bijoux-ci ou ceux-là ?
He has these, but not those.		Il a ceux-ci, mais il n'a pas ceux-là.
Have you your guns or mine ?		Avez-vous vos fusils ou les miens ?
I have neither yours nor mine, but those of our good friends.		Je n'ai ni les vôtres ni les miens, mais j'ai ceux de nos bons amis.

## EXERCISES.

## 18.

Have you these or those notes?—I have neither these nor those.—Have you the horses of the French or those of the English?—I have those of the English, but I have not those of the French.—Which oxen have you?—I have those of the foreigners.—Have you the chests which I have?—I have not those which you have, but those which your brother has.—Has your brother your biscuits or mine?—He has neither yours nor mine.—What biscuits has he?—He has his own.—Which horses has your friend?—He has those which I have.—Has your friend my books or his?—He has neither yours nor his; but he has those of the captain.—Have I your waistcoats or those of the tailors?—You have neither these nor those.—Have I our asses?—You have not ours, but those of our neighbours.—Have you the birds of the sailors?—I have not their birds, but their fine sticks.—Which jewels has your boy?—He has mine.—Have I my shoes or those of the shoemakers?—You have not yours, but theirs.

## 19.

Which paper has the man?—He has ours.—Has he our coffee?—He has it not.—Have you our coats or those of the strangers?—I have not yours, but theirs.—Has your carpenter our hammers or those of our friends?—He has neither ours nor those of our friends?—Which nails has he?—He has his good iron nails.—Has any one the ships of the English?—No one has those of the English, but some one has those of the French.—Who has the cook's chickens?—Nobody has his chickens, but somebody has his butter.—Who has his cheese?—His boy has it.—Who has my old gun?—The sailor has it.—Have I that peasant's bag?—You have not his bag, but his corn.—Which guns has the Englishman?—He has those which you have.—Which umbrellas has the Frenchman?—He has those which his friend has.—Has he our books?—He has not ours, but those which his neighbour has.—

Is the merchant's boy hungry?—He is not hungry, but thirsty.—  
Is your friend cold or warm?—He is neither cold nor warm.—Is  
he afraid?—He is not afraid, but ashamed.—Has the young man  
the brooms of our servants?—He has not their brooms, but their  
soap.—Which pencils has he?—He has those of his old mer-  
chants.—Have you any thing good or bad?—I have neither any  
thing good nor bad, but something fine.—What have you fine?—  
I have our cooks' fine beef.—Have you not their fine mutton?—  
No, Sir, I have it not.

## ELEVENTH LESSON.

*Onzième Leçon.*


---

The comb.	Le peigne.
The glass.	Le verre.
Have you my small combs ?	Avez-vous mes petits peignes ?
I have them.	Je les ai.

---

<i>Them.</i>	<i>Les</i> (before the verb in French).
Has he my fine glasses ?	A-t-il mes beaux verres ?
He has them.	Il les a.
Have I them ?	Les ai-je ?
You have them.	Vous les avez.
You have them not.	Vous ne les avez pas.
Has the man my fine pistols ?	L'homme a-t-il mes beaux pisto- lets ?
He has them not.	Il ne les a pas.
Has the boy them ?	Le garçon les a-t-il ?
The men have them.	Les hommes les ont.
Have the men them ?	Les hommes les ont-ils ?

---

<i>They.</i>	<i>Ils.</i>
They have them.	Ils les ont.
They have them not.	Ils ne les ont pas.
Who has them ?	Qui les a ?

---

The Germans.	Les Allemands.
The Turks.	Les Turcs.

---

The Germans have them.	Les Allemands les ont.
The Italians.	Les Italiens.
The Spaniards.	Les Espagnols.

---

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Some or any.</i>	<i>Du,</i>	<i>des.</i>

## DECLENSION OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Masc. &amp; Feminine.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	some or any.	<i>Nom. du.</i>	<i>des.</i>
<i>Gen</i>	of or from some — any.	<i>Gén. de.</i>	<i>de.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	to some — any.	<i>Dat. à du.</i>	<i>à des.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	some — any.	<i>Acc. du.</i>	<i>des.</i>

Some or any wine.	Du vin.
Some or any bread.	Du pain.
Some or any butter.	Du beurre.
Some or any milk.	Du lait.
Some or any books.	Des livres.
Some or any buttons.	Des boutons.
Some or any knives.	Des couteaux.
Some or any men.	Des hommes.

Some or any money.	De l'argent.
Some or any gold.	De l'or.

Some or any friends.	Des amis.
----------------------	-----------

Have you any wine?	Avez-vous du vin ?
I have some wine.	J'ai du vin.
Has this man any cloth ?	Cet homme a-t-il du drap ?
He has some cloth.	Il a du drap.
Has he any books ?	A-t-il des livres ?
He has some books.	Il a des livres.
Have you any money ?	Avez-vous de l'argent ?
I have some money.	J'ai de l'argent.

*No, or not any, before a noun. Ne—pas de.*

I have no wine.	Je n'ai pas de vin.
He has no money.	Il n'a pas d'argent.
You have no books.	Nous n'avez pas de livres
They have no friends.	Ils n'ont pas d'amis.

<i>Some or any</i> , before an adjective.	<i>De.</i>
<i>No or not any.</i>	<i>Ne—pas de.</i>

## DECLENSION OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE,

SINGULAR AND PLURAL, MASCULINE AND FEMININE,  
WHEN IT STANDS BEFORE AN ADJECTIVE.

<i>Nom.</i>	some or any.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>de.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	of or from some — any.	<i>Gén.</i>	<i>de.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	to some — any.	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>à de.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	some — any.	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>de.</i>

Some or any good wine.	<i>De bon vin.</i>
Some or any bad cheese.	<i>De mauvais fromage.</i>
Some or any excellent wine.	<i>D'excellent vin.</i>
Some or any excellent coffee.	<i>D'excellent café.</i>
Some or any good books.	<i>De bons livres.</i>
Some or any pretty glasses.	<i>De jolis verres.</i>

Some or any old wine.	<i>Du vin vieux.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------

Have you any good butter?	<i>Avez-vous de bon beurre?</i>
I have no good butter, but some excellent cheese.	<i>Je n'ai pas de bon beurre, mais j'ai d'excellent fromage.</i>
Has this man any good books?	<i>Cet homme a-t-il de bons livres?</i>
He has not any good books.	<i>Il n'a pas de bons livres.</i>
Has the merchant any pretty gloves?	<i>Le marchand a-t-il de jolis gants?</i>
He has no pretty gloves, but some pretty jewels.	<i>Il n'a pas de jolis gants, mais il a de jolis bijoux.</i>

What has the baker?	<i>Le boulanger qu'a-t-il?</i>
He has some excellent bread.	<i>Il a d'excellent pain.</i>
The painter.	<i>Le peintre.</i>
The picture.	<i>Le tableau.</i>
Some coals.	<i>Du charbon (is in French always used in the singular).</i>



## EXERCISES.

## 20.

Have you my fine glasses?—I have them.—Have you the fine horses of the English?—I have them not.—Which sticks have you?—I have those of the foreigners.—Who has my small combs?—My boys have them.—Which knives have you?—I have those of your friends.—Have I your good guns?—You have them not, but your friends have them.—Have you my pretty pistols, or those of my brothers?—I have neither yours nor your brothers', but my own.—Which ships have the Germans?—The Germans have no ships.—Have the sailors our fine mattresses?—They have them not.—Have the cooks them?—They have them.—Has the captain your pretty books?—He has them not.—Have I them?—You have them. You have them not.—Has the Italian them?—He has them.—Have the Turks our fine guns?—They have them not.—Have the Spaniards them?—They have them.—Has the German the pretty umbrellas of the Spaniards?—He has them.—Has he them?—Yes, Sir, he has them.—Has the Italian our pretty gloves?—He has them not.—Who has them?—The Turk has them.—Has the tailor our waistcoats or those of our friends?—He has neither the latter nor the former.—Which coats has he?—He has those which the Turks have.—Which dogs have you?—I have those which my neighbours have.

## 21.

Have you any wood?—I have some wood.—Has your brother any soap?—He has no soap.—Have I any mutton?—You have no mutton, but you have some beef.—Have your friends any money?—They have some money.—Have they any milk?—They have no milk, but they have some excellent butter.—Have I any wood?—You have no wood, but you have some coals (*in the sing. in French*).—Has the merchant any cloth?—He has no cloth, but some pretty stockings.—Have the English any silver?—They have no silver, but they have some excellent iron.—Have you any good coffee?—I have no good coffee, but some excellent wine.—Has the merchant any good books?—He has some good

books.—Has the young man any milk?—He has no milk, but some excellent chocolate.—Have the French any good gloves?—They have some excellent gloves.—Have they any birds?—They have no birds, but they have some pretty jewels.—Who has the fine scissars of the English?—Their friends have them.—Who has the good biscuits of the bakers?—The sailors of our captains have them.—Have they our pocket-books?—Yes, Sir, they have them.—What have the Italians?—They have some beautiful pictures.—What have the Spaniards?—They have some fine asses.—What have the Germans?—They have some excellent corn.

## 22.

Have you any friends?—I have some friends.—Have your friends any fire?—They have some fire.—Have the shoemakers any good shoes?—They have no good shoes, but some excellent leather.—Have the tailors any good waistcoats?—They have no good waistcoats, but some excellent cloth.—Has the painter any umbrellas?—He has no umbrellas, but he has some beautiful pictures.—Has he the pictures of the French or those of the Italians?—He has neither the latter nor the former.—Which ones has he?—He has those of his good friends.—Have the Russians (*Les Russes*) any thing good?—They have something good.—What have they good?—They have some good oxen.—Has any one my small combs?—No one has them.—Who has the peasants' fine chickens?—Your cooks have them.—What have the bakers?—They have some excellent bread.—Have your friends any old wine?—They have no old wine, but some good milk.—Has any body your golden candlesticks?—Nobody has them.

## TWELFTH LESSON.

*Douzième Leçon.*


---

*Some of it, any of it, of it.*  
*Some of them, any of them,*  
*of them.*

*En* (is always placed before  
the verb).

---

Have you any wine?	Avez-vous du vin?
I have some.	J'en ai.
Have you any bread?	Avez-vous du pain?
I have not any, or none.	Je n'en ai pas.
Have you any good wine?	Avez-vous de bon vin?
I have some good.	J'en ai de bon.
Have I any good cloth?	Ai-je de bon drap?
You have not any good.	Vous n'en avez pas de bon.
Has the merchant any sugar?	Le marchand a-t-il du sucre?
He has some sugar.	Il a du sucre.
He has some.	Il en a.
He has not any.	Il n'en a pas.
Has he any good sugar?	A-t-il de bon sucre?
He has some good.	Il en a de bon.
He has not any good.	Il n'en a pas de bon.
Have I any salt?	Ai-je du sel?
You have some salt.	Vous avez du sel.
You have no salt.	Vous n'avez pas de sel.
You have some.	Vous en avez.
You have not any.	Vous n'en avez pas.
Have you any shoes?	Avez-vous des souliers?
I have some shoes.	J'ai des souliers.
I have no shoes.	Je n'ai pas de souliers.
I have some.	J'en ai.
I have not any.	Je n'en ai pas.
Has the man any good horses?	L'homme a-t-il de bons chevaux?
He has some good ones.	Il en a de bons.
He has not any good ones.	Il n'en a pas de bons.

Has he any pretty knives?	A-t-il de jolis couteaux?
He has some pretty ones.	Il en a de jolis.
He has not any pretty ones.	Il n'en a pas de jolis.
Has he any money?	A-t-il de l'argent?
He has some.	Il en a.
He has not any.	Il n'en a pas.
Have our friends any good butter?	Nos amis ont-ils de bon beurre?
They have some good.	Ils en ont de bon.
They have not any good.	Ils n'en ont pas de bon.
Have you good or bad books?	Avez-vous de bons ou de mauvais livres?
I have some good ones.	J'en ai de bons.
Have you good or bad paper?	Avez-vous de bon ou de mauvais papier?
I have some good.	J'en ai de bon.
Who has some bad wine?	Qui a de mauvais vin?
Our merchant has some.	Notre marchand en a.

What bread has the baker?	Quel pain le boulanger a-t-il?
He has some good.	Il en a de bon.
What shoes has the shoemaker?	Quels souliers le cordonnier a-t-il?
He has some good ones.	Il en a de bons.
The hatter.	Le chapelier.
The joiner.	Le menuisier.

A or one. | Un.

### DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

		MASCULINE.
<i>Nom.</i>	a or an.	<i>Nom.</i> un.
<i>Gen.</i>	of or from a — an.	<i>Gén.</i> d'un.
<i>Dat.</i>	to a — an.	<i>Dat.</i> à un.
<i>Acc.</i>	a — an.	<i>Acc.</i> un.

A or one horse.	Un cheval.
Have you a book?	Avez-vous un livre?
I have a book.	J'ai un livre.
Have you a glass?	Avez-vous un verre?
I have no glass.	Je n'ai pas de verre.
I have one.	J'en ai un.

Have you a good horse ?

I have a good horse.

I have a good one.

I have two good ones.

I have two good horses.

I have three good ones.

Have I a gun ?

You have a gun.

You have one.

You have a good one.

You have two good ones.

Has your brother a friend ?

He has a friend.

He has one.

He has a good one.

He has two good ones.

He has three good ones.

Four.

Five.

Has your friend a pretty knife ?

He has one.

He has none.

He has two of them.

He has three.

He has four.

Have you five good horses ?

I have six.

I have six good and seven bad ones.

Who has a fine umbrella ?

The merchant has one.

Avez-vous un bon cheval ?

J'ai un bon cheval.

J'en ai un bon.

J'en ai deux bons.

J'ai deux bons chevaux.

J'en ai trois bons.

Ai-je un fusil ?

Vous avez un fusil.

Vous en avez un.

Vous en avez un bon.

Vous en avez deux bons.

Votre frère a-t-il un ami ?

Il a un ami.

Il en a un.

Il en a un bon.

Il en a deux bons.

Il en a trois bons.

Quatre.

Cinq.

Votre ami a-t-il un joli couteau ?

Il en a un.

Il n'en a pas.

Il en a deux.

Il en a trois.

Il en a quatre.

Avez-vous cinq bons chevaux ?

J'en ai six.

J'en ai six bons et sept mauvais.

Qui a un beau parapluie ?

Le marchand en a un.

## EXERCISES.

### 23.

Have you any salt ?—I have some.—Have you any coffee ?—I have not any.—Have you any good wine ?—I have some good.—Have you any good cloth ?—I have no good cloth, but I have some good paper.—Have I any good sugar ?—You have not any good.—Has the man any good honey ?—He has some.—Has he



any good cheese?—He has not any.—Has the American (*L'Américain*) any money?—He has some.—Have the French any cheese?—They have not any.—Have the English any good milk?—They have no good milk, but they have some excellent butter.—Who has some good soap?—The merchant has some.—Who has some good bread?—The baker has some.—Has the foreigner any wood?—He has some.—Has he any coals?—He has not any.—What rice have you?—I have some good.—What hay has the horse?—He has some good.—What leather has the shoemaker?—He has some excellent.—Have you any jewels?—I have not any.—Who has some jewels?—The merchant has some.—Have I any shoes?—You have some shoes.—Have I any hats?—You have no hats.—Has your friend any pretty knives?—He has some pretty ones.—Has he any good oxen?—He has not any good ones.—Have the Italians any fine horses?—They have not any fine ones.—Who has some fine asses?—The Spaniards have some.

## 24.

Has the captain any good sailors?—He has some good ones.—Have the sailors any good mattresses?—They have not any good ones.—Who has some good biscuits?—The baker of our good neighbour has some.—Has he any bread?—He has not any.—Who has some beautiful ribbons?—The French have some.—Who has some excellent iron nails?—The carpenter has some.—Has he any hammers?—He has some.—What hammers has he?—He has some iron ones.—What is the matter with your brother?—Nothing is the matter with him.—Is he cold?—He is neither cold nor warm.—Is he afraid?—He is not afraid.—Is he ashamed?—He is not ashamed.—What is the matter with him?—He is hungry.—Who has some beautiful gloves?—I have some.—Who has some fine pictures?—The Italians have some.—Have the painters any fine gardens?—They have some fine ones.—Has the latter good or bad hats?—He has some good ones.—Has the joiner good or bad wood?—He has some good.—Who has some pretty pocket-books?—The boys of our merchants have some.—Have they any birds?—They have not any.—Have you any chocolate?—I have not any.—Who has some?—My servant has



some.—Has your servant any brooms?—He has not any.—Who has some?—The servants of my neighbour have some.

## 25.

Have you a pencil?—I have one.—Has your boy a good book?—He has a good one.—Has the German a good ship?—He has none.—Has your tailor a good coat?—He has a good one. He has two good ones. He has three good ones.—Who has some fine shoes?—Our shoemaker has some.—Has the captain a fine dog?—He has two of them.—Have your friends two fine horses?—They have four.—Has the young man a good or a bad pistol?—He has no good one. He has a bad one.—Have you a cork?—I have none.—Has your friend a good corkscrew?—He has two.—Have I a friend?—You have a good one. You have two good friends. You have three good ones. Your brother has four good ones.—Has the carpenter an iron nail?—He has six iron nails. He has six good ones and seven bad ones.—Who has good beef?—Our cook has some.—Who has five good horses?—Our neighbour has six.—Has the peasant any corn?—He has some.—Has he any guns?—He has not any.—Who has some good friends?—The Turks have some.—Have they any money?—They have not any.—Who has their money?—Their friends have it.—Are their friends thirsty?—They are not thirsty, but hungry.—Has the joiner any bread?—He has not any.—Has your servant a good broom?—He has one.—Has he this or that broom?—He has neither this nor that.—Which broom has he?—He has that which your servant has.—Have the peasants these or those bags?—They have neither these nor those.—Which bags have they?—They have their own.—Have you a good servant?—I have a good one.—Who has a good chest?—My brother has one.—Has he a leather or a wooden chest?—He has a wooden one.

## THIRTEENTH LESSON.

*Treizième Leçon.**How much? How many?*

How much bread?  
 How much money?  
 How many knives?  
 How many men?  
 How many friends?

*Combien de*<sup>1</sup> (before a substantive) ?

*Combien de* pain ?  
*Combien d'*argent ?  
*Combien de* couteaux ?  
*Combien d'*hommes ?  
*Combien d'*amis ?

*Only, but.*

I have but one friend.  
 I have but one.  
 I have but one good gun.  
 I have but one good one.  
 You have but one good one.  
 How many horses has your brother ?  
 He has but one.  
 He has but two good ones.

*Ne—que.*

Je n'ai qu'un ami.  
 Je n'en ai qu'un.  
 Je n'ai qu'un bon fusil.  
 Je n'en ai qu'un bon.  
 Vous n'en avez qu'un bon.  
 Combien de chevaux votre frère a-t-il ?  
 Il n'en a qu'un.  
 Il n'en a que deux bons.

*Much, many, a good deal of, very much.*

Much bread.  
 A good deal of good bread.  
 Many men.  
 Have you much money ?  
 I have a good deal.  
 Have you much good wine ?  
 I have a good deal.

*Beaucoup de* (before a noun).

*Beaucoup de* pain.  
*Beaucoup de* bon pain.  
*Beaucoup d'*hommes.  
 Avez-vous beaucoup d'argent ?  
 J'en ai beaucoup.  
 Avez-vous beaucoup de bon vin ?  
 J'en ai beaucoup.

<sup>1</sup> Cardinal numbers are used to answer the question *Combien?* how many ?

*Too much, too many.*

You have too much wine.  
They have too many books.

*Trop de* (before a substantive).

Vous avez trop *de* vin.  
Ils ont trop *de* livres.

*Enough.*

Enough money.  
Knives enough.

*Assez de* (before a substantive).

Assez *d'*argent.  
Assez *de* couteaux.

*Little.**A little.*

A little cloth.  
A little salt.

*Peu de* (before a noun).*Un peu de* (before a noun).

Un peu *de* drap.  
Un peu *de* sel.

*But little, only a little, not  
much, not many, but few.*

I have but little money.

*Ne—guère de* (*pas beaucoup de*), before a substantive.Je n'ai guère *d'*argent.

*Obs.* From the above examples it will be easily seen, that when the adverbs, *combien, beaucoup, trop, assez, peu, un peu, ne—guère*, are followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*.

*Courage.*

You have not much courage.  
We have few friends.

*Du cœur* (du courage).

Vous n'avez guère *de* cœur.  
Nous n'avons guère *d'*amis.

Have we?

We have.

We have not.

Avons-nous?

Nous avons.

Nous n'avons pas.

Some pepper.

Some vinegar.

Have we any vinegar?

We have some.

We have not any.

*Du poivre.**Du vinaigre.*

Avons-nous du vinaigre?

Nous en avons.

Nous n'en avons pas.

Have you a good deal of money?	Avez-vous beaucoup d'argent?
I have but little of it.	Je n'en ai guère.
You have but little of it.	Vous n'en avez guère.
He has but little of it.	Il n'en a guère.
We have but little of it.	Nous n'en avons guère.
Have you enough wine?	Avez-vous assez de vin?
I have only a little, but enough.	Je n'en ai guère, mais assez.

Eight.	Huit.
Nine.	Neuf.
Ten.	Dix.

---

<i>And.</i>	<i>Et.</i>
-------------	------------

---

## EXERCISES.

26.

How many friends have you?—I have two good friends.—Have you eight good trunks?—I have nine.—Has your servant three brooms?—He has only one good one.—Has the captain two good ships?—He has only one.—How many hammers has the carpenter?—He has but two good ones.—How many shoes has the shoemaker?—He has ten.—Has the young man nine good books?—He has only five.—How many guns has your brother?—He has only four.—Have you much bread?—I have a good deal.—Have the Spaniards much money?—They have but little.—Has your neighbour much coffee?—He has only a little.—Has the foreigner much corn?—He has a good deal.—What has the American (*L'Américain*)?—He has much sugar.—What has the Russian (*Le Russe*)?—He has a great deal of salt.—Has the peasant much rice?—He has not any.—Has he much cheese?—He has but little.—What have we?—We have much bread, much wine, and many books.—Have we much money?—We have only a little, but enough.—Have you many brothers?—I have only one.—Have the French many friends?—They have but few.—Has our neighbour much hay?—He has enough.—Has the Italian much cheese?—He has a great deal.—Has this man

courage?—He has none.—Has the painter's boy any pencils?—He has some.

## 27.

Have you much pepper?—I have but little.—Has the cook much beef?—He has but little beef, but he has a good deal of mutton.—How many oxen has the German?—He has eight.—How many horses has he?—He has only four.—Who has a good many biscuits?—Our sailors have a good many.—Have we many notes?—We have only a few.—How many notes have we?—We have only three pretty ones.—Have you too much butter?—I have not enough.—Have our boys too many books?—They have too many.—Has our friend too much milk?—He has only a little, but enough.—Who has a good deal of honey?—The peasants have a good deal.—Have they many gloves?—They have not any.—Has the cook enough butter?—He has not enough.—Has he enough vinegar?—He has enough.—Have you much soap?—I have only a little.—Has the merchant much cloth?—He has a good deal.—Who has a good deal of paper?—Our neighbour has a good deal.—Has our tailor many buttons?—He has a good many.—Has the painter many gardens?—He has not many.—How many gardens has he?—He has but two.—How many knives has the German?—He has three of them.—Has the captain any fine horses?—He has some fine ones, but his brother has none.—Have we any jewels?—We have a good many.—What jewels have we?—We have gold jewels.—What candlesticks have our friends?—They have silver candlesticks.—Have they gold ribbons?—They have some.

## 28.

Has the youth any pretty sticks?—He has no pretty sticks, but some beautiful birds.—What chickens has our cook?—He has some pretty chickens.—How many has he?—He has six.—Has the hatter any hats?—He has a good many.—Has the joiner much wood?—He has not a great deal, but enough.—Have we the horses of the French or those of the Germans?—We have

neither these nor those.—Which horses have we?—We have our own.—Has the Turk my small combs?—He has them not.—Who has them?—Your boy has them.—Have our friends much sugar?—They have little sugar, but much honey.—Who has our looking-glasses?—The Italians have them.—Has the Frenchman this or that pocket-book?—He has neither this nor that.—Has he the mattresses which we have?—He has not those which we have, but those which his friends have.—Is he ashamed?—He is not ashamed, but afraid.



## FOURTEENTH LESSON.

*Quatorzième Leçon.*

A few books.  
Have you a few books ?

Quelques livres.  
Avez-vous quelques livres ?

*A few.*

I have a few.  
You have a few.  
He has a few.

*Quelques-uns.*

J'en ai quelques-uns.  
Vous en avez quelques-uns.  
Il en a quelques-uns.

I have but a few books.  
You have but a few books.  
He has but a few sous.  
I have but a few.  
You have but a few.  
He has but a few.

Je n'ai que quelques livres.  
Vous n'avez que quelques livres.  
Il n'a que quelques sous.  
Je n'en ai que quelques-uns.  
Vous n'en avez que quelques-uns.  
Il n'en a que quelques-uns.

One or a sou,     *Plur.* sous.  
One or a franc,     „    francs.  
One or a crown,     „    crowns.

Un sou,     *Plur.* des sous.  
Un franc,     „    des francs.  
Un écu,     „    des écus.

*Other.*

Another sou.  
Some other sous.

*Autre.*

Un autre sou.  
D'autres sous.

Have you another horse ?  
I have another.

Avez-vous un autre cheval ?  
J'en ai un autre.

No other horse.	Ne—pas d'autre cheval.
I have no other horse.	Je n'ai pas d'autre cheval.
I have no other.	Je n'en ai pas d'autre.
Have you any other horses?	Avez-vous d'autres chevaux?
I have some others.	J'en ai d'autres.
I have no others.	Je n'en ai pas d'autres.

The arm.	Le bras.
The heart.	Le cœur.
The month.	Le mois.
The work.	L'ouvrage.
The volume.	Le volume.

What day of the month is it?	Quel jour du mois { est-ce ? avons-nous ?
It is the first.	{ C'est le premier. † Nous avons le premier.
It is the second.	{ C'est le deux. † Nous avons le deux.
It is the third.	{ C'est le trois. † Nous avons le trois.

*Obs. A.* The cardinal numbers must be used in French when speaking of the days of the month, though the ordinal be used in English; but we say *le premier*, the first, speaking of the first day of every month.

It is the eleventh.	{ C'est le onze (not l'onze). † Nous avons le onze.
Which volume have you?	Quel volume avez-vous?
I have the fourth.	J'ai le quatrième.

*B.* The ordinal numbers are formed of the cardinal by adding *ième*, (and when they end in *e* this is dropped,) except *premier*, first, which is irregular, and *second*, second, which is sometimes used for *deuxième*. *Unième* and *deuxième*, however, are used in compound numbers, where *premier* and *second* cannot be employed. Ex.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The first.	Le premier,	les premiers.
— second.	Le deuxième, le second,	les deuxièmes, les seconds.
— third.	Le troisième,	les troisièmes.
— fourth.	Le quatrième,	les quatrièmes.

The fifth.	Le cinquième,	les cinquièmes.
— sixth.	Le sixième,	les sixièmes.
— seventh.	Le septième,	les septièmes.
— eighth.	Le huitième,	les huitièmes.
— ninth.	Le neuvième <sup>1</sup> ,	les neuvièmes.
— tenth.	Le dixième,	les dixièmes.
— eleventh.	Le onzième,	les onzièmes.
— twenty-first.	Le vingt et unième,	les vingt et un- ièmes.
— twenty-second.	Le vingt-deux- ième,	les vingt-deux- ièmes.
— thirtieth, &c.	Le trentième, &c.	les trentièmes <sup>2</sup> , &c.
Have you the first or second book?	Avez-vous le premier ou le deux- ième (le second) livre?	
I have the third.	J'ai le troisième.	
Which volume have you?	Quel volume avez-vous?	
I have the fifth.	J'ai le cinquième.	

## EXERCISES.

## 29.

Have you many knives?—I have a few.—Have you many pencils?—I have only a few.—Has the painter's friend many looking-glasses?—He has only a few.—Has your boy a few sous?—He has a few.—Have you a few francs?—We have a few.—How many francs have you?—I have ten.—How many sous has the Spaniard?—He has not many, he has only five.—Who has the beautiful glasses of the Italians?—We have them.—Have the English many ships?—They have a good many.—Have the Italians many horses?—They have not many horses, but a good many asses.—What have the Germans?—They have many crowns.—How many crowns have they?—They have eleven.—Have we the horses of the English or those of the Ger-

<sup>1</sup> It will be remarked, that in the formation of *neuvième* the letter *f* of *neuf*, nine, is changed into *v*.

<sup>2</sup> Henceforth the learners should write the date before their task.  
Ex. Londres, le vingt-cinq Janvier, mil huit cent quarante-un; London,  
25th January, 1841.

mans?—We have neither the former nor the latter.—Have we the umbrellas of the Spaniards?—We have them not, but the Americans (*les Américains*) have them.—Have you much butter?—I have only a little, but enough.—Have the sailors the mattresses which we have?—They have not those which we have, but those which their captain has.—Has the Frenchman many francs?—He has only a few, but he has enough.—Has your servant many sous?—He has no sous, but francs enough.

## 30.

Have the Russians (*les Russes*) pepper?—They have but little pepper, but a good deal of salt.—Have the Turks much wine?—They have not much wine, but a good deal of coffee.—Who has a good deal of milk?—The Germans have a good deal.—Have you no other gun?—I have no other.—Have we any other cheese?—We have some other.—Have I no other pistol?—You have another.—Has our neighbour no other horse?—He has no other.—Has your brother no other friends?—He has some others.—Have the shoemakers no other shoes?—They have no others.—Have the tailors many coats?—They have only a few, they have only four.—How many stockings have you?—I have only two.—Have you any other biscuits?—I have no other.—How many corkscrews has the merchant?—He has nine.—How many arms has this man?—He has only one, the other is of wood.—What heart has your boy?—He has a good heart.—Have you no other servant?—I have another.—Has your friend no other birds?—He has some others.—How many other birds has he?—He has six others.—How many gardens have you?—I have only one, but my friend has two of them.

## 31.

Which volume have you?—I have the first.—Have you the second volume of my work?—I have it.—Have you the third or fourth book?—I have neither the former nor the latter.—Have we the fifth or sixth volumes?—We have the fifth, but we have not the sixth volumes.—Which volumes has your friend?—He has the seventh volumes.—What day of the month is it (*avons-nous*)? It is (*nous avons*) the eighth.—Is it not the eleventh?—No, Sir, it

is the tenth.—Who has our crowns?—The Russians (*les Russes*) have them.—Have they our gold?—They have it not.—Has the youth much money?—He has not much money, but much courage.—Have you the nails of the carpenters or those of the joiners?—I have neither those of the carpenters nor those of the joiners, but those of my merchants.—Have you this or that glove?—I have neither this nor that.—Has your friend these or those notes?—He has these, but not those.—Has the Italian a few sous?—He has a few.—Has he a few francs?—He has five of them.—Have you another stick?—I have another.—What other stick have you?—I have another iron stick.—Have you a few good candlesticks?—We have a few.—Has your boy another hat?—He has another.—Have these men any vinegar?—These men have none, but their friends have some.—Have the peasants any other bags?—They have no others.—Have they any other bread?—They have some other.

## FIFTEENTH LESSON.

*Quinzième Leçon.*

The tome (the volume).  
Have you the first or second tome  
of my work ?

*Both.*

I have both.  
Have you my book or my stick ?  
  
I have neither the one nor the  
other.

*The one and the other (plural).*

Has your brother my gloves or  
his own ?  
He has both yours and his.  
Has he my books or those of the  
Spaniards ?  
He has neither the one nor the  
other.

Le tome.  
Avez-vous le premier ou le deux-  
ième tome de mon ouvrage ?

*L'un et l'autre.*

J'ai l'un et l'autre.  
Avez-vous mon livre ou mon  
bâton ?  
Je n'ai ni l'un ni l'autre.

*Les uns et les autres.*

Votre frère a-t-il mes gants ou les  
siens ?  
Il a les uns et les autres.  
A-t-il mes livres ou ceux des  
Espagnols ?  
Il n'a ni les uns ni les autres.

The Scotchman.  
The Irishman.  
The Dutchman.  
The Russian.

L'Ecosais.  
L'Irlandais.  
Le Hollandais.  
Le Russe.

*Still, yet, some, or any more.*

Some more wine.  
Some more money.  
Some more buttons.

*Encore.*

Encore du vin.  
Encore de l'argent.  
Encore des boutons.



Have you any more wine ?  
 I have some more wine.  
 I have some more.  
 Has he any more money ?  
 He has some more.  
 Have I any more books ?  
 You have some more.

Avez-vous encore du vin ?  
 J'ai encore du vin.  
 J'en ai encore.  
 A-t-il encore de l'argent ?  
 Il en a encore.  
 Ai-je encore des livres ?  
 Vous en avez encore.

*Not any more, no more.*

I have no more bread.  
 He has no more money.  
 Have you any more butter ?  
 I have no more.  
 We have no more.  
 Has he any more vinegar ?  
 He has no more.  
 We have no more books.  
 We have no more.  
 He has no more dogs.  
 He has no more.

*Ne—plus de (before a noun).*

Je n'ai plus de pain.  
 Il n'a plus d'argent.  
 Avez-vous encore du beurre ?  
 Je n'en ai plus.  
 Nous n'en avons plus.  
 A-t-il encore du vinaigre ?  
 Il n'en a plus.  
 Nous n'avons plus de livres.  
 Nous n'en avons plus.  
 Il n'a plus de chiens.  
 Il n'en a plus.

*Not much more, not many more.*

Have you much more wine ?  
 I have not much more.  
 Have you many more books ?  
 I have not many more.

*Ne—plus guère de (before a noun).*

Avez-vous encore beaucoup de vin ?  
 Je n'en ai plus guère.  
 Avez-vous encore beaucoup de livres ?  
 Je n'en ai plus guère.

One more book.  
 One more good book.  
 A few books more.

Have you a few francs more ?  
 I have a few more.  
 Have I a few sous more ?  
 You have a few more.  
 We have a few more.

They have a few more.

Encore un livre.  
 Encore un bon livre.  
 Encore quelques livres.  
 Avez-vous encore quelques francs ?  
 J'en ai encore quelques-uns.  
 Ai-je encore quelques sous ?  
 Vous en avez encore quelques-uns.  
 Nous en avons encore quelques-uns.  
 Ils en ont encore quelques-uns.

## EXERCISES.

## 32.

Which volume of his work have you?—I have the first.—How many tomes has this work?—It has two.—Have you my work or my brother's?—I have both.—Has the foreigner my comb or my knife?—He has both.—Have you my bread or my cheese?—I have neither the one nor the other.—Has the Dutchman my glass or that of my friend?—He has neither the one nor the other.—Has the Irishman our horses or our chests?—He has both.—Has the Scotchman our shoes or our stockings?—He has neither the one nor the other.—What has he?—He has his good iron guns.—Have the Dutch our ships or those of the Spaniards?—They have neither the one nor the other.—Which ships have they?—They have their own.—Have we any more hay?—We have some more.—Has our merchant any more pepper?—He has some more.—Has your friend any more money?—He has not any more.—Has he any more jewels?—He has some more.—Have you any more coffee?—We have no more coffee, but we have some more chocolate.—Has the Dutchman any more salt?—He has no more salt, but he has some more butter.—Has the painter any more pictures?—He has no more pictures, but he has some more pencils.—Have the sailors any more biscuits?—They have not any more.—Have your boys any more books?—They have not any more.—Has the young man any more friends?—He has no more.

## 33.

Has our cook much more beef?—He has not much more.—Has he many more chickens?—He has not many more.—Has the peasant much more milk?—He has not much more milk, but he has a great deal more butter.—Have the French many more horses?—They have not many more.—Have you much more paper?—I have much more.—Have we many more looking-glasses?—We have many more.—Have you one more book?—I have one more.—Have our neighbours one more garden?—They have one more.—Has our friend one more umbrella?—He has no more.—Have the Scotch a few more books?—They have a

few more.—Has the tailor a few more buttons?—He has not any more.—Has your carpenter a few more nails?—He has no more nails; but he has a few sticks more.—Have the Spaniards a few sous more?—They have a few more.—Has the German a few more oxen?—He has a few more.—Have you a few more francs?—I have no more francs; but I have a few more crowns.—What have you more?—We have a few more ships and a few more good sailors.—Have I a little more money?—You have a little more.—Have you any more courage?—I have no more.—Have you much more *vinegar*?—I have not much more; but my brother has a great deal more.

## 34.

Has he sugar enough?—He has not enough.—Have we francs enough?—We have not enough.—Has the joiner wood enough?—He has enough.—Has he hammers enough?—He has enough.—What hammers has he?—He has iron and wooden hammers.—Have you rice enough?—We have not enough rice; but we have enough sugar.—Have you many more gloves?—I have not many more.—Has the Russian another ship?—He has another.—Has he another bag?—He has no other.—What day of the month is it?—It is the sixth.—How many friends have you?—I have but one good friend.—Has the peasant too much bread?—He has not enough.—Has he much money?—He has but little money, but enough hay.—Have we the thread or the cotton stockings of the Americans (*des Américains*)?—We have neither their thread nor their cotton stockings.—Have we the gardens which they have?—We have not those which they have, but those which our neighbours have.—Have you any more honey?—I have no more.—Have you any more oxen?—I have not any more.

## SIXTEENTH LESSON.

*Seizième Leçon.*

<i>Several.</i> Several men. Several children. Several knives.	<i>Plusieurs.</i> Plusieurs hommes. Plusieurs enfants. Plusieurs couteaux.
The father. The son. The child. The cake. Tea.	Le père. Le fils. L'enfant. Le gâteau. Du thé.
<i>As much, as many.</i>  <i>As much—as, as many—as.</i>  As much bread as wine. As many men as children.	<i>Autant de</i> (before a substantive). <i>Autant de—que de</i> (before a noun). Autant de pain que de vin. Autant d'hommes que d'enfans.
Have you as much gold as silver?  I have as much of this as of that. I have as much of the latter as of the former. I have as much of the one as of the other. Have you as many shoes as stockings? I have as many of these as of those. I have as many of the latter as the former. I have as many of the one as of the other.	Avez-vous autant d'or que d'argent?  J'ai autant de celui-ci que de celui-là. J'ai autant de l'un que de l'autre. Avez-vous autant de souliers que de bas? J'ai autant de ceux-ci que de ceux-là. J'ai autant des uns que des autres.

*Quite (or just) as much, as many.*

I have quite as much of this as of that.

Quite as much of the one as of the other.

Quite as many of these as of those.

Quite as many of the one as of the other.

*Tout autant de* (before a noun).

J'ai tout autant de celui-ci que de celui-là.

Tout autant de l'un que de l'autre.

Tout autant de ceux-ci que de ceux-là.

Tout autant des uns que des autres.

An enemy, enemies.

The finger.

My nose.

Un ennemi, des ennemis.

Le doigt.

Mon nez.

*More* (a comparative adverb).

More bread.

More men.

*Plus de* (before a substantive).

Plus de pain.

Plus d'hommes.

*Than.*

More bread than wine.

More knives than sticks.

More of this than of that.

More of the one than of the other.

More of these than of those.

More of the ones than of the others.

I have more of your sugar than of mine.

He has more of our books than of his own.

*Que de* (before a substantive.)

Plus de pain que de vin.

Plus de couteaux que de bâtons.

Plus de celui-ci que de celui-là.

Plus de l'un que de l'autre.

Plus de ceux-ci que de ceux-là.

Plus des uns que des autres.

J'ai plus de votre sucre que du mien.

Il a plus de nos livres que des siens.

*Less, fewer.*

Less wine than bread.

Fewer knives than sticks.

*Moins de* (before a substantive).

Moins de vin que de pain.

Moins de couteaux que de bâtons.



Less than I.  
 Less than he.  
 Less than we.  
 Less than you.  
 Less than they.

Moins que moi.  
 Moins que lui.  
 Moins que nous.  
 Moins que vous.  
 Moins qu'eux.

They.  
 Than they.  
 As much as you.  
 As much as he.  
 As much as they.

Eux.  
 Qu'eux.  
 Autant que vous.  
 Autant que lui.  
 Autant qu'eux.

## EXERCISES.

## 35.

Have you a horse?—I have several.—Has he several coats?—He has only one.—Who has several looking-glasses?—My brother has several.—What looking-glasses has he?—He has beautiful ones.—Who has my good cakes?—Several men have them.—Has your friend a child?—He has several.—Have you as much coffee as tea?—I have as much of the one as of the other.—Has this man a son?—He has several.—How many sons has he?—He has four.—How many children have our friends?—They have many; they have ten of them.—Have we as much bread as butter?—You have as much of the one as of the other.—Has this man as many friends as enemies?—He has as many of the one as of the other.—Have we as many shoes as stockings?—We have as many of the one as of the other.—Has your father as much gold as silver?—He has more of the latter than of the former.—Has the captain as many sailors as ships?—He has more of the latter than of the former. He has more of the one than of the other.

## 36.

Have you as many guns as I?—I have just as many.—Has the foreigner as much courage as we?—He has quite as much.—Have we as much good as bad paper?—We have as much of the one as of the other.—Have our neighbours as much cheese as



milk?—They have more of the latter than of the former.—Have your sons as many cakes as books?—They have more of the latter than of the former, more of the one than of the other.—How many noses has the man?—He has but one.—How many fingers has he?—He has several.—How many pistols have you?—I have only one, but my father has more than I; he has five.—Have my children as much courage as yours?—Yours have more than mine.—Have I as much money as you?—You have less than I.—Have you as many books as I?—I have less than you.—Have I as many enemies as your father?—You have fewer than he.—Have the Russians as many children as we?—We have fewer than they.—Have the French as many ships as we?—They have fewer than we.—Have we as many jewels as they?—We have fewer than they.—Have we fewer knives than the children of our friends?—We have fewer than they.

## 37.

Who has fewer friends than we?—Nobody has fewer.—Have you as much of your wine as of mine?—I have as much of yours as of mine.—Have I as many of your books as of mine?—You have fewer of mine than of yours.—Has the Turk as much of your money as of his own?—He has less of his own than of ours.—Has your baker less bread than money?—He has less of the latter than of the former.—Has our merchant fewer dogs than horses?—He has fewer of the latter than of the former; fewer of the one than of the other.—Have your servants more sticks than brooms?—They have more of the latter than of the former.—Has our cook as much butter as beef?—He has as much of the one as of the other.—Has he as many chickens as birds?—He has more of the latter than of the former.

## 38.

Has the carpenter as many sticks as nails?—He has just as many of these as of those.—Have you more biscuits than glasses?—I have more of the latter than of the former.—Has our friend more sugar than honey?—He has not so much (*pas autant*) of the latter as of the former.—Has he more gloves than umbrellas?—

To work.	Travailler 1.
To speak.	Parler 1.
Have you a mind to work ?	Avez-vous envie de travailler ?
I have a mind to work.	J'ai envie de travailler.
He has not the courage to speak.	Il n'a pas le courage de parler.

Are you afraid to speak ?	Avez-vous peur de parler ?
I am ashamed to speak.	J'ai honte de parler.

To cut.	Couper 1.
To cut it.	Le couper.
To cut them.	Les couper.
To cut some.	En couper.

Have you time to cut the bread ?	Avez-vous le temps de couper le pain ?
I have time to cut it.	J'ai le temps de le couper.
Has he a mind to cut trees ?	A-t-il envie de couper des arbres ?
He has a mind to cut some.	Il a envie d'en couper.

To buy.	Acheter 1.
To buy some more.	En acheter encore.
To buy one.	En acheter un.
To buy two.	En acheter deux.

To buy one more.	En acheter encore un.
To buy two more.	En acheter encore deux.

To break.	Casser 1.
To pick up.	Ramasser 1.
To mend, to repair.	Raccorder 1.
To look for, to seek.	Chercher 1.

Have you a mind to buy one more horse ?	Avez-vous envie d'acheter encore un cheval ?
I have a mind to buy one more.	J'ai envie d'en acheter encore un.
Have you a mind to buy some books ?	Avez-vous envie d'acheter des livres ?
I have a mind to buy some, but I have no money.	J'ai envie d'en acheter, mais je n'ai pas d'argent.

Are you afraid to break the glasses?	Avez-vous peur de casser les verres?
I am afraid to break them.	J'ai peur de les casser.
Has he time to work?	A-t-il le temps de travailler?
He has time, but no mind to work.	Il a le temps, mais il n'a pas envie de travailler.

Am I right in buying a horse?	Ai-je raison d'acheter un cheval?
You are not wrong in buying one.	Vous n'avez pas tort d'en acheter un.

## EXERCISES.

## 39.

Have you still a mind to buy my friend's horse?—I have still a mind to buy it, but I have no more money.—Have you time to work?—I have time, but no mind (*pas envie*) to work.—Has your brother time to cut some sticks?—He has time to cut some.—Has he a mind to cut some bread?—He has a mind to cut some, but he has no knife.—Have you time to cut some cheese?—I have time to cut some.—Has he a desire to cut the tree?—He has a desire to cut it, but he has no time.—Has the tailor time to cut the cloth?—He has time to cut it.—Have I time to cut the trees?—You have time to cut them.—Has the painter a mind to buy a horse?—He has a mind to buy two.—Has your captain time to speak?—He has time, but no desire to speak.—Are you afraid to speak?—I am not afraid, but I am ashamed to speak.—Am I right in buying a gun?—You are right in buying one.—Is your friend right in buying a great ox?—He is wrong in buying one.—Am I right in buying little oxen?—You are right in buying some.

## 40.

Have you a desire to speak?—I have a desire, but I have not the courage to speak.—Have you the courage to cut your finger?—I have not the courage to cut it.—Am I right in speaking?—You are not wrong in speaking, but you are wrong in cutting my trees.—Has the son of your friend a desire to buy one more bird?

To work.	Travailler 1.
To speak.	Parler 1.
Have you a mind to work ?	Avez-vous envie de travailler ?
I have a mind to work.	J'ai envie de travailler.
He has not the courage to speak.	Il n'a pas le courage de parler.

Are you afraid to speak ?	Avez-vous peur de parler ?
I am ashamed to speak.	J'ai honte de parler.

To cut.	Couper 1.
To cut it.	Le couper.
To cut them.	Les couper.
To cut some.	En couper.

Have you time to cut the bread ?	Avez-vous le temps de couper le pain ?
I have time to cut it.	J'ai le temps de le couper.
Has he a mind to cut trees ?	A-t-il envie de couper des arbres ?
He has a mind to cut some.	Il a envie d'en couper.

To buy.	Acheter 1.
To buy some more.	En acheter encore.
To buy one.	En acheter un.
To buy two.	En acheter deux.

To buy one more.	En acheter encore un.
To buy two more.	En acheter encore deux.

To break.	Casser 1.
To pick up.	Ramasser 1.
To mend, to repair.	Raccommoder 1.
To look for, to seek.	Chercher 1.

Have you a mind to buy one more horse ?	Avez-vous envie d'acheter encore un cheval ?
I have a mind to buy one more.	J'ai envie d'en acheter encore un.
Have you a mind to buy some books ?	Avez-vous envie d'acheter des livres ?
I have a mind to buy some, but I have no money.	J'ai envie d'en acheter, mais je n'ai pas d'argent.

Are you afraid to break the glasses ?	Avez-vous peur de casser les verres ?
I am afraid to break them.	J'ai peur de les casser.
Has he time to work ?	A-t-il le temps de travailler ?
He has time, but no mind to work.	Il a le temps, mais il n'a pas envie de travailler.

Am I right in buying a horse ?	Ai-je raison d'acheter un cheval ?
You are not wrong in buying one.	Vous n'avez pas tort d'en acheter un.

## EXERCISES.

## 39.

Have you still a mind to buy my friend's horse ?—I have still a mind to buy it, but I have no more money.—Have you time to work ?—I have time, but no mind (*pas envie*) to work.—Has your brother time to cut some sticks ?—He has time to cut some.—Has he a mind to cut some bread ?—He has a mind to cut some, but he has no knife.—Have you time to cut some cheese ?—I have time to cut some.—Has he a desire to cut the tree ?—He has a desire to cut it, but he has no time.—Has the tailor time to cut the cloth ?—He has time to cut it.—Have I time to cut the trees ?—You have time to cut them.—Has the painter a mind to buy a horse ?—He has a mind to buy two.—Has your captain time to speak ?—He has time, but no desire to speak.—Are you afraid to speak ?—I am not afraid, but I am ashamed to speak.—Am I right in buying a gun ?—You are right in buying one.—Is your friend right in buying a great ox ?—He is wrong in buying one.—Am I right in buying little oxen ?—You are right in buying some.

## 40.

Have you a desire to speak ?—I have a desire, but I have not the courage to speak.—Have you the courage to cut your finger ?—I have not the courage to cut it.—Am I right in speaking ?—You are not wrong in speaking, but you are wrong in cutting my trees.—Has the son of your friend a desire to buy one more bird ?



—He has a desire to buy one more.—Have you a desire to buy a few more horses?—We have a desire to buy a few more, but we have no more money.—What has our tailor a mind to mend?—He has a mind to mend our old coats.—Has the shoemaker time to mend our shoes?—He has time, but he has no mind to mend them.—Who has a mind to mend our hats?—The hatter has a mind to mend them.—Are you afraid to look for my horse (*chercher mon cheval*)?—I am not afraid, but I have no time to look for it (*le chercher*).—What have you a mind to buy?—We have a mind to buy something good, and our neighbours have a mind to buy something beautiful.—Are their children afraid to pick up some nails?—They are not afraid to pick up some.—Have you a mind to break my jewel?—I have a mind to pick it up, but not (*mais non pas*) to break it.—Am I wrong in picking up your gloves?—You are not wrong in picking them up, but you are wrong in cutting them.

## 41.

Have you the courage to break these glasses?—I have the courage, but I have no mind to break them.—Who has a mind to break our looking-glass?—Our enemy has a mind to break it.—Have the foreigners a mind to break our pistols?—They have a mind, but they have not the courage to break them.—Have you a mind to break the captain's pistol?—I have a mind, but I am afraid to break it.—Who has a mind to buy my beautiful dog?—Nobody has a mind to buy it.—Have you a mind to buy my beautiful trunks, or those of the Frenchman?—I have a mind to buy yours, and not (*et non*) those of the Frenchman.—Which books has the Englishman a mind to buy?—He has a mind to buy that which you have, that which your son has, and that which mine has.—Which gloves have you a mind to seek?—I have a mind to seek yours, mine, and our children's.

## 42.

Which looking-glasses have the enemies a desire to break?—They have a desire to break those which you have, those which I have, and those which our children and our friends have.—Has your father a desire to buy these or those cakes?—He has a mind



to buy these.—Am I right in picking up your notes?—You are right in picking them up.—Is the Italian right in seeking your pocket-book?—He is wrong in seeking it.—Have you a mind to buy another ship?—I have a mind to buy another.—Has our enemy a mind to buy one more ship?—He has a mind to buy several more, but he is afraid to buy some.—Have you two horses?—I have only one, but I have a wish to buy one more.

## EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

*Dix-huitième Leçon.*


---

<i>To make,</i>	}	<i>Faire</i> * 4.
<i>To do.</i>		
<i>To be willing,</i>	}	<i>Vouloir</i> * 3.
<i>To wish.</i>		

---

Will you ?	}	<i>Voulez-vous ?</i>
Are you willing ?		
Do you wish ?		
I will, I am willing, I wish.		<i>Je veux.</i>
Will he ? is he willing ? does he wish ?		<i>Veut-il ?</i>
He will, he is willing, he wishes.		<i>Il veut.</i>
We will, we are willing, we wish.		<i>Nous voulons.</i>
You will, you are willing, you wish.		<i>Vous voulez.</i>
They will, they are willing, they wish.		<i>Ils veulent.</i>

---

Do you wish to make my fire ?	<i>Voulez-vous faire mon feu ?</i>
I am willing to make it.	<i>Je veux le faire.</i>
I do not wish to make it.	<i>Je ne veux pas le faire.</i>
Does he wish to buy your horse ?	<i>Veut-il acheter votre cheval ?</i>
He wishes to buy it.	<i>Il veut l'acheter.</i>

---

To burn.	<i>Brûler</i> 1.
To warm.	<i>Chauffer</i> 1.
To tear.	<i>Déchirer</i> 1.
The broth.	<i>Le bouillon.</i>
My linen (meaning <i>my linen clothes</i> ).	<i>Mon linge</i> (is always used in the singular).

---

<i>To go.</i>	<i>Aller *.</i>
<i>With or at the house of,</i>	} <i>Chez.</i>
<i>To or to the house of.</i>	
<i>To be.</i>	<i>Être *.</i>
To be with the man, or at the man's house.	Être chez l'homme.
To go to the man, or to the man's house.	Aller chez l'homme.
To be with his (one's) friend, or at his (one's) friend's house.	Être chez son ami.
To go to my father, or to my father's house.	Aller chez mon père.

<i>At home.</i>	<i>A la maison.</i>
To be at home.	Être à la maison.
To go home.	Aller à la maison.

---

To be with me, or at my house.	Être	} chez moi.
To go to me, or to my house.	Aller	
To be with him, or at his house.	Être	} chez lui.
To go to him, or to his house.	Aller	
To be with us, or at our house.	Être	} chez nous.
To go to us, or to our house.	Aller	
To be with you, or at your house.	Être	} chez vous.
To go to you, or to your house.	Aller	
To be with them, or at their house.	Être	} chez eux.
To go to them, or to their house.	Aller	
To be with some one, or at some one's house.	Être chez quelqu'un.	
To go to some one, or to some one's house.	Aller chez quelqu'un.	
To be with no one, or at no one's house.	N'être chez personne.	
To go to no one, or to no one's house.	N'aller chez personne.	

<i>At whose house? With whom?</i>	} <i>Chez qui?</i>
<i>To whose house? To whom?</i>	
To whom (or to whose house) do you wish to go?	Chez qui voulez-vous aller?

I wish to go to no one (to no one's house).	Je ne veux aller chez personne.
At whose house (with whom) is your brother?	{ Chez qui est votre frère ? Chez qui votre frère est-il ?
He is at ours (with us).	{ Il est chez nous. Est-il à la maison ?
Is he at home ?	{ † Est-il chez lui ? Il n'est pas à la maison.
He is not at home.	{ † Il n'est pas chez lui.

Are you ?	Êtes-vous ?
Tired.	Fatigué.
Are you tired ?	Êtes-vous fatigué ?
I am tired.	Je suis fatigué.
I am not tired.	Je ne suis pas fatigué.
Is he ?	Est-il ?
He is.	Il est.
We are.	Nous sommes.
They are.	Ils sont.

To drink.	Boire * 4.
Where ?	Où ?

What do you wish to do ?	Que voulez-vous faire ?
What does your brother wish to do ?	Votre frère que veut-il faire ?

Is your father at home ?	Votre père est-il à la maison ?
What will the Germans buy ?	Les Allemands que veulent-ils acheter ?
They will buy something good.	Ils veulent acheter quelque chose de bon.
They will buy nothing.	† Ils ne veulent rien acheter.
Do they wish to buy a book ?	Veulent-ils acheter un livre ?
They wish to buy one.	Ils veulent en acheter un.
Do you wish to drink any thing ?	Voulez-vous boire quelque chose ?
I do not wish to drink any thing.	† Je ne veux rien boire.

## EXERCISES.

## 43.

Do you wish to work?—I am willing to work, but I am tired.—Do you wish to break my glasses?—I do not wish to break them.—Are you willing to look for my son?—I am willing to look for him.—What do you wish to pick up?—I wish to pick up that crown and that franc.—Do you wish to pick up this or that sou?—I wish to pick up both.—Does your neighbour wish to buy these or those combs?—He wishes to buy both these and those.—Does that man wish to cut your finger?—He does not wish to cut mine, but his own.—Does the painter wish to burn some paper?—He wishes to burn some.—What does the shoemaker wish to mend?—He wishes to mend our old shoes.—Does the tailor wish to mend any thing?—He wishes to mend some waistcoats.—Is our enemy willing to burn his ship?—He is not willing to burn his own, but ours.—Do you wish to do any thing?—I do not wish to do any thing.—What do you wish to do?—We wish to warm our tea and our father's coffee.—Do you wish to warm my brother's broth?—I am willing to warm it.—Is your servant willing to make my fire?—He is willing to make it, but he has no time.

## 44.

Do you wish to speak?—I do wish to speak.—Is your son willing to work?—He is not willing to work.—What does he wish to do?—He wishes to drink some wine.—Do you wish to buy any thing?—I wish to buy something.—What do you wish to buy?—I wish to buy some jewels.—Are you willing to mend my linen?—I am willing to mend it.—Who will mend our son's stockings?—We will mend them.—Does the Russian wish to buy this or that picture?—He will buy neither this nor that.—What does he wish to buy?—He wishes to buy some ships.—Which looking-glasses does the Englishman wish to buy?—He wishes to buy those which the French have, and those which the Italians have.—Does your father wish to look for his umbrella or for his stick?—He wishes to look for both.—Do you wish to



drink some wine?—I wish to drink some, but I have not any.—Does the sailor wish to drink some milk?—He does not wish to drink any, he is not thirsty.—What does the captain wish to drink?—He does not wish to drink any thing.—What does the hatter wish to make?—He wishes to make some hats.—Does the carpenter wish to make any thing?—He wishes to make a large ship.—Do you wish to buy a bird?—I wish to buy several.

## 45.

Does the Turk wish to buy more guns than knives?—He wishes to buy more of the latter than of the former.—How many brooms does your servant wish to buy?—He wishes to buy three.—Do you wish to buy many stockings?—We wish to buy only a few, but our children wish to buy a great many.—Will your children seek the gloves that we have?—They will not seek those that you have, but those which my father has.—Does any one wish to tear your coat?—No one wishes to tear it.—Who wishes to tear my books?—Your children wish to tear them.—With whom is our father?—He is with his friend.—To whom do you wish to go?—I wish to go to you.—Will you go to my house?—I will not go to yours, but to my brother's.—Does your father wish to go to his friend?—He does not wish to go to his friend, but to his neighbour.—At whose house is your son?—He is at our house.—Will you look for our hats, or for those of the Dutch?—I will look for neither yours, nor for those of the Dutch, but I will look for mine, and for those of my good friends.

## 46.

Am I right in warming your broth?—You are right in warming it.—Is my servant right in warming your linen?—He is wrong in warming it.—Is he afraid to tear your coat?—He is not afraid to tear it, but to burn it.—Do your children wish to go to our friends?—They do not wish to go to your friends, but to ours.—Are your children at home?—They are not at home (*chez eux*), but at their neighbours'.—Is the captain at home (*chez lui*)?—He is not at home, but at his brother's.—Is the foreigner at our brother's?—He is not at our brother's, but at our father's.—At whose house is the Englishman?—He is at yours.—Is the



American (*L'Américain*) at our house?—No, Sir, he is not at our house, but at his friend's.—With whom is the Italian?—He is with nobody; he is at home.—Do you wish to go home?—I do not wish to go home; I wish to go to the son of my neighbour.—Is your father at home?—No, Sir, he is not at home.—With whom is he?—He is with the good friends of our old neighbour.—Will you go to any one's house?—I will go to no one's house.

## 47.

Where is your son?—He is at home.—What will he do at home?—He will drink some good wine.—Is your brother at home?—He is not at home; he is at the foreigner's.—What do you wish to drink?—I wish to drink some milk.—What will the German do at home?—He will work, and drink some good wine.—What have you at home?—I have nothing at home.—Has the merchant a desire to buy as much sugar as tea?—He wishes to buy as much of the one as of the other.—Are you tired?—I am not tired.—Who is tired?—My brother is tired.—Has the Spaniard a mind to buy as many horses as asses?—He wishes to buy more of the latter than of the former.—Do you wish to drink any thing?—I do not wish to drink any thing.—How many chickens does the cook wish to buy?—He wishes to buy four.—Do the French wish to buy any thing?—They do not wish to buy any thing?—Does the Spaniard wish to buy any thing?—He wishes to buy something, but he has no money.—Do you wish to go to our brothers'?—I do not wish to go to their house, but to their children's.—Is the Scotchman at any body's house?—He is at nobody's.—Where is he?—He is at his own house (*chez lui*).

## NINETEENTH LESSON.

*Dix-neuvième Leçon.*


---

<i>Where? Whither? Where to?</i>	<i>Où?</i>
<i>To it, at it, in it, there or thither.</i>	Y (stands always before the verb).
To go thither.	Y aller *.
To be there.	Y être *.
It to it, it there or thither.	L'y (before the verb).

---

To take, to carry.	Porter 1.
To send.	Envoyer 1.
To take, to lead, to conduct.	Mener 1.

---

To take it there or thither. | L'y porter.

---

<i>Him</i> (object of the verb).	<i>Le</i> (stands always before the verb).
<i>Him there or thither.</i>	<i>L'y</i> (before the verb).
To send him thither.	L'y envoyer.
To take him thither.	L'y mener.

---

<i>Them there or thither.</i>	<i>Les y</i> (before the verb).
<i>Some of it there or thither.</i>	<i>Y en</i> (before the verb).
To carry them thither.	Les y porter.
To carry some thither.	Y en porter.

---

Will you send him to my father?	Voulez-vous l'envoyer chez mon père?
I will send him thither, or to him.	Je veux l'y envoyer.

*Obs.* The adverb *y* always stands before the verb, and when there is a pronoun like *le*, *it*, *him*, *les*, *them*, it stands immediately before the adverb *y*; but *en*, some of it, stands after it, as may be seen from the above.

The physician.  
To come.

Le médecin.  
Venir \* 2.

When ?  
To-morrow.  
To-day.

Quand ?  
Demain.  
Aujourd'hui.

Some where or whither, any  
where or whither.

Quelque part.

No where, not any where.

Ne — nulle part.

Do you wish to go any whither ?

Voulez-vous aller quelque part ?

I wish to go some whither.

Je veux aller quelque part.

I do not wish to go any whither.

Je ne veux aller nulle part.

To write.

Écrire \* 4.

At what o'clock ?

'A quelle heure <sup>1</sup> ?

At one o'clock.

'A une heure.

At two o'clock.

'A deux heures.

Half.

Demi; *feminine*, demie.

The quarter.

Le quart.

At half past one.

'A une heure et demie <sup>2</sup>.

At a quarter past one.

'A une heure et quart.

At a quarter past two.

'A deux heures et quart.

At a quarter to one.

'A une heure moins un quart.

At twelve o'clock.

'A midi.

At twelve o'clock at night (mid-  
night).

'A minuit.

Less.

Moins (comparative of *peu*, little).

<sup>1</sup> *Heure*, hour, is a feminine noun. This class of nouns will be spoken of hereafter. For the present, the learner has only to write them as he sees them written in the lessons.

<sup>2</sup> The adjective *demie* is here in the feminine gender, agreeing with the feminine noun *heure*. But when this adjective precedes the noun, it does not agree with it in gender and number, as: *une demi-heure*, half an hour.

## EXERCISES.

48.

Do you wish to go home?—I wish to go thither.—Does your son wish to go to my house?—He wishes to go there.—Is your brother at home?—He is there.—Whither do you wish to go?—I wish to go home.—Do your children wish to go to my house?—They do not wish to go there.—To whom will you take (*porter*) this note?—I will take it to my neighbour's.—Will your servant take my note to your father?—He will take it there.—Will your brother carry my guns to the Russian?—He will carry them thither.—To whom do our enemies wish to carry our pistols?—They wish to carry them to the Turks.—Whither will the shoemaker carry my shoes?—He will carry them to your house.—Will he carry them home?—He will not carry them thither.—Will you come to me?—I will not come (*aller*) there.—Whither do you wish to go?—I wish to go to the good English.—Will the good Italians go to our house?—They will not go thither.—Whither do they wish to go?—They will go no whither.

49.

Will you take your son to my house?—I will not take him to your house, but to the captain's.—When will you take him to the captain's?—I will take him there to-morrow.—Do you wish to take my children to the physician?—I will take them thither.—When will you take them thither?—I will take them thither to-day.—At what o'clock will you take them thither?—At half-past two.—When will you send your servant to the physician?—I will send him there to-day.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter past ten.—Will you go any whither?—I will go some whither.—Whither will you go?—I will go to the Scotchman.—Will the Irishman come to you?—He will come to me.—Will your son go to any one?—He will go to some one.—To whom does he wish to go?—He wishes to go to his friends.—Will the Spaniards go any whither?—They will go no whither.—Will our friend go to any one?—He will go to no one.

## 50.

When will you take your youth to the painter?—I will take him thither to-day.—Whither will he carry these birds?—He will carry them no whither.—Will you take the physician to this man?—I will take him there.—When will the physician go to your brother?—He will go there to-day.—Will you send a servant to me?—I will send one there.—Will you send a child to the painter?—I will not send one thither.—With whom is the captain?—He is with nobody.—Has your brother time to come to my house?—He has no time to come (*aller*) there.—Will the Frenchman write one more note?—He will write one more.—Has your friend a mind to write as many notes as I?—He has a mind to write quite as many.—To whose house does he wish to send them?—He will send them to his friends'.—Who wishes to write little notes?—The young man wishes to write some.—Do you wish to carry many books to my father's?—I will only carry a few thither.

## 51.

Will you send one more trunk to our friend?—I will send several more there.—How many more hats does the hatter wish to send?—He wishes to send six more.—Will the tailor send as many shoes as the shoemaker?—He will send fewer.—Has your son the courage to go to the captain?—He has the courage to go there, but he has no time.—Do you wish to buy as many dogs as horses?—I will buy more of the latter than of the former.—At what o'clock do you wish to send your servant to the Dutchman's?—I will send him thither at a quarter to six.—At what o'clock is your father at home?—He is at home at twelve o'clock.—At what o'clock does your friend wish to write his notes?—He will write them at midnight.—Are you afraid to go to the captain?—I am not afraid, but ashamed to go there.



## TWENTIETH LESSON.

### *Vingtième Leçon.*

<i>To, meaning in order to.</i>	<i>Pour.</i>
To see.	Voir * 3.
Have you any money to buy bread?	Avez-vous de l'argent <i>pour</i> acheter du pain ?
I have some to buy some.	J'en ai <i>pour</i> en acheter.
Will you go to your brother in order to see him ?	Voulez-vous aller chez votre frère <i>pour</i> le voir ?
I have no time to go there to see him.	Je n'ai pas le temps d'y aller <i>pour</i> le voir.
Has your brother a knife to cut his bread ?	Votre frère a-t-il un couteau <i>pour</i> couper son pain ?
He has none to cut it.	Il n'en a pas <i>pour</i> le couper.

To sweep.	Balayer 1.
To kill.	Tuer 1.
To salt.	Saler 1.

### *To be able (can). | Pouvoir \* 3.*

Can you ? or are you able ?	Pouvez-vous ?
I can, or I am able.	Je peux (or je puis) <sup>1</sup> .
I cannot, I am not able.	Je ne peux pas (or je ne puis).
Can he, or is he able ?	Peut-il ?
He can, he is able.	Il peut.
He cannot, he is unable.	Il ne peut pas.
We can, we are able.	Nous pouvons.
You can, you are able.	Vous pouvez.
They can, they are able.	Ils peuvent.

*Je puis* is more in use than *je peux*, which should not be used in an interrogative sentence. Say, therefore, *puis-je ?* and not *peux-je ?* Of which hereafter. (See Lesson XXVIII.)



<i>Me.</i>	<i>Me</i> (direct object or accusative).
<i>Him.</i>	<i>Le</i> (direct object or accusative).
To see me.	<i>Me</i> voir.
To see him.	<i>Le</i> voir.
To see the man.	Voir l'homme.
To kill him.	<i>Le</i> tuer.

<i>To.</i>		<i>'A.</i>	
<i>To the or at the.</i>		<i>Au</i> , plur. <i>aux</i> (see Less. IX.).	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
To the friend.	To the friends.	'A l'ami.	Aux amis.
To the man.	To the men.	'A l'homme.	Aux hommes.
To the captain.	To the captains.	Au capitaine.	Aux capitaines.
To the book.	To the books.	Au livre.	Aux livres.

<i>To him, to her.</i>	<i>Lui</i> (indirect object or dative).
<i>To me.</i>	<i>Me.</i>

To speak to me.	<i>Me</i> parler.
To speak to him (to her).	<i>Lui</i> parler.
To write to him (to her).	<i>Lui</i> écrire.
To write to me.	M'écrire.
To speak to the man.	Parler à l'homme.
To speak to the captain.	Parler au capitaine.
To write to the captain.	Écrire au capitaine.

Can you write to me?	Pouvez-vous m'écrire?
I can write to you.	Je peux vous écrire.
Can the man speak to you?	L'homme peut-il vous parler?
He can speak to me.	Il peut me parler.
Will you write to your brother?	Voulez-vous écrire à votre frère?
I will write to him.	Je veux <i>lui</i> écrire.

The basket.	<i>Le</i> panier.
The carpet.	<i>Le</i> tapis.
The floor.	<i>Le</i> plancher.
The cat.	<i>Le</i> chat.

Will you send the book to the man ?	Voulez-vous envoyer <i>le livre</i> à <i>l'homme</i> ?
I will send it to him.	Je veux <i>le lui</i> envoyer.
When will you send it to him ?	Quand voulez-vous <i>le lui</i> envoyer ?
I will send it to him to-morrow.	Je veux <i>le lui</i> envoyer demain.

		SINGULAR.	
		<i>Indirect object or Dative.</i>	<i>Direct object or Accusative.</i>
1st person.	<i>To me, Me.</i>	<i>Me or à moi.</i>	<i>Me or moi.</i>
3rd „	<i>To him, Him.</i>	<i>Lui — à lui.</i>	<i>Le — lui.</i>
		PLURAL.	
1st „	<i>To us, Us.</i>	<i>Nous or à nous.</i>	<i>Nous.</i>
2nd „	<i>To you, You.</i>	<i>Vous — à vous.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>
3rd „	<i>To them, Them.</i>	<i>Leur — à eux.</i>	<i>Les or eux.</i>

*Obs.* *Me, lui*, for the indirect object, and *me, le*, for the direct object, always precede the verb ; whilst *à moi, à lui*, for the indirect object, and *moi, lui*, for the direct object, always follow it. The same is the case with *nous* and *à nous*, *vous* and *à vous*, *leur* and *à eux*, *les* and *eux*. **Ex.**

Does he wish to speak to you ?	Veut-il vous parler ?
He does not wish to speak to me, but to you.	Il ne veut pas parler à moi, mais à vous.
Do you wish to write to him ?	Voulez-vous lui écrire ?
I do not wish to write to him, but to his brother.	Je ne veux pas écrire à lui, mais à son frère.

The following is the order in which the personal pronouns must be placed in the sentence :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singulier.</i>	<i>Pluriel.</i>
It to me,	them to me.	† Me le,	† me les.
It to him,	them to him.	Le lui,	les lui.
It to us,	them to us.	† Nous le,	† nous les.
It to you,	them to you.	† Vous le,	† vous les.
It to them,	them to them.	Le leur,	les leur.

When will you send me the basket?

I will send it you to-day.

Quand voulez-vous m'envoyer le panier?

Je veux vous l'envoyer aujourd'hui.

In the following manner the relative pronoun *en*, some of it, is placed with regard to the personal pronoun.

Some to me.

Some to him (to her).

Some to us.

Some to you.

Some to them.

† M'en.

† Lui en.

† Nous en.

† Vous en.

† Leur en.

To give.

To lend.

Donner 1.

Prêter 1.

Are you willing to give me some bread?

I am willing to give you some.

Will you lend some money to my brother?

I will lend some to him.

Voulez-vous me donner du pain?

Je veux vous en donner.

Voulez-vous prêter de l'argent à mon frère?

Je veux lui en prêter.

# TABLE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	
			Masculine.	Feminine.
Subject, or Nominative . . . .	<i>je, moi,</i>	<i>tu, toi,</i>	<i>il,</i>	<i>elle,</i>
Object indirect in the Genitive.	<i>de moi,</i>	<i>de toi,</i>	<i>de lui,</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>
Object indirect in the Dative .	<i>me, à moi,</i>	<i>te, à toi,</i>	<i>lui, à lui,</i>	<i>lui, à elle,</i>
Object direct, or Accusative. .	<i>me, moi,</i>	<i>te, toi,</i>	<i>le, lui,</i>	<i>la, elle,</i>
			him.	her.
PLURAL.				
Subject, or Nominative . . . .	<i>nous, we.</i>	<i>vous, you.</i>	<i>ils, eux,</i>	<i>elles, they.</i>
Object indirect in the Genitive.	<i>de nous, of us.</i>	<i>de vous, of you.</i>	<i>d'eux, of them.</i>	<i>d'elles, of them.</i>
Object indirect in the Dative .	<i>nous, à nous, to us.</i>	<i>vous, à vous, to you.</i>	<i>leur, à eux, to them.</i>	<i>leur, à elles, to them.</i>
Object direct, or Accusative. .	<i>nous, us.</i>	<i>vous, you.</i>	<i>les, eux, them.</i>	<i>les elles, them.</i>

## EXERCISES.

## 52.

Has the carpenter money enough to buy a hammer?—He has enough of it to buy one.—Has the captain money enough to buy a ship?—He has not enough to buy one.—Has the peasant a desire to buy some bread?—He has a desire to buy some, but he has not money enough to buy some.—Has your son paper to write a note?—He has not any to write one.—Have you time to see my brother?—I have no time to see him.—Does your father wish to see me?—He does not wish to see you.—Has your servant a broom to sweep the floor?—He has one to sweep it.—Is he willing to sweep it?—He is willing to sweep it.—Has the sailor money to buy some chocolate?—He has none to buy any.—Has your cook money to buy some beef?—He has some to buy some.—Has he money to buy some chickens?—He has some to buy some.—Have you salt enough to salt my beef?—I have enough to salt it.—Will your friend come to my house in order to see me?—He will neither come (*aller*) to your house nor see you.—Has your neighbour a desire to kill his horse?—He has no desire to kill it.—Will you kill your friends?—I will kill only my enemies.

## 53.

Can you cut me some bread?—I can cut you some.—Have you a knife to cut me some?—I have one.—Can you mend my gloves?—I can mend them, but I have no wish to do it.—Can the tailor make me a coat?—He can make you one.—Will you speak to the physician?—I will speak to him.—Does your son wish to see me in order to speak to me?—He wishes to see you in order to give you a crown.—Does he wish to kill me?—He does not wish to kill you; he only wishes to see you.—Does the son of our old friend wish to kill an ox?—He wishes to kill two.—Who has a mind to kill our cat?—Our neighbour's boy has a mind to kill it.—How much money can you send me?—I can send you twenty francs.—Will you send me my carpet?—I will send it to you.—Will you send the shoemaker any thing (*quelque chose au cordonnier*)?—I will send him my shoes.—Will you send



him your coats?—No, I will send them to my tailor.—Can the tailor send me my coat?—He cannot send it you.—Are your children able to write to me?—They are able to write to you.—Will you lend me your basket?—I will lend it you.

## 54.

Have you a glass to drink your wine?—I have one, but I have no wine; I have only tea.—Will you give me money to buy some?—I will give you some, but I have only a little.—Will you give me that which (*ce que*) you have?—I will give it you.—Can you drink as much wine as milk?—I can drink as much of the one as of the other.—Has our neighbour any wood to make a fire (*du feu*)?—He has some to make one (*pour en faire*), but he has no money to buy bread and butter.—Are you willing to lend him some?—I am willing to lend him some.—Do you wish to speak to the German?—I wish to speak to him.—Where is he?—He is with the son of the American (*de l'Américain*).—Does the German wish to speak to me?—He wishes to speak to you.—Does he wish to speak to my brother or to yours?—He wishes to speak to both.—Can the children of our neighbour work?—They can work, but they will not.

## 55.

Do you wish to speak to the children of the Dutchman?—I wish to speak to them.—What will you give them?—I will give them good cakes.—Will you lend them any thing?—I am willing to lend them something, but I cannot lend them any thing; I have nothing.—Has the cook some more salt to salt the beef?—He has a little more.—Has he some more rice?—He has a great deal more.—Will he give me some?—He will give you some.—Will he give some to my little boys?—He will give them some.—Will he kill this or that chicken?—He will neither kill this nor that.—Which ox will he kill?—He will kill that of the good peasant.—Will he kill this or that ox?—He will kill both.—Who will send us biscuits?—The baker will send you some.—Have you any thing to (*à*) do?—I have nothing to do.



## 56.

What has your son to (*à*) do?—He has to write to his good friends and to the captains.—To whom do you wish to speak?—I wish to speak to the Italians and to the French.—Do you wish to give them some money?—I wish to give them some.—Do you wish to give this man some bread?—I wish to give him some.—Will you give him a coat?—I will give him one.—Will your friends give me some coffee?—They will give you some.—Will you lend me your books?—I will lend them to you.—Will you lend your neighbours your mattress?—I will not lend it to them.—Will you lend them your looking-glass?—I will lend it to them.—To whom (*à qui*) will you lend your umbrellas?—I will lend them to my friends.—To whom (*à qui*) does your friend wish to lend his linen?—He will lend it to nobody.

## TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.

### *Vingt et unième Leçon.*

---

<i>To whom ?</i>	<i>A qui ?</i> (a question followed by the object indirect in the dative.)
<i>Whom ?</i>	For persons: <i>qui ?</i>
<i>What ?</i>	For things: <i>que ? quoi ?</i>

---

#### THE FOUR CASES OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS :

*Qui ? Who ?—Que ? Quoi ? What ?*

	<i>For persons.</i>	<i>For things.</i>
Subject or Nominative. } <i>Who ? What ?</i>	<i>Qui ?</i>	<i>que ? quoi ?</i>
Object indirect in the Genitive. } <i>Of whom (also, from whom) ? Of what (also, from what) ?</i>	<i>De qui ?</i>	<i>de quoi ?</i>
Object indirect in the Dative. } <i>To whom ? Whose ? To what ?</i>	<i>'A qui ?</i>	<i>à quoi ?</i>
Object direct or Accusative. } <i>Whom ? What ?</i>	<i>Qui ?</i>	<i>que ? quoi ?</i>

*Qui ? who ?* has no plural and always refers to persons, without distinction of sex, as *who* in English.

*Que ?* and *quoi ? what ?* have no plural, and always relate to things.

*Obs. A.* Always use *que*, for things, before a verb, and never *quoi* as the subject and object direct or accusative.

To answer.  
To answer the man.  
To answer the men.

Répondre 4.  
Répondre à l'homme.  
Répondre aux hommes.

*Obs. B.* There are many verbs in English after which the preposition *to* may or may not be expressed ; but this is not the case in French, where *to*, *à*, must be expressed.

To whom do you wish to answer ?  
I wish to answer to my brother.  
To answer him.  
To answer them.

'A qui voulez-vous répondre ?  
Je veux répondre à mon frère.  
Lui répondre.  
Leur répondre.

To answer the note.  
To answer it.  
To it, to them.  
To answer the notes.  
To answer them.

Répondre au billet.  
Y répondre.  
Y.  
Répondre aux billets.  
Y répondre.  
Voulez-vous répondre à mon billet ?  
Je veux y répondre.

Will you answer my note ?

I will answer it.

The play, the theatre.  
The ball.

Le théâtre.  
Le bal.

To or at the play.  
To or at the ball.  
To or at the garden.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Au théâtre,	aux théâtres.
Au bal,	aux bals.
Au jardin,	aux jardins.

The storehouse,  
The magazine,  
The warehouse.  
The counting-house.  
The market.

} Le magasin.  
Le comptoir.  
Le marché.

*There, thither.*  
*To go there, thither.*  
*To be there.*

Y.  
Y aller.  
Y être.

Do you wish to go to the play ?

Voulez-vous aller au théâtre ?

I wish to go there.  
Is your brother at the play?  
He is there.  
He is not there.  
Where is he?

Je veux y aller.  
Votre frère est-il au théâtre?  
Il y est.  
Il n'y est pas.  
Où est-il?

*In.*

Is your father in his garden?  
He is there.  
Where is the merchant?  
He is in his storehouse.

*Dans.*

Votre père est-il dans son jardin?  
Il y est.  
Où est le marchand?  
Où le marchand est-il?  
Il est dans son magasin.

What have you to do?  
I have nothing to do.  
What has the man to drink?  
He has nothing to drink.  
Have you any thing to do?  
I have to answer a note.  
I have to speak to your brother.

Qu'avez-vous à faire?  
Je n'ai rien à faire.  
L'homme qu'a-t-il à boire.  
Il n'a rien à boire?  
Avez-vous quelque chose à faire?  
J'ai à répondre à un billet.  
J'ai à parler à votre frère.

## EXERCISES.

## 57.

Will you write to me?—I will write to you.—Will you write to the Italian?—I will write to him.—Will your brother write to the English?—He will write to them, but they have no mind to answer him.—Will you answer your friend?—I will answer him.—But whom will you answer?—I will answer my good father.—Will you not answer your good friends?—I will answer them.—Who will write to you?—The Russian wishes to write to me.—Will you answer him?—I will not answer him.—Who will write to our friends?—The children of our neighbour will write to them.—Will they answer them?—They will answer them.—To whom do you wish to write?—I wish to write to the Russian.—Will he answer you?—He wishes to answer me, but he cannot.—Can the Spaniards answer us?—They cannot answer us, but we can answer them.—To whom do you wish to send this note?—I will send it to the joiner.

58.

What have you to do?—I have to write.—What have you to write?—I have to write a note.—To whom?—To the carpenter.—What has your father to drink?—He has to drink some good wine.—Has your servant any thing to drink?—He has to drink some tea.—What has the shoemaker to do?—He has to mend my shoes.—What have you to mend?—I have to mend my thread stockings.—To whom have you to speak?—I have to speak to the captain.—When will you speak to him?—To-day.—Where will you speak to him?—At his house.—To whom has your brother to speak?—He has to speak to your son.—What has the Englishman to do?—He has to answer a note.—Which note has he to answer?—He has to answer that of the good German.—Have I to answer the note of the Frenchman?—You have to answer it.—Which note have you to answer?—I have to answer that of my good friend.—Has your father to answer a note?—He has to answer one (*à un billet*).—Who has to answer notes?—Our children have to answer a few.—Will you answer the notes of the merchants?—I will answer them.—Will your brother answer this or that note?—He will answer neither this nor that.—Will any one answer my note?—No one will answer it.

59.

Which notes will your father answer?—He will answer only those of his good friends.—Will he answer my note?—He will answer it.—Have you to answer any one?—I have to answer no one.—Who will answer my notes?—Your friends will answer them.—Have you a mind to go to the ball?—I have a mind to go there.—When will you go there?—To-day.—At what o'clock?—At half-past ten.—When will you take your boy to the play?—I will take him there to-morrow.—At what o'clock will you take him there?—At a quarter to six.—Where is your son?—He is at the play.—Is your friend at the ball?—He is there.—Where is the merchant?—He is at his counting-house.—Where do you wish to take me to?—I wish to take you to my warehouse.—Where does your cook wish to go to?—He wishes to go to the

market.—Is your brother at the market?—He is not there.—Where is he?—He is in his magazine.

## 60.

Where is the Dutchman?—He is in his garret.—Will you come to me in order to go to the play?—I will come (*aller*) to you, but I have no mind to go to the play.—Where is the Irishman?—He is at the market.—To which theatre do you wish to go?—I wish to go to that of the French.—Will you go to my garden or to that of the Scotchman?—I will go neither to yours nor to that of the Scotchman; I wish to go to that of the Italian.—Does the physician wish to go to our storehouses or to those of the Dutch?—He will go neither to yours nor to those of the Dutch, but to those of the French.—What do you wish to buy at the market?—I wish to buy a basket and some carpets.—Where will you take them to?—I will take them home.

## 61.

How many carpets do you wish to buy?—I wish to buy two.—To whom do you wish to give them?—I will give them to my servant.—Has he a mind to sweep the floor?—He has a mind to do it, but he has no time.—Have the English many storehouses?—They have many.—Have the French as many dogs as cats?—They have more of the latter than of the former.—Have you many guns in your warehouses?—We have many there, but we have but little corn.—Do you wish to see our guns?—I will go into your warehouses in order to see them.—Do you wish to buy any thing?—I do wish to buy something.—What do you wish to buy?—I wish to buy a pocket-book, a looking-glass, and a pistol.—Where will you buy your trunk?—I will buy it at the market.—Have you as much wine as tea in your storehouses?—We have as much of the one as of the other.—Who wishes to tear my linen?—No one wishes to tear it.

## 62.

Will the English give us some bread?—They will give you some.—Will they give us as much butter as bread?—They will give you more of the latter than of the former.—Will you give



this man a franc?—I will give him several.—How many francs will you give him?—I will give him five.—What will the French lend us?—They will lend us many books.—Have you time to write to the merchant?—I wish to write to him, but I have no time to-day.—When will you answer the German?—I will answer him to-morrow.—At what o'clock?—At eight.—Where does the Spaniard wish to go to?—He wishes to go no whither.—Does your servant wish to warm my broth?—He wishes to warm it.—Is he willing to make my fire?—He is willing to make it.—Where does the baker wish to go to?—He wishes to go to the wood.—Where is the youth?—He is at the play.—Who is at the captain's ball?—Our children and our friends are there.

## TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.

### *Vingt-deuxième Leçon.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>To or at the corner.</i>	Au coin,	aux coins.
<i>To or at the hole.</i>	Au trou,	aux trous (See n. 1. Less. IX.)
<i>In the hole, in the holes.</i>	Dans le trou,	dans les trous.
<i>To or at the bottom.</i>	Au fond.	
<i>To or at the bottom of the bag.</i>	Au fond du sac.	
<i>At the corner of the fire.</i>	Au coin du feu.	
<i>To or at the end.</i>	Au bout.	
<i>To the end of the road.</i>	Au bout du chemin.	
<i>To the end of the roads.</i>	Au bout des chemins.	
<i>The road.</i>	Le chemin.	
<i>To send for.</i>	<i>Envoyer chercher.</i>	
<i>To go for, to fetch.</i>	<i>Aller chercher.</i>	
Will you send for some wine?	Voulez-vous envoyer chercher du vin?	
I will send for some.	Je veux en envoyer chercher.	
Will your boy go for some bread?	Votre garçon veut-il aller chercher du pain?	
He will not go for any.	Il ne veut pas en aller chercher.	
I will send for the physician.	Je veux envoyer chercher le médecin.	
I will send for him.	Je veux l'envoyer chercher.	
He will send for my brothers.	Il veut envoyer chercher mes frères.	

He will send for them.	Il veut les envoyer chercher.
Will you send for glasses ?	Voulez-vous envoyer chercher des verres ?
I will send for some.	Je veux en envoyer chercher.

What have you to do ?	Qu'avez-vous à faire ?
I have to go to the market.	J'ai à aller au marché.
What have you to drink ?	Qu'avez-vous à boire ?
We have to drink some good wine.	Nous avons à boire de bon vin.
You have to mend your stockings.	Vous avez à raccommoder vos bas.

<i>They have.</i>	<i>Ils ont.</i>
What <i>have</i> the men to do ?	Les hommes <i>qu'ont-ils</i> à faire ?
They have to go to the store-house.	<i>Ils ont</i> à aller au magasin.

This evening (to-night).	Ce soir.
In the evening.	† Le soir.
This morning.	Ce matin.
In the morning.	† Le matin.

Now, at present.	'A présent.
------------------	-------------

<i>Thou.</i>	<i>Tu</i> <sup>1</sup> .
Thou hast—thou art.	Tu as—Tu es.
Art thou fatigued ?	Es-tu fatigué ?
I am not fatigued.	Je ne suis pas fatigué.
Are the men tired ?	Les hommes sont-ils fatigués ?

<sup>1</sup> In addressing one another the French use the second person plural as in English. The second person singular, however, is employed : 1. In sublime or serious style, and in poetry ; 2. It is a mark of intimacy among friends, and is used by parents and children, brothers and sisters, husbands and wives, towards one another : in general it implies familiarity founded on affection and fondness, or hatred and contempt.

*Obs.* The adjective in French, when it is preceded by a noun or pronoun, must agree with it in number ; that is, if the noun or pronoun is in the plural, the adjective must take an *s*.

They are not tired. | Ils ne sont pas fatigués.

Thou wilt (wishest)—thou art  
able (canst).

Art thou willing to make my fire ?

I am willing to make it, but I  
cannot.

Tu veux—tu peux.

Veux-tu faire mon feu ?

Jé veux le faire, mais je ne peux  
pas.

Art thou afraid ?

I am not afraid, I am cold.

Art thou hungry ?

† As-tu peur ?

† Je n'ai pas peur ; j'ai froid.

† As-tu faim ?

To sell.

To tell, to say.

To tell some one, to say to some  
one.

The word.

Will you tell the servant to make  
the fire ?

I will tell him to make it.

Vendre 4.

Dire \* 4. (takes the preposition *de*  
before the verb).

Dire à quelqu'un.

Le mot.

Voulez-vous dire au domestique  
*de* faire le feu ?

Je veux lui dire *de* le faire.

Thy.

Thine.

Thy book—thy books.

*Sing.* Ton. *Plur.* tes.

— Le tien, — les tiens.

— Ton livre—tes livres.

## EXERCISES.

### 63.

Will you send for some sugar ?—I will send for some.—Son (*mon fils*), wilt thou go for some cakes ?—Yes, father (*mon père*), I will go for some.—Whither wilt thou go ?—I will go into the garden.—Who is in the garden ?—The children of our friends are

there.—Will you send for the physician?—I will send for him.—Who will go for my brother?—My servant will go for him.—Where is he?—He is in his counting-house.—Will you give me my broth?—I will give it you.—Where is it?—It is at the corner of the fire.—Will you give me some money to (*pour*) fetch some milk?—I will give you some to fetch some.—Where is your money?—It is in my counting-house: will you go for it?—I will go for it.—Will you buy my horse?—I cannot buy it: I have no money.—Where is your cat?—It is in the hole.—In which hole is it?—In the hole of the garret.—Where is this man's dog?—It is in a corner of the ship.—Where has the peasant his corn?—He has it in his bag.—Has he a cat?—He has one.—Where is it?—It is at the bottom of the bag.—Is your cat in this bag?—It is in it.

64.

Have you any thing to do?—I have something to do.—What have you to do?—I have to mend my stockings, and to go to the end of the road.—Who is at the end of the road?—My father is there.—Has your cook any thing to drink?—He has to drink some wine and some good broth.—Can you give me as much butter as bread?—I can give you more of the latter than of the former.—Can our friend drink as much wine as coffee?—He cannot drink so much of the latter as of the former.—Have you to speak to any one?—I have to speak to several men.—To how many men have you to speak?—I have to speak to four.—When have you to speak to them?—This evening.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter to nine.—When can you go to the market?—I can go thither in the morning.—At what o'clock?—At half-past seven.—When will you go to the Frenchman?—I will go to him to-night.—Will you go to the physician in the morning or in the evening?—I will go to him in the morning.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter past ten.

65.

Have you to write as many notes as the Englishman?—I have to write less of them than he.—Will you speak to the German?—I will speak to him.—When will you speak to him?—At present.

Where is he ?—He is at the other end of the wood.—Will you go to the market ?—I will go thither to (*pour*) buy some linen.—Do your neighbours not wish to go to the market ?—They cannot go thither ; they are fatigued.—Hast thou the courage to go to the wood in the evening ?—I have the courage to go thither, but not in the evening.—Are your children able to answer my notes ?—They are able to answer them.—What do you wish to say to the servant ?—I wish to tell him to make the fire and to sweep the warehouse.—Will you tell your brother to sell me his horse ?—I will tell him to sell it you.—What do you wish to tell me ?—I wish to tell you a word.—Whom do you wish to see ?—I wish to see the Scotchman.—Have you any thing to tell him ?—I have to tell him a few words.—Which books does my brother wish to sell ?—He wishes to sell thine and his own.



## TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.

### *Vingt-troisième Leçon.*

To go out.

To remain, to stay.

When do you wish to go out?

I wish to go out now.

To remain (to stay) at home.

Sortir 2 \*.

Rester 1.

Quand voulez-vous sortir ?

Je veux sortir à présent.

Rester à la maison <sup>1</sup>.

*Here.*

To remain here.

*There.*

Will you stay here ?

I will stay here.

Will your friend remain there ?

He will not stay there.

Will you go to your brother ?

I will go *to him*.

*Ici, y.*

Rester ici.

*Là, y.*

Voulez-vous rester ici ?

Je veux *y* rester.

Votre ami veut-il rester là ?

Il ne veut pas *y* rester.

Voulez-vous aller chez votre frère ?

Je veux *y* aller.

The pleasure.

The favour.

To give pleasure.

To do a favour.

} Le plaisir.

Faire plaisir.

Faire un plaisir.

Are you going ?

I am going.

I am not going.

Thou art going.

Allez-vous ?

Je vais.

Je ne vais pas.

Tu vas.

<sup>1</sup> *La maison*, the house, is a feminine noun, the article of such nouns being for the singular *la*. This class of nouns will be spoken of hereafter. (See note 1, Less. XIX.)

Is he going?	Va-t-il?
He goes, or is going.	Il va.
He is not going.	Il ne va pas.
Are we going?	Allons-nous?
We go, or are going.	Nous allons.

What are you going to do?	Qu'allez-vous faire?
I am going to read.	Je vais lire.
To read.	Lire 4 *.

Are you going to your brother?	Allez-vous chez votre frère?
I am going there.	J'y vais.
Where is he going to?	Où va-t-il?
He is going to his father.	Il va chez son père.

<i>All, every.</i>	Sing. <i>Tout.</i> Plur. <i>Tous.</i>
Every day.	Tous les jours.
Every morning.	Tous les matins.
Every evening.	Tous les soirs.

It is.	Il est.
Late.	Tard.
What o'clock is it?	Quelle <sup>2</sup> heure est-il?
It is three o'clock.	Il est trois heures.
It is twelve o'clock.	Il est midi.
It is a quarter past twelve.	Il est midi et quart ( <i>or</i> et un quart).
It wants a quarter to six.	Il est six heures moins un quart.
It is half-past one.	Il est une heure et demie. (See Note 2, Less. XIX.)

<i>To be acquainted with (to know).</i>	<i>Connaître</i> 4 *.
To be acquainted with (to know) a man.	Connaître un homme.

<sup>2</sup> The interrogative pronoun *quelle* is here in the feminine gender, agreeing with the feminine noun *heure*, hour. (See Note 2, Lesson XIX.)

<i>Need.</i>		<i>Besoin</i> (is always followed by the preposition <i>de</i> ).
<i>To want.</i>	}	<i>Avoir besoin de.</i>
<i>To be in want of.</i>		
I want it.	}	J'en ai besoin.
I am in want of it.		
Are you in want of this knife?		Avez-vous besoin de ce couteau?
I am not in want of it.		Je n'en ai pas besoin.
Are you in want of these knives?		Avez-vous besoin de ces couteaux?
I am in want of them.		J'en ai besoin.
I am not in want of them.		Je n'en ai pas besoin.
I am not in want of any thing.		Je n'ai besoin de rien.
Is he in want of money?		A-t-il besoin d'argent?
He is not in want of any.		Il n'en a pas besoin.

<i>Of what?</i>		<i>De quoi?</i>
What are you in want of?	}	<i>De quoi avez-vous besoin?</i>
What do you want?		

OBJECT INDIRECT IN THE GENITIVE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(See Lesson XX.)

Of me,	of thee,	of him.		De moi,	de toi,	de lui ( <i>en</i> ).
Of us,	of you,	of them.		De nous,	de vous,	d'eux ( <i>en</i> ).

Is your father in want of <i>me</i> ?		Votre père a-t-il besoin <i>de moi</i> ?
He is in want of <i>you</i> .		Il a besoin <i>de vous</i> .
Are you in want of these books?		Avez-vous besoin <i>de ces livres</i> ?
I am in want of them.		J' <i>en</i> ai besoin.
Is he in want of my brothers?		A-t-il besoin de mes frères?
He is in want of them.	}	Il a besoin d'eux.
		Il <i>en</i> a besoin <sup>3</sup> .

<sup>3</sup> The former of these two expressions is more polite with respect to persons, the latter being more commonly used for things.

## EXERCISES.

66.

Will you do me a favour?—Yes, Sir, what one (*lequel*)?—Will you tell my servant to make the fire?—I will tell him to make it.—Will you tell him to sweep the warehouses?—I will tell him to sweep them.—What will you tell your father?—I will tell him to sell you his horse.—Will you tell your son to go to my father?—I will tell him to go to him (*y*).—Have you any thing to tell me?—I have nothing to tell you.—Have you any thing to say to my father?—I have a word to say to him.—Do these men wish to sell their carpets?—They do not wish to sell them.—John! (*Jean*) art thou here (*là*)?—Yes, Sir, I am here (*j'y suis*).—What art thou going to do?—I am going to your hatter to (*pour*) tell him to mend your hat.—Wilt thou go to the tailor to tell him to mend my coats?—I will go to him (*y*).—Are you willing to go to the market?—I am willing to go thither.—What has your merchant to sell?—He has to sell some beautiful leather gloves, combs, good cloth, and fine wooden baskets.—Has he any iron guns to sell?—He has some to sell.—Does he wish to sell me his horses?—He wishes to sell them to you.—Have you any thing to sell?—I have nothing to sell.

67.

Is it late?—It is not late.—What o'clock is it?—It is a quarter past twelve.—At what o'clock does the captain wish to go out?—He wishes to go out at a quarter to eight.—What are you going to do?—I am going to read.—What have you to read?—I have to read a good book.—Will you lend it to me?—I will lend it you.—When will you lend it me?—I will lend it you to-morrow.—Have you a mind to go out?—I have no mind to go out.—Are you willing to stay here, my dear (*cher*) friend?—I cannot remain here.—Whither have you to go?—I have to go to the counting-house.—When will you go to the ball?—To-night.—At what o'clock?—At midnight.—Do you go to the Scotchman in the evening or in the morning?—I go to him (*y*)

(both) in the evening and in the morning.—Where are you going to now?—I am going to the theatre.—Where is your son going to?—He is going no whither; he is going to stay at home to (*pour*) write his notes.—Where is your brother?—He is at his warehouse.—Does he not wish to go out?—No, Sir, he does not wish to go out.—What is he going to do there?—He is going to write to his friends.—Will you stay here or there?—I will stay there.—Where will your father stay?—He will stay there.—Has our friend a mind to stay in the garden?—He has a mind to stay there.

68.

At what o'clock is the Dutchman at home?—He is at home every evening at a quarter past nine.—When does your cook go to the market?—He goes thither every morning at half-past five.—When does our neighbour go to the Irishmen?—He goes to them (*y*) every day.—At what o'clock?—At eight o'clock in the morning.—What do you wish to buy?—I do not wish to buy any thing, but my father wishes to buy an ox.—Does he wish to buy this or that ox?—He wishes to buy neither this nor that.—Which one (*lequel*) does he wish to buy?—He wishes to buy your friend's (*celui de votre ami*).—Has the merchant one more coat to sell?—He has one more, but he does not wish to sell it.—Has this man one knife more to sell?—He has not one more (*plus de*) knife to sell, but he has a few more guns to sell.—When will he sell them?—He will sell them to-day.—Where?—At his warehouse.—Do you wish to see my friend?—I do wish to see him in order to know him.—Do you wish to know my children?—I do wish to know them.—How many children have you?—I have only two; but my brother has more than I: he has six of them.—Does that man wish to drink too much wine?—He wishes to drink too much of it.—Have you wine enough to drink?—I have only a little, but enough.—Does your brother wish to buy too many cakes?—He wishes to buy a great many, but not too many.

69.

Can you lend me a knife?—I can lend you one.—Can your father lend me a book?—He can lend you several.—What are you

in want of?—I am in want of a good gun.—Are you in want of this picture?—I am in want of it.—Does your brother want money?—He does not want any.—Does he want some shoes?—He does not want any.—What does he want?—He wants nothing.—Are you in want of these sticks?—I am in want of them.—Who wants some sugar?—Nobody wants any.—Does any body want pepper?—Nobody wants any.—What do I want?—You want nothing.—Does your father want these or those pictures?—He wants neither these nor those.—Are you in want of me?—I am in want of you.—When do you want me?—At present.—What have you to say to me?—I have a word to say to you.—Is your son in want of us?—He is in want of you and your brothers.—Are you in want of my servants?—I am in want of them.—Does any one want my brother?—No one wants him.—Does your father want any thing?—He does not want any thing.—What does the Englishman want?—He wants some linen.—Does he not want some jewels?—He does not want any.—What does the sailor want?—He wants some biscuits, some milk, cheese, and butter.—Are you going to give me any thing?—I am going to give you some bread and wine.



## TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

### *Vingt-quatrième Leçon.*

#### THE PRESENT.

To find out the present tense of a verb, its present participle must be known, as it serves to form the three persons plural<sup>1</sup>. It always ends in *ant*, and as all grammars and dictionaries give it, it is easily formed, and almost guessed at by learners<sup>2</sup>.

The first, second, and third persons plural of the present tense are formed in changing the syllable *ant* of the present participle for the first person into *ons*, for the second into *ez*, and for the third into *ent*<sup>3</sup>.  
Ex.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present participle.</i>	<i>Infinitif.</i>	<i>Participe présent.</i>
To speak,	speaking.	Parler,	parlant.

<sup>1</sup> The present of the indicative, participle, and infinitive, are primitive parts of the verb. The other primitives are the preterite definite and the participle past.

<sup>2</sup> The formation of the present tense from the infinitive presents too many exceptions, almost as numerous as the different terminations of the various infinitives, and is consequently too difficult for beginners.

<sup>3</sup> In all the four conjugations the second person singular has an *s*\*. In the first conjugation the third person singular is the same as the first person; in the second and third conjugations it has *t*. In the fourth conjugation it adds nothing to the root †.

\* Except in the imperative of the first conjugation, and of some verbs of the second, where the *s* is dropped. Ex. *Parle*, speak (thou). When the imperative, however, is followed by one of the pronouns, *en*, *y*, the letter *s* is not dropped, as: *donnes-en à ton frère*, give some to thy brother: *portes-y tes livres*, take thy books thither.

† By root we understand that part of the verb which precedes the terminations *er*, *ir*, *oir*, *re*, of the infinitive; e. g. in the verb *finir*, to finish, *fin*, end, is the root.

## PRESENT.

I speak, thou speakest, he speaks.	Je parle, tu parles, il parle.
We speak, you speak, they speak.	Nous parlons, vous parlez, ils parlent.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

To finish, finishing.	Finir, finissant.
I finish, thou finishest, he finishes.	Je finis, tu finis, il finit,
We finish, you finish, they finish.	Nous finissons, vous finissez, ils finissent.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

To receive, receiving.	Recevoir, recevant.
I receive, thou receivest, he receives.	Je reçois, tu reçois, il reçoit.
We receive, you receive, they receive.	Nous recevons, vous recevez, ils reçoivent <sup>4</sup> .

*Obs. A.* We have already seen in several words of the foregoing Lessons that a cedilla is placed under the letter *c* (*ç*) to give it the sound of *s* before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *garçon*, boy; *Français*, Frenchman, &c. This is the case also in verbs whose roots end in *c*, which, to preserve the soft sound, receives a cedilla whenever it is followed by *a*, *o*, or *u*. Ex. *Je reçois, tu reçois, il reçoit*; *forcer*, to force; *forçant*, forcing; *placer*, to place; *plaçant*, placing; &c.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

To sell, selling.	Vendre, vendant.
I sell, thou sellest, he sells.	Je vends, tu vends, il vend.
We sell, you sell, they sell.	Nous vendons, vous vendez, ils vendent.

Principal exceptions to this rule are :

To be, being.	Etre *, étant.
We are, you are, they are.	Nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont.
To have, having.	Avoir *, ayant.
We have, you have, they have.	Nous avons, vous avez, ils ont.

<sup>4</sup> The third person plural of the third conjugation presents, as may be observed, a little exception, as the present participle is here changed into *reçoivent*.

To know,	knowing.	Savoir *,	sachant.
We know, you know, they know.		Nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.	
To do,	doing.	Faire *,	faisant.
You do, they do.		Vous faites, ils font.	
To say,	saying.	Dire *,	disant.
You say.		Vous dites <sup>5</sup> .	

*Obs. B.* There is no distinction in French between I love, do love, and am loving. All these present tenses are expressed by *j'aime*, I love.

<i>To love, to like.</i>		<i>Aimer</i> 1.
I { love. do love. am loving.	He { loves. does love. is loving.	J'aime, il aime.
Thou { lovest. dost love. art loving.	You { love. do love. are lov- ing.	Tu aimes, vous aimez.
We { love. do love. are loving.	They { love. do love. are lov- ing.	Nous aimons, ils aiment.

<sup>5</sup> The remaining exceptions to this rule are the following :—

CONJ.


1st. <i>Aller</i> , to go ;	<i>allant</i> :	<i>ils vont</i> , they go.
2d. <i>Venir</i> , to come ;	<i>venant</i> :	<i>ils viennent</i> , they come.
<i>Tenir</i> , to keep ;	<i>tenant</i> :	<i>ils tiennent</i> , they keep.
<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire ;	<i>acquérant</i> :	<i>ils acquièrent</i> , they acquire.
<i>Mourir</i> , to die (lose life) ;	<i>mourant</i> :	<i>ils meurent</i> , they die.
3d. <i>Recevoir</i> , to receive ;	<i>recevant</i> :	<i>ils reçoivent</i> , they receive *.
<i>Devoir</i> , to owe ;	<i>devant</i> :	<i>ils doivent</i> , they owe.
<i>Mouvoir</i> , to move ;	<i>mouvant</i> :	<i>ils meuvent</i> , they move.
<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able (can) ;	<i>pouvant</i> :	<i>ils peuvent</i> , they are able.
<i>Vouloir</i> , to be willing ;	<i>voulant</i> :	<i>ils veulent</i> , they are willing.
4th. <i>Boire</i> , to drink ;	<i>buvant</i> :	<i>ils boivent</i> , they drink.
<i>Prendre</i> , to take ;	<i>prenant</i> :	<i>ils prennent</i> , they take.

\* And all those in *avoir*, as *apercevoir*, to perceive ; *concevoir*, to conceive ; &c. (See Note 4, p. 104.)

*To love, to like, to be fond of.* | *Aimer.*  
*To arrange, to set in order.* | *Arranger, ranger* 1.

*Obs. C.* In verbs where the ending *er* is preceded by *g*, the letter *e* is, for the softening of the sound, retained in all those tenses where *g* is followed by *a* or *o*. Ex. *manger*, to eat : *mangeant*, eating ; *juger*, to judge ; *jugeant*, judging ; *négliger*, to neglect ; *négligeant*, neglecting ; *nous mangeons*, we eat ; *nous jugeons*, we judge ; *nous négligeons*, we neglect.

Do you like him | *L'aimez-vous ?*

 Personal pronouns not standing in the nominative, take their place before the verb.

I do like him.	Je l'aime.
I do not like him.	Je ne l'aime pas.
Do you sell your horse ?	Vendez-vous votre cheval ?
I do sell it.	Je le vends.
Do you sell it ?	Le vendez-vous ?

---

Does he send you the note ?	Vous envoie-t-il le billet ?
He does send it me.	Il me l'envoie.

---

*Obs. D.* In verbs ending in *ayer*, *oyer*, *uyer*, the letter *y* is changed into *i* in all persons and tenses where it is followed by *e* mute. Ex.

I send, thou sendest, he sends, they send.	J'envoie, tu envoies, il envoie, ils envoient.
I sweep, thou sweepest, he sweeps, they sweep.	Je balaie, tu balaies, il balaie, ils balaient.

---

Does the servant sweep the floor ?	Le domestique balaie-t-il le plan- cher ?
He does sweep it.	Il le balaie.

---

*Obs. E.* As the rule which I gave above, on the formation of the plural of the present tense, is applicable to irregular as well as regular verbs, it remains now to point out only the present tense singular of those irregular verbs which we have already employed, to enable the learner to use them all in his exercises. They are the following.

To do, to make.  
 I do, thou dost, he does.  
 To drink, drinking.  
 I drink, thou drinkest, he drinks.  
 To come, coming.  
 I come, thou comest, he comes.  
 To write, writing.  
 I write, thou writest, he writes.  
 To see, seeing.  
 I see, thou seest, he sees.  
 To say, to tell.  
 I say, thou sayest, he says.  
 To go out, going out.  
 I go out, thou goest out, he goes out.  
 To read, reading.  
 I read, thou readest, he reads.  
 To know (to be acquainted with), knowing.  
 I know, thou knowest, he knows.

Faire \*.  
 Je fais, tu fais, il fait.  
 Boire \*, buvant.  
 Je bois, tu bois, il boit.  
 Venir \*, venant.  
 Je viens, tu viens, il vient.  
 Ecrire \*, écrivant.  
 J'écris, tu écris, il écrit.  
 Voir \*, voyant.  
 Je vois, tu vois, il voit.  
 Dire \*.  
 Je dis, tu dis, il dit.  
 Sortir \*, sortant.  
 Je sors, tu sors, il sort.  
 Lire \*, lisant.  
 Je lis, tu lis, il lit.  
 Connaître \*, connaissant.  
 Je connais, tu connais, il connaît.

To open, opening.  
 I open, thou openest, he opens.  
 Do you open his note ?  
 I do not open it.  
 Does he open his eyes ?  
 He opens them.  
 Whom do you love ?  
 I love my father.  
 Does your father love his son ?  
 He does love him.  
 Do you love your children ?  
 I do love them.  
 Are you fond of wine ?  
 I am fond of it.  
 What are you fond of ?  
 Cider.  
 I am fond of cider.

Ouvrir 2 \*, ouvrant.  
 J'ouvre, tu ouvres, il ouvre <sup>6</sup>.  
 Ouvrez-vous son billet ?  
 Je ne l'ouvre pas.  
 † Ouvre-t-il les yeux ?  
 Il les ouvre.  
 Qui aimez-vous ?  
 J'aime mon père.  
 Votre père aime-t-il sons fils ?  
 Il l'aime.  
 Aimez-vous vos enfants ?  
 Je *les* aime.  
 Aimez-vous le vin ?  
 Je l'aime.  
 Qu'aimez-vous ?  
 Du cidre.  
 J'aime le cidre.

<sup>6</sup> It will be remarked that this verb has in the present indicative the final letters of the first regular conjugation.



The American.  
 What is the American fond of?  
 He is fond of coffee.

L'Américain.  
 L'Américain qu'aime-t-il?  
 Il aime le café.

---

EXERCISES.

70.

Do you love your brother?—I do love him.—Does your brother love you?—He does not love me.—Dost thou love me, my good child?—I do love thee.—Dost thou love this ugly man?—I do not love him.—Whom do you love?—I love my children.—Whom do we love?—We love our friends.—Do we like any one?—We like no one.—Does any body like us?—The Americans like us.—Do you want any thing?—I want nothing.—Whom is your father in want of?—He is in want of his servant.—What do you want?—I want the note.—Do you want this or that note?—I want this one.—What do you wish to do with it (*en*)?—I wish to open it, in order to read it.—Does your son read our notes?—He does read them.—When does he read them?—He reads them when he receives them.—Does he receive as many notes as I (*que moi*)?—He receives more of them than you.—What do you give me?—I do not give thee any thing.—Do you give this book to my brother?—I do give it him.—Do you give him a bird?—I do give him one.—To whom do you lend your books?—I lend them to my friends.—Does your friend lend me a coat?—He lends you one.—To whom do you lend your clothes (*habits*)?—I do not lend them to any body.

71.

Do we arrange any thing?—We do not arrange any thing.—What does your brother set in order (*ranger*)?—He sets in order his books.—Do you sell your ship?—I do not sell it.—Does the captain sell his?—He does sell it.—What does the American sell?—He sells his oxen.—Does the Englishman finish his note?—He does finish it.—Which notes do you finish?—I finish those which I write to my friends.—Dost thou see any thing?—I see nothing.—Do you see my large (*grand*) garden?—I do see it.—Does your



father see our ships?—He does not see them, but we see them.—How many soldiers do you see?—We see a good many, we see more than thirty of them.—Do you drink any thing?—I drink some wine.—What does the sailor drink?—He drinks some cider.—Do we drink wine or cider?—We drink (both) wine and cider.—What do the Italians drink?—They drink some chocolate.—Do we drink wine?—We do drink some.—What art thou writing?—I am writing a note.—To whom?—To my neighbour.—Does your friend write?—He does write.—To whom does he write?—He writes to his tailor.

72.

Do you write your notes in the evening?—We write them in the morning.—What dost thou say?—I say nothing.—Does your brother say any thing?—He says something.—What does he say?—I do not know.—What do you say to my servant?—I tell him to sweep the floor, and to go for some bread, cheese, and wine.—Do we say any thing?—We say nothing.—What does your friend say to the shoemaker?—He tells him to mend his shoes.—What do you tell the tailors?—I tell them to make my clothes (*habits*).—Dost thou go out?—I do not go out.—Who goes out?—My brother goes out.—Where is he going to?—He is going to the garden.—To whom are you going?—We are going to the good English.—What art thou reading?—I am reading a note from (*de*) my friend.—What is your father reading?—He is reading a book.—What are you doing?—We are reading.—Are your children reading?—They are not reading, they have no time to read.—Do you read the books which I read?—I do not read those which you read, but those which your father reads.—Do you know this man?—I do not know him.—Does your friend know him?—He does know him.

73.

Do you know my children?—We do know them.—Do they know you?—They do not know us.—Whom are you acquainted with?—I am acquainted with nobody.—Is any one acquainted with you?—Some one is acquainted with me.—Who is acquainted with you?—The good captain knows me.—What dost thou eat?—I eat

some bread.—Does not your son eat some cheese?—He does not eat any.—Do you cut any thing?—We cut some wood.—What do the merchants cut?—They cut some cloth.—Do you send me any thing?—I send you a good gun.—Does your father send you money?—He does send me some.—Does he send you more than I?—He sends me more than you.—How much does he send you?—He sends me more than (*plus de*) fifty (*cinquante*) crowns.—When do you receive your notes?—I receive them every morning.—At what o'clock?—At half past ten.—Is your son coming?—He is coming.—To whom is he coming?—He is coming to me.—Do you come to me?—I do not come (*Je ne vais pas*) to you, but to your children.—Where is our friend going to?—He is going no whither; he remains at home.—Are you going home?—We are not going home, but to our friends'.—Where are your friends?—They are in their garden.—Are the Scotchmen in their gardens?—They are there.

## 74.

What do you buy?—I buy some knives.—Do you buy more knives than glasses?—I buy more of the latter than of the former.—How many horses does the German buy?—He buys a good many; he buys more than twenty of them.—What does your servant carry?—He carries a large (*grand*) trunk.—Where is he carrying it to?—He is carrying it home.—To whom do you speak?—I speak to the Irishman.—Do you speak to him every day?—I speak to him every morning and every evening.—Does he come to you?—He does not come to me, but I go to him.—What has your servant to do?—He has to sweep my floor, and to set my books in order.—Does my father answer your notes?—He answers them (*y*).—What does your boy break?—He breaks nothing, but your boys break my glasses.—Do they tear any thing?—They tear nothing.—Who burns my hat?—Nobody burns it.—Are you looking for any body?—I am not looking for any body.—What is my son looking for?—He is looking for his pocket-book.—What does your cook kill?—He kills a chicken.

## 75.

Are you killing a bird?—I am killing one.—How many chickens does your cook kill?—He kills three of them.—To

whom do you take my boy?—I take him to the painter.—When is the painter at home?—He is at home every evening at seven o'clock.—What o'clock is it now?—It is not yet (*encore*) six o'clock.—Do you go out in the evening?—I go out in the morning.—Are you afraid to go out in the evening?—I am not afraid, but I have no time to go out in the evening.—Do you work as much as your son?—I do not work as much as he.—Does he eat more than you?—He eats less than I.—Can your children write as many notes as my children?—They can write just as many.—Can the Russian drink as much wine as cider?—He can drink more of the latter than of the former.—When do our neighbours go out?—They go out every morning at a quarter to six.—Which note do you send to your father?—I am sending him my own.—Do you not send mine?—I am sending it also (*aussi*).

\* \* \* We should fill volumes were we to give all the exercises that are applicable to our lessons, and which the pupils may very easily compose by themselves. We shall, therefore, merely repeat what we have already mentioned at the commencement:—Pupils who wish to improve rapidly ought to compose a great many sentences in addition to those given; but they must pronounce them aloud. This is the only way by which they will acquire the habit of speaking fluently.

## TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

### *Vingt-cinquième Leçon.*

---

<i>To bring.</i>	<i>Apporter</i> 1.
<i>To find.</i>	<i>Trouver</i> 1.
To or at the play.	Au spectacle.
The butcher.	Le boucher.
The sheep.	Le mouton.

---

<i>What or the thing which.</i>	<i>Ce que.</i>
Do you find <i>what</i> you look for (or <i>what</i> you are looking for)?	Trouvez-vous <i>ce que</i> vous cherchez?
I find <i>what</i> I look for.	} Je trouve <i>ce que</i> je cherche.
I find <i>what</i> I am looking for.	
He does not find <i>what</i> he is looking for.	Il ne trouve pas <i>ce qu'il</i> cherche.
We find <i>what</i> we look for.	Nous trouvons <i>ce que</i> nous cherchons.
They find <i>what</i> they look for.	Ils trouvent <i>ce qu'ils</i> cherchent.
I mend <i>what</i> you mend.	Je raccommode <i>ce que</i> vous raccommodez.
I buy <i>what</i> you buy.	J'achète <i>ce que</i> vous achetez.

*Obs. A.* In verbs having *e* mute in the last syllable but one of the infinitive, the letter *e* has the grave accent (') in all persons and tenses where the consonant immediately after it is followed by *e* mute : as in, *mener*, to guide, to take; *promener*, to walk; *achever*, to finish; &c. *e. g.*

I buy, thou buyest, he buys.	J'achète, tu achètes, il achète.
I lead, thou leadest, he leads.	Je mène, tu mènes, il mène.

---

Do you take him to the play?	Le menez-vous au spectacle?
I do take him thither.	Je l'y mène.

---

<i>To study.</i>	<i>Étudier</i> 1.
<i>Instead of.</i>	<i>Au lieu de.</i>

*Obs. B.* *Instead of* is in English followed by the present participle, but in French it is followed by the infinitive.

<i>To play.</i>	<i>Jouer</i> 1.
<i>To listen.</i>	<i>Écouter</i> 1.
Instead of <i>listening</i> .	Au lieu d' <i>écouter</i> .
Instead of <i>playing</i> .	Au lieu de <i>jouer</i> .
Do you play instead of <i>studying</i> ?	Jouez-vous au lieu d' <i>étudier</i> ?
I study instead of <i>playing</i> .	J'étudie au lieu de <i>jouer</i> .
That man speaks instead of <i>listening</i> .	Cet homme parle au lieu d' <i>écouter</i> .

Have you a sore finger?	† Avez-vous mal <i>au</i> doigt?
I have a sore finger.	† J'ai mal <i>au</i> doigt.
Has your brother a sore foot?	† Votre frère a-t-il mal <i>au</i> pied?
He has a sore eye.	† Il a mal à l'œil.
We have sore eyes.	† Nous avons mal <i>aux</i> yeux.

The elbow.	Le coude.
The back.	Le dos.
The arm.	Le bras.
The knee.	Le genou.

Do you read instead of writing?	Lisez-vous au lieu d' <i>écrire</i> ?
Does your brother read instead of speaking?	Votre frère lit-il au lieu de parler?

The bed.	Le lit.
Does the servant make the bed?	Le domestique fait-il le lit?
He makes the fire instead of making the bed.	Il fait le feu au lieu de <i>faire</i> le lit.

<i>To learn, learning.</i>	<i>Apprendre</i> 4*, <i>apprenant</i> .
I learn, thou learnest, he learns.	J'apprends, tu apprends, il apprend. (See Not.5, Less.XXIV.)
I learn <i>to</i> read.	J'apprends à lire.
He learns <i>to</i> write.	Il apprend à écrire.



## EXERCISES.

76.

Do you go to the play this evening?—I do not go to the play.—What have you to do?—I have to study.—At what o'clock do you go out?—I do not go out in the evening.—Does your father go out?—He does not go out.—What does he do (*fait-il*)?—He writes.—Does he write a book?—He does write one.—When does he write it?—He writes it in the morning and in the evening.—Is he at home now?—He is at home.—Does he not go out?—He cannot go out; he has a sore foot.—Does the shoemaker bring our shoes?—He does not bring them.—Is he not able to work?—He is not able to work; he has a sore knee.—Has any body a sore elbow?—My tailor has a sore elbow.—Who has a sore arm?—I have a sore arm.—Do you cut me (*Me coupez-vous*) some bread?—I cannot cut you any; I have sore fingers.—Do you read your book?—I cannot read it; I have a sore eye.—Who has sore eyes?—The French have sore eyes.—Do they read too much?—They do not read enough.—What day of the month is it to-day?—It is the third. (Lesson XIV.)—What day of the month is it to-morrow?—To-morrow is the fourth.—Are you looking for any one?—I am not looking for any one.—What is the painter looking for?—He is not looking for any thing.—Whom are you looking for?—I am looking for your son.—Have you any thing to tell him?—I have something to tell him.

77.

Who is looking for me?—Your father is looking for you.—Is any body looking for my brother?—Nobody is looking for him.—Dost thou find what thou art looking for?—I do find what I am looking for.—Does the captain find what he is looking for?—He finds what he is looking for, but his children do not find what they are looking for.—What are they looking for?—They are looking for their books.—Where dost thou take me to?—I take you to the theatre.—Do you not take me to the market?—I do not take you thither.—Do the Spaniards find the umbrellas which they are looking for?—They do not find them.—Does the tailor



find his thimble?—He does not find it.—Do the merchants find the cloth which they are looking for?—They do find it.—What do the butchers find?—They find the oxen and sheep which they are looking for.—What does your cook find?—He finds the chickens which he is looking for.—What is the physician doing?—He is doing what (*ce que*) you are doing.—What is he doing in his room?—He is reading.—What is he reading?—He is reading the book of your father.—Whom is the Englishman looking for?—He is looking for his friend, in order to take him into the garden.—What is the German doing in his room?—He is learning to read.—Does he not learn to write?—He does not learn it (*ne l'apprend pas*).—Does your son learn to write?—He learns to write and to read.

78.

Does the Dutchman speak instead of listening?—He speaks instead of listening.—Do you go out instead of remaining at home?—I remain at home instead of going out.—Does your son play instead of studying?—He studies instead of playing.—When does he study?—He studies every day.—In the morning or in the evening?—In the morning and in the evening.—Do you buy an umbrella instead of buying a book?—I buy neither the one nor the other.—Does our neighbour break his sticks instead of breaking his glasses?—He breaks neither the ones nor the others.—What does he break?—He breaks his guns.—Do the children of our neighbour read?—They read instead of writing.—What does our cook?—He makes a fire, instead of going to the market.—Does the captain give you any thing?—He does give me something.—What does he give you?—He gives me a great deal of money.—Does he give you money instead of giving you bread?—He gives me (both) money and bread.—Does he give you more cheese than bread?—He gives me less of the latter than of the former.

79.

Do you give my friend less knives than gloves?—I give him more of the latter than of the former.—What does he give you?—He gives me many books instead of giving me money.—Does

your servant make your bed?—He does not make it. —What is he doing instead of making your bed?—He sweeps the room instead of making my bed.—Does he drink instead of working?—He works instead of drinking.—Do the physicians go out?—They remain at home instead of going out.—Does your servant make coffee?—He makes tea instead of making coffee.—Does any one lend you a gun?—Nobody lends me one.—What does your friend lend me?—He lends you many books and many jewels.—Do you read the book which I read?—I do not read the one which you read, but the one which the great (*grand*) captain reads.—Are you ashamed to read the books which I read?—I am not ashamed, but I have no wish to read them. (See the end of preceding Lesson.)

## SECOND MONTH.

*Deuxième Mois.*

## TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Vingt-sixième Leçon.*

Do you learn French?  
 I do learn it.  
 I do not learn it.

Apprenez-vous le Français?  
 Je l'apprends.  
 Je ne l'apprends pas.

French.  
 English.  
 German.  
 Italian.  
 Spanish.  
 Polish.  
 Russian.  
 Latin.  
 Greek.  
 Arabian, Arabic.  
 Syrian, Syriac.

*Le français.*  
*L'anglais.*  
*L'allemand.*  
*L'italien.*  
*L'espagnol.*  
*Le polonais.*  
*Le russe.*  
*Le latin.*  
*Le grec.*  
*L'arabe.*  
*Le syriaque.*

I learn Italian.  
 My brother learns German.

J'apprends l'italien.  
 Mon frère apprend l'allemand.

The Pole.  
 The Roman.  
 The Greek.  
 The Arab, the Arabian.  
 The Syrian.

*Le Polonais.*  
*Le Romain.*  
*Le Grec.*  
*L'Arabe.*  
*Le Syrien.*

Are you an Englishman?

| Êtes-vous Anglais?

*Obs. A.* Where the indefinite article is used in English to denote qualities the French make use of no article.

No, Sir, I am *a* Frenchman.  
 He is *a* German.  
 Is he *a* tailor?  
 No, he is *a* shoemaker.  
 He is *a* fool.

Non, Monsieur, je suis Français.  
 Il est Allemand.  
 Est-il tailleur?  
 Non, il est cordonnier.  
 Il est fou.

---

The fool.

Le fou. (Plur. *s*. See Note 1,  
 Less. IX.)

The evening.

Le soir.

The morning.

Le matin.

The day.

Le jour.

---

*Obs. B.* Often the indefinite article in English answers to the definite article in French. Ex.

I wish you *a* good morning.  
 Does he wish me *a* good evening?  
 He wishes you *a* good morning.  
 He has a large forehead.  
 He has blue eyes.

Je vous souhaite *le* bon jour.  
 Me souhaite-t-il *le* bon soir?  
 Il vous souhaite *le* bon jour.  
 Il a *le* front large.  
 Il a les yeux bleus.

---

To wish.

| Souhaiter 1.

---

The forehead.  
 Blue.  
 Black.  
 Large.

Le front.  
 Bleu.  
 Noir.  
 Large.

---

Great, big or large, tall.  
 A large knife.  
 A great man.

Grand.  
 Un grand couteau.  
 Un grand homme <sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Un grand homme* means a great man, but *un homme grand* a tall man. The same distinction is made with respect to the word *pauvre*, poor, which expresses *pitiful*, or a want of intellect, when before, and *poor* when after, the substantive. Ex. *Un pauvre homme*, a sorrowful (pitiful, miserable) man, and *un homme pauvre*, a man that has no wealth.

A French book.	Un livre français.
An English book.	Un livre anglais.
French money.	De l'argent français.
English paper.	Du papier anglais.

*Obs. C.* All adjectives expressing the names of nations are placed after their substantives. Ex.

Do you read a German book?	Lisez-vous un livre allemand?
I read an Italian book.	Je lis un livre italien.

<i>To listen to something.</i>	† Écouter quelque chose.
<i>To listen to some one.</i>	† Écouter quelqu'un.
<i>What or the thing which.</i>	Ce que.
Do you listen <i>to</i> what the man tells you?	† Écoutez-vous ce que l'homme vous dit?
I listen <i>to</i> it.	† Je l'écoute.
He listens <i>to</i> what I tell him.	† Il écoute ce que je lui dis.
Do you listen <i>to</i> what I tell you?	† Écoutez-vous ce que je vous dis?
Do you listen <i>to</i> me?	† M'écoutez-vous?
I do listen <i>to</i> you.	† Je vous écoute.
Do you listen <i>to</i> my brother?	† Écoutez-vous mon frère?
I do not listen <i>to</i> him.	† Je ne l'écoute pas.
Do you listen <i>to</i> the men?	† Écoutez-vous les hommes?
I listen <i>to</i> them.	† Je les écoute.

To correct.	Corriger 1.
To take off.	} Ôter 1.
To take away.	

The exercise.	Le thème.
---------------	-----------

<i>To take, taking.</i>	Prendre 4*, prenant. (See Note 5, Lesson XXIV.)
-------------------------	--

Do you take your hat off?	Ôtez-vous votre chapeau?
I take it off.	Je l'ôte.
Does your father correct your exercises?	Votre père corrige-t-il vos thèmes?
He corrects them.	Il les corrige.



To speak French.  
 To speak English.  
 Do you speak French?  
 No, Sir, I speak English.

Parler français.  
 Parler anglais.  
 Parlez-vous français?  
 Non, Monsieur, je parle anglais.

To drink coffee.

{ † Prendre le café.  
 { † Prendre du café.

To drink tea.

{ Prendre le thé.  
 { Prendre du thé.

Do you drink tea?

† Prenez-vous du thé?

I do drink some.

† J'en prends.

Do you drink tea every day?

† Prenez-vous le thé tous les jours?

I do drink some every day.

† Je le prends tous les jours.

My father drinks coffee.

† Mon père prend du café.

He drinks coffee every morning.

† Il prend le café tous les matins.

My brother drinks chocolate.

† Mon frère prend du chocolat.

• He drinks chocolate every morning.

† Il prend le chocolat tous les matins.

## EXERCISES.

80.

Do you go for any thing?—I do go for something.—What do you go for?—I go for some cider.—Does your father send for any thing?—He sends for some wine.—Does your servant go for some bread?—He goes for some.—For whom does your neighbour send?—He sends for the physician.—Does your servant take off his coat in order to make the fire?—He takes it off in order to make it.—Do you take off your gloves in order to give me money?—I do take them off in order to give you some.—Do you learn French?—I do learn it.—Does your brother learn German?—He does learn it.—Who learns English?—The Frenchman learns it.—Do we learn Italian?—You do learn it.—What do the English learn?—They learn French and German.—Do you speak Spanish?—No, Sir, I speak Italian.—Who speaks Polish?—My brother

speaks Polish.—Do our neighbours speak Russian?—They do not speak Russian, but Arabic.—Do you speak Arabic?—No, I speak Greek and Latin.—What knife have you?—I have an English knife.—What money have you there?—Is it (*est-ce*) Italian or Spanish money?—It is Russian money.—Have you an Italian hat?—No, I have a Spanish hat.—Are you a Frenchman?—No, I am an Englishman.—Art thou a Greek?—No, I am a Spaniard.

81.

Are these men Germans?—No, they are Russians.—Do the Russians speak Polish?—They do not speak Polish, but Latin, Greek, and Arabic.—Is your brother a merchant?—No, he is a joiner.—Are these men merchants?—No, they are carpenters.—Are you a cook?—No, I am a baker.—Are we tailors?—No, we are shoemakers.—Art thou a fool?—I am not a fool.—What is that man?—He is a physician.—Do you wish me any thing?—I wish you a good morning.—What does the young man wish me?—He wishes you a good evening.—Do your children come to me in order to wish me a good evening?—They come to you in order to wish you a good morning.—Has the German black eyes?—No, he has blue eyes.—Has that man large feet?—He has little feet, a large forehead, and a large nose.—Have you time to read my book?—I have no time to read it, but much courage to (*pour*) study French.—What dost thou do instead of playing?—I study instead of playing.—Dost thou learn instead of writing?—I write instead of learning.—What does the son of our friend do?—He goes into the garden instead of doing his exercise.—Do the children of our neighbours read?—They write instead of reading.—What does our cook?—He makes a fire instead of going to the market.—Does your father sell his ox?—He sells his horse instead of selling his ox.

82.

Does the son of the painter study English?—He studies Greek instead of studying English.—Does the butcher kill oxen?—He kills sheep instead of killing oxen.—Do you listen to me?—I do listen to you.—Does your brother listen to me?—He speaks

instead of listening to you.—Do you listen to what I am telling you?—I do listen to what you are telling me.—Dost thou listen to what thy brother tells thee?—I do listen to it.—Do the children of the physician listen to what we tell them?—They do not listen to it.—Do you go to the theatre?—I am going to the warehouse instead of going to the theatre.—Are you willing to read my book?—I am willing to read it, but I cannot; I have sore eyes.—Does your father correct my exercises or those of my brother?—He corrects neither yours nor your brother's.—Which exercises does he correct?—He corrects mine.—Do you take off your hat in order to speak to my father?—I do take it off in order to speak to him.—Do you take off your shoes?—I do not take them off.—Who takes off his hat?—My friend takes it off.—Does he take off his gloves?—He does not take them off.—What do these boys take off?—They take off their shoes and their stockings.—Who takes away the glasses?—Your servant takes them away.—Do you give me English or German paper?—I give you neither English (repeat *papier*) nor German paper; I give you French paper.—Do you read Spanish?—I do not read Spanish, but German.—What book is your brother reading?—He is reading a French book.—Do you drink tea or coffee in the morning?—I drink tea.—Do you drink tea every morning?—I do drink some (*le*) every morning.—What do you drink?—I drink coffee.—What does your brother drink?—He drinks chocolate.—Does he drink some (*le*) every day?—He drinks some (*le*) every morning.—Do your children drink tea?—They drink coffee instead of drinking tea.—What do we drink?—We drink tea or coffee.

# TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

## *Vingt-septième Leçon.*

<i>To wet, to moisten.</i>		<i>Mouiller</i> 1.	
<i>To show.</i>	{	<i>Montrer</i> 1.	
	{	<i>Faire * voir.</i>	
I show.		Je fais voir.	Je montre.
He shows.		Il fait voir.	Il montre.
Thou showest.		Tu fais voir.	Tu montres.

<i>To show to some one.</i>	{	<i>Montrer</i>	} à quelqu'un.
	{	<i>Faire voir</i>	
Do you show me your gun?		Me faites-vous voir votre fusil?	
I do show it you.		Je vous le fais voir.	
What do you show the man?		Que montrez-vous à l'homme?	
I show him my fine clothes.		Je lui montre mes beaux habits.	

Tobacco.		Du tabac.
Tobacco (for smoking).		Du tabac à fumer.
Snuff.	{	Du tabac en poudre.
	{	Du tabac à priser.

*To smoke.* | *Fumer* 1.

The gardener.		Le jardinier.
The valet.		Le valet.
The concert.		Le concert.

<i>To intend.</i>		<i>Compter</i> 1. (does not take à before the infinitive.)
Do you intend to go to the ball this evening?		Comptez-vous aller au bal ce soir?
I intend to go thither.		Je compte y aller.

*To know.*

Do you know?

I know.

Thou knowest.

He knows.

*Savoir 3\*.*

Savez-vous?

Je sais.

Tu sais.

Il sait. (For the three persons plur. see Less. XXIV.)

*To swim.*

Do you know how to swim?

Can you swim?

*Nager 1.*

(See Obs. C. Lesson XXIV.)

} † Savez-vous nager?

*Obs.* *To know how* is in English followed by *to* before the verb in the infinitive, whilst in French the infinitive joined to the verb *savoir* is not preceded by any particle, as may be seen from the above example.

Do you know how to write?

Does he know how to read?

† Savez-vous écrire?

† Sait-il lire?

*To conduct, conducting.*

I conduct, thou conductest, he conducts.

*Conduire 4\*, conduisant.*

Je conduis, tu conduis, il conduit.

*To extinguish, extinguishing.*

Do you extinguish the fire?

I do not extinguish it.

He extinguishes it.

Thou extinguishest it.

*Éteindre 4\*, éteignant.*

Éteignez-vous le feu?

Je ne l'éteins pas.

Il l'éteint.

Tu l'éteins.

To light, to kindle. | Allumer 1.

*Often.*

Do you often go to the ball?

As often as you.

As often as I.

As often as he.

As often as they.

*Souvent.*

Allez-vous souvent au bal?

Aussi souvent que vous.

Aussi souvent que moi.

Aussi souvent que lui.

Aussi souvent qu'eux.

Do you often see my brother? | Voyez-vous souvent mon frère?



*Oftener.*

I see him oftener than you.

*Not so often.*

Not so often as you.

Not so often as I.

Not so often as they.

*Plus souvent.*

Je le vois plus souvent que vous.

*Moins souvent.*

Moins souvent que vous.

Moins souvent que moi.

Moins souvent qu'eux.

EXERCISES.

83.

What does your father want?—He wants some tobacco.—Will you go for some?—I will go for some.—What tobacco does he want?—He wants some snuff.—Do you want tobacco (for smoking)?—I do not want any; I do not smoke.—Do you show me any thing?—I show you gold ribbons (*des rubans d'or*).—Does your father show his gun to my brother?—He does show it him.—Does he show him his beautiful birds?—He does show them to him.—Does the Frenchman smoke?—He does not smoke.—Do you go to the ball?—I go to the theatre instead of going to the ball.—Does the gardener go into the garden?—He goes to the market instead of going into the garden.—Do you send your valet to the tailor?—I send him to the shoemaker instead of sending him to the tailor.—Does your brother intend to go to the ball this evening?—He does not intend to go to the ball, but to the concert.—When do you intend to go to the concert?—I intend to go there this evening.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter past ten.—Do you go for my son?—I do go for him.—Where is he?—He is in the counting-house.—Do you find the man whom you are looking for?—I do find him.—Do your sons find the friends whom they are looking for?—They do not find them.

84.

Do your friends intend to go to the theatre?—They do intend to go thither.—When do they intend to go thither?—They intend to go thither to-morrow.—At what o'clock?—At half-past seven.—What does the merchant wish to sell you?—He wishes to sell me some pocket-books.—Do you intend to buy some?—I will not

buy any.—Dost thou know any thing?—I do not know any thing.—What does your little brother know?—He knows how to read and to write.—Does he know French?—He does not know it.—Do you know German?—I do know it.—Do your brothers know Greek?—They do not know it, but they intend to study it.—Do you know English?—I do not know it, but intend to learn it.—Do my children know how to read Italian?—They know how to read, but not (*mais non*) how to speak it.—Do you know how to swim?—I do not know how to swim, but how to play.—Does your son know how to make coats?—He does not know how to make any; he is no tailor.—Is he a merchant?—He is not (*ne l'est pas*).—What is he?—He is a physician.—Do you intend to study Arabic?—I do intend to study Arabic and Syriac.—Does the Frenchman know Russian?—He does not know it; but he intends learning it.—Whither are you going?—I am going into the garden in order to speak to my gardener.—Does he listen to you?—He does listen to me.

## 85.

Do you wish to drink some cider?—I wish to drink some wine; have you any?—I have none, but I will send for some.—When will you send for some?—Now.—Do you know how to make tea?—I know how to make some.—Where is your father going to?—He is going nowhere; he remains at home.—Do you know how to write a note?—I know how to write one.—Can you write exercises?—I can write some.—Dost thou conduct any body?—I conduct nobody.—Whom do you conduct?—I conduct my son.—Where are you conducting him to?—I conduct him to my friends to (*pour*) wish them a good morning.—Does your servant conduct your child?—He conducts it.—Whither does he conduct it?—He conducts it into the garden.—Do we conduct any one?—We conduct our children.—Whither are our friends conducting their sons?—They are conducting them home.

## 86.

Do you extinguish the fire?—I do not extinguish it.—Does your servant light the fire?—He does light it.—Where does he

light it?—He lights it in your warehouse.—Do you often go to the Spaniard?—I go often to him.—Do you go oftener to him than I?—I do go oftener to him than you.—Do the Spaniards often come to you?—They do come often to me.—Do your children oftener go to the ball than we?—They do go thither oftener than you.—Do we go out as often as our neighbours?—We do go out oftener than they.—Does your servant go to the market as often as my cook?—He does go thither as often as he.—Do you see my father as often as I?—I do not see him as often as you.—When do you see him?—I see him every morning at a quarter to five.

## TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

### *Vingt-huitième Leçon.*

DO or AM, when used to interrogate, for all persons and tenses, may be rendered by EST-CE QUE. But they *must* be rendered thus for such verbs whose first person singular present tense cannot be employed interrogatively<sup>1</sup>. Examples :—

<i>Do</i> I wish ?	Est-ce que je veux ?
<i>Am</i> I able ?	Est-ce que je peux ?
<i>Am</i> I doing ?	Est-ce que je fais ?

What <i>am</i> I doing ?	Qu'est-ce que je fais ?
What <i>do</i> I say ?	Qu'est-ce que je dis ?
Where <i>am</i> I going to ?	Où est-ce que je vais ?
To whom <i>do</i> I speak ?	'A qui est-ce que je parle ?

<i>Am</i> I going ?	Est-ce que je vais ?
<i>Am</i> I coming ?	Est-ce que je viens ?
You do come.	Vous venez.
Do you tell or say ?	Dites-vous ?
I do say or tell.	Je dis.
He says or tells.	Il dit.
What does he say ?	Que dit-il ?
We say.	Nous disons.

*Obs.* Some verbs, however, ending in *e* mute in the first person singular present tense, may be used interrogatively in that person, but then they change *e* mute into *é* with the acute accent followed by *je*. (See Note 1, Lesson XX.) Ex.

<sup>1</sup> Verbs whose first person singular forms only one syllable, as : *je sens*, I feel ; *je prends*, I take ; *je tends*, I tend ; *je fonds*, I melt ; or whose last syllable sounds like *je*, such as, *je mange*, I eat ; *je venge*, I revenge ; *je range*, I range ; *je songe*, I dream ; and others, such as, *j'unis*, I unite ; *je permets*, I permit ; *j'offre*, I offer ; &c. &c.

Do I speak ?	{ Parlé-je ? Est-ce que je parle ?
Do I love ?	{ Aimé-je ? Est-ce que j'aime ?

Are you acquainted with that man ?	Connaissez-vous cet homme ?
I am not acquainted with him.	Je ne le connais pas.
Is your brother acquainted with him ?	Votre frère le connaît-il ?
He is acquainted with him.	Il le connaît.
Do you drink cider ?	Buvez-vous du cidre ?
I do drink cider, but my brother drinks wine.	Je bois du cidre, mais mon frère boit du vin.
Do you receive a note to-day ?	Recevez-vous un billet aujourd'hui ?
I do receive one.	J'en reçois un.
What do we receive ?	Que recevons-nous ?
What do our children receive ?	Nos enfants que reçoivent-ils ? (See Note 4, Lesson XXIV.)
They receive some books.	Ils reçoivent des livres.

<i>To begin</i> (commence), <i>beginning</i> .	<i>Commencer</i> 1, <i>commençant</i> .
I begin to speak.	Je commence à parler.

*Before.*

Do you speak before you listen ?	Parlez-vous avant d'écouter ?
Does he go to market before he breakfasts ?	Va-t-il au marché avant de déjeuner ?
<i>To breakfast.</i>	<i>Déjeuner</i> 1.
He does go thither before he writes.	Il y va avant d'écrire.
Do you take off your stockings before you take off your shoes ?	Ôtez-vous vos bas avant d'ôter vos souliers ?



*To depart, to set out, departing.*

When do you intend *to depart*?  
I intend *to depart* to-morrow.

I depart, thou departest, he departs.

*Partir 2\*, partant.*

Quand comptez-vous partir?  
Je compte partir demain.  
(See the preceding Lesson.)  
Je pars, tu pars, il part.

*Well.*

*Badly.*

Do I speak well?

*Bien* (adverb).

*Mal* (adverb).

Est-ce que je parle bien?

## EXERCISES.

87.

Do I read well?—You do read well.—Do I speak well?—You do not speak well.—Does my brother speak French well?—He does speak it well.—Does he speak German well?—He speaks it badly.—Do we speak well?—You speak badly.—Do I drink too much?—You do not drink enough.—Am I able to make hats?—You are not able to make any; you are not a hatter.—Am I able to write a note?—You are able to write one.—Am I doing my exercise well?—You are doing it well.—What am I doing?—You are doing exercises.—What is my brother doing?—He is doing nothing.—What do I say?—You say nothing.—Do I begin to speak?—You do begin to speak.—Do I begin to speak well?—You do not begin to speak well (*à bien parler*), but to read well (*mais à bien lire*).—Where am I going to?—You are going to your friend.—Is he at home?—Do I know?—Am I able to speak as often as the son of our neighbour?—He is able to speak oftener than you.—Can I work as much as he?—You cannot work as much as he.—Do I read as often as you?—You do not read as often as I, but you speak oftener than I.—Do I speak as well (*aussi bien*) as you?—You do not speak as well as I.—Do I go to you, or do you come to me?—You come to me, and I go to you.—When do you come to me?—Every morning at half-past six.

88.

Do you know the Russian whom I know?—I do not know the one you know, but I know another.—Do you drink as much cider as wine?—I drink less of the latter than of the former.—Does the Pole drink as much as the Russian?—He drinks just as much.—Do the Germans drink as much as the Poles?—The latter drink more than the former.—Dost thou receive any thing?—I do receive something.—What dost thou receive?—I receive some money.—Does your friend receive books?—He does receive some.—What do we receive?—We receive some cider.—Do the Poles receive tobacco?—They do receive some.—From whom (*de qui*) do the Spaniards receive money?—They receive some from the (*des*) English, and from the (*des*) French.—Do you receive as many friends as enemies?—I receive less of the latter than of the former.—From whom (*de qui*) do your children receive books?—They receive some from (*de*) me and from (*de*) their friends.—Do I receive as much cheese as bread?—You receive more of the latter than of the former.—Do our servants receive as many brooms as coats?—They receive less of the latter than of the former.—Do you receive one more gun?—I do receive one more.—How many more books does our neighbour receive?—He receives three more.

89.

When does the foreigner intend to depart?—He intends to depart to-day.—At what o'clock?—At half-past one.—Do you intend to depart this evening?—I intend to depart to-morrow.—Does the Frenchman depart to-day?—He departs now.—Where is he going to?—He is going to his friends.—Is he going to the English?—He is going to them (*y*).—Dost thou set out to-morrow?—I set out this evening.—When do you intend to write to your friends?—I intend to write to them to-day.—Do your friends answer you?—They do answer me.—Does your father answer your note?—He answers it.—Do you answer my brothers' notes?—I do answer them.—Does your brother begin to learn Italian?—He begins to learn it.—Can you speak French?—I can speak it a little.—Do our friends begin to speak German?—They

do begin to speak it.—Are they able to write it?—They are able to write it.—Does the merchant begin to sell?—He does begin.—Do you speak before you listen?—I listen before I speak.—Does your brother listen to you before he speaks?—He speaks before he listens to me.—Do your children read before they write?—They write before they read.

## 90.

Does your servant sweep the warehouse before he goes to the market?—He goes to the market before he sweeps the warehouse.—Dost thou drink before thou goest out?—I go out before I drink.—Do you intend to go out before you breakfast?—I intend to breakfast before I go out.—Does your son take off his shoes before he takes off his coat?—He neither takes off his shoes nor his coat.—Do I take off my gloves before I take off my hat?—You take off your hat before you take off your gloves.—Can I take off my shoes before I take off my gloves?—You cannot take off your shoes before you take off your gloves.—At what o'clock do you breakfast?—I breakfast at half-past eight.—At what o'clock does the American breakfast?—He breakfasts every day at nine o'clock.—At what o'clock do your children breakfast?—They breakfast at seven o'clock.—Do you go to my father before you breakfast?—I do go to him before I breakfast.

## TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

### *Vingt-neuvième Leçon.*

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

WE have seen (Lessons XVI. and XXVII.) that the comparative of equality is formed by *autant* and *aussi*, the comparative of superiority by *plus*, and that of inferiority by *moins*. As for the superlative, it is formed by prefixing the definite article with *plus* to the adjective. Ex.

			<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Great,	greater,	greatest.	Grand,	plus grand,	le plus grand.
Small,	smaller,	smallest.	Petit,	plus petit,	le plus petit.
Rich,	richer,	richest.	Riche,	plus riche,	le plus riche.
Poor,	poorer,	poorest.	Pauvre,	plus pauvre,	le plus pauvre.
Learned,	more learned,	most learned.	Savant,	plus savant,	le plus savant.
Often,	oftener,	most often.	Souvent,	plus souvent,	le plus souvent.

This book is small, that is smaller, and this is the smallest of all.

This hat is large, but that is larger.

Is your hat as large as mine?

It is larger than yours.

It is not so large as yours.

Ce livre-ci est petit, celui-là est plus petit, et celui-ci est le plus petit de tous.

Ce chapeau-ci est grand, mais celui-là est plus grand.

Votre chapeau est-il aussi grand que le mien?

Il est plus grand que le vôtre.

Il est moins grand que le vôtre.

*Not so large.*

*Moins grand.*

*Obs. A.* In the same manner as the superlative of superiority is formed by the definite article with *plus*, the superlative of inferiority is sometimes formed by the definite article with *moins*. *E. g.*

	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comparat.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Fine, not so fine, least fine.	Beau,	moins beau,	le moins beau.

Are our neighbour's children as good as ours?	Les enfants de notre voisin sont-ils aussi sages que les nôtres?
They are better than ours.	Ils sont plus sages que les nôtres.
They are not so good as ours.	Ils sont moins sages que les nôtres.

*Obs. B.* To express the absolute superlative, the French, like the English, use one of the adverbs, *très, fort, bien, very; extrêmement, extremely; infiniment, infinitely: e. g.*

A very fine book.	Un très beau livre.
Very fine books.	De très beaux livres.
A very pretty knife.	Un fort joli couteau.
Very well.	Très bien, fort bien.

That man is extremely learned.	Cet homme est extrêmement savant.
This bird is very pretty.	Cet oiseau est très joli.

*Obs. C.* The following adjectives and adverbs are irregular in the formation of the comparatives and superlatives.

## ADJECTIVES.

			<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comparat.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
Good,	better,	best.	Bon,	meilleur,	le meilleur.
Bad,	worse,	the worst.	Mauvais,	pire,	le pire.
Little,	less,	the least.	Petit,	moindre,	le moindre.

## ADVERBS.

Well,	better,	the best.	Bien,	mieux,	le mieux.
Bad,	worse,	the worst.	Mal,	pis,	le pis.
Little,	less,	the least.	Peu,	moins,	le moins.
Much,	more,	the most.	Beaucoup,	plus,	le plus.

*Obs. D.* We may equally and as correctly say: *plus mauvais, plus mal, plus petit*, but never *plus bon, plus bien, plus peu*.

<i>Whose (to whom) ?</i>	'A qui ? (See Lesson XXI.)
Whose hat is this ?	'A qui est ce chapeau ?



<i>It is.</i>	<i>C'est.</i>
It is my brother's hat.	} C'est le chapeau de mon frère.
It is the hat of my brother.	
It is my brother's.	
Who has the finest hat?	} Qui a le plus beau chapeau?
Whose hat is the finest?	
'That of my father is the finest.	
Whose ribbon is the handsomer,	} Celui de mon père est le plus beau.
yours or mine?	
	Quel ruban est le plus beau, le vôtre ou le mien?

Do you read as often as I?	Lisez-vous aussi souvent que moi?
I read oftener than you.	Je lis plus souvent que vous.
Does he read as often as I?	Lit-il aussi souvent que moi?
He reads and writes as often as you.	Il lit et écrit aussi souvent que vous.
Do your children write as much as we?	Vos enfants écrivent-ils autant que nous?
They write more than you.	Ils écrivent plus que vous.
We read more than the children of our friends.	Nous lisons plus que les enfants de nos amis.
To whom do you write?	'A qui écrivez-vous?
We write to our friends.	Nous écrivons à nos amis.
We read good books.	Nous lisons de bons livres.

## EXERCISES.

91.

Whose book is this?—It is mine.—Whose hat is that?—It is my father's.—Are you taller (*grand*) than I?—I am taller than you.—Is your brother as tall as you?—He is as tall as I.—Is thy hat as bad as that of my father?—It is better, but not so black as his.—Are the clothes (*les habits*) of the Italians as fine as those of the Irish?—They are finer, but not so good.—Who have the finest gloves?—The French have them.—Who has the finest horses?—Mine are fine, yours are finer than mine; but those of our friends are the finest of all.—Is your horse good?—It is good, but yours is better, and that of the Englishman is the best of all the horses which we know.—Have you pretty

shoes?—I have very pretty ones, but my brother has prettier ones than I.—From whom (*de qui*) does he receive them?—He receives them from (*de*) his best friend.

## 92.

Is your wine as good as mine?—It is better.—Does your merchant sell good knives?—He sells the best knives that I know (*connaissance*, subjunctive).—Do we read more books than the French?—We read more of them than they; but the English read more of them than we, and the Germans read the most (*le plus*).—Hast thou a finer garden than that of our physician?—I have a finer one than he.—Has the American a finer stick than thou?—He has a finer one.—Have we as fine children as our neighbours?—We have finer ones.—Is your coat as pretty as mine?—It is not so pretty, but better than yours.—Do you depart to-day?—I do not depart to-day.—When does your father set out?—He sets out this evening at a quarter to nine.—Which of these two children is the better (*sage*)?—The one who studies is better than the one who plays.—Does your servant sweep as well as mine?—He sweeps better than yours.—Does the Englishman read as many bad books as good ones?—He reads more good than bad ones.

## 93.

Do the merchants sell more sugar than coffee?—They sell more of the latter than of the former.—Does your shoemaker make as many shoes as mine?—He makes more of them than yours.—Can you swim as well (*aussi bien*) as my son?—I can swim better than he, but he can speak French better than I.—Does he read as well as you?—He reads better than I.—Does the son of your neighbour go to market?—No, he remains at home; he has sore feet.—Do you learn as well as our gardener's son?—I learn better than he, but he works better than I.—Whose gun is the finest?—Yours is very fine, but that of the captain is still finer, and ours is the finest of all.—Has any one finer children than you?—No one has finer ones.—Does your son read as often as I?—He reads oftener than you.—Does my brother speak

French as often as you?—He speaks and reads it as often as I.—Do I write as much as you?—You write more than I.—Do our neighbours' children read German as often as we?—We do not read it so often as they.—Do we write as often as they?—They write oftener than we.—To whom do they write?—They write to their friends.—Do you read English books?—We read French books instead of reading English books. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## THIRTIETH LESSON.

*Trentième Leçon.*


---

To believe, believing.	Croire 4*, croyant.
I believe, thou believest, he believes.	Je crois, tu crois, il croit.

---

<i>To put on, putting on.</i>	<i>Mettre 4*, mettant.</i>
Do you put on?	Mettez-vous?
I do put on.	Je mets.
Thou puttest on.	Tu mets.
He puts on.	Il met.

---

I put on my hat.	Je mets mon chapeau.
He puts on his gloves.	Il met ses gants.
Do you put on your shoes?	Mettez-vous vos souliers?
We do put them on.	Nous les mettons.
What do your brothers put on?	Vos frères que mettent-ils?
They put on their clothes.	Ils mettent leurs habits.
Where do you conduct me to?	Où me conduisez-vous?
I conduct you to my father.	Je vous conduis chez mon père.

---

Do you go out?	Sortez-vous?
I do go out.	Je sors.
Do we go out?	Sortons-nous?
We do go out.	Nous sortons.
When does your father go out?	Quand votre père sort-il?

---

<i>Early.</i>	<i>De bonne heure.</i>
As early as you.	D'aussi bonne heure que vous.
He goes out as early as you.	Il sort d'aussi bonne heure que vous.

<i>Late.</i>	<i>Tard.</i>
<i>Too.</i>	<i>Trop.</i>
Too late.	Trop tard.
Too soon, too early.	Trop tôt, de trop bonne heure.
Too large, too great.	Trop grand.
Too little.	Trop peu.
Too small.	Trop petit.

<i>Too much.</i>	<i>Trop.</i>
------------------	--------------

Do you speak too much ?	Parlez-vous trop ?
I do not speak enough.	Je ne parle pas assez.

<i>Later than you.</i>	<i>Plus tard que vous.</i>
I go out later than you.	Je sors <i>plus tard</i> que vous.

Do you go to the play as early as I ?	Allez-vous au spectacle d'aussi bonne heure que moi ?
I go thither earlier than you.	J'y vais plus tôt (de meilleure heure) que vous.
<i>Earlier (sooner).</i>	<i>Plus tôt (de meilleure heure).</i>
Does your father go thither earlier than I ?	Votre père y va-t-il plus tôt que moi (de meilleure heure que moi) ?
He goes thither too early.	Il y va trop tôt.

<i>Already.</i>	<i>Déjà.</i>
Do you speak already ?	Parlez-vous déjà ?
<i>Not—yet.</i>	<i>Ne—pas encore.</i>
I do not speak yet.	Je ne parle pas encore.
Do you finish your note ?	Finissez-vous votre billet ?
I do not finish it yet.	Je ne le finis pas encore.
Do you breakfast already ?	Déjeunez-vous déjà ?

*Obs. A.* We have seen in the foregoing lessons that the infinitive in French is sometimes preceded by *de* (Lesson XVII.), sometimes by *à* (Lessons XXV. and XXVIII.), sometimes by *pour* (Lesson XX.), and



sometimes it is simply used without any of these prepositions before it. This is the case when it is joined to one of the following verbs, several of which have already been exemplified in some of the preceding lessons, such as; *vouloir*, to wish, to be willing (Lesson XVIII.); *pouvoir*, to be able, can (Lesson XX.); *aller chercher*, to go for; and *envoyer chercher*, to send for (Lesson XXII.); *aller*, to be going to (Lesson XXIII.); *faire voir*, to show (Lesson XXVII.); *compter*, to intend to. (Lessons XXVII. and XXVIII.)

Aller *,	to go.	Nier,	to deny.
Compter,	to intend to.	Oser,	to dare.
Croire *,	to believe.	Paraître *,	to appear.
Daigner,	to deign.	Penser,	to think.
Déclarer,	to declare.	Prétendre,	to pretend.
Devoir,	to owe.	Pouvoir *,	to be able (can).
Entendre,	to hear.	Savoir *,	to know.
Envoyer,	to send.	Sembler,	to appear.
Espérer,	to hope.	Souhaiter,	to wish.
Faillir *,	to miss.	Soutenir *,	to maintain.
Faire *,	to do.	Venir *,	to come.
Falloir *,	to be requisite.	Voir *,	to see.
Laisser,	to let.	Vouloir *,	to be willing.

*Obs. B.* Further, there is no preposition before the infinitive when it is used in an absolute sense.

*To eat too much is dangerous.*

*To speak too much is foolish.*

*To do good to those that have offended us is a commendable action.*

*Manger trop est dangereux.*

*Parler trop est imprudent.*

*Faire du bien à ceux qui nous ont offensés est une action louable.*

## EXERCISES.

94.

Do you put on another coat in order to go to the play?—I do put on another.—Do you put on your gloves before you put on your shoes?—I put on my shoes before I put on my gloves.—Does your brother put on his hat instead of putting on his coat?—He puts on his coat before he puts on his hat.—Do our children

put on their shoes in order to go to our friends?—They put them on in order to go to them (*y*).—What do our sons put on?—They put on their clothes and their gloves.—Do you already speak French?—I do not speak it yet, but I begin to learn.—Does your father go out already?—He does not yet go out.—At what o'clock does he go out?—He goes out at ten o'clock.—Does he breakfast before he goes out?—He breakfasts and writes his notes before he goes out.—Does he go out earlier than you?—I go out earlier than he.—Do you go to the play as often as I?—I go thither as often as you.—Do you begin to know (*connaître*) this man?—I do begin to know him.—Do you breakfast early?—We do not breakfast late.—Does the Englishman go to the concert earlier than you?—He goes there later than I.—At what o'clock does he go thither?—He goes thither at half-past eleven.

## 95.

Do you not go too early to the concert?—I go thither too late.—Do I write too much?—You do not write too much, but you speak too much.—Do I speak more than you?—You do speak more than I and my brother.—Is my hat too large?—It is neither too large nor too small.—Do you speak French oftener than English?—I speak English oftener than French.—Do your friends buy much corn?—They buy but little.—Have you bread enough?—I have only a little, but enough.—Is it late?—It is not late.—What o'clock is it?—It is one o'clock.—Is it too late to (*pour*) go to your father?—It is not too late to go to him.—Do you conduct me to him?—I do conduct you to him.—Where is he?—He is in his counting-house.—Does the Spaniard buy a horse?—He cannot buy one.—Is he poor?—He is not poor; he is richer than you.—Is your brother as learned as you?—He is more learned than I, but you are more learned than he and I.

## 96.

Do you know that man?—I do know him.—Is he learned?—He is (*c'est*) the most learned of all men that I know.—Is your horse worse (preceding Lesson) than mine?—It is not so bad as yours.—Is mine worse than the Spaniard's?—It is worse;

it is the worst horse that I know (*connaître*, subjunctive).—Do you give those men less bread than cheese?—I give them less of the latter than of the former.—Do you receive as much money as your neighbours?—I receive much more than they.—Who receives the most money?—The English receive the most.—Can your son already write a note?—He cannot write one yet, but he begins to read a little.—Do you read as much as the Russians?—We read more than they, but the French read the most.—Do the Americans write more than we?—They write less than we, but the Italians write the least (preceding Lesson).—Are they as rich as the Americans?—They are less rich than they.—Are your birds as fine as those of the Irish?—They are less fine than theirs, but those of the Spaniards are the least fine.—Do you sell your bird?—I do not sell it; I like it too much to (*pour*) sell it.

## THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.

*Trente et unième Leçon.*

## THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

THE past participle being a primitive tense (see Note 1, Less. XXIV.), its formation cannot be determined by another tense. Of regular verbs it may, however, be formed by changing the terminations of the infinitive, for the first conjugation, into *é* with the acute accent, thus: *parler—parlé*; for the second into *i*, thus: *finir—fini*; for the third into *u*, thus: *recevoir—reçu*; and for the fourth also into *u*, thus: *vendre—vendu*. Examples:

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>Inf.</i>		<i>P. P.</i>
Aimer,	to love,	<i>aimé,</i>
Pleurer,	to weep,	<i>pleuré,</i>
Manger,	to eat,	<i>mangé,</i>
Commencer,	to begin,	<i>commencé.</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Devoir,	to owe,	<i>du<sup>1</sup>.</i>
Concevoir,	to conceive,	<i>conçu.</i>
Recevoir,	to receive,	<i>reçu.</i>
Apercevoir,	to perceive,	<i>aperçu.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Inf.</i>		<i>P. P.</i>
Bâtir,	to build,	<i>bâti.</i>
Gémir,	to sigh,	<i>gémi.</i>
Bénir,	to bless,	<i>béni.</i>
Choisir,	to choose,	<i>choisi.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Vendre,	to sell,	<i>vendu.</i>
Rendre,	to render,	<i>rendu.</i>
Entendre,	to hear,	<i>entendu.</i>
Défendre,	to defend,	<i>défendu.</i>

*To be—been.*

Have you been to market?  
I have been there.  
I have not been there.

*Être \*—été<sup>2</sup>.*

Avez-vous été au marché<sup>3</sup>?  
J'y ai été.  
Je n'y ai pas été.

<sup>1</sup> It will be perceived, that in the third conjugation it is not *oir*, but *voir*, which in the past participle must be changed into *u*.

<sup>2</sup> The pupils, in repeating the irregular verbs already given, must not fail to mark in their lists the past participles of those verbs.

<sup>3</sup> *Avoir été* is used for *went* and *did go*. (See Obs. page 145.)

Have I been there?  
 You have been there.  
 You have not been there.  
 Has he been there?  
 He has been there.  
 He has not been there.

Y ai-je été?  
 Vous y avez été.  
 Vous n'y avez pas été.  
 Y a-t-il été?  
 Il y a été.  
 Il n'y a pas été.

*Ever.*

*Never.*

Have you been at the ball?  
 Have you ever been at the ball?  
 I have never been there.  
 Thou hast never been there.  
 He has never been there.  
 You have never been there.

*Jamais.*

*Ne—jamais.*

Avez-vous été au bal?  
 Avez-vous jamais été au bal?  
 Je n'y ai jamais été.  
 Tu n'y as jamais été.  
 Il n'y a jamais été.  
 Vous n'y avez jamais été.

*Already or yet.*

Have you already been at the  
 play?  
 I have already been there.  
 You have already been there.

*Déjà.*

Avez-vous déjà été au spectacle?  
 J'y ai déjà été.  
 Vous y avez déjà été.

*Not yet.*

I have not yet been there.  
 Thou hast not yet been there.  
 He has not yet been there.  
 You have not been there yet.  
 We have not yet been there.

*Ne—pas encore.*

Je n'y ai pas encore été.  
 Tu n'y as pas encore été.  
 Il n'y a pas encore été.  
 Vous n'y avez pas encore été.  
 Nous n'y avons pas encore été.

Have you already been at my  
 father's?  
 I have not yet been there.

Avez-vous déjà été chez mon  
 père?  
 Je n'y ai pas encore été.

Where have you been this morn-  
 ing?

I have been in the garden.  
 Where has thy brother been?  
 He has been in the warehouse.

Où avez-vous été ce matin?

J'ai été au jardin.  
 Ton frère où a-t-il été?  
 Il a été au magasin.



Has he been there as early as I?	Y a-t-il été d'aussi bonne heure que moi ?
He has been there earlier than you.	Il y a été de meilleure heure que vous.

*Obs.* *Été*, past participle of the verb *être*, to be, is in French often employed for *allé*, past participle of the verb *aller*, to go. We say, *J'ai été au spectacle*, when our meaning is, that I went to the play, and am returned from it; and, *il est allé au spectacle*, that he is gone to the play, but is not yet returned. According to this, it is commonly better to say in the first and second persons sing. and plur.: *J'y ai été*, I have been there; *tu y as été*, thou hast been there; *nous y avons été*, we have been there; *vous y avez été*, you have been there,—than, *j'y suis allé*, *tu y es allé*, *nous y sommes allés*, *vous y êtes allés*, when motion is not particularly to be expressed.

## EXERCISES.

97.

Where have you been?—I have been to the market.—Have you been to the ball?—I have been there.—Have I been to the play?—You have been there.—Hast thou been there?—I have not been there.—Has your son ever been at the theatre?—He has never been there.—Hast thou already been in my warehouse?—I have never been there.—Do you intend to (*Obs. A. Lesson XXX.*) go thither?—I do intend to go thither.—When will you go thither?—I will go thither to-morrow.—At what o'clock?—At twelve o'clock.—Has your brother already been in my large garden?—He has not yet been there.—Does he intend to see it?—He does intend to see it.—When will he go thither?—He will go thither to-day.—Does he intend to go to the ball this evening?—He does intend to go thither.—Have you already been at the ball?—I have not yet been there.—When do you intend to go thither?—I intend to go thither to-morrow.—Have you already been in the Frenchman's garden?—I have not yet been in it (*y*).—Have you been in my warehouses?—I have been there.—When did you go there?—I went there this morning.—Have I been in

your counting-house or in that of your friend?—You have neither been in mine, nor in that of my friend, but in that of the Englishman.

## 98.

Has the Italian been in our warehouses or in those of the Dutch?—He has neither been in ours nor in those of the Dutch, but in those of the Germans.—Hast thou already been at the market?—I have not yet been there, but I intend to (Obs *A*. Lesson XXX.) go thither.—Has our neighbour's son been there?—He has been there.—When has he been there?—He has been there to-day.—Does the son of our gardener intend to go to the market?—He does intend to go thither.—What does he wish to buy there?—He wishes to buy there some chickens, oxen, corn, wine, cheese, and cider.—Have you already been at my brother's house (*chez*)?—I have already been there.—Has your friend already been there?—He has not yet been there.—Have we already been at our friends'?—We have not yet been there.—Have our friends ever been at our house (*chez nous*)?—They have never been there.—Have you ever been at the theatre?—I have never been there.—Have you a mind to write an exercise?—I have a mind to write one.—To whom do you wish to write a note?—I wish to write one to my son.—Has your father already been at the concert?—He has not yet been there, but he intends to go thither.—Does he intend to go thither to-day?—He intends to go thither to-morrow.—At what o'clock will he set out?—He will set out at half-past six.—Does he intend to leave (*partir*) before he breakfasts?—He intends to breakfast before he leaves.

## 99.

Have you been to the play as early as I?—I have been there earlier than you.—Have you often been at the concert?—I have often been there.—Has our neighbour been at the theatre as often as we?—He has been there oftener than we.—Do our friends go to their counting-house too early?—They go thither too late.—Do they go thither as late as we?—They go thither later than we.—Do the English go to their warehouses too early?—They go thither too early.—Is your friend as often in the


counting-house as you?—He is there oftener than I.—What does he do there?—He writes.—Does he write as much as you?—He writes more than I.—Where does your friend remain?—He remains in his counting-house.—Does he not go out?—He does not go out.—Do you remain in the garden?—I do remain there.—Do you go to your friend every day?—I do go to him every day.—When does he come to you?—He comes to me every evening.—Do you go any where in the evening?—I go no where; I stay at home.—Do you send for any one?—I send for my physician.—Does your servant go for any thing?—He goes for some wine.—Have you been any where this morning?—I have been no where.—Where has your father been?—He has been no where.—When do you drink (Lesson XXVI.) tea?—I drink some (*le*) every morning.—Does your son drink coffee?—He drinks chocolate.—Have you been to drink some coffee?—I have been to drink some. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.

*Trente-deuxième Leçon.*


---


*To have—had.      |      Avoir \*—eu.*

 A. All objective pronouns, *i. e.* which are not in the nominative, and which in French are placed before the verb, must never stand before the past participle, but before the auxiliary verb.

Have you had my book ?	Avez-vous eu mon livre ?
I have not had it.	Je ne l'ai pas eu.
Have I had it ?	L'ai-je eu ?
You have had it.	Vous l'avez eu.
You have not had it.	Vous ne l'avez pas eu.
Thou hast not had it.	Tu ne l'as pas eu.
Has he had it ?	L'a-t-il eu ?
He has had it.	Il l'a eu.
He has not had it.	Il ne l'a pas eu.
Hast thou had the coat ?	As-tu eu l'habit ?
I have not had it.	Je ne l'ai pas eu.

---

Have you had the books ?      |      Avez-vous eu les livres ?

 B. The past participle in French (the same as the adjective, Obs. Lesson XXII.), when it is preceded by its object, must agree with it in number; that is, if the object is in the plural, the past participle must take an *s*.


I have had them.	Je les ai eus.
I have not had them.	Je ne les ai pas eus.
Have I had them ?	Les ai-je eus ?
You have had them.	Vous les avez eus.
You have not had them.	Vous ne les avez pas eus.
Has he had them ?	Les a-t-il eus ?
He has had them.	Il les a eus.
He has not had them.	Il ne les a pas eus.

Have you had any bread ?  
 I have had some.  
 I have not had any.  
 Have I had any ?  
 You have had some.  
 You have not had any.  
 Has he had any ?  
 He has not had any.

Avez-vous eu du pain ?  
 J'en ai eu.  
 Je n'en ai pas eu.  
 En ai-je eu ?  
 Vous en avez eu.  
 Vous n'en avez pas eu.  
 En a-t-il eu ?  
 Il n'en a pas eu.

Have you had any knives ?  
 I have had some.

Avez-vous eu des couteaux ?  
 J'en ai eu.

 C. The past participle does not agree with its object in number ; that is, if the object is in the plural, the past participle does not take an s when it is preceded by the relative pronoun *en*, some, some of them, any of them.

I have not had any.

| Je n'en ai pas eu.

What has he had ?  
 He has had nothing.

Qu'a-t-il eu ?  
 Il n'a rien eu.

Have you been hungry ?  
 I have been afraid.  
 He has never been either right or wrong.

† Avez-vous eu faim ?  
 † J'ai eu peur.  
 † Il n'a jamais eu ni tort ni raison.

*To take place.*

*That* (meaning, that thing).

Does the ball take place this evening ?

It does take place.

It takes place this evening.

It does not take place to-day.

† *Avoir lieu.*

*Cela.*

† Le bal a-t-il lieu ce soir ?

† Il a lieu.

† Il a lieu ce soir.

† Il n'a pas lieu aujourd'hui.

When did the ball take place ?  
 It took place yesterday.

† Quand le bal a-t-il eu lieu ?  
 † Il a eu lieu hier.



<i>Yesterday.</i>	<i>Hier.</i>
The day before yesterday.	Avant-hier.

How many times (how often) ?	Combien de fois ?
Once.	Une fois.
Twice.	Deux fois.
Thrice (three times).	Trois fois.
Several times.	Plusieurs fois.

Formerly.	Autrefois.
Sometimes.	Quelquefois.

Do you go sometimes to the ball ?	Allez-vous quelquefois au bal ?
I go sometimes.	J'y vais quelquefois.



Gone.	Allé.
Gone thither.	Y—allé.
Have you gone thither some- times ?	Y êtes-vous allé quelquefois ?
I have gone thither often.	J'y suis allé souvent.
Often than you.	Plus souvent que vous.

Have the men had my trunk ?	Les hommes ont-ils eu mon cof- fre ?
They have not had it.	Ils ne l'ont pas eu.
Who has had it ?	Qui l'a eu ?
Have they had my knives ?	Ont-ils eu mes couteaux ?
They have not had them.	Ils ne les ont pas eus.
Who has had them ?	Qui les a eus ?

Have I been wrong in buying books ?	† Ai-je eu tort d'acheter des li- vres ?
You have not been wrong in buy- ing some.	† Vous n'avez pas eu tort d'en acheter.

## EXERCISES.

## 100.

Have you had my pocket-book?—I have had it.—Have you had my glove?—I have not had it.—Hast thou had my umbrella?—I have not had it.—Have I had your knife?—You have had it.—When had I it (*l'ai-je eu*)?—You had it yesterday.—Have I had your gloves?—You have had them.—Has your brother had my wooden hammer (*marteau de bois*)?—He has had it.—Has he had my golden ribbon?—He has not had it.—Have the English had my beautiful ship?—They have had it.—Who has had my thread stockings?—Your servants have had them.—Have we had the iron trunk of our good neighbour?—We have had it.—Have we had his fine pistol?—We have not had it.—Have we had the mattresses of the foreigners?—We have not had them.—Has the American had my good work?—He has had it.—Has he had my silver knife?—He has not had it.—Has the young man had the first volume of my work?—He has not had the first, but (*mais il a eu*) the second.—Has he had it?—Yes, Sir, he has had it.—When has he had it?—He has had it this morning.—Have you had any sugar?—I have had some.—Have I had any good paper?—You have not had any.—Has the cook of the Russian captain had any chickens?—He has had some ( C).—He has not had any ( C).

## 101.

Has the Frenchman had good wine?—He has had some, and he has still (*encore*) some.—Hast thou had large cakes?—I have had some.—Has thy brother had any?—He has not had any.—Has the son of our gardener had any butter?—He has had some.—Have the Poles had good tobacco?—They have had some.—What tobacco have they had?—They have had tobacco and snuff.—Have the English had as much sugar as tea?—They have had as much of the one as of the other.—Has the physician been right?—He has been wrong.—Has the Dutchman been right or wrong?—He has never been either right or wrong.—Have I been wrong in buying honey?—You have been wrong

in buying some.—What has the painter had?—He has had fine pictures.—Has he had any fine gardens?—He has not had any.—Has your servant had my shoes?—He has not had them.—What has the Spaniard had?—He has had nothing.—Who has had courage?—The English sailors have had some.—Have the Germans had many friends?—They have had many.—Have we had more friends than enemies?—We have had more of the latter than of the former.—Has your son had more wine than cider?—He has had more of the latter than of the former.—Has the Turk had more pepper than corn?—He has had less of the latter than of the former.—Has the Italian painter had any thing?—He has had nothing.

## 102.

Have I been right in writing to my brother?—You have not been wrong in writing to him.—Have you had a sore finger?—I have had a sore eye.—Have you had any thing good?—I have had nothing bad.—Did the ball take place yesterday?—It did not take place.—Does it take place to-day?—It takes place to-day.—When does the ball take place?—It takes place this evening.—Did it take place the day before yesterday?—It did take place.—At what o'clock did it take place?—It took place (*à eu lieu*) at eleven o'clock.—Did you go (see Obs. Less. XXXI.) to my brother's?—I went thither.—How often have you been at my friend's house?—I have been there twice.—Do you go sometimes to the theatre?—I go thither sometimes.—How many times have you been at the theatre?—I have been there only once.—Have you sometimes been at the ball?—I have often been there.—Has your brother ever gone to the ball?—He has never gone thither.—Has your father sometimes gone to the ball?—He went (*à été*, see Note 3, and Obs. Lesson XXXI.) thither formerly.—Has he gone thither as often as you?—He has gone thither oftener than I.—Dost thou go sometimes into the garden?—I go thither sometimes.—Hast thou often been there?—I have often been there.—Does your old cook often go to the market?—He goes thither often.—Does he go thither as often as my gardener?—He goes thither oftener than he.—Did that take place?—It did take place.—When did that take place?

## 103.

Have you formerly gone (*avez-vous été*, Note 3, Obs. Lesson XXXI.) to the ball?—I have gone thither sometimes.—When hast thou been at the concert?—I was there (*j'y ai été*) the day before yesterday.—Didst thou find any body there?—I found nobody there (*je n'y ai trouvé*).—Hast thou gone to the ball oftener than thy brothers?—I have not gone thither so often as they.—Has your friend often been at the play?—He has been there several times.—Have you sometimes been hungry?—I have often been hungry.—Has your valet often been thirsty?—He has never been either hungry or thirsty.—Did you go to the play early?—I went thither late.—Did I go to the ball as early as you?—You went thither earlier than I.—Did your brother go thither too late?—He went thither too early.—Have your brothers had any thing?—They have had nothing.—Who has had my sticks and (*et mes*) gloves?—Your servant has had both.—Has he had my hat and (*et mon*) gun?—He has had both.—Hast thou had my horse or my brother's?—I have had neither yours nor your brother's.—Have I had your note or the physician's?—You have had neither the one nor the other.—What has the physician had?—He has had nothing.—Has any body had my golden candlestick?—Nobody has had it.—Has any one had my silver knives?—No one has had them. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

*Trente-troisième Leçon.*

## OF THE PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

THE preterite indefinite (*le prétérit indéfini*) is formed as the perfect tense is in English, *viz.* from the present of the auxiliary and the past participle. Being a compound of the present, it is used to express an action past at a time not far distant from that period, or during a time wholly expired or not. We may, therefore, say : *J'ai étudié ce matin*, I have studied this morning ; *j'ai étudié hier*, I studied yesterday ; *j'ai étudié le mois passé*, I studied last month ; *j'ai étudié ce mois-ci*, I have studied this month.

*To make, to do—made, done.*      *Faire \*—fait.*

What have you done ?

Qu'avez-vous fait ?

I have done nothing.

Je n'ai rien fait.

Has that shoemaker made my shoes ?

Ce cordonnier a-t-il fait mes souliers ?

He has made them.

Il les a faits.

He has not made them.

Il ne les a pas faits.

*To put, to put on—put, put on.*

*Mettre \*—mis.*

Have you put on your shoes ?

Avez-vous mis vos souliers ?

I have put them on.

Je les ai mis.

Have you taken off your gloves ?

Avez-vous ôté vos gants ?

I have taken them off.

Je les ai ôtés.



To tell, to say,—told, said.  
 Have you said the words?  
 I have said them.  
 Have you told me the word?  
 I have told you the word.  
 I have told it you.

Dire \*—dit.  
 Avez-vous dit les mots?  
 Je les ai dits.  
 M'avez-vous dit le mot?  
 Je vous ai dit le mot.  
 Je vous l'ai dit.

The word.  
*That* (meaning, that thing).  
*This* (meaning, this thing).  
 Has he told you that?  
 He has told me that.  
 Have I told you that?  
 You have told me that.

*It.*  
 Have you told it me?  
 I have told it you.  
 I have not told it you.  
 Has he told it you?  
 He has told it me.  
 He has not told it me.  
 Have you told him that?  
 I have told it him (meaning *to him*).  
 You have told it him.  
 He has told it him.

Le mot.  
*Cela.*  
*Ceci.*  
 Vous a-t-il dit cela?  
 Il m'a dit cela.  
 Vous ai-je dit cela?  
 Vous m'avez dit cela.  
*Le.*  
 Me l'avez-vous dit?  
 Je vous l'ai dit.  
 Je ne vous l'ai pas dit.  
 Vous l'a-t-il dit?  
 Il me l'a dit.  
 Il ne me l'a pas dit.  
 Lui avez-vous dit cela?  
 Je le lui ai dit.  
  
 Vous le lui avez dit.  
 Il le lui a dit.

Have you told it them (meaning *to them*)?  
 I have told it them.

Le leur avez-vous dit?  
 Je le leur ai dit.

Have you spoken to the men?  
 I have spoken to them.  
 To whom did you speak?

Avez-vous parlé aux hommes?  
 Je leur ai parlé.  
 'A qui avez-vous parlé?

*Obs. A.* The pronoun *le*, which is sometimes rendered into English by *so*, and more elegantly omitted, may in French relate to a substantive, an adjective, or even a whole sentence. It alters neither gender nor number when it relates to an adjective or a whole sentence.

Are you the brother of my friend ?	Êtes-vous le frère de mon ami ?
I am.	Je <i>le</i> suis.
Are you rich ?	Êtes-vous riche ?
I am not.	Je ne <i>le</i> suis pas.
Is he learned ?	Est-il savant ?
He is.	Il l'est.
He is not.	Il ne l'est pas.
Are our neighbours as poor as they say ?	Nos voisins sont-ils aussi pauvres qu'ils <i>le</i> disent ?
They are so.	Ils <i>le</i> sont.
Did your brother go to the ball the day before yesterday ?	Votre frère a-t-il été au bal avant-hier ?
I do not know.	Je ne <i>le</i> sais pas.

To write—written.	Écrire *—écrit.
Which notes have you written ?	Quels billets avez-vous écrits ?
I have written these.	J'ai écrit ceux-ci.
Which words has he written ?	Quels mots a-t-il écrits ?
He has written those which you see.	Il a écrit ceux que vous voyez.

To drink,	drunk.	Boire *,	bu.
To see,	seen.	Voir *,	vu.
To read,	read.	Lire *,	lu.
To be acquainted with, been acquainted with.		Connaître *,	connu.

Which men have you seen ?	Quels hommes avez-vous vus ?
I have seen those.	J'ai vu ceux-là.
Which books have you read ?	Quels livres avez-vous lus ?
I have read those which you have lent me.	J'ai lu ceux que vous m'avez prêtés.
Have you been acquainted with these men ?	Avez-vous connu ces hommes ?
I have not been acquainted with them.	Je ne les ai pas connus.

Have you seen any sailors ?  
 I have seen some.  
 I have not seen any.

Avez-vous vu des matelots ?  
 J'en ai vu.  
 Je n'en ai pas vu. (See ~~Obs~~ C.  
 Lesson XXXII.)

*To call.*

*To throw, throw away.*

Do you call me ?  
 I do call you.

*Appeler* 1.

*Jeter* 1.

M'appellez-vous ?  
 Je vous appelle.

*Obs. B.* In verbs ending *eler* and *eter*, as *appeler*, to call ; *jeter*, to throw ; the letter *l* or *t* is doubled in all persons or tenses where it is followed by *e* mute <sup>1</sup>.

Who calls me ?  
 Your father calls you.  
 Have you called the men ?  
 I have called them.  
 Do you throw your money away ?  
 I do not throw it away.  
 Who throws away his books ?  
 Have you thrown away any thing ?  
 I have thrown away my gloves.  
 Have you thrown them away ?

Qui m'appelle ?  
 Votre père vous appelle.  
 Avez-vous appelé les hommes ?  
 Je les ai appelés.  
 Jetez-vous votre argent ?  
 Je ne le jette pas.  
 Qui jette ses livres ?  
 Avez-vous jeté quelque chose ?  
 J'ai jeté mes gants.  
 Les avez-vous jetés ?

## EXERCISES.

104.

Have you any thing to do ?—I have nothing to do.—What hast thou done ?—I have done nothing.—Have I done any thing ?—You have done something.—What have I done ?—You have torn my books.—What have your children done ?—They have torn their clothes.—What have we done ?—You have done nothing ; but your brothers have burnt my fine pencils.—Has the tailor already made your coat ?—He has not yet made it.—Has your shoemaker already made your shoes ?—He has already made them.—Have you sometimes made a hat ?—I have never made one.—Have our neighbours ever made books ?—They

<sup>1</sup> Custom, however, does not observe this rule with regard to the verb *acheter*, to buy (See *Obs. A.* Lesson XXV.), and its compound, *racheter*, to redeem, to buy again.

made (*—ont fait*) some formerly.—How many coats has your tailor made?—He has made twenty or thirty.—Has he made good or bad coats?—He has made (both) good and bad.—Has your father put on his coat?—He has not yet put it on, but he is going to put it on.—Has your brother put his shoes on?—He has put them on.—Have our neighbours put on their shoes and their stockings?—They have put on neither (*ni ceux-ci ni ceux-là*).—What has the physician taken away?—He has taken away nothing.—What have you taken off?—I have taken off my large hat.—Have your children taken off their gloves?—They have taken them off.—When did the ball take place?—It took place the day before yesterday.—Who has told you that?—My servant has told it me.—What has your brother told you?—He has told me nothing.—Did I tell you that?—You did not tell it me.—Has he told it you?—He has told it me.—Who has told it your neighbour?—The English have told it him.—Have they told it to the French?—They have told it them.—Who has told it you?—Your son has told it me.—Has he told it you?—He has told it me.—Are you willing to tell your friends that?—I am willing to tell it them.



## 105.

Are you the brother of that young man?—I am.—Is that young man your son?—He is.—Are your friends as rich as they say?—They are so.—Are these men as learned as they say?—They are not so.—Do you sweep the warehouse often?—I sweep it as often as I can (*que je le puis*).—Has our neighbour money enough to buy some coals?—I do not know.—Did your brother go to the ball yesterday?—I do not know.—Has your cook gone to the market?—He has not gone thither.—Is he ill (*malade*)? He is.—Am I ill (*malade*)?—You are not.—Are you as tall (*grand*) as I?—I am.—Are you as fatigued as your brother?—I am more so than he.—Have you written a note?—I have not written a note, but (*mais j'ai écrit*) an exercise.—What have your brothers written?—They have written their exercises.—When did they write them?—They wrote (*ont écrits*) them yesterday.—Have you written your exercises?—I have written them.—Has your friend written his?—He has not written them yet.—Which exercises has your little brother written?—He has written his own.—Have



you spoken to my father?—I have spoken to him.—When did you speak to him?—I spoke to him (—*lui ai parlé*) the day before yesterday.—How many times have you spoken to the captain?—I have spoken to him several times.—Have you often spoken to his son?—I have often spoken to him.—To which men has your friend spoken?—He has spoken to these and to those.

## 106.

Have you spoken to the Russians?—I have spoken to them.—Have the English ever spoken to you?—They have often spoken to me.—What has the German told you?—He has told me the words.—Which words has he told you?—He has told me these words.—What have you to tell me?—I have a few words to tell you.—Which exercises has your friend written?—He has written those.—Which men have you seen at the market?—I have seen these.—Which books have your children read?—They have read those which you have lent them.—Have you seen these men or those?—I have neither seen these nor those.—Which men have you seen?—I have seen those to whom (*à qui*) you have spoken.—Have you been acquainted with these men?—I have been acquainted with them.—With which boys has your brother been acquainted?—He has been acquainted with those of our merchant.—Have I been acquainted with these Frenchmen?—You have not been acquainted with them.—Which wine has your servant drunk?—He has drunk mine.—Have you seen my brothers?—I have seen them.—Where have you seen them?—I have seen them at their own house (*chez eux*).—Have you ever seen Greeks?—I have never seen any ( C. Lesson XXXII.).—Has your father seen any?—He has sometimes seen some ( C. Lesson XXXII.).—Do you call me?—I do call you.—Who calls your brother?—My father calls him.—Dost thou call any one?—I call no one.—Have you thrown away your hat?—I have not thrown it away.—Does your father throw away any thing?—He throws away the notes which he receives.—Have you thrown away your pencils?—I have not thrown them away.—Dost thou throw away thy book?—I do not throw it away; I want it (Lesson XXIII.) to (*pour*) study French.



## THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Trente-quatrième Leçon.*

		<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
To extinguish,	extinguished.	Éteindre *,	éteint.
To open,	opened.	Ouvrir *,	ouvert.
To conduct,	conducted.	Conduire *,	conduit.
To take,	taken.	Prendre *,	pris.
To believe,	believed.	Croire *,	cru.
To be able (can),	been able (could).	Pouvoir *,	pu.
To know,	known.	Savoir *,	su.
To be willing,	been willing.	Vouloir *,	voulu.

## NEUTER VERBS.

In neuter verbs the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent. They are conjugated like the active. The latter, however, always form their past tenses with the auxiliary *avoir* \*, to have; on the contrary, some neuter verbs take *être* \*, to be, and others *avoir* \*, for their auxiliary; others again take sometimes *avoir* \*, and sometimes *être* \*, according as action or state is more particularly meant. Their past participles must agree in gender and number with the subject. Those neuter verbs which are conjugated with the auxiliary *être* \* in French, and *to have* in English, will always be marked.

To set out,	set out ( <i>past part.</i> ).	Partir *,	parti.
To go out,	gone out.	Sortir *,	sorti.
To come,	come ( <i>past part.</i> ).	Venir *,	venu.

Has your father set out?  
 Have your friends set out?  
 They have not set out.

Votre père est-il parti?  
 Vos amis sont-ils partis?  
 Ils ne sont pas partis.

When did your brothers go out?  
They went out at ten o'clock.

Quand vos frères sont-ils sortis?  
Ils sont sortis à dix heures.

Did the men come to your father?  
They did come to him.

Les hommes sont-ils venus chez  
votre père?  
Ils y sont venus.

Which fires have you extinguished?

Quels feux avez-vous éteints?

Which storehouses have you opened?

Quels magasins avez-vous ouverts?

Have you conducted them to the storehouse?

Les avez-vous conduits au magasin?

I have conducted them thither.

Je les y ai conduits.

Which books have you taken?

Quels livres avez-vous pris?

How many notes have you received?

Combien de billets avez-vous reçus?

I received but one.

Je n'en ai reçu qu'un.

*Upon.*

Upon the bench.

The bench.

Upon it.

*Sur* (preposition).

Sur le banc.

Le banc.

Dessus (adverb).

*Under.*

Under the bench.

Under it (underneath).

Where is my hat?

It is upon the bench.

Are my gloves on the bench?

They are under it.

*Sous* (preposition).

Sous le banc.

Dessous (adverb).

Où est mon chapeau?

Il est sur le banc.

Mes gants sont-ils sur le banc?

Ils sont dessous.

Do you learn to read?

I do (learn it).

I learn to write.

Have you learnt to speak?

I have (learnt it).

Apprenez-vous à lire?

Je l'apprends.

J'apprends à écrire.

Avez-vous appris à parler?

Je l'ai appris.

In the storehouse.

In the stove.

*In it or within.*

The stove.

Dans le magasin.

Dans le poêle.

*Dedans.*

Le poêle.

*To wash.*

To get or to have mended, got or had mended.

To get or to have washed, got or had washed.

To get or to have made, got or had made.

To get or to have swept, got or had swept.

To get or to have sold, got or had sold.

*Laver* 1.

† Faire raccommoder, fait raccommoder.

† Faire laver, fait laver.

† Faire faire, fait faire.

† Faire balayer, fait balayer.

† Faire vendre, fait vendre.

To get the coat mended.

To have it mended.

To get them mended.

To get some mended.

Are you getting a coat made (do you order a coat)?

I am getting one made (I order one).

I have had one made.

Have you had your coat mended?

I have had it mended.

I have not had it mended.

I have had my shoes mended.

I have had them mended.

*To wipe.*

Have you not seen my book?

I have seen it.

† Faire raccommoder l'habit.

† Le faire raccommoder.

† Les faire raccommoder.

† En faire raccommoder.

† Faites-vous faire un habit?

† J'en fais faire un.

† J'en ai fait faire un.

† Avez-vous fait raccommoder votre habit?

† Je l'ai fait raccommoder.

† Je ne l'ai pas fait raccommoder.

† J'ai fait raccommoder mes souliers.

† Je les ai fait raccommoder.

*Essuyer* 1. (See Obs. D. Less. XXIV.)

N'avez-vous pas vu mon livre?

Je l'ai vu.

When?—Where?  
 When did you see my brother?  
 I saw him the day before yesterday.  
 Where have you seen him?  
 I have seen him at the theatre.

Quand?—Où<sup>1</sup>?  
 Quand avez-vous vu mon frère?  
 Je l'ai vu avant-hier.  
 Où l'avez-vous vu?  
 Je l'ai vu au théâtre.

## EXERCISES.

107.


Where are your brothers gone to?—They are gone to the theatre.—Have your friends left (*partir\**)?—They have not yet left.—When do they set out?—This evening.—At what o'clock?—At half-past nine.—When did the French boys come to your brother?—They came to him yesterday.—Did their friends also (*aussi*) come?—They came also.—Has any one come to us?—The good Germans have come to us.—Who has come to the English?—The French have come to them.—When did you drink any wine?—I drank some yesterday and to-day.—Has the servant carried my note?—He has carried it.—Where has he carried it?—He has carried it to your friend.—Which notes have you carried?—I have carried those which you have given me to carry.—Whom have you carried them to?—I have carried them to your father.—Which books has your servant taken?—He has taken those which you do not read.—Have your merchants opened their storehouses?—They have opened them.—Which storehouses have they opened?—They have opened those which you have seen.—When have they opened them?—They have opened them to-day.—Have you conducted the foreigners to the storehouse?—I have conducted them thither.—Which fires have the men extinguished?—They have extinguished those which you have perceived (*aperçus*).—Have you received any notes?—We have received some.—How many notes have you received?—I have received only one; but my brother has received more than I: he has received six.

<sup>1</sup> Learners ought now to use in their exercises the adverbs of time, place, and number, mentioned in Lessons XIX. XXII. XXIII. and XXXII.

## 108.

Where is my coat?—It is upon the bench.—Are my shoes upon the bench?—They are under it.—Are the coals under the bench?—They are in the stove.—Have you put any wood into the stove?—I have put some into it.—Are you cold?—I am not cold.—Is the wood which I have seen in the stove?—It is in it.—Are my papers upon the stove?—They are in it (within).—Have you not been afraid to burn my papers?—I have not been afraid to burn them.—Have you sent your little boy to market?—I have sent him thither.—When did you send him thither?—This morning.—Have you written to your father?—I have written to him.—Has he answered you?—He has not yet answered me.—Are you getting your floor swept?—I am getting it swept.—Have you had your counting-house swept?—I have not had it swept yet, but I intend to have it swept to-day.—Have you wiped your feet?—I have wiped them.—Where did you wipe your feet?—I wiped them upon the (*au*) carpet.—Have you had your benches wiped?—I have had them wiped.—What does your servant wipe?—He wipes the knives.—Have you ever written to the physician?—I have never written to him.—Has he sometimes written to you?—He has often written to me.—What has he written to you?—He has written something to me.—How many times have your friends written to you?—They have written to me more than twenty times.—Have you seen my sons?—I have never seen them.

## 109.

Have you ever seen any Greeks?—I have never seen ( C. Lesson XXXI.) any.—Have you already seen a Syrian?—I have already seen one.—Where have you seen one?—At the theatre.—Have you given the book to my brother?—I have given it to him.—Have you given money to the merchant?—I have given him some.—How much have you given to him?—I have given to him fourteen crowns.—Have you given any gold ribbons to our neighbours' children?—I have given them some.—Wilt thou give me some wine?—I have given you some already.—When didst thou give me some?—I gave you some formerly.—



Wilt thou give me some now?—I cannot give you any; I have none.—Has the American lent you money?—He has lent me some.—Has he often lent you some?—He has sometimes lent me some.—Has the Italian ever lent you money?—He has never lent me any.—Is he poor?—He is not poor; he is richer than you.—Will you lend me a crown?—I will lend you two.—Has your boy come to mine?—He has come to him.—When?—This morning.—At what time?—Early.—Has he come earlier than I?—At what o'clock did you come?—I came at half-past five.—He has come earlier than you.

## 110.

Has the concert taken place?—It has taken place.—Has it taken place late?—It has taken place early.—At what o'clock?—At twelve.—At what o'clock has the ball taken place?—It has taken place at midnight.—Does your brother learn to write?—He does learn.—Does he know how (Lesson XXVII.) to read?—He does not know how yet.—Do you know the Frenchman whom I know?—I do not know the one whom you know, but I know another.—Does your friend know the same merchants as I know?—He does not know the same, but he knows others.—Have you ever had your coat mended?—I have sometimes had it mended.—Hast thou already had thy shoes mended?—I have not yet had them mended.—Has your brother sometimes had his stockings mended?—He has had them mended several times.—Hast thou had thy hat or thy shoe mended?—I have neither had the one nor the other mended.—Have you had your stockings or your gloves washed?—I have neither had the one nor the other washed.—Has your father had any thing made?—He has not had any thing made.—Have you looked for my gloves?—I have looked for them.—Where have you looked for them?—I have looked for them upon the bed, and have found them under it.—Have you found my notes in the stove?—I have found them in it.—Have you found my stockings under the bed?—I have found them upon it. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON.

*Trente-cinquième Leçon.*


---

<i>To promise—promised.</i>	<i>Promettre 4*—promis (takes de before the infin.)</i>
<i>To learn—learnt.</i>	<i>Apprendre 4*—appris.</i>

*Obs. A.* Compound and derivative verbs are conjugated like their primitives : thus the verb *promettre* \* is conjugated like *mettre* \*, to put (Lessons XXX. and XXXIII.), the verb *apprendre* \*, like *prendre* \*, to take. (Lessons XXVI. and XXXIV.)

Do you promise me <i>to come</i> ?	Me promettez-vous <i>de venir</i> ?
I do promise you.	Je vous le promets.
What have you promised the man?	Qu'avez-vous promis à l'homme?
I have promised him nothing.	Je ne lui ai rien promis.
Have you ever learnt French?	Avez-vous jamais appris le français?
I learnt it formerly.	Je l'ai appris autrefois.

---

<i>To wear out.</i>	<i>User 1.</i>
<i>To refuse.</i>	<i>Refuser 1 (de before infin.).</i>
<i>To spell.</i>	<i>Épeler 1. (See Obs. Lesson XXXIII.)</i>

---

<i>How ?</i>	<i>Comment ?</i>
Well.	Bien.
Badly.	Mal.

---

<i>So, thus.</i>	<i>Ainsi.</i>
<i>So so.</i>	<i>Comme cela.</i>
<i>In this manner.</i>	† <i>De cette manière.</i>

How has your brother written his exercise?

He has written it well.

Comment votre frère a-t-il écrit son thème?

Il l'a bien écrit.

*To dry.*

Do you put your coat to dry?

I do put it to dry.

*Sécher 1.*

Mettez-vous votre habit à sécher?

Je le mets à sécher.

How old are you?

I am twelve years old.

How old is your brother?

He is thirteen years old.

† Quel âge avez-vous?

† J'ai douze ans.

† Quel âge votre frère a-t-il?

† Il a treize ans.

*Almost.*

He is almost fourteen years old.

*About.*

I am about fifteen years old.

*Nearly.*

He is nearly fifteen years old.

*Hardly.*

You are hardly seventeen years old.

*Not quite.*

I am not quite sixteen years old.

*Presque.*

† Il a presque quatorze ans.

*Environ.*

† J'ai environ quinze ans.

*Près de.*

† Il a près de quinze ans.

*À peine.*

† Vous avez à peine dix-sept ans.

*Pas tout-à-fait.*

† Je n'ai pas tout-à-fait seize ans.

Art thou older than thy brother?

I am younger than he.

Old (in years).

Es-tu plus âgé que ton frère?

Je suis plus jeune que lui.

Âgé.

*There is, there are.*

How many francs are there in a crown?

Three.

There are five centimes in a sou.

There are twenty sous or a hundred centimes in one franc.

A or one hundred.

The centime.

*Il y a.*

Combien de francs y a-t-il dans un écu?

Trois.

Il y a cinq centimes dans un sou.

Il y a vingt sous ou cent centimes dans un franc.

Cent.

Le centime.

*To understand.*

To hear, to understand.  
 To wait for, to expect.  
 To lose.

*Comprendre* 4\*. (Conj. like  
*prendre*\*, Les. XXVI. & XXXIV.)  
*Entendre* 4.  
*Attendre* 4.  
*Perdre* 4.

Do you understand me?

{ *Me comprenez-vous?*  
 { *M'entendez-vous?*

I do understand you.

{ *Je vous comprends.*  
 { *Je vous entends.*

Have you understood the man?

*Avez-vous compris l'homme?*

I have understood him.

*Je l'ai compris.*

I hear you, but I do not understand you.

*Je vous entends, mais je ne vous comprends pas.*

The noise.

*Le bruit.*

The wind.

*Le vent.*

The noise (roaring) of the wind.

*Le bruit du vent.*

Do you hear the roaring of the wind?

*Entendez-vous le bruit du vent?*

I do hear it.

*Je l'entends.*

*To bark.*

*Aboyer* 1.

The barking.

(See Obs. D. Less. XXIV.)

*L'aboiement.*

Have you heard the barking of the dogs?

*Avez-vous entendu l'aboiement des chiens?*

I have heard it.

*Je l'ai entendu.*

To wait for some one or something.

{ *Attendre quelqu'un ou quelque chose.*

To expect some one or something.

Are you waiting for my brother?

*Attendez-vous mon frère?*

I am waiting for him.

*Je l'attends.*

Do you expect some friends?

*Attendez-vous des amis?*

I do expect some.

*J'en attends quelques-uns.*

How much has your brother lost ?	Combien votre frère a-t-il perdu ?
He has lost about a crown.	Il a perdu environ un écu.
I have lost more than he.	J'ai perdu plus que lui.

<i>To remain.</i>	<i>Rester</i> 1 (takes more frequently <i>être</i> than <i>avoir</i> for its auxiliary <sup>1</sup> .)
The nobleman.	Le gentilhomme.
Noblemen.	Les gentilshommes.

*Obs. B.* When a word is composed of a noun and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural<sup>2</sup>.

Genteel, pretty.	Gentil.
Where has the nobleman remained ?	Où le gentilhomme est-il resté ?
He has remained at home.	Il est resté à la maison.
Have you remained with him ?	Êtes-vous resté avec lui.
<i>With.</i>	<i>Avec.</i>

## EXERCISES.

111.

Do you promise me to come to the ball ?—I do promise you.—Have I promised you any thing ?—You have promised me nothing.—What has my father promised you ?—He has promised me a fine book.—Have you received it ?—Not yet.—Do you give me what (*ce que*) you have promised me ?—I give it you.—Has your friend received much money ?—He has received but

<sup>1</sup> This verb takes *avoir* when it signifies *to live in*, and *être*, when it signifies *to remain*. Ex. *J'ai resté sept mois à Colmar sans partir de ma chambre* (Voltaire); I remained (lived) seven months at Colmar without leaving my room. Je l'attendais à Paris, mais il *est resté* à Lyon (The French Academy), I waited for him in Paris, but he remained at Lyons. Cependant Télémaque *était resté* seul avec Mentor (Fénélon), Telemachus, however, had remained alone with Mentor.

<sup>2</sup> Except the adjective *demi*, half, which does not take it. (See Note 2, Lesson XIX.)



little.—How much has he received?—He has received but one crown.—How much money have you given to my son?—I have given him thirty francs.—Have you not promised him more?—I have given him what (*ce que*) I promised him.—Have you any French money?—I have some.—What money have you?—I have francs, sous, and centimes.—How many sous are there (*y a-t-il*) in a franc?—There are twenty sous in a franc.—Have you any centimes?—I have a few.—How many centimes are there in a sou?—There are five.—And how many are there in a franc?—One hundred.—Will you lend me your coat?—I will lend it you, but it is worn out.—Are your shoes worn out?—They are not worn out.—Will you lend them to my brother?—I will lend them to him.—To whom have you lent your hat?—I have not lent it; I have given it to somebody.—To whom have you given it?—I have given it to a pauper (*à un pauvre*).

## 112.

Does your little brother already know how to spell?—He does know.—Does he spell well?—He does spell well.—How has your little boy spelt?—He has spelt soso.—How have your children written their exercises?—They have written them badly.—Has my neighbour lent you his gloves?—He has refused to (*de*) lend them to me.—Do you know Spanish?—I know it.—Does your son speak Italian?—He speaks it well.—How do your friends speak?—They do not speak badly.—Do they listen to what you tell them?—They listen to it.—How hast thou learnt English?—I have learnt it in this manner.—Have you called me?—I have not called you, but I have called your brother.—Is he come?—Not yet.—Where did you wet your clothes?—I wetted them in the garden.—Will you put them to dry?—I have already put them to dry.—Does the nobleman wish to give me any thing to do?—He wishes to give you something to do.—How old are you?—I am hardly eighteen years old.—How old is your brother?—He is twenty years old.—Are you as old as he?—I am not so old.—How old art thou?—I am about twelve years old.—Am I younger than you?—I do not know.—How old is our neighbour?—He is not quite thirty

years old.—Are our friends as young as we?—They are older than we.—How old are they?—The one is nineteen, and the other twenty years old.—Is your father as old as mine?—He is older than yours.

## 113.

Have you read my book?—I have not quite read it yet.—Has your friend finished his books?—He has almost finished them.—Do you understand me?—I do understand you.—Does the Frenchman understand us?—He does understand us.—Do you understand what (*ce que*) we are telling you?—We do understand it.—Dost thou understand French?—I do not understand it yet, but I am learning it.—Do we understand the English?—We do not understand them.—Do the English understand us?—They do understand us.—Do we understand them?—We hardly understand them.—Do you hear any noise?—I hear nothing.—Have you heard the roaring of the wind?—I have heard it.—What do you hear?—I hear the barking of the dogs.—Whose (Lesson XXIX.) dog is this?—It is the dog of the Scotchman.—Have you lost your stick?—I have not lost it.—Has your servant lost my notes?—He has lost them.—Did you go to the ball?—I did not go to it (*y*).—Where did you remain?—I remained at home.—Where did the noblemen remain?—They remained in the garden.—Has your father lost as much money as I?—He has lost more than you.—How much have I lost?—You have hardly lost a crown.—Did your friends remain at the ball?—They remained there.—Do you know as much as the English physician?—I do not know as much as he.—How many books have you read?—I have hardly read two.—Do you wait for any one?—I wait for no one.—Are you waiting for the man whom I saw this morning?—I am waiting for him.—Art thou waiting for thy book?—I am waiting for it.—Do you expect your father this evening?—I do expect him.—Do you expect some friends?—I do expect some. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Trente-sixième Leçon.*

To beat—beaten.  
To bite—bitten.

Battre 4—battu.  
Mordre 4—mordu.

*Why ?*  
Why do you beat the dog ?  
*Because.*  
I beat it, because it has bitten me.

*Pourquoi ?*  
Pourquoi battez-vous le chien ?  
*Parce que.*  
Je le bats, parce qu'il m'a mordu.

To owe—owed.  
How much do you owe me ?  
I owe you fifty crowns.  
How much does the man owe you ?  
He owes me sixty francs.  
Do our neighbours owe as much as we ?  
We owe more than they.  
How much dost thou owe ?  
Two hundred francs.  
Eighty francs.  
Eighty-three francs.  
Two hundred and fifty francs.

Devoir 3—dû.  
Combien me devez-vous ?  
Je vous dois cinquante écus.  
Combien l'homme vous doit-il ?  
Il me doit soixante francs.  
Nos voisins doivent-ils autant que nous ?  
Nous devons plus qu'eux.  
Combien dois-tu ?  
Deux cents francs.  
Quatre-vingts francs.  
Quatre-vingt-trois francs.  
Deux cent cinquante francs.

*Obs. A.* From the above it may be seen that to *quatre-vingt* and *cent* no *s* is added when they are followed by another numeral.

Are you to . . ?  
I am to ..

† Devez-vous . . ?  
Je dois ..

Where are you to go to this morning?

I am to go to the warehouse.

Is your brother to come hither to-day?

*Soon, shortly.*

He is to come hither soon.

† Où devez-vous aller ce matin?

† Je dois aller au magasin.

† Votre frère doit-il venir ici aujourd'hui?

*Bientôt.*

† Il doit venir ici bientôt.

*To return (to come back).*

At what o'clock do you return from the market?

I return *from it* at twelve o'clock.

*From it, from there, thence.*

Does the servant return early from the warehouse?

He returns from it at six o'clock *in the morning*.

At nine o'clock *in the morning*.

At five o'clock *in the evening*.

At eleven o'clock *at night*.

*Revenir* 2\* (is conjugated like its primitive *venir* \*, to come, Lessons XXIV. and XXXIV.)

'A quelle heure revenez-vous du marché?

*J'en* reviens à midi.

*En.*

Le domestique revient-il de bonne heure du magasin?

Il *en* revient à six heures *du matin*.

† 'A neuf heures *du matin*.

† 'A cinq heures *du soir*.

† 'A onze heures *du soir*.

*How long?*

*During, for.*

How long has he remained there?

A minute.

An hour.

A day.

A month.

A year.

*Combien de temps?*

*Pendant.*

Combien de temps y est-il resté?

Pendant <sup>1</sup> une minute <sup>2</sup>.

Pendant une heure <sup>2</sup>.

Pendant un jour.

Pendant un mois.

Pendant une année <sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> The adverb *pendant*, when it signifies *for* may be left out in French as in English, but it is then understood.

<sup>2</sup> *Minute, heure, and année*, are feminine nouns, of which the indefinite article is *une*, a, one, and the definite *la*, whose plural (*les*) is the same as that of *le*. Feminine nouns take, like masculine nouns, an *s* in the plural, as will be seen hereafter.

The summer.

L'été.

The winter.

L'hiver.

*Obs. B.* The names of seasons, months, and days, are of the masculine gender, except *l'automne*, autumn, which is both masculine and feminine. (See Notes 1, 2, in my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.)

During the summer.

Pendant l'été.

*To dwell, to live, to reside,  
to remain.*

*Demeurer* 1<sup>3</sup>.

Where do you live?

Où demeurez-vous?

I live in William-street, number twenty-five.

Je demeure (dans la) rue <sup>4</sup> Guillaume, (au) numéro vingt-cinq<sup>5</sup>.

Where did your brother live?

Où votre frère a-t-il demeuré?

He lived in Rivoli-street, number forty-nine.

Il a demeuré (dans la) rue de Rivoli, (au) numéro quarante-neuf<sup>5</sup>.

Dost thou live at thy brother's house?

Demeures-tu chez ton frère?

I do not live at his, but at my father's house.

Je ne demeure pas chez lui, mais chez mon père.

Does your friend still live where I lived?

Votre ami demeure-t-il encore où j'ai demeuré?

He lives no longer where you lived.

Il ne demeure plus où vous avez demeuré.

*No longer.**Ne—plus.*

The number.

Le numéro.

How long were you speaking to the man?

Combien de temps avez-vous parlé à l'homme?

I spoke to him for two hours.

Je lui ai parlé pendant deux heures.

Did you remain long with my father?

Êtes-vous resté long-temps chez mon père?

I remained with him an hour.

J'y suis resté une heure.

Long.

Long-temps.

<sup>3</sup> The verb *demeurer* takes *avoir* for its auxiliary when it means *to live in*, and *être* when it signifies *to remain*. Ex. Il a demeuré à Paris, he has lived in Paris; il est demeuré court en haranguant le roi, he stopped short in haranguing the king.

<sup>4</sup> *La rue*, the street, is also a feminine noun.

<sup>5</sup> *Dans la* before *rue*, and *au* before *numéro* have been put between parentheses, because they are generally omitted, but understood.



## EXERCISES.

## 114.

Why do you not drink?—I do not drink because I am not thirsty.—Why do you pick up this ribbon?—I pick it up, because I want it.—Why do you lend money to this man?—I lend him money (*en*) because he wants some.—Why does your brother study?—He studies, because he wishes to learn French.—Has your cousin drunk already?—He has not yet drunk, because he has not yet been thirsty.—Does the servant show you the floor which he sweeps?—He does not show me that which he sweeps now, but that which he swept (*qu'il a balayé*) yesterday.—Why do you love that man?—I love him, because he is good.—Why does your neighbour beat his dog?—Because it has bitten his boy.—Why do our friends love us?—They love us because we are good.—Why do you bring me wine?—I bring you some because you are thirsty.—Why does the sailor drink?—He drinks because he is thirsty.—Do you see the sailor who is in (*sur*) the ship?—I do not see the one who is in the ship, but the one who is in the (*au*) market.—Do you read the books which my father has given you?—I do read them.—Do you understand them?—I understand them so so.—Do you know the Italians whom we know?—We do not know those whom you know, but we know others.—Does the shoemaker mend the shoes which you have sent him?—He does not mend them, because they are worn out.

## 115.

Is your servant returned from market?—He is not yet returned from it.—At what o'clock did your brother return from the ball?—He returned from it at one o'clock in the morning.—At what o'clock didst thou come back from thy friend?—I came back (*en*) at eleven o'clock in the morning.—Didst thou remain long with him?—I remained with him about an hour.—How long do you intend to remain at the ball?—I intend to remain there a few minutes.—How long did the Frenchman remain with you?—He remained with me for two hours.—How long did your brothers remain in town (*à la ville*)?—They remained there during the win-

ter.—Do you intend to remain long with us?—I intend to remain with you during the summer.—How much do I owe you?—You do not owe me much.—How much do you owe your tailor?—I owe him eighty francs.—How much dost thou owe thy shoemaker?—I owe him already eighty-five francs.—Do I owe you any thing?—You owe me nothing.—How much does the Englishman owe you?—He owes me more than you.—Do the English owe as much as the Spaniards?—Not quite so much.—Do I owe you as much as my brother?—You owe me more than he.—Do our friends owe you as much as we?—They owe me less than you.—How much do they owe you?—They owe me two hundred and fifty francs.—How much do we owe you?—You owe me three hundred francs.

## 116.

Why do you give money to the merchant?—I give him some, because he has sold me something.—Whither are you to go?—I am to go to the market.—Is your friend to come hither to-day?—He is to come hither.—When is he to come hither?—He is to come hither soon.—When are our sons to go to the play?—They are to go thither to-night (*ce soir*).—When are they to return from it?—They are to return from it at half-past ten.—When are you to go to the physician?—I am to go to him at ten o'clock at night.—When is your son to return from (*de chez*) the painter's?—He is to return from him (*en*) at five o'clock in the evening.—Where do you live?—I live in Rivoli-street, number forty-seven.—Where does your father live?—He lives at his friend's house.—Where do your brothers live?—They live in William-street, number one hundred and twenty.—Dost thou live at thy brother's house?—I live at his house.—Do you still live where you did?—I live there still.—Does your friend still live where he did?—He no longer lives where he did.—Where does he live at present?—He lives at his father's house.

## THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

*Trente-septième Leçon.*


---

<i>How long ?</i>	<i>Jusqu'à quand ?</i>
<i>Till, until.</i>	<i>Jusque</i> (adverb of time).
Till twelve o'clock (till noon).	Jusqu'à midi.
Till to-morrow.	Jusqu'à demain.
Till the day after to-morrow.	Jusqu'après demain.
Till Sunday.	Jusqu'à dimanche.
Till Monday.	Jusqu'à lundi.
Till this evening.	Jusqu'à ce soir.
Till evening.	Jusqu'au soir.
Until morning.	Jusqu'au matin.
Until the next day.	Jusqu'au lendemain.
Until that day.	Jusqu'à ce jour.
Until that moment.	Jusqu'à ce moment.
Till now—hitherto.	Jusqu'à présent—jusqu'ici.
Until then.	Jusqu'alors.
Then.	Alors.

---

Tuesday, Wednesday.	Le mardi, le mercredi.
Thursday, Friday.	Le jeudi, le vendredi.
Saturday.	Le samedi.

*Obs.* The names of days, months, and seasons, are all masculine.  
(See *Obs. B.* preceding Lesson.)

---

Till I return (till my return).	Jusqu'à mon retour.
Till my brother returns (till my brother's return).	Jusqu'au retour de mon frère.
Till four o'clock in the morning.	Jusqu'à quatre heures du matin.

Till midnight (till twelve o'clock  
at night).

Jusqu'à minuit.

The return or coming back.

Le retour.

How long did you remain at my  
father's house?

Jusqu'à quand êtes-vous resté  
chez mon père?

I remained at his house till eleven  
o'clock at night.

J'y suis resté jusqu'à onze heures  
du soir.

*One, the people, they, or any  
one.*

*On* (indefinite pronoun, al-  
ways singular).

Have they brought my shoes?

A-t-on apporté mes souliers?

*They* have brought them.

*On* les a apportés.

*They* have not brought them yet.

*On* ne les a pas encore apportés.

What have *they* said?

Qu'a-t-on dit?

They have said nothing.

*On* n'a rien dit.

What have they done?

Qu'a-t-on fait?

They have done nothing.

*On* n'a rien fait.

To be willing (to wish), been wil-  
ling (wished).

Vouloir \*—voulu (Less. XVIII.  
and XXXIV.)

Have they been willing to mend  
my coat?

A-t-on voulu raccommoder mon  
habit?

They have not been willing to  
mend it.

*On* n'a pas voulu le raccommoder.

To be able (can)—been able  
(could).

Pouvoir \*—pu. (Lessons XX. and  
XXXIV.)

Have they been able to find the  
books?

A-t-on pu trouver les livres?

They could not find them.

*On* n'a pu les trouver.

Can they find them now?

Peut-on les trouver à présent?

They cannot find them.

*On* ne peut pas les trouver.

Can *they* do what they wish?

Peut-on faire ce qu'on veut?

*They* do what *they* can; but *they*  
do not do what *they* wish.

*On* fait ce qu'on peut; mais *on* ne  
fait pas ce qu'on veut.

What do *they* say ?  
 What do *they* say new ?  
*They* say nothing new.  
 Something or any thing new.  
 Nothing or not any thing new.

Que dit-on ?  
 Que dit-on de nouveau ?  
 On ne dit rien de nouveau.  
 Quelque chose de nouveau.  
 Rien de nouveau.

*New.*

My new coat.  
 My new horse.  
 My handsome horse.  
 My new friend.  
 My handsome coat.

*To brush.*

This fine man.  
 These fine men.  
 This fine tree.  
 Those fine trees.  
 My new friends.

*Neuf, nouveau* (before a vowel or *h* mute *nouvel*<sup>1</sup>).

Mon habit neuf.  
 Mon nouveau cheval.  
 Mon beau cheval.  
 Mon nouvel ami.  
 Mon bel habit<sup>2</sup>.

*Brosser* 1.

Ce bel homme.  
 Ces beaux hommes.  
 Ce bel arbre.  
 Ces beaux arbres.  
 Mes nouveaux amis.

Do they believe that ?  
 They do not believe it.  
 Do they speak of that ?  
 They do speak of it.  
 They do not speak of it.

Croit-on cela ?  
 On ne le croit pas.  
 Parle-t-on de cela ?  
 On en parle.  
 On n'en parle pas.

<sup>1</sup> *Nouveau* (*nouvel* before a vowel or *h* mute) is used for things which are new from nature or invention, as : *du vin nouveau*, new wine ; *un nouveau commis*, a new clerk ; *un nouvel ami*, a new friend ; *un livre nouveau*, a book just published. *Neuf*, on the contrary, is used for things made by men, as : *un habit neuf*, a new coat ; *un livre neuf*, a new book (which has been printed long ago, but has not been used). Thus we may say : *Ce livre neuf est-il nouveau ?* Is this new book a new publication ? *Neuf* figuratively means inexperienced. Ex. *Ce valet est bien neuf*, this valet is very inexperienced.

<sup>2</sup> *Bel* and *nouvel* are only used for masculine substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as may be seen from our examples. But in the plural the adjectives remain *beau* and *nouveau*. Ex. *Ces beaux arbres*, these fine trees ; *mes nouveaux amis*, my new friends.



## EXERCISES.

117.

How long have you been writing?—I have been writing until midnight.—How long did I work?—You worked (*avez travaillé*) till four o'clock in the morning.—How long did my brother remain with you?—He remained with me until evening.—How long hast thou been working?—I have been working till now.—Hast thou still long (*pour long-temps*) to write?—I have to write till (*pour jusqu'—*) the day after to-morrow.—Has the physician still long (*pour long-temps*) to work?—He has to work till (*pour jusqu'à*) to-morrow.—Am I to remain long here?—You are to remain here till Sunday.—Is my brother to remain long with you?—He is to remain with us till Monday.—How long are we to work?—You are to work till the day after to-morrow.—Have you still long to speak?—I have still an hour to speak.—Did you speak long?—I spoke (*ai parlé*) till the next day.—Did you remain long in my counting-house?—I remained in it till this moment.—Have you still long to live at the Frenchman's house?—I have still long to live at his house.—How long have you still to live at his house?—Till Tuesday.—Has the servant brushed my coats?—He has brushed them.—Has he swept the floor?—He has swept it.—How long did he remain here?—Till noon (*midi*).—Does your friend still live with you?—He lives with me no longer.—How long did he live with you?—He lived with me only a year.—How long did you remain at the ball?—I remained there till midnight.—How long did you remain in the ship?—I remained an hour in it.—Have you remained in the garden till now?—I have remained there till now.

118.

What do you do in the morning?—I read.—And what do you do then?—I breakfast and work.—Do you breakfast before you read?—No, Sir, I read before I breakfast.—Dost thou play instead of working?—I work instead of playing.—Does thy bro-

ther go to the play instead of going into the garden?—He goes neither to the play nor to the garden.—What do you do in the evening?—I work.—What hast thou done this evening?—I have brushed your clothes, and have gone to the theatre.—Didst thou remain long at the theatre?—I remained there but a few minutes.—Are you willing to wait here?—How long am I to wait?—You are to wait till my father returns.—Has any body come?—Somebody has come.—What did they (*on*) want?—They (*on*) wanted to speak to you.—Would they not wait?—They would not wait.—Have you waited for me long?—I have waited for you two hours.—Have you been able to read my note?—I have been able to read it.—Have you understood it?—I have understood it.—Have you shown it to any one?—I have shown it to no one.—Have they brought my fine clothes?—They have not brought them yet.—Have they swept my floor and brushed my clothes?—They have done both.—What have they said?—They have said nothing.—What have they done?—They have done nothing.—Has your little brother been spelling?—He has not been willing to spell.—Has the merchant's boy been willing to work?—He has not been willing.—What has he been willing to do?—He has not been willing to do any thing.

## 119.

Has the shoemaker been able to mend my shoes?—He has not been able to mend them.—Why has he not been able to mend them?—Because he has had no time.—Have they (*on*) been able to find my gold buttons?—They have not been able to find them.—Why has the tailor not mended my coat?—Because he has no good thread.—Why have you beaten the dog?—Because it has bitten me.—Why do you drink?—Because I am thirsty.—What have they wished to say?—They have not wished to say any thing.—Have they said any thing new?—They have not said any thing new.—What do they (*on*) say new in the market?—They say nothing new there.—Did they wish to kill a man?—They wished to kill one.—Do they believe that?—They do not believe it.—Do they speak of that?—They do speak of it.—Do they speak of the man that has been killed?—They do not speak of

him (*en*).—Can they do what they wish?—They do what they can, but they do not what they wish.—What have they brought?—They have brought your new coat.—Has my servant brushed my fine carpets?—He has not yet brushed them.—Have you bought a new horse?—I have bought two new horses.—How many fine trees have you seen?—I have seen but one fine tree.—Have you seen a fine man?—I have seen several fine men.—Have you a new friend?—I have several.—Do you like your new friends?—I do like them.

## THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

*Trente-huitième Leçon.**How far ?**Up to, as far as.*

As far as my brother's.

As far as here, hither.

As far as there, thither.

As far as London.

As far as Paris.

*Jusqu'où ?**Jusque* (adverb of place).

Jusque chez mon frère.

Jusqu'ici.

Jusque-là.

Jusqu'à Londres.

Jusqu'à Paris.

To, at, or in Paris.

To, at, or in Berlin.

'A Paris.

'A Berlin.

To, at, or in France.

To, at, or in England.

En France.

En Angleterre.

As far as England.

As far as Spain.

As far as France.

As far as Italy.

Jusqu'en Angleterre.

Jusqu'en Espagne.

Jusqu'en France.

Jusqu'en Italie.

As far as my house.

As far as the warehouse.

As far as the corner.

As far as the end of the road.

As far as the middle of the road.

Jusque chez moi.

Jusqu'au magasin.

Jusqu'au coin.

Jusqu'au bout du chemin.

Jusqu'au milieu du chemin.

Above or up stairs.

Below or down stairs.

En haut.

En bas.

As far as above.	Jusqu'en haut.
As far as below.	Jusqu'en bas.
As far as the other side of the road.	Jusqu'à l'autre côté du chemin.

This side.	De ce côté-ci.
That side.	De ce côté-là.
On this side of the road.	{ En deçà du chemin. Au deçà du chemin.
On that side of the road.	
	Au delà du chemin.

Germany.	L'Allemagne.
America.	L'Amérique.
Holland.	La Hollande <sup>1</sup> .

*Obs. A.* The names of states, empires, kingdoms, and provinces, are generally feminine when they end in *e* mute, and masculine when in a consonant or *a, é* (with the acute accent), *i, o, u*. (See pp. 4. 6, my Complete Treatise on the Genders of French Substantives.)

The middle.	Le milieu.
The well.	Le puits.
The cask.	Le tonneau.
The castle.	Le château.

To travel.	Voyager 1.
Do you go to Paris?	{ Allez-vous à Paris?
Do you travel to Paris?	
I do travel (or go) thither.	J'y vais.
Is he gone to England?	Est-il allé en Angleterre?
He is gone thither.	Il y est allé.
How far is he gone?	Jusqu'où est-il allé?
How far has he travelled?	Jusqu'où a-t-il voyagé?
He is gone as far as America.	Il est allé jusqu'en Amérique.

To steal.	Voler 1.
To steal something from some one.	† Voler quelque chose à quelqu'un.

<sup>1</sup> In *Hollande* the letter *h* is aspirated; therefore, we say *la Hollande*.



Have they stolen your hat from you?	† Vous a-t-on volé votre chapeau?
They have stolen it from me.	† On me l'a volé.
Has the man stolen the books from thee?	† L'homme t'a-t-il volé les livres?
He has stolen them from me.	† Il me les a volés.
What have they stolen from you?	† Que vous a-t-on volé?

*All.*

All the wine.  
All the books.  
All the men.

*Tout.*

Tout le vin.  
Tous les livres.  
Tous les hommes.

How do you spell this word?	} † Comment écrit-on ce mot?
How is this word written?	
It is written thus.	
	On l'écrit ainsi (de cette manière).

*To dye, or to colour.*

I dye, thou dyest, he dyes; dyeing.  
To dye black.  
To dye red.  
To dye green.  
To dye blue.  
To dye yellow.

*Teindre 4\* ; part. past, teint.*

Je teins, tu teins, il teint; teignant.  
† Teindre en noir.  
† Teindre en rouge.  
† Teindre en vert.  
† Teindre en bleu.  
† Teindre en jaune.

My blue coat.

| Mon habit bleu.

*Obs. B.* Adjectives denoting colour or shape are always placed after the substantive. Ex.

This white hat.	Ce chapeau blanc.
His round hat.	Son chapeau rond.
Do you dye your coat blue?	† Teignez-vous votre habit en bleu?
I dye it green.	† Je le teins en vert.
What colour will you dye your cloth?	† Comment voulez-vous teindre votre drap?
I will dye it blue.	† Je veux le teindre en bleu.
The dyer.	Le teinturier.

*To get dyed, got dyed.*

What colour have you had your  
hat dyed?

I have got it dyed white.

Red.

Brown.

Grey.

† *Faire teindre—fait teindre.*

† Comment avez-vous fait teindre  
votre chapeau?

† Je l'ai fait teindre en blanc.

Rouge.

Brun.

Gris.

### EXERCISES.

120.

How far have you travelled?—I have travelled as far as Germany.—Has he travelled as far as Italy?—He has travelled as far as America.—How far have the Spaniards gone?—They have gone as far as London.—How far has this poor man come?—He has come as far as here.—Has he come as far as your house?—He has come as far as my father's.—Have they stolen any thing from you?—They have stolen all the good wine from me.—Have they stolen any thing from your father?—They have stolen all his good books from him.—Dost thou steal any thing?—I steal nothing.—Hast thou ever stolen any thing?—I have never stolen any thing.—Have they stolen your good clothes from you?—They have stolen them from me.—What have they stolen from me?—They have stolen all the good books from you.—When did they steal the money from you?—They stole it from me the day before yesterday.—Have they ever stolen any thing from us?—They have never stolen any thing from us.—How far did you wish to go?—I wished to go as far as the wood.—Have you gone as far as there?—I have not gone as far as there.—How far does your brother wish to go?—He wishes to go as far as the end of that road.—How far does the wine go?—It goes to the bottom of the cask.—Whither art thou going?—I am going to the market.—How far are we going?—We are going as far as the theatre.—Are you going as far as the well?—I am going as far as the castle.—Has the carpenter drunk all the wine?—He has drunk it.—Has your little boy torn all his books?—He has torn them all.—Why has he torn them?—Because he does not wish to study.

## 121.

How much have you lost?—I have lost all my money.—Do you know where my father is?—I do not know.—Have you not seen my book?—I have not seen it.—Do you know how this word is written?—It is written thus.—Do you dye any thing?—I dye my hat.—What colour do you dye it?—I dye it black.—What colour do you dye your clothes?—I dye them yellow.—Do you get your trunk dyed?—I get it dyed.—What colour do you get it dyed?—I get it dyed green.—What colour dost thou get thy thread stockings dyed?—I get them dyed red.—Does your son get his ribbon dyed?—He does get it dyed.—Does he get it dyed red?—He gets it dyed grey.—What colour have your friends got their coats dyed?—They have got them dyed green.—What colour have the Italians had their hats dyed?—They have had them dyed brown.—Have you a white hat?—I have a black one.—What hat has the nobleman?—He has two hats; a white one and a black one.—What hat has the American?—He has a round hat.—Have I a white hat?—You have several white and black hats.—Has your dyer already dyed your cloth?—He has dyed it.—What colour has he dyed it?—He has dyed it green.—Do you travel sometimes?—I travel often.—Where do you intend to go to this summer (*cel été*)?—I intend to go to Paris.—Do you not go to Italy?—I do go thither.—Hast thou sometimes travelled?—I have never travelled.—Have your friends a mind to go to Holland?—They have a mind to go thither.—When do they intend to depart?—They intend to depart the day after to-morrow.

## 122.

Is your brother already gone to Spain?—He is not yet gone thither.—Have you travelled in Spain?—I have travelled there.—When do you depart?—I depart to-morrow.—At what o'clock?—At five o'clock in the morning.—Have you worn out all your shoes?—I have worn them all out.—What have the Spaniards done?—They have burnt all our good ships.—Have you finished all your exercises?—I have finished them all.—How far is the Frenchman come?—He is come as far as the middle of the road.

—Where does your friend live?—He lives on this side of the road.  
—Where is your warehouse?—It is on that side of the road.—  
Where is the counting-house of our friend?—It is on that side of  
the theatre.—Is the garden of your friend on this or that side of  
the wood?—It is on that side.—Is our warehouse not on this  
side of the road?—It is on this side.—Where have you been  
this morning?—I have been at the castle.—How long did you  
remain at the castle?—I remained there an hour.—Is your bro-  
ther below or above?—He is above.—How far has your servant  
carried my trunk?—He has carried it as far as my warehouse.—  
Has he come as far as my house?—He has come as far as there.  
—How far does the green carpet go?—It goes as far as the cor-  
ner of the counting-house.—Have you been in France?—I have  
been there several times.—Have your children already been in  
Germany?—They have not yet been there, but I intend to send  
them thither in the spring (*au printemps*).—Will you go on this  
or that side of the road?—I will go neither on this nor that side;  
I will go in the middle of the road.—How far does this road lead?  
—It leads as far as London.

## THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

*Trente-neuvième Leçon.*


---

*To be necessary—must.* | *Falloir* \* (an irregular, impersonal verb).

Its past participle is *Fallu*.

---

Is it necessary ?	} Faut-il ?
Must I, he, we, you, they, or she ?	
It is necessary.	

*Obs. A.* All verbs expressing necessity, obligation, or want, as, *to be obliged, to want, to be necessary, must*, are in French generally rendered by *falloir*.

---

Is it necessary to go to the market ?	Faut-il aller au marché ?
It is not necessary to go thither.	Il ne faut pas y aller.
What must be done to learn French ?	Que faut-il faire pour apprendre le français ?
It is necessary to study a great deal.	Il faut étudier beaucoup.

---

What must *I* do ? | Que *me* faut-il faire ?

*Obs. B.* The English nominative or subject of the verb *must* is rendered in French by the indirect cases in the dative : *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur* (see the Personal Pronouns, Lesson XX.), according to number and person.

<i>You</i> must stay still.	Il <i>vous</i> faut rester tranquille.
Whither must <i>he</i> go ?	Où <i>lui</i> faut-il aller ?
<i>He</i> must go for his book.	Il <i>lui</i> faut aller chercher son livre.



What must <i>they</i> buy?	Que <i>leur</i> faut-il acheter?
<i>They</i> must buy some beef.	Il <i>leur</i> faut acheter du bœuf.
What must <i>we</i> read?	Que <i>nous</i> faut-il lire?

---

What must you have? | Que *vous* faut-il?

*Obs. C.* The verb *have*, following in English the verb *must*, is not rendered in French.

<i>I</i> must have some money.	Il <i>me</i> faut de l'argent.
Must <i>you</i> have a sou?	<i>Vous</i> faut-il un sou?
Must <i>you</i> have a great deal?	<i>Vous</i> en faut-il beaucoup?
<i>I</i> must have a great deal.	Il m'en faut beaucoup.
<i>I</i> only want one sou.	Il ne <i>me</i> faut qu'un sou.
Is that all <i>you</i> want?	† Ne <i>vous</i> faut-il que cela?
That is all <i>I</i> want.	† Il ne <i>me</i> faut que cela.
How much must <i>thou</i> have?	} Combien <i>te</i> faut-il?
How much dost <i>thou</i> want?	
<i>I</i> only want a franc.	Il ne <i>me</i> faut qu'un franc.
How much must <i>your brother</i> have?	Combien faut-il à <i>votre frère</i> ?
<i>He</i> only wants two francs.	Il ne <i>lui</i> faut que deux francs.

---

Have you what <i>you</i> want?	Avez-vous ce qu'il <i>vous</i> faut?
I have what <i>I</i> want.	J'ai ce qu'il <i>me</i> faut.
He has what <i>he</i> wants.	Il a ce qu'il <i>lui</i> faut.
They have what they want.	Ils ont ce qu'il <i>leur</i> faut.

---

*More.*

| *Davantage.*

*Obs. D.* This adverb has the same signification as *plus*, with the only difference that it cannot precede a noun.

<i>No more.</i>	<i>Ne—pas davantage.</i>
Do <i>you</i> not want more?	Ne <i>vous</i> faut-il pas davantage?
<i>I</i> do not want more.	Il ne <i>me</i> faut pas davantage.
<i>He</i> does not want more.	Il ne <i>lui</i> faut pas davantage.

---

Have you been obliged to work much to learn French?	Vous a-t-il fallu travailler beaucoup pour apprendre le français?
<i>I</i> have been obliged to work much.	Il m'a fallu travailler beaucoup.

---

What am I to do?  
 You must work.  
 Am I to go thither?  
 You may go thither.

Que dois-je faire?  
 Vous devez travailler.  
 Faut-il y aller?  
 Vous pouvez y aller.

*To be worth—been worth.*

How much may that horse be worth?  
 It may be worth a hundred crowns.  
 Are you worth?  
 I am worth.  
 Thou art worth.  
 He is worth.  
 We are worth—they are worth.

*Valoir 3\*—valu.*

Combien ce cheval peut-il valoir?  
 Il peut valoir cent écus.  
 Valez-vous?  
 Je vaux.  
 Tu vaux.  
 Il vaut.  
 Nous valons—ils valent.

How much is that gun worth?  
 It is worth but one crown.  
 How much is that worth?  
 That is not worth much.  
 That is not worth any thing.

Combien ce fusil vaut-il?  
 Il ne vaut qu'un écu.  
 Combien cela vaut-il?  
 Cela ne vaut pas grand' chose.  
 Cela ne vaut rien.

This is worth more than that.  
 The one is not worth so much as the other.

Celui-ci vaut plus que celui-là.  
 L'un ne vaut pas autant que l'autre.

*To be better.*

Am I not as good as my brother?  
 You are better than he.  
 I am not so good as you.

*Valoir mieux.*

Est-ce que je ne vaux pas autant que mon frère?  
 Vous valez mieux que lui.  
 Je ne vaux pas autant que vous.

*To give back, to restore.*

Does he restore you your book?  
 He does restore it me.  
 Has he given you back your gloves?  
 He has given them me back.

*Rendre 4.*

Vous rend-il votre livre?  
 Il me le rend.  
 Vous a-t-il rendu vos gants?  
 Il me les a rendus.

Has your brother already commenced his exercises ?

*Not yet.*

He has not yet commenced them.

Votre frère a-t-il déjà commencé ses thèmes ?

*Pas encore.*

Il ne les a pas encore commencés.

The present.

Have you received a present ?

I have received several.

Have you received the books ?

I have received them.

Le présent.

Avez-vous reçu un présent ?

J'en ai reçu plusieurs.

Avez-vous reçu les livres ?

Je les ai reçus.

*From whom ?*

From whom have you received presents ?

From my friends.

*De qui ?*

De qui avez-vous reçu des présents ?

De mes amis.

*Whence ? Where from ?*

Where do you come from ?

I come from the garden.

Where is he come from ?

He is come from the theatre.

Where did they come from ?

*D'où ?*

D'où venez-vous ?

Je viens du jardin.

D'où est-il venu ?

Il est venu du théâtre.

D'où sont-ils venus ?

## EXERCISE.

123.

Is it necessary to go to the market ?—It is not necessary to go thither.—What must you buy ?—I must buy some beef.—Must I go for some wine ?—You must go for some.—Am I to go to the ball ?—You must go thither.—When must I go thither ?—You must go thither this evening.—Must I go for the carpenter ?—You must go for him.—What must be done to learn Russian ?—It is necessary to study a great deal.—Is it necessary to study a great deal to learn German ?—It is necessary to study a great deal.—What must I do ?—You must buy a good book.—What is he to do ?—He must stay still.—What are we to do ?—You must work.

—Must you work much in order to learn the Arabic?—I must work much to learn it.—Why must I go to market?—You must go thither to buy some beef and wine.—Must I go any where?—Thou must go into the garden.—Must I send for any thing?—Thou must send for some wine.—What must I do?—You must write an exercise.—To whom must I write a note?—You must write one to your friend.—What do you want, Sir?—I want some cloth.—How much is that hat worth?—It is worth four crowns.—Do you want any stockings?—I want some.—How much are those stockings worth?—They are worth two francs.—Is that all you want?—That is all.—Do you not want any shoes?—I do not want any.—Dost thou want much money?—I want much.—How much must thou have?—I must have five crowns.—How much does your brother want?—He wants but six sous.—Does he not want more?—He does not want more.—Does your friend want more?—He does not want so much as I.—What do you want?—I want money and clothes.—Have you now what you want?—I have what I want.—Has your father what he wants?—He has what he wants.

## 124.

Have the neighbour's boys given you back your books?—They have given them me back.—When did they give them you back?—They gave them me back yesterday.—Has your little boy received a present?—He has received several.—From whom has he received any?—He has received some from my father and from yours.—Have you received any presents?—I have received some.—What presents have you received?—I have received fine presents.—Do you come from the garden?—I do not come from the garden, but from the warehouse.—Where are you going to?—I am going to the garden.—Whence does the Irishman come?—He comes from the garden.—Does he come from the garden from which (*duquel*) you come?—He does not come from the same (*du même*).—From which (*de quel*) garden does he come?—He comes from that of our old (*vieil*) friend.—Whence comes your boy?—He comes from the play.—How much may that horse be worth?—It may be worth five hundred crowns.—Is this book worth as much as that?—It is worth more.—How much

is my gun worth?—It is worth as much as that of your friend.—Are your horses worth as much as those of the English?—They are not worth so much.—How much is that knife worth?—It is worth nothing.

## 125.

Is your servant as good as mine?—He is better than yours.—Are you as good as your brother?—He is better than I.—Art thou as good as thy friend?—I am as good as he.—Are we as good as our neighbours?—We are better than they.—Is your umbrella worth as much as mine?—It is not worth so much.—Why is it not worth so much as mine?—Because it is not so fine as yours.—How much is that gun worth?—It is not worth much.—Do you wish to sell your horse?—I do wish to sell it.—How much is it worth?—It is worth two hundred crowns.—Do you wish to buy it?—I have bought one already.—Does your father intend to buy a horse?—He does intend to buy one, but not (*non pas*) yours.—Have your brothers commenced their exercises?—They have commenced them.—Have you received your notes?—We have not yet received them.—Have we what we want?—We have not what we want.—What do we want?—We want fine horses, several servants, and much money.—Is that all we want?—That is all we want.—What must I do?—You must write.—To whom must I write?—You must write to your friend.—Where is he?—He is in America.—Whither am I to go?—You may go to France.—How far must I go?—You may go as far as Paris.—Which (*à quels*) notes has your father answered?—He has answered those (*à ceux*) of his friends.—Which dogs has your servant beaten?—He has beaten those that have made much noise. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)



## FORTIETH LESSON.

*Quarantième Leçon.*


---


<i>To eat—eaten.</i>	<i>Manger</i> 1— <i>mangé.</i>
<i>To dine</i> (eat dinner).	<i>Dîner</i> 1— <i>dîné.</i>
The dinner.	Le dîner or dîné.
The breakfast.	Le déjeuner or déjeuné.
<i>To eat supper</i> (to sup).	<i>Souper</i> 1.
The supper.	Le souper or soupé.

---

<i>After.</i>	<i>Après</i> (a preposition).
After me.	Après moi.
After him.	Après lui.
After you.	Après vous.
After my brother.	Après mon frère.

---

After *having* spoken. | † Après *avoir* parlé.

 Whenever the present participle is used in English after a preposition it is rendered in French by the infinitive.

After <i>having</i> sold his horse.	† Après <i>avoir</i> vendu son cheval.
After <i>having</i> been there.	† Après y <i>avoir</i> été.
I broke your knife after <i>cutting</i> the beef.	† J'ai cassé votre couteau après <i>avoir</i> coupé le bœuf.

---

I have dined earlier than you.	J'ai dîné de meilleure heure que vous.
You have supped late.	Vous avez soupé tard.

---

*To pay for.*


To pay a man *for* a horse.  
 To pay the tailor *for* the coat.  
 Do you pay the shoemaker *for* the shoes?  
 I pay him *for* them.  
 Does he pay you *for* the knife?  
 He does pay me *for* it.  
 I pay what I owe.

*Payer* 1.

(See Obs. D. Lesson XXIV.)

† Payer un cheval à un homme.  
 † Payer l'habit au tailleur.  
 † Payez-vous les souliers au cordonnier?  
 † Je les lui paie.  
 † Vous paie-t-il le couteau?  
 † Il me le paie.  
 Je paie ce que je dois.

*To ask for.*| *Demander* 1.

 The English verbs *to pay* and *to ask* require the preposition *for*, but in French they require the person in the dative and the object in the accusative. When the verb *payer*, however, has no object in the accusative it requires the person in that case.

I have paid the tailor.  
 I have paid him.  
 Have you paid the shoemaker?  
 I have paid him.  
 To ask a man *for* some money.  
 I ask my father *for* some money.  
 Do you ask me *for* your hat?  
 I do ask you *for* it.  
 To ask him *for* it.  
 To ask him *for* them.  
 What do you ask me *for*?  
 I ask you for nothing.

J'ai payé le tailleur.  
 Je l'ai payé.  
 Avez-vous payé le cordonnier?  
 Je l'ai payé.  
 † Demander de l'argent à un homme.  
 † Je demande de l'argent à mon père.  
 † Me demandez-vous votre chapeau?  
 † Je vous le demande.  
 † Le lui demander.  
 † Les lui demander.  
 † Que me demandez-vous?  
 † Je ne vous demande rien.

*To try.*

Will you try to do that?  
 I have tried to do it.  
 You must try to do better.

*Essayer* 1 (See Obs. D. Lesson XXIV.) takes *de* before infinitive.  
 Voulez-vous essayer de faire cela?  
 J'ai essayé *de* le faire.  
 Il vous faut essayer de faire mieux.

*To hold—held.*

*I hold—thou holdest—he holds.*

Do you hold my stick?

I do hold it.

We hold.

They hold.

*Tenir 2\*—tenu; pres. part. tenant.*

*Je tiens—tu tiens—il tient.*

Tenez-vous mon bâton?

Je le tiens.

Nous tenons.

Ils tiennent.

Are you looking *for* any one?

Whom are you looking *for*?

I am looking *for* a brother of mine.

† Cherchez-vous quelqu'un?

† Qui cherchez-vous?

† Je cherche un de mes frères.

My uncle.

My cousin.

My relation.

The parents (father and mother).

Mon oncle.

Mon cousin.

Mon parent.

Les parents.

A brother of mine.

A cousin of yours.

A relation of his (or hers).

A friend of ours.

A neighbour of theirs.

He tries to see you.

Does he try to see me?

He tries to see an uncle of his.

† Un de mes frères.

† Un de vos cousins.

† Un de ses parents.

† Un de nos amis.

† Un de leurs voisins.

Il cherche à vous voir.

Cherche-t-il à me voir?

Il cherche à voir un de ses oncles.

*To inquire after some one.*

*After* whom do you inquire?

I inquire *after* a friend of mine.

They inquire *after* you.

Do they inquire *after* me?

† *Demander* quelqu'un.

† Qui demandez-vous?

† Je demande un de mes amis.

† On vous demande.

† Me demande-t-on?

*Properly.*

You write properly.

These men do their duty properly.

*Comme il faut.*

Vous écrivez comme il faut.

Ces hommes font leur devoir comme il faut.

The duty.	}	Le devoir.
The task.		
Have you done your task?		Avez-vous fait votre devoir?
We have done it.		Nous l'avons fait.

---

A glass of wine.		Un verre de vin.
A piece of bread.		Un morceau de pain.

---

## EXERCISES.

126.

Have you paid for the gun?—I have paid for it.—Has your uncle paid for the books?—He has paid for them.—Have I paid the tailor for the clothes?—You have paid him for them.—Hast thou paid the merchant for the horse?—I have not yet paid him for it.—Have we paid for our gloves?—We have paid for them.—Has your cousin already paid for his shoes?—He has not yet paid for them.—Does my brother pay you what he owes you?—He does pay it me.—Do you pay what you owe?—I do pay what I owe.—Have you paid the baker?—I have paid him.—Has your uncle paid the butcher for the beef?—He has paid him for it.—Who has broken my knife?—I have broken it after cutting the bread.—Has your son broken my pencils?—He has broken them after writing his notes.—Have you paid the merchant for the wine after drinking it?—I have paid for it after drinking it.—What did you do after finishing your exercises?—I went to my cousin in order to conduct him to the play.—How do I speak?—You speak properly.—How has my cousin written his exercises?—He has written them properly.—How have my children done their task?—They have done it well.—Does this man do his duty?—He always does it.—Do these men do their duty?—They always do it.—Do you do your duty?—I do what I can.—What do you ask this man for?—I ask him for some money.—What does this boy ask me for?—He ask you for some money.—Do you ask me for any thing?—I ask you for a crown.—Do you ask me for the bread?—I do ask you for it.—Which man do you ask for money?—I ask him for some whom you ask for some.—Which

merchants do you ask for gloves?—I ask those for some who live in William-street.—What do you ask the baker for?—I ask him for some bread.

## 127.

Do you ask the butchers for some beef?—I do ask them for some.—Dost thou ask me for the stick?—I do ask thee for it.—Does he ask thee for the book?—He does ask me for it.—What have you asked the Englishman for?—I have asked him for my leather trunk.—Has he given it you?—He has given it me.—Whom have you asked for some sugar?—I have asked the merchant for some.—Whom does your brother pay for his shoes?—He pays the shoemakers for them.—Whom have we paid for the bread?—We have paid our bakers for it.—How old art thou?—I am not quite ten years old.—Dost thou already learn French?—I do already learn it.—Does thy brother know German?—He does not know it.—Why does he not know it?—Because he has not had time.—Is your father at home?—No, he is gone (*parti*\*), but my brother is at home.—Where is your father gone to?—He is gone to England.—Have you sometimes been there?—I have never been there.—Do you intend going to France this summer?—I do intend going thither.—Do you intend to stay there long?—I intend to stay there during the summer.—How long does your brother remain at home?—Till twelve o'clock.—Have you had your gloves dyed?—I have had them dyed.—What have you had them dyed?—I have had them dyed yellow.—Have you already dined?—Not yet.—At what o'clock do you dine?—I dine at six o'clock.—At whose house (*chez qui*) do you dine?—I dine at the house of a friend of mine.—With whom did you dine yesterday?—I dined with a relation of mine.—What did you eat?—We eat good bread, beef, and cakes.—What did you drink?—We drank good wine and excellent cider.—Where does your uncle dine to-day?—He dines with us.—At what o'clock does your father sup?—He sups at nine o'clock.—Do you sup earlier than he?—I sup later than he.

## 128.

Where are you going to?—I am going to a relation of mine, in order to breakfast with him.—Art thou willing to hold my gloves?



—I am willing to hold them.—Who holds my hat?—Your son holds it.—Dost thou hold my stick?—I do hold it.—Do you hold any thing?—I hold your gun.—Who has held my book?—Your servant has held it.—Will you try to speak?—I will try.—Has your little brother ever tried to do exercises?—He has tried.—Have you ever tried to make a hat?—I have never tried to make one.—Whom are you looking for?—I am looking for the man who has sold a horse to me.—Is your relation looking for any one?—He is looking for a friend of his.—Are we looking for any one?—We are looking for a neighbour of ours.—Whom dost thou look for?—I look for a friend of ours.—Are you looking for a servant of mine?—No, I am looking for one of mine.—Have you tried to speak to your uncle?—I have tried to speak to him.—Have you tried to see my father?—I have tried to see him.—Has he received you?—He has not received me.—Has he received your brothers?—He has received them.—Have you been able to see your relation?—I have not been able to see him.—What did you do after writing your exercises?—I wrote my note after writing them.—After whom do you inquire?—I inquire after the tailor.—Does this man inquire after any one?—He inquires after you.—Do they inquire after you?—They do inquire after me.—Do they inquire after me?—They do not inquire after you, but after a friend of yours.—Do you inquire after the physician?—I do inquire after him.—What does your little brother ask for?—He asks for a small piece of bread.—Has he not yet breakfasted?—He has breakfasted, but he is still hungry.—What does your uncle ask for?—He asks for a glass of wine.—Has he not already drunk?—He has already drunk, but he is still thirsty.

## FORTY-FIRST LESSON.

*Quarante et unième Leçon.**Him who.*

Do you perceive the man who is coming?

I do perceive him who is coming.

Do you perceive the men who are going into the warehouse?

I do perceive those who are going into it.

*Celui qui.*

Apercevez-vous l'homme qui vient?

J'aperçois celui qui vient.

Apercevez-vous les hommes qui vont au magasin?

J'aperçois ceux qui y vont.

How is the weather?

What kind of weather is it?

It is fine weather at present.

How was the weather yesterday?

What kind of weather was it yesterday?

Was it fine weather yesterday?

It was bad weather yesterday.

It is fine weather this morning.

} Quel temps fait-il?

† Il fait beau temps à présent.

} Quel temps a-t-il fait hier?

† A-t-il fait beau temps hier?

† Il a fait mauvais temps hier.

† Il fait beau temps ce matin.

*Is it warm?*

It is warm.

*Very.*

It is very warm.

It is cold.

It is very cold.

It is neither warm nor cold.

† *Fait-il chaud?*

† Il fait chaud.

*Très.*

† Il fait très chaud.

† Il fait froid.

† Il fait très froid.

† Il ne fait ni chaud ni froid.

Dark, obscure.	Obscur.
Dusky, gloomy.	Sombre.
Clear, light.	Clair.
It is dark in your warehouse.	† Il fait sombre dans votre magasin.
Is it dark in his garret?	† Fait-il sombre dans son grenier?
It is dark there.	† Il y fait sombre.

Wet, damp.	Humide.
Dry.	Sec.
Is the weather damp?	† Fait-il humide?
It is not damp.	† Il ne fait pas humide.
It is dry weather.	† Il fait sec.
The weather is too dry.	† Il fait trop sec.
The moonlight, moonshine.	Le clair de lune.
The sun.	Le soleil.
It is moonlight.	† Il fait clair de lune.
We have too much sun.	† Il fait trop de soleil.

<i>To taste.</i>	<i>Goûter 1.</i>
Have you tasted that wine?	Avez-vous goûté ce vin?
I have tasted it.	Je l'ai goûté.
How do you like it?	† Comment le trouvez-vous?
I like it well.	† Je le trouve bon.
I do not like it.	† Je ne le trouve pas bon.
<i>To like.</i>	<i>Aimer.</i>
I like fish.	† J'aime le poisson.
He likes fowl.	† Il aime le poulet.
Do you like cider?	† Aimez-vous le cidre?
No, I like wine.	† Non, j'aime le vin.

Do you like to see my brother?	Aimez-vous à voir mon frère?
I do like to see him.	J'aime à le voir.
I like to do it.	J'aime à le faire.
He likes to study.	Il aime à étudier.
<i>To learn by heart.</i>	<i>Apprendre par cœur.</i>
The scholar.	L'écolier.
The pupil.	L'élève.
The master (teacher).	Le maître.

Do your scholars like to learn by heart?	Vos écoliers aiment-ils à apprendre par cœur?
They do not like learning by heart.	Ils n'aiment pas à apprendre par cœur.
Have you learnt your exercises by heart?	Avez-vous appris vos thèmes par cœur?
We have learnt them.	Nous les avons appris.

Once <i>a</i> day.	† Une fois <i>par</i> jour.
Thrice, or three times <i>a</i> month.	† Trois fois <i>par</i> mois.
So much <i>a</i> year.	† Tant <i>par</i> an.
So much <i>a</i> head.	† Tant <i>par</i> tête ( <i>la tête</i> , the head, is a feminine noun).
So much <i>a</i> soldier.	† Tant <i>par</i> soldat.
Six times <i>a</i> year.	† Six fois <i>par</i> an.

<i>Early in the morning.</i>	<i>Le matin de bonne heure.</i>
We go out early in the morning.	Nous sortons le matin de bonne heure.
When did your father go out?	Quand votre père est-il sorti?

<i>To speak of some one or something.</i>	<i>Parler de quelqu'un ou de quelque chose.</i>
Of whom do you speak?	De qui parlez-vous?
We speak of the man whom you know.	Nous parlons de l'homme que vous connaissez.
Of what are they speaking?	De quoi parlent-ils?
They are speaking of the weather.	Ils parlent du temps.
The weather.	Le temps.
The soldier.	Le soldat.
Also.	Aussi.

<i>To be content (satisfied) with some one or something.</i>	<i><sup>A</sup>Être content de quelqu'un ou de quelque chose.</i>
Are you satisfied <i>with</i> this man?	Êtes-vous content <i>de</i> cet homme?
I am satisfied <i>with</i> him.	J'en suis content.
Are you content <i>with</i> your new coat?	Êtes-vous content <i>de</i> votre habit neuf?
I am contented <i>with</i> it.	J'en suis content.

With what are you contented ?	De quoi êtes-vous content ?
Discontented.	Mécontent.
I am discontented <i>with him, or it.</i>	J'en suis mécontent.

They speak of your friend.	On parle de votre ami.
They speak of him.	On en parle.
They are speaking of your book.	On parle de votre livre.
They are speaking of it.	On en parle.

<i>If.</i>	<i>Si.</i>
I intend paying you if I receive my money.	Je compte vous payer, si je reçois mon argent.
Do you intend to buy wood ?	Comptez-vous acheter du bois ?
I do intend to buy some if they pay me what they owe me.	Je compte en acheter, si on me paie ce qu'on me doit.

How was the weather yesterday ?	Quel temps a-t-il fait hier ?
Was it fine weather yesterday ?	A-t-il fait beau temps hier ?
It was bad weather.	Il a fait mauvais temps.

## EXERCISES.

129.

Do you perceive the man who is coming?—I do not perceive him.—Do you perceive the soldier's children?—I do perceive them.—Do you perceive the men who are going into the garden?—I do not perceive those who are going into the garden, but those who are going to the market.—Does your brother perceive the man who has lent him money?—He does not perceive the one who has lent him, but the one to whom he has lent some.—Dost thou see the children who are studying?—I do not see those who are studying, but those who are playing.—Dost thou perceive any thing?—I perceive nothing.—Have you perceived my parents' warehouses?—I have perceived them.—Where have you perceived them?—I have perceived them on that side of the road.—Do you like a large hat?—I do not like a large hat, but a large umbrella.—What do you like to do?—I like to write.—Do you



like to see these little boys?—I like to see them.—Do you like wine?—I do like it.—Does your brother like cider?—He does not like it.—What do the soldiers like?—They like wine.—Dost thou like tea or coffee?—I like both.—Do these children like to study?—They like to study and to play.—Do you like to read and to write?—I like to read and to write.—How many times a day do you eat?—Four times.—How often do your children drink a day?—They drink several times a day.—Do you drink as often as they?—I drink oftener.—Do you often go to the theatre?—I go thither sometimes.—How often in a month do you go thither?—I go thither but once a month.—How many times a year does your cousin go the ball?—He goes thither twice a year.—Do you go thither as often as he?—I never go thither.—Does your cook often go the market?—He goes thither every morning.

## 130.

Do you often go to my uncle?—I go to him six times a year.—Do you like fowl?—I like fowl, but I do not like fish.—What do you like?—I like a piece of bread and a glass of wine.—Do you learn by heart?—I do not like learning by heart.—Do your pupils like to learn by heart?—They like to study, but they do not like learning by heart.—How many exercises do they do a day?—They only do two, but they do them properly.—Were you able to read the note which I wrote to you?—I was able to read it.—Did you understand it?—I did understand it.—Do you understand the man who is speaking to you?—I do not understand him.—Why do you not understand him?—Because he speaks too badly.—Does this man know French?—He knows it, but I do not know it.—Why do you not learn it?—I have no time to learn it.—Do you intend going to the theatre this evening?—I intend going thither, if you go.—Does your father intend to buy that horse?—He intends buying it, if he receives his money.—Does your friend intend going to England?—He intends going thither, if they pay him what they owe him.—Do you intend going to the concert?—I intend going thither, if my friend goes.—Does your brother intend to study French?—He intends studying it, if he finds a good master.

## 131.

How is the weather to-day?—It is very fine weather.—Was it fine weather yesterday?—It was bad weather yesterday.—How was the weather this morning?—It was bad weather, but now it is fine weather.—Is it warm?—It is very warm.—Is it not cold?—It is not cold.—Is it warm or cold?—It is neither warm nor cold.—Did you go to the garden the day before yesterday?—I did not go thither.—Why did you not go thither?—I did not go thither, because it was bad weather.—Do you intend going thither to-morrow?—I do intend going thither if the weather is fine.—Is it light in your counting-house?—It is not light in it.—Do you wish to work in mine?—I do wish to work in it.—Is it light there?—It is very light there.—Why cannot your brother work in his warehouse?—He cannot work there, because it is (*il y fait*) too dark.—Where is it too dark?—In his warehouse.—Is it light in that hole?—It is dark there.—Is the weather dry?—It is very dry.—Is it damp?—It is not damp. It is too dry.—Is it moonlight?—It is not moonlight, it is very damp.—Of what does your uncle speak?—He speaks of the fine weather.—Of what do those men speak?—They speak of fair and bad weather.—Do they not speak of the wind?—They do also speak of it.—Dost thou speak of my uncle?—I do not speak of him.—Of whom dost thou speak?—I speak of thee and thy parents.—Do you inquire after any one?—I inquire after your cousin; is he at home?—No, he is at his best friend's.

## 132.

Have you tasted that wine?—I have tasted it.—How do you like it?—I like it well.—How does your cousin like that cider?—He does not like it.—Which wine do you wish to taste?—I wish to taste that which you have tasted.—Will you taste this tobacco?—I have tasted it already.—How do you like it?—I like it well.—Why do you not taste that cider?—Because I am not thirsty.—Why does your friend not taste this beef?—Because he is not hungry.—Of whom have they (*on*) spoken?—They have spoken of your friend.—Have they not spoken of the physicians?—They have not spoken of them.—Do they not speak of the man

of whom we have spoken?—They do speak of him.—Have they spoken of the noblemen?—They have spoken of them.—Have they spoken of those of whom we speak?—They have not spoken of those of whom we speak, but they have spoken of others.—Have they spoken of our children or of those of our neighbours?—They have neither spoken of ours, nor those of our neighbours.—Which children have been spoken of?—Those of our master have been spoken of.—Do they speak of my book?—They do speak of it.—Are you satisfied with your pupils?—I am satisfied with them.—How does my brother study?—He studies well.—How many exercises have you studied?—I have already studied forty-one.—Is your master satisfied with his scholar?—He is satisfied with him.—Is your master satisfied with the presents which he has received?—He is satisfied with them.—Have you received a note?—I have received one.—Will you answer it?—I am going to answer it.—When did you receive it?—I received it early this morning.—Are you satisfied with it?—I am not satisfied with it.—Does your friend ask you for money?—He does ask me for some. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## FORTY-SECOND LESSON.

### *Quarante-deuxième Leçon.*

#### OF PASSIVE VERBS.

PASSIVE verbs represent the subject as receiving or suffering from others the action expressed by the verb. They are conjugated by means of the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, joined to the past participle of the active verb, in French as in English. Thus any active verb may be changed into the passive voice. Ex.

		<i>Active voice.</i>	<i>Passive voice.</i>
I love.	I am loved.	J'aime.	Je suis aimé.
Thou conductest.	Thou art conducted.	Tu conduis.	Tu es conduit.
He praises.	He is praised.	Il loue.	Il est loué.
We hear.	We are heard.	Nous entendons.	Nous sommes entendus.
*You punish.	You are punished.	Vous punissez.	Vous êtes punis.
They blame.	They are blamed.	Ils blâment.	Ils sont blâmés.

To praise.	Louer 1.
To punish.	Punir 2.
To blame.	Blâmer 1.

<i>By.</i>	<i>Par or de.</i>
By me, by us.	De or par moi, de or par nous.
By thee, by you.	De or par toi, de or par vous.
By him, by them.	De or par lui, d' or par eux.

I am loved by him.	Je suis aimé de lui.
Who is punished?	Qui est puni?
The naughty boy is punished.	Le méchant garçon est puni.
By whom is he punished?	Par qui est-il puni?
He is punished by his father.	Il est puni par son père.
Which man is praised, and which is blamed?	Quel homme est loué et lequel est blâmé?

Naughty.	Méchant.
Skilful, diligent, clever.	Habile.
Awkward.	Inhabile.
Assiduous, industrious, studious.	Assidu, studieux.
Idle.	Paresseux.
Ignorant.	Ignorant.

The idler, the lazy fellow.	Le paresseux.
-----------------------------	---------------

<i>To reward.</i>	<i>Récompenser 1.</i>
To esteem.	Estimer 1.
To despise.	Mépriser 1.

<i>To hate; hating.</i>	<i>Haïr 2*; haïssant.</i>
-------------------------	---------------------------

(See Lesson XXIV.)

<i>Hated.</i>	<i>Haï.</i>
I hate, thou hatest, he hates.	Je hais, tu hais, il hait.

<i>Good (wise).</i>	<i>Sage.</i>
These children are loved, because they are studious and good.	Ces enfants sont aimés, parce- qu'ils sont studieux et sages.

To travel to a place.	Aller 1*.
Where has he travelled to?	Où est-il allé?
He has travelled to Vienna.	Il est allé à Vienne.
Is it good travelling?	† Fait-il bon voyager?
It is good travelling.	† Il fait bon voyager.
It is bad travelling.	† Il fait mauvais voyager.



In the winter.	Dans l'hiver.
In the summer.	Dans l'été.
In the spring.	Dans le printemps, au printemps.
In the autumn.	Dans l'automne.
It is bad travelling in the winter.	Il fait mauvais voyager dans l'hiver.

To drive, to ride in a carriage.	Aller en voiture, } take the aux-
To ride (on horseback).	Aller à cheval, } iliary être.
To go on foot.	Aller à pied, }
Do you like to ride?	Aimez-vous à monter à cheval?
I like to drive.	J'aime à aller en voiture.

<i>To live ; lived, living.</i>	<i>Vivre 4* ; vécu, vivant.</i>
I live, thou livest, he lives.	Je vis, tu vis, il vit.
Is it good living in Paris?	} † Fait-il bon vivre à Paris ?
Is the living good in Paris?	
It is good living there.	} † Il y fait bon vivre.
The living is good there.	
Dear.	Cher.
Is the living dear in London?	} † Fait-il cher vivre à Londres ?
Is it dear living in London?	
The living is dear there.	† Il y fait cher vivre.

Thunder.	Le tonnerre.
The storm.	L'orage.
The fog.	Le brouillard.
Is it windy? Does the wind blow?	† Fait-il du vent?
It is windy. The wind blows.	† Il fait du vent.
It is not windy.	† Il ne fait pas de vent.
It is very windy.	† Il fait beaucoup de vent.
Does it thunder?	† Fait-il du tonnerre?
Is it foggy?	† Fait-il du brouillard?
It is stormy.	† Il fait de l'orage.
It is not stormy.	† Il ne fait pas d'orage.
Does the sun shine?	† Fait-il du soleil?
It thunders very much.	† Il fait beaucoup de tonnerre.

*Afterwards.*

*As soon as.*

As soon as I have eaten I drink.  
As soon as I have taken off my  
shoes I take off my stockings.  
What do you do in the evening?

*Ensuite.*

*Aussitôt que.*

Aussitôt que j'ai mangé, je bois.  
Aussitôt que j'ai ôté mes souliers,  
j'ôte mes bas.  
Que faites-vous le soir?

*To sleep; slept, sleeping.*

I sleep, thou sleepest, he sleeps.  
Does your father still sleep?  
He still sleeps.

*Dormir 2\*; dormi, dormant.*

Je dors, tu dors, il dort.  
Votre père dort-il encore?  
Il dort encore.

*Without.*

Without money.  
Without speaking.

*Sans.*

Sans argent.  
† Sans parler.

*Obs.* *Without, sans*, requires the English present participle, whilst in French it is followed by the infinitive.

Without saying any thing. | † Sans rien dire.

*At last.*

*To arrive.*

Has he arrived at last?  
He has not arrived yet.  
Is he coming at last?  
He is coming?

*Enfin.*

*Arriver 1 (takes être for its auxiliary).*

Est-il enfin arrivé?  
Il n'est pas encore arrivé.  
Vient-il enfin?  
Il vient.

*And then.*

And then he sleeps.  
As soon as he has supped he  
reads, and then he sleeps.

*Puis.*

Puis il dort.  
Aussitôt qu'il a soupé, il lit; puis  
il dort.

EXERCISES.

133.

Are you loved?—I am loved.—By whom are you loved?—I am loved by my uncle.—By whom am I loved?—Thou art loved

by thy parents.—By whom are we loved?—You are loved by your friends.—By whom are those boys loved?—They are loved by their friends.—By whom is this man conducted?—He is conducted by me.—Where do you conduct him to?—I conduct him home.—By whom are we blamed?—We are blamed by our enemies.—Why are we blamed by them?—Because they do not love us.—Are you punished by your master?—I am not punished by him, because I am good and studious.—Are we heard?—We are.—By whom are we heard?—We are heard by our neighbours.—Is thy master heard by his pupils?—He is heard by them.—Which children are praised?—Those that are good.—Which are punished?—Those that are idle and naughty.—Are we praised or blamed?—We are neither praised nor blamed.—Is our friend loved by his masters?—He is loved and praised by them, because he is studious and good; but his brother is despised by his, because he is naughty and idle.—Is he sometimes punished?—He is (*il l'est*) every morning and every evening.—Are you sometimes punished?—I am (*je ne le suis*) never; I am loved and rewarded by my good masters.—Are these children never punished?—They are (*ils ne le sont*) never, because they are studious and good; but those are so (*le sont*) very often, because they are idle and naughty.—Who is praised and rewarded?—Skilful children are praised, esteemed, and rewarded, but the ignorant are blamed, despised, and punished.—Who is loved and who is hated?—He who is studious and good is loved, and he who is idle and naughty is hated.—Must one be (*faut-il être*) good in order to be loved?—One must be so (*il faut l'être*).—What must one do (*que faut-il faire*) in order to be loved?—One must be good and assiduous.—What must one do in order to be rewarded?—One must be (*il faut être*) skilful, and study much.

## 134.

Why are those children loved?—They are loved because they are good.—Are they better (*plus sages*) than we?—They are not better, but more studious than you.—Is your brother as assiduous as mine?—He is as assiduous as he, but your brother is better than mine.—Do you like to drive?—I like to ride.—Has your brother ever been on horseback?—He has

never been on horseback.—Does your brother ride on horseback as often as you?—He rides on horseback oftener than I.—Did you go on horseback the day before yesterday?—I went on horseback to-day.—Do you like travelling?—I do like travelling.—Do you like travelling in the winter?—I do not like travelling in the winter; I like travelling in the spring (*au printemps*) and in autumn.—Is it good travelling in the spring?—It is good travelling in spring and in autumn, but it is bad travelling in the summer and in the winter.—Have you sometimes travelled in the winter?—I have often travelled in the winter and in the summer.—Does your brother travel often?—He travels no longer (*Less. XXXVI.*); he formerly travelled much.—When do you like to ride?—I like to ride in the morning.—Have you been in London?—I have been there.—Is the living good there?—The living is good there, but dear.—Is it dear living in Paris?—It is good living there, and not dear.—Do you like travelling in France?—I like travelling there, because one finds good people (*de bonnes gens*) there.—Does your friend like travelling in Holland?—He does not like travelling there, because the living is bad there.—Do you like travelling in Italy?—I do like travelling there, because the living is good there, and one (*et qu'on y*) finds good people there; but the roads are not very good there.—Do the English like to travel in Spain?—They like to travel there; but they find the roads there too bad.—How is the weather?—The weather is very bad.—Is it windy?—It is very windy.—Was it stormy yesterday?—It was very stormy.

## 135.

Do you go to the market this morning?—I do go thither, if it is not stormy.—Do you intend going to France this year (*cette année*)?—I intend going thither if the weather is not too bad.—Do you like to go on foot?—I do not like to go on foot, but I like going in a carriage when (*quand*) I am travelling.—Will you go on foot?—I cannot go on foot, because I am tired.—What sort of weather is it?—It thunders.—Does the sun shine?—The sun does not shine; it is foggy.—Do you hear the thunder?—I hear it.—Is it fine weather?—The wind blows hard, and it thunders much.—Of whom have you spoken?—We have spoken of you.

—Have you praised me?—We have not praised you; we have blamed you.—Why have you blamed me?—Because you do not study well.—Of what has your brother spoken?—He has spoken of his books, his horses, and his dogs.—What do you do in the evening?—I work as soon as I have supped.—And what do you do afterwards?—Afterwards I sleep.—When do you drink?—I drink as soon as I have eaten.—When do you sleep?—I sleep as soon as I have supped.—Have you spoken to the merchant?—I have spoken to him.—What has he said?—He has left (*partir\**) without saying any thing.—Can you work without speaking?—I can work, but not (*non pas*) study French without speaking.—Wilt thou go for some wine?—I cannot go for wine without money.—Have you bought any horses?—I do not buy without money.—Has your father arrived at last?—He has arrived.—When did he arrive?—This morning at four o'clock.—Has your cousin set out at last?—He has not set out yet.—Have you at last found a good master?—I have at last found one.—Are you at last learning German?—I am at last learning it.—Why have you not already learnt it?—Because I have not been able to find a good master.



## FORTY-THIRD LESSON.

*Quarante-troisième Leçon.*

## OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

WHEN the action falls upon the agent, and the objective case refers to the same person as the nominative, the verb is called reflective. In French almost all active verbs may become reflective.

In reflective verbs the pronoun of the object is of the same person as that of the subject. Each person is, therefore, conjugated with a double personal pronoun, thus :—

I,	myself.	Je,	me.
Thou,	thyself.	Tu,	te.
He,	himself.	Il,	} se.
She,	herself.	Elle,	
It,	itself.	Il,	
One,	one's self.	On,	} Nous, nous.
We,	ourselves.	Nous,	
You,	yourself.	} Vous, vous.	
Ye,	yourselves.		
They,	themselves.	{	} se.

*Obs. A.* It will be remarked that the third person is always *se*, whatever may be its number or gender.

To cut yourself.	} Vous couper.	
To cut myself.		
To cut ourselves.		
To cut himself.	} Se couper.	
To cut herself.		
To cut itself.		
To cut one's self.		

Do you burn yourself?  
 I do not burn myself.  
 You do not burn yourself.  
 I see myself.  
 Do I see myself?  
 He sees himself.  
 We see ourselves.  
 They see themselves.

Vous brûlez-vous?  
 Je ne me brûle pas.  
 Vous ne vous brûlez pas.  
 Je me vois.  
 Est-ce que je me vois?  
 Il se voit.  
 Nous nous voyons.  
 Ils se voient.

Do you wish to warm yourself?  
 I do wish to warm myself.  
 Does he wish to warm himself?  
 He does wish to warm himself.  
 They wish to warm themselves.

Voulez-vous vous chauffer?  
 Je veux me chauffer.  
 Veut-il se chauffer?  
 Il veut se chauffer.  
 Ils veulent se chauffer.

*To enjoy, to divert, to amuse  
 one's self.*

*In what* do you amuse yourself?  
 I amuse myself *in reading*.  
 He diverts himself *in playing*.

*S'amuser* 1 (takes à before  
 the infinitive).

† *'A quoi* vous amusez-vous?  
 † Je m'amuse à lire.  
 † Il s'amuse à jouer.

*Each.*

*Each one.*

Each man.

Each man amuses himself as he  
 likes.

Each one amuses himself in the  
 best way he can.

The taste.

Each man has his taste.

Each of you.

The world (the people).

Every one, every body.

Every body speaks of it.

Every one is liable to error.

*Chaque.*

*Chacun.*

Chaque homme.

Chaque homme s'amuse comme  
 il veut.

Chacun s'amuse de son mieux.

Le goût.

Chaque homme a son goût.

Chacun de vous.

Le monde.

Tout le monde.

Tout le monde (chacun) en parle.

Tout homme (*or* chaque homme)  
 est sujet à se tromper.

*To mistake, to be mistaken.*

You are mistaken.

He is mistaken.

† *Se tromper* 1.

† Vous vous trompez.

† Il se trompe.

*To deceive, to cheat.*

He has cheated me.

He has cheated me of a hundred francs.

*Tromper* 1.

Il m'a trompé.

Il m'a trompé de cent francs.

You cut your finger.

| Vous vous coupez le doigt.

*Obs. B.* When an agent performs an act upon one part of himself the verb is made reflexive.

I cut my nails.

A hair.

*To pull out.*

He pulls out his hair.

He cuts his hair.

The piece.

A piece of bread.

Je me coupe les ongles.

Un cheveu (plur. *x*).

*Arracher* 1.

Il s'arrache les cheveux.

Il se coupe les cheveux.

Le morceau.

Un morceau de pain.

*To go away.*

Are you going away?

I am going away.

Is he going away?

He is going away.

Are we going away?

We are going away.

Are these men going away?

They are not going away.

† *S'en aller* 1 \*.

Vous en allez-vous?

Je m'en vais.

S'en va-t-il?

Il s'en va.

Nous en allons-nous?

Nous nous en allons.

Ces hommes s'en vont-ils?

Ils ne s'en vont pas.

To feel sleepy.

Do you feel sleepy?

I do feel sleepy.

† Avoir envie de dormir.

† Avez-vous envie de dormir?

† J'ai envie de dormir.

*To soil.**To fear, to dread.*

I dread, thou darest, he dreads.

He fears to soil his fingers.

Do you dread to go out ?

I do dread to go out.

He is afraid to go thither.

*Salir 2.**Craindre 4\*.* Part. past, *craint* ;  
part. pres. *craignant* (takes *de*  
before the infinitive).

Je crains, tu crains, il craint.

Il craint de se salir les doigts.

Craignez-vous de sortir ?

Je crains de sortir.

Il craint d'y aller.

*To fear some one.*

I do not fear him.

Do you fear that man ?

What do you fear ?

Whom do you fear ?

I fear nobody.

*Craindre \* quelqu'un.*

Je ne le crains pas.

Craignez-vous cet homme ?

Que craignez-vous ?

Qui craignez-vous ?

Je ne crains personne.

## EXERCISES.

136.

Do you see yourself in that small looking-glass?—I see myself in it.—Can your friends see themselves in that large looking-glass?—They can see themselves therein.—Why does your brother not light the fire?—He does not light it, because he is afraid of burning himself.—Why do you not cut your bread?—I do not cut it, because I fear to cut my finger.—Have you a sore finger?—I have a sore finger and a sore foot.—Do you wish to warm yourself?—I do wish to warm myself, because I am very (*grand*) cold.—Why does that man not warm himself?—Because he is not cold.—Do your neighbours warm themselves?—They warm themselves, because they are cold.—Do you cut your hair?—I do cut my hair.—Does your friend cut his nails?—He cuts his nails and his hair.—What does that man do?—He pulls out his hair.—In what do you amuse yourself?—I amuse myself in the best way I can.—In what do your children amuse themselves?—They amuse themselves in studying, writing, and playing.—In what does your cousin amuse himself?—He amuses himself in reading good books, and in writing to his friends.—In what do you amuse yourself when you have nothing to do at

home?—I go to the play, and to the concert. I often say, “Every one amuses himself as he likes.”—Every man has his taste; what is yours?—Mine is to study, to read a good book, to go to the theatre, the concert, and the ball, and to ride.

137.

Why does your cousin not brush his coat?—He does not brush it, because he is afraid of soiling his fingers.—What does my neighbour tell you?—He tells me that (*que*) you wish to buy his horse; but I know that (*que*) he is mistaken, because you have no money to buy it.—What do they (*on*) say at the market?—They say that (*que*) the enemy is beaten.—Do you believe that?—I believe it, because every one says so.—Why have you bought that book?—I have bought it, because I want it to learn French, and because every one speaks of it.—Are your friends going away?—They are going away.—When are they going away?—They are going away to-morrow.—When are you going away?—We are going away to-day.—Am I going away?—You are going away if you like (*si vous voulez*).—What do our neighbours say?—They are going away without saying any thing.—How do you like this wine?—I do not like it.—What is the matter with you?—I feel sleepy.—Does your friend feel sleepy?—He does not feel sleepy, but he is cold.—Why does he not warm himself?—He has no wood to make a fire.—Why does he not buy some wood?—He has no money to buy any.—Will you lend him some?—If he has none I will lend him some.—Are you thirsty?—I am not thirsty, but very hungry (*grand' faim*).—Is your servant sleepy?—He is sleepy.—Is he hungry?—He is hungry.—Why does he not eat?—Because he has nothing to eat.—Are your children hungry?—They are hungry, but they have nothing to eat.—Have they any thing to drink?—They have nothing to drink.—Why do you not eat?—I do not eat when (*quand*) I am not hungry.—Why does the Russian not drink?—He does not drink when he is not thirsty.—Did your brother eat any thing yesterday evening?—He ate a piece of beef, a small piece of fowl, and a piece of bread.—Did he not drink?—He also drank.—What did he drink?—He drank a glass of wine. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)



## FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Quarante-quatrième Leçon.*

## PERFECT OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

IN French all reflexive verbs, without exception, take in their compound tenses the auxiliary *être*, whilst in English they take *to have*.

Have you cut yourself?  
I have cut myself.  
Have I cut myself?  
You have cut yourself.  
You have not cut yourself.  
Hast thou cut thyself?  
I have not cut myself.  
Has your brother cut himself?  
He has cut himself.  
Have we cut ourselves?  
We have not cut ourselves.  
Have these men cut themselves?  
They have not cut themselves.

Vous êtes-vous coupé?  
Je me suis coupé.  
Me suis-je coupé?  
Vous vous êtes coupé.  
Vous ne vous êtes pas coupé.  
T'es-tu coupé?  
Je ne me suis pas coupé.  
Votre frère s'est-il coupé?  
Il s'est coupé.  
Nous sommes-nous coupés?  
Nous ne nous sommes pas coupés.  
Ces hommes se sont-ils coupés?  
Ils ne se sont pas coupés.

*To take a walk.*

To go a walking.  
To take an airing in a carriage.  
The coach.  
To take a ride.  
Do you take a walk?  
I do take a walk.  
  
He takes a walk.  
We take a walk.  
Thou wishest to take an airing.  
They wish to take a ride.

† *Se promener* 1.  
Aller se promener.  
† Se promener en carrosse.  
Le carrosse.  
† Se promener à cheval.  
Vous promenez-vous?  
Je me promène. (See Obs. A.  
Lesson XXV.)  
Il se promène.  
Nous nous promenons.  
Tu veux te promener en carrosse.  
Ils veulent se promener à cheval.

*To walk a child.*

Do you take your children a walking?

I take them a walking every morning.

*Promener un enfant.*

Promenez-vous vos enfants?

Je les promène tous les matins.

*To go to bed, to lie down.*

*To go to bed.*

*To get up, to rise.*

Do you rise early?

I rise at sunrise.

I go to bed at sunset.

The sunrise.

The sunset.

At what time did you go to bed?

At three o'clock in the morning.

At what o'clock did he go to bed yesterday?

He went to bed late.

† *Se coucher 1.*

† *Aller se coucher, se mettre au lit.*

*Se lever 1.*

Vous levez-vous de bonne heure?

Je me lève au lever du soleil.

Je me couche au coucher du soleil.

Le lever du soleil.

Le coucher du soleil.

'A quelle heure vous êtes-vous couché?

'A trois heures du matin.

'A quelle heure s'est-il couché hier?

Il s'est couché tard.

*To rejoice at something.*

I rejoice at your happiness.

At what does your uncle rejoice?

I have rejoiced.

They have rejoiced.

You have mistaken.

We have mistaken.

† *Se réjouir 2 de quelque chose.*

Je me réjouis de votre bonheur.

De quoi votre oncle se réjouit-il?

Je me suis réjoui.

Ils se sont réjouis.

† Vous vous êtes trompé.

† Nous nous sommes trompés.

*To hurt somebody.*

*The evil, the pain, the harm.*

Have you hurt that man?

I have hurt that man.

† *Faire du mal à quelqu'un.*

*Le mal.*

† Avez-vous fait du mal à cet homme?

† J'ai fait du mal à cet homme.

Why did you hurt that man ?

† Pourquoi avez-vous fait du mal à cet homme ?

I have not hurt him.

† Je ne lui ai pas fait *de* mal.

Does that hurt you ?

† Cela vous fait-il du mal ?

That hurts me.

† Cela me fait du mal.

*To do good to any body.*

† *Faire du bien à quelqu'un.*

Have I ever done you any harm ?

† Vous ai-je jamais fait du mal ?

On the contrary.

Au contraire.

No; on the contrary, you have done me good.

† Non; vous m'avez au contraire fait du bien.

I have never done harm to any one.

† Je n'ai jamais fait de mal à personne.

Have I hurt you ?

† Vous ai-je fait mal ?

You have not hurt me.

† Vous ne m'avez pas fait mal.

That does me good.

| Cela me fait du bien.

*To do with, to dispose of.*

*Faire de.*

What does the servant do with his broom ?

Le domestique que fait-il de son balai ?

He sweeps the floor with it.

† Il balaie le plancher avec.

What does he wish to make of this wood ?

† Que veut-il faire de ce bois ?

He does not wish to make any thing of it.

Il n'en veut rien faire.

*Obs. A.* When a proposition has no definite subject, the English, in order to avoid the pronouns *they, people, &c.*, use the verb in the passive voice, and say: *I was told*, instead of, *They told me*; *He is flattered*, instead of, *They flatter him*; *It was given to me*, instead of, *They gave it to me*. This is always expressed in French by means of the indefinite pronoun *on*, one. Ex.

He is flattered, but he is not beloved.

*On* le flatte, mais *on* ne l'aime pas.

I am told that he is arrived.

*On* me dit qu'il est arrivé.

*That* (conjunction).

*Que.*

A knife was given to him to cut his bread, and he cut his finger.

*On* lui a donné un couteau pour couper son pain, et il s'est coupé le doigt.

*To flatter some one.*

To flatter one's self.

He flatters himself that he knows French.

*Nothing but.*

He has nothing but enemies.

*Flatter 1 quelqu'un.*

Se flatter (takes *de* before the infinitive).

† Il se flatte de savoir le français.

*Ne—que.*

Il n'a que des ennemis.

*To become.*

He has turned a soldier.

Have you turned a merchant?

I have turned (become) a lawyer.

What has become of your brother?

What has become of him?

I do not know what has become of him.

*To enlist, to enrol.*

He has enlisted.

*Devenir 2\*, part. past, devenu*  
(is conjugated like its primitive *venir\**, Les. XXIV. & XXXIV.).

† Il s'est fait soldat.

† Vous êtes-vous fait marchand?

† Je me suis fait avocat.

† Votre frère qu'est-il devenu?

† Qu'est devenu votre frère?

† Qu'est-il devenu?

† Je ne sais pas ce qu'il est devenu.

*S'enrôler 1, se faire soldat.*

† Il s'est enrôlé.

† Il s'est fait soldat.

*For (meaning because).*

I cannot pay you, for I have no money.

He cannot give you any bread, for he has none.

*Car.*

Je ne puis vous payer, car je n'ai pas d'argent.

Il ne peut pas vous donner de pain, car il n'en a pas.

*To believe some one.*

Do you believe that man?

I do not believe him.

*Croire 4\* quelqu'un.*

Croyez-vous cet homme?

Je ne le crois pas.

*Obs. B.* The verb *croire\** governs the accusative; we say however:

To believe in God.

I believe in God.

Croire en Dieu.

Je crois en Dieu.

*To utter a falsehood, to lie.*

I lie, thou liest, he lies.

The story-teller, the liar.

*Mentir 2\* ; past. part. menti,*  
pres. part. *mentant.*

Je mens, tu mens, il ment.

Le menteur.

### EXERCISES.

138.

Why has that child been praised ?—It has been praised because it has studied well.—Hast thou ever been praised ?—I have often been praised.—Why has that other child been punished ?—It has been punished, because it has been naughty and idle.—Has this child been rewarded ?—It has been rewarded because it has worked well.—What must one do in order not to be (*pour ne pas être*) despised ?—One must be studious and good.—What has become of your friend ?—He has become a lawyer.—What has become of your cousin ?—He has enlisted.—Has your neighbour enlisted ?—He has not enlisted.—What has become of him ?—He has turned a merchant.—What has become of his children ?—His children have become men.—What has become of your son ?—He has become a great man.—Has he become learned ?—He has become learned.—What has become of my book ?—I do not know what has become of it.—Have you torn it ?—I have not torn it.—What has become of our friend's son ?—I do not know what has become of him.—What have you done with your money ?—I have bought a book with it.—What has the joiner done with his wood ?—He has made a bench of it.—What has the tailor done with the cloth which you gave him ?—He has made clothes of it for (*pour*) your children and mine.—Has that man hurt you ?—No, Sir, he has not hurt me.—What must one do in order to be loved ?—One must do good to those that have done us harm.—Have we ever done you harm ?—No ; you have on the contrary done us good.—Do you do harm to any one ?—I do no one any harm.—Why have you hurt these children ?—I have not hurt them.—Have I hurt you ?—You have not hurt me, but your boys have (*m'en ont fait*).—What have they done to you ?—They



have beaten me.—Is it (*est-ce*) your brother who has hurt my son?—No, Sir, it is not (*ce n'est pas*) my brother, for he has never hurt any one.

139.

Have you drunk that wine?—I have drunk it.—How did you like it?—I liked it very well.—Has it done you good?—It has done me good.—Have you hurt yourself?—I have not hurt myself.—Who has hurt himself?—My brother has hurt himself, for he has cut his finger.—Is he still ill (*malade*)?—He is better (*mieux*).—I rejoice to hear that he is no longer ill, for I love him.—Why does your cousin pull out his hair?—Because he cannot pay what he owes.—Have you cut your hair?—I have not cut it (myself), but I have had it cut (*me les suis fait couper*).—What has this child done?—He has cut his foot.—Why was a knife given to him?—A knife was given him to (*pour*) cut his nails, and he has cut his finger and his foot.—Do you go to bed early?—I go to bed late, for I cannot sleep when I go to bed early.—At what o'clock did you go to bed yesterday?—Yesterday I went to bed at a quarter past eleven.—At what o'clock do your children go to bed?—They go to bed at sunset.—Do they rise early?—They rise at sunrise.—At what o'clock did you rise to-day?—To-day I rose late, because I went to bed late yesterday evening (*hier au soir*).—Does your son rise late?—He rises early, for he never goes to bed late.—What does he do when he gets up?—He studies, and then breakfasts.—Does he not go out before he breakfasts?—No; he studies and breakfasts before he goes out.—What does he do after breakfasting?—As soon as he has breakfasted he comes to my house, and we take a ride.—Didst thou rise this morning as early as I?—I rose earlier than you, for I rose before sunrise.

140.

Do you often go a walking?—I go a walking when I have nothing to do at home.—Do you wish to take a walk?—I cannot take a walk, for I have too much to do.—Has your brother taken a ride?—He has taken an airing in a carriage.—Do your children often go a walking?—They go a walking every morning after breakfast (*après le déjeuner*).—Do you take a walk

after dinner (*après le dîner*)?—After dinner I drink tea, and then I take a walk.—Do you often take your children a walking?—I take them a walking every morning and every evening.—Can you go with me?—I cannot go with you, for I am to take my little brother out a walking.—Where do you walk?—We walk in our uncle's garden.—Did your father rejoice to see you?—He did rejoice to see me.—What did you rejoice at?—I rejoiced at seeing my good friends.—What was your uncle delighted with (*s'est-il réjoui*)?—He was delighted with the horse which you have sent him.—What were your children delighted with?—They were delighted with the fine clothes which I had had made for them (*que je leur ai fait faire*).—Why does this man rejoice so much (*tant*)?—Because he flatters himself he has good friends.—Is he not right in rejoicing?—He is wrong, for he has nothing but enemies.—Is he not loved?—He is flattered, but he is not beloved.—Do you flatter yourself that you know French?—I do flatter myself that I know it; for I can speak, read, and write it.—Has the physician done any harm to your child?—He has cut his finger (*lui a coupé le doigt*), but he has not done him any harm, so (*et*) you are mistaken, if you believe that he has done him any harm.—Why do you listen to that man?—I listen to him, but I do not believe him; for I know that he is a story-teller.—How do you know that he is a story-teller?—He does not believe in God; and all those (*tous ceux*) who do not believe in God are story-tellers.

## FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.

*Quarante-cinquième Leçon.*

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

WE have already seen (Lessons XLI. and XLII.) some idiomatical expressions with *faire*, all of which belong to the impersonal verbs. These verbs, having no determinate subject, are only conjugated in the third person, by means of the pronoun *il*, *it*. Ex.

To rain, it rains.	Pleuvoir 3*, <i>il pleut, past part. plu.</i>
To snow, it snows.	Neiger 1. <i>il neige.</i>
To hail, it hails.	Grêler 1. <i>il grêle.</i>

As for the substantives belonging to these three verbs, they are feminine, and will be seen when we come to such nouns.

To lighten.	† Faire des éclairs.
Does it lighten?	† Fait-il des éclairs?
It does lighten.	† Il fait des éclairs.
The lightning.	L'éclair.
The parasol.	Le parasol.
It rains very hard.	† Il pleut à verse.
It lightens much.	† Il fait beaucoup d'éclairs.
Does it snow?	Neige-t-il?
It snows much.	Il neige fort.
It hails much.	Il fait beaucoup de grêle.
	( <i>La grêle</i> , a feminine noun.)
The sun does not shine.	† Il ne fait point de soleil.
The sun is in my eyes.	† Le soleil me donne dans la vue.
	( <i>La vue</i> , the sight, a feminine noun.)

To thunder,—it thunders.	Tonner 1—il tonne.
To shine, to glitter.	Luire 4 *; <i>pres. part. luisant</i> ; <i>past, lui.</i>

*To shut.*

Have you done ?

Is the walking good ?

In that country.

The country.

He has made many friends in that country.

*Fermer 1.*

† Avez-vous fini ?

† Fait-il bon marcher ?

Dans ce pays.

Le pays.

† Il s'est fait beaucoup d'amis dans ce pays.

*Of which, of whom, whose.*

I see the man of whom you speak.

I have bought the horse of which you spoke to me.

I see the man whose brother has killed my dog.

I see the man whose dog you have killed.

Do you see the child whose father set out yesterday ?

I see it.

Whom have you seen ?

I have seen the merchant whose warehouse you have taken.

*Dont (connective pronoun).*

Je vois l'homme dont vous parlez.

J'ai acheté le cheval dont vous m'avez parlé.

Je vois l'homme dont le frère a tué mon chien.

Je vois l'homme dont vous avez tué le chien.

Voyez-vous l'enfant dont le père est parti hier ?

Je le vois.

Qui avez-vous vu ?

J'ai vu le marchand dont vous avez pris le magasin.

I have spoken to the man whose warehouse has been burnt.

J'ai parlé à l'homme dont le magasin a été brûlé.

*That of which.**That, or the one of which.**Those, or the ones of which.*

I have that of which I have need.

I have what I want.

He has what he wants.

*Ce dont.**Celui dont.**Ceux dont.*} J'ai *ce dont* j'ai besoin.| Il a *ce dont* il a besoin.

Have you the book of which you have need ?


I have *that of which* I have need.

Avez-vous le livre dont vous avez besoin ?

J'ai *celui dont* j'ai besoin.

Has the man the nails <i>of which</i> he has need?	L'homme a-t-il les clous <i>dont</i> il a besoin?
He has those of which he has need.	Il a ceux dont il a besoin.
To need, to want. To have need of.	} Avoir besoin de.

Which men do you see?	Quels hommes voyez-vous?
I see those of whom you have spoken to me.	Je vois ceux dont vous m'avez parlé.

 The past participle does not agree with its object in number, (that is, if the object is in the plural the past participle does not take an *s*,) when it is preceded by the connective pronoun *dont*, of whom, of which, whose.

Do you see the pupils of whom I have spoken to you?	Voyez-vous les élèves dont je vous ai parlé?
I see them.	Je les vois.

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	
	<i>Sing. &amp; Plur.</i>	<i>Masc. Plur.</i>
<i>To whom.</i>	<i>'A qui,</i>	<i>auxquels.</i>
I see the children to whom you have given some cakes.	Je vois les enfants à qui vous avez donné des gâteaux.	
To which men do you speak?	'A quels hommes parlez-vous?	
I speak to those to whom you have applied.	Je parle à ceux auxquels (à qui) vous vous êtes adressé.	

*Obs.* 'A *qui*, dative for all genders and numbers, is more usually employed for persons than *auxquels*, dative plural of *lequel*, but for things *auxquels* must always be used.

<i>To apply to.</i>	<i>S'adresser</i> 1 à.
<i>To meet with.</i>	<i>Rencontrer</i> 1 (governs the ac- cusative).
I have met with the men to whom you have applied.	J'ai rencontré les hommes à qui (auxquels) vous vous êtes adressé.



Of which men do you speak ?  
I speak of those whose children  
have been studious and obe-  
dient.

Obedient, disobedient.

De quels hommes parlez-vous ?  
Je parle de ceux dont les enfants  
ont été studieux et obéissants.

Obéissant, désobéissant.

*So that.*

I have lost my money, so that I  
cannot pay you.

I am ill, so that I cannot go out.

Ill.

*De sorte que* (conjunction).

J'ai perdu mon argent, de sorte  
que je ne puis vous payer.

Je suis malade, de sorte que je ne  
puis sortir.

Malade.

### EXERCISES.

#### 141.

Have you at last learnt French?—I was ill, so that I could not learn it.—Has your brother learnt it?—He has not learnt it, because he has not yet been able to find a good master.—Do you go to the ball this evening?—I have sore feet, so that I cannot go to it.—Did you understand that German?—I do not know German, so that I could not understand him.—Have you bought the horse of which you spoke to me?—I have no money, so that I could not buy it.—Have you seen the man from whom I have received a present?—I have not seen him.—Have you seen the fine gun of which I spoke to you?—I have seen it.—Has your uncle seen the books of which you spoke to him?—He has seen them.—Hast thou seen the man whose children have been punished?—I have not seen him.—To whom have you been speaking in the theatre?—I have been speaking to the man whose brother has killed my fine dog.—Have you seen the little boy whose father has become (*s'est fait*) a lawyer?—I have seen him.—Whom have you seen at the ball?—I have seen there the men whose horses, and those whose coach (*carrosse*) you have bought.—Whom do you see now?—I see the man whose servant has broken my looking-glass.—Have you heard the man whose friend has lent me money?—I have not heard him.—Whom have you heard?—I have heard the French captain whose son is my friend.—Hast thou brushed the coat of which I spoke to thee?—I have not yet

brushed it.—Have you received the money which you have been wanting?—I have received it.—Have I the paper of which I have need?—You have it.—Has your brother the books which he is wanting?—He has them.—Have you spoken to the merchants whose warehouse we have taken?—We have spoken to them.—Have you spoken to the physician whose son has studied German?—I have spoken to him.—Hast thou seen the poor men whose warehouses have been burnt?—I have seen them.—Have you read the books which we have lent you?—We have read them.—What do you say of them (*en*)?—We say that they are very fine.—Have your children what they want?—They have what they want.

142.

Of which man do you speak?—I speak of the one whose brother has turned soldier.—Of which children have you spoken?—I have spoken of those whose parents are learned.—Which book have you read?—I have read that of which I spoke to you yesterday.—Which paper has your cousin?—He has that of which he has need.—Which fishes has he eaten?—He has eaten those which you do not like.—Of which books are you in want?—I am in want of those of which you have spoken to me.—Are you not in want of those which I am reading?—I am not in want of them.—Do you see the children to whom I have given cakes?—I do not see those to whom you have given cakes, but those whom you have punished.—To whom have you given some money?—I have given some to those who have been skilful.—To which children must one give books?—One must give some to those who are good and obedient.—To whom do you give to eat and to drink?—To those who are hungry and thirsty.—Do you give any thing to the children who are idle?—I give them nothing.—Did it snow yesterday?—It did snow, hail, and lighten.—Did it rain?—It did rain.—Did you go out?—I never go out when it is bad weather.—Have the captains at last listened to that man?—They have refused (Lesson XXXV.) to listen to him; all those to whom he applied have refused to hear him.—With whom have you met this morning?—I have met with the man by whom I am esteemed.—Have you given any cakes to your pupils?—They have not studied well, so that I have given them nothing.

## FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Quarante-sixième Leçon.*

## OF THE FUTURE.

**RULE.**—The first or simple future is formed, in all French verbs, from the infinitive, by changing the letter *r*, for the three first conjugations<sup>1</sup>, and the ending *re* for the fourth, into *rai*. Ex.

		<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
To love, I shall or will love.	1st Conj.	Aimer,	j'aimerai.
To finish, I shall or will finish.	2nd —	Finir,	je finirai.
To foresee, I shall or will foresee.	3rd —	Prévoir,	je prévoirai.
To restore, I shall or will restore.	4th —	Rendre,	je rendrai.

*Obs. A.* We need only know the first person singular of the future in order to form all the other persons, as they are always alike in all French verbs, viz. for the second person singular *ras*, the third person singular *ra*, the first person plural *rons*, the second *rez*, and the third *ront*.

	<i>Futures.</i>	
Thou shalt or wilt love, thou shalt or wilt finish.	Tu aimeras.	Tu finiras.
He shall or will love, he shall or will finish.	Il aimera.	Il finira.
We shall or will love, we shall or will finish.	Nous aimerons.	Nous finirons.
You shall or will love, you shall or will finish.	Vous aimerez.	Vous finirez.
They shall or will love, they shall or will finish.	Ils aimeront.	Ils finiront.

<sup>1</sup> Though the third conjugation is almost entirely composed of exceptions, the rule is notwithstanding correct, as all those verbs which now form exceptions were formerly spelt and written according to it.

		<i>Futures.</i>	
Thou shalt or wilt foresee, thou shalt or wilt restore.		Tu prévoiras.	Tu rendras.
He shall or will foresee, he shall or will restore.		Il prévoira.	Il rendra.
We shall or will foresee, we shall or will restore.		Nous prévoyons.	Nous rendrons.
You shall or will foresee, you shall or will restore.		Vous prévoyez.	Vous rendrez.
They shall or will foresee, they shall or will restore.		Ils prévoiront.	Ils rendront.

EXCEPTIONS.

*Obs. B.* The following fourteen verbs, besides the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être*, and ten more, of which we give the futures at the end of this Lesson, form all the exceptions to our rule on the formation of the future. It must be remembered that the first person singular of the exceptions being once known, all the other persons are, being, as may be seen from the above, the same in all verbs.

		<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
To have.	I shall or will have.	Avoir *.	J'aurai.
To be.	I shall or will be.	Être *.	Je serai.
<hr/>			
To go.	I shall or will go.	Aller 1 *.	J'irai.
To send.	I shall or will send.	Envoyer 1 *.	J'enverrai.
To hold.	I shall or will hold.	Tenir 2 *.	Je tiendrai.
To come.	I shall or will come.	Venir 2 *.	Je viendrai.
To sit down.	I shall or will sit down.	S'asseoir 3 *.	Je m'asseierai or Je m'assiérai.
To owe.	I shall or will owe.	Devoir 3 *.	Je devrai.
To be necessary.	It will be necessary.	Falloir 3 *.	Il faudra.
To be able.	I shall or will be able.	Pouvoir 3 *.	Je pourrai.
To receive.	I shall or will receive.	Recevoir 3.	Je recevrai <sup>2</sup> .
To know.	I shall or will know.	Savoir 3.	Je saurai.
To be worth.	I shall or will be worth.	Valoir 3 *.	Je vaudrai.
To see.	I shall or will see.	Voir 3 *.	Je verrai.
To be willing.	I shall or will be willing.	Vouloir 3 *.	Je voudrai.
To do.	I shall or will do.	Faire 4 *.	Je ferai.

<sup>2</sup> And all those in *cevoir*, as: *apercevoir*, to perceive; *concevoir*, to conceive, &c.

Shall or will he have money ?  
 He will have some.  
 He will not have any.  
 Shall you soon have done writing ?  
 I shall soon have done.  
 He will soon have done his exercise.

Aura-t-il de l'argent ?  
 Il en aura.  
 Il n'en aura pas.  
 † Avez-vous bientôt fini d'écrire ?  
 † J'aurai bientôt fini.  
 † Il aura bientôt fini son thème.

When shall you do your exercises ?

I will do them soon (ere long).  
 My brother will do his exercises to-morrow.

Next Monday.  
 Last Monday.  
 Next month.  
 This month.  
 This country.

Quand ferez-vous vos thèmes ?

Je les ferai bientôt.  
 Mon frère fera ses thèmes demain.

Lundi prochain.  
 Lundi passé *or* lundi dernier.  
 † Le mois prochain.  
 Ce mois-ci.  
 Ce pays-ci.

When will your cousin go to the concert ?

He will go next Tuesday.  
 Shall you go any where ?  
 We shall go no where.

Quand votre cousin ira-t-il au concert ?

Il ira mardi prochain.  
 Irez-vous quelque part ?  
 Nous n'irons nulle part.

Will he send me the book ?

He will send it you if he has done with it.

Shall you be at home this evening ?

I shall be there.

Will your father be at home ?

He will be there.

Will your cousins be there ?

They will be there.

M'enverra-t-il le livre ?

† Il vous l'enverra s'il l'a fini.

Serez-vous chez vous (à la maison) ce soir ?

J'y serai.

Votre père sera-t-il chez lui (à la maison) ?

Il y sera.

Vos cousins y seront-ils ?

Ils y seront.



Will he send me the books?	M'enverra-t-il les livres?
He will send them you.	Il vous les enverra.
Will he send some paper to my counting-house?	Enverra-t-il du papier à mon comptoir?
He will send some thither.	Il y en enverra.

Shall you be able to pay your shoemaker?	Pourrez-vous payer votre cordonnier?
I have lost my money, so that I shall not be able to pay him.	J'ai perdu mon argent, de sorte que je ne pourrai pas le payer.
My friend has lost his pocket-book, so that he will not be able to pay for his shoes.	Mon ami a perdu son portefeuille, de sorte qu'il ne pourra pas payer ses souliers.

Will you hold any thing?	Tiendrez-vous quelque chose?
I shall hold your umbrella.	Je tiendrai votre parapluie.
Will your friend come to my concert?	Votre ami viendra-t-il à mon concert?
He will come.	Il viendra.
Shall you come?	Viendrez-vous?
I shall come.	Je viendrai.

Will it be necessary to go to the market?	Faudra-t-il aller au marché?
It will be necessary to go thither to-morrow morning.	Il faudra y aller demain matin.
It will not be necessary to go thither.	Il ne faudra pas y aller.
Shall you see my father to-day?	Verrez-vous mon père aujourd'hui?
We shall see him.	Nous le verrons.

*Obs. C.* The following ten verbs are the remaining exceptions to our rule on the formation of the future.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
To lean. I shall or will lean.	Appuyer 1.	J'appuierai.
To employ. I shall or will employ.	Employer 1.	J'emploierai.

		<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
To try.	I shall or will try.	Essayer 1.	J'essaierai <sup>1</sup> .
To acquire.	I shall or will acquire.	Acquérir 2 *.	J'acquerrai.
To run.	I shall or will run.	Courir 2 *.	Je courrai.
To gather.	I shall or will gather.	Cueillir 2 *.	Je cueillerai.
To die (to lose life).	I shall or will die.	Mourir 2 *.	Je mourrai.
To expire.	I shall or will expire.	Échoir 3 *.	J'écherrai.
To move.	I shall or will move.	Mouvoir 3 *.	Je mouvrai.
To rain.	It will rain.	Pleuvoir 3 *.	Il pleuvra.

## EXERCISES.

143.

Shall you have any books?—I shall have some.—Who will give you any?—My uncle will give me some.—When will your cousin have money?—He will have some next month.—How much money shall you have?—I shall have thirty-five francs.—Who will have good friends?—The English will have some.—Will your father be at home this evening?—He will be at home.—Will you be there?—I shall also be there.—Will your uncle go out to-day?—He will go out, if it is fine weather.—Shall you go out?—I shall go out, if it does not rain.—Will you love my son?—I shall love him, if he is good.—Will you pay your shoemaker?—I shall pay him, if I receive my money.—Will you love my children?—If they are good and assiduous I shall love them; but if they are idle and naughty I shall despise and punish them.—Am I right in speaking thus?—You are not wrong.—Is your friend still writing?—He is still writing.—Have you not done speaking?—I shall soon have done.—Have our friends done reading?—They will soon have done.—Has the tailor made my coat?—He has not made it yet, but he will soon make it.—When will he make it?—When he shall have time.—When will you do your exercises?—I shall do them when I shall have time.—When will your brother do his?—He will do them next Saturday.—Wilt thou

<sup>1</sup> These three are, properly speaking, and according to our Obs. *D.* of Lesson XXIV., no exceptions, but we have given them, to leave the learner no doubt whatever about the formation of the future in all the French verbs.

come to me?—I shall come.—When wilt thou come?—I shall come next Friday.—When have you seen my uncle?—I saw him last Sunday.—Will your cousins go to the ball next Tuesday?—They will go.—Will you come to my concert?—I shall come if I am not ill.

## 144.

When will you send me the money which you owe me?—I shall send it you soon.—Will your brothers send me the books which I have lent them?—They will send them you.—When will they send them to me?—They will send them to you next month.—Will you be able to pay me what you owe me?—I shall not be able to pay it you, for I have lost all my money.—Will the American be able to pay for his shoes?—He has lost his pocket-book, so that he will not be able to pay for them.—Will it be necessary to send for the physician?—Nobody is ill, so that it will not be necessary to send for him.—Will it be necessary to go to the market to-morrow?—It will be necessary to go thither, for we want some beef, some bread, and some wine.—Shall you see your father to-day?—I shall see him.—Where will he be?—He will be at his counting-house.—Will you go to the ball to-night?—I shall not go, for I am too ill to go to it.—Will your friend go?—He will go if you go.—Where will our neighbours go?—They will go no where; they will remain at home, for they have a good deal (*beaucoup*) to do.

## FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

*Quarante-septième Leçon.**\* To belong.*

Do you belong?  
 I do belong.  
 Does that horse belong to your brother?  
 It does belong to him.  
 To whom do these gloves belong?  
 They belong to the captains.  
 Do these horses belong to the captains?  
 They do belong to them.

*Appartenir* 2\*. (is conjugated like its primitive *tenir* \*, Lesson XL.)

Appartenez-vous?  
 J'appartiens.  
 Ce cheval appartient-il à votre frère?  
 Il lui appartient.  
 À qui appartiennent ces gants?  
 Ils appartiennent aux capitaines.  
 Ces chevaux appartiennent-ils aux capitaines?  
 Ils leur appartiennent.

*To suit.*

Does that cloth suit your brother?  
 It suits him.  
 Do these shoes suit your brothers?  
 They suit them.  
 Does it suit you to do that?  
 It suits me to do it.  
 Does it suit your cousin to come with us?  
 It does not suit him to go out.

*Convenir* 2\*. (Conjugated like *venir* \*, Les. XXIV. & XXXIV.)

Ce drap convient-il à votre frère?  
 Il lui convient.  
 Ces souliers conviennent-ils à vos frères?  
 Ils leur conviennent.  
 Vous convient-il de faire cela?  
 Il me convient de le faire.  
 Convient-il à votre cousin de venir avec nous?  
 Il ne lui convient pas de sortir.

*To succeed.*

Do you succeed in learning French?  
 I succeed in it.

*Parvenir* 2\*. (Conjugated like *venir* \*.)

† Parvenez-vous à apprendre le français?  
 † J'y parviens.

I do succeed in learning it.  
Do these men succeed in selling  
their horses ?  
They succeed therein.

† Je parviens à l'apprendre.  
† Ces hommes parviennent-ils à  
vendre leurs chevaux ?  
† Ils y parviennent.

*To succeed.*

Do you succeed in doing that ?  
I succeed in it.

*Réussir 2.*

Réussissez-vous à faire cela ?  
J'y réussis.

*To forget.*

To clean.  
The inkstand.

*Oublier 1* (takes *de* before the  
infinitive).  
*Nettoyer 1.*  
*L'encrier.*

Immediately, directly.  
This instant, instantly.  
Presently.

I am going to do it.  
I will do it immediately.  
I am going to work.

Tout de suite.  
'A l'instant, sur le champ.  
Tout à l'heure.  
Je vais le faire.  
Je vais le faire tout de suite.  
Je vais travailler.

*Is there ?*

*Are there ?*

There is not.  
There are not.  
Will there be ?  
There will be.

Was or were there, or has there  
been ?

There has been.

Is there any wine ?

There is some.

There is not any.

Are there any men ?

There are some.

There are not any.

} *Y a-t-il ?*

} *Il n'y a pas.*

*Y aura-t-il ?*

*Il y aura.*

*Y a-t-il eu ?*

*Il y a eu.*

*Y a-t-il du vin ?*

*Il y en a.*

*Il n'y en a pas.*

*Y a-t-il des hommes ?*

*Il y en a.*

*Il n'y en a pas.*



There are men who will not study.

Is there any one ?

There is no one.

Are there to be many people at the ball ?

There are to be a great many people there.

Il y a les hommes qui ne veulent pas étudier.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un ?

Il n'y a personne.

Doit-il y avoir beaucoup de monde au bal ?

Il doit y en avoir beaucoup.

On credit.

To sell on credit.

The credit.

Ready money.

To buy for cash.

To sell for cash.

To pay down.

Will you buy for cash ?

Does it suit you to sell to me on credit ?

'A crédit.

Vendre à crédit.

Le crédit.

De l'argent comptant.

Acheter comptant.

Vendre comptant.

Payer comptant.

Voulez-vous acheter argent comptant ?

Vous convient-il de me vendre à crédit ?

*To fit.*

Does that coat fit me ?

It fits you.

That hat does not fit your brother.

It does not fit him.

Do these shoes fit you ?

They fit me.

That fits you very well.

† *Aller bien.*

† Cet habit me va-t-il bien ?

† Il vous va bien.

† Ce chapeau ne va pas bien à votre frère.

† Il ne lui va pas bien.

† Ces souliers vous vont-ils bien ?

† Ils me vont bien.

† Cela vous va fort bien.

*To keep.*

You had better.

I had better.

He had better.

Instead of keeping your horse you had better sell it.

Instead of selling his hat he had better keep it.

*Garder 1.*

† Vous ferez mieux *de*.

† Je ferai mieux *de*.

† Il fera mieux *de*.

† Au lieu de garder votre cheval vous ferez mieux *de* le vendre.

† Au lieu de vendre son chapeau il fera mieux *de* le garder.

Will you keep the horse?	Garderez-vous le cheval?
I shall keep it.	Je le garderai.
You must not keep my money.	Il ne faut pas garder mon argent.

*To please, to be pleased.*      *Plaire 4\* ; pres. part. plai-*  
*sant ; past part. plu.*

I please, thou pleasest, he pleases.	Je plais, tu plais, il plaît.
<i>To please some one.</i>	† <i>Plaire à quelqu'un.</i>
Does that book please you?	Ce livre vous plaît-il?
It pleases me much.	Il me plaît beaucoup.
I will do what you please.	† Je ferai ce qu'il vous plaira.
You are pleased to say so.	† Cela vous plaît à dire (a familiar expression).

What is your pleasure?	} † Que vous plaît-il?
What do you want?	
What do you say?	

*To please.*

How do you please yourself here?	† <i>Se plaire 4*.</i>
I please myself very well here.	Comment vous plaisez-vous ici?
	Je m'y plais très bien.

*Obs.* The impersonal *it is*, is rendered by *c'est* for the singular, and by *ce sont* for the plural. Ex.

Whose book is this?	'A qui est ce livre?
It is his.	C'est le sien.
Whose shoes are these?	'A qui sont ces souliers?
They are ours.	Ce sont les nôtres.
It is they who have seen him.	Ce sont eux qui l'ont vu.
It is your friends who are in the right.	Ce sont vos amis qui ont raison.

## EXERCISES.

145.

To whom does that horse belong?—It belongs to the English captain whose son has written a note to you.—Does this money

belong to you?—It does belong to me.—From whom have you received it?—I have received it from the men whose children you have seen.—Whose horses are those?—They are (*ce sont*) ours.—Have you told your brother that I am waiting for him here?—I have forgotten to tell him so (*le*).—Is it (*est-ce*) your father or mine who is gone to Berlin?—It is mine.—Is it your baker, or that of our friend, who has sold you bread on credit?—It is (*c'est*) ours.—Is that your son?—He is not (*ce n'est pas*) mine, he is (*c'est*) my friend's.—Where is yours?—He is at Paris.—Have you brought me the book which you promised me?—I have forgotten it.—Has your uncle brought you the pocket-books which he promised you?—He has forgotten to bring me them.—Have you already written to your friend?—I have not yet had time to write to him.—Have you forgotten to write to your relation (*le parent*)?—I have not forgotten to write to him.—Does this cloth suit you?—It does not suit me; have you no other?—I have some other; but it is dearer than this.—Will you show it me?—I will show it you.—Do these shoes suit your uncle?—They do not suit him, because they are too dear.—Are these (*sont-ce*) the shoes of which (*dont*) you have spoken to us?—They are (*ce sont*) the same (*les mêmes*).—Whose shoes are these?—They belong to the nobleman whom you have seen this morning in my warehouse.—Does it suit you to come with us?—It does not suit me.—Does it suit you to go to the market?—It does not suit me to go thither.—Did you go on foot to Germany?—It does not suit me to go on foot, so that I went thither in a coach. (Lesson XLIV.)

## 146.

What is your pleasure, Sir?—I am inquiring after your father. Is he at home?—No, Sir, he is gone out.—What do you say?—I tell you that he is gone out.—Will you wait till he comes back (Lesson XXXVI.)?—I have no time to wait.—Does this merchant sell on credit?—He does not sell on credit.—Does it suit you to buy for cash?—It does not suit me.—Where did you buy these pretty knives?—I bought them at (*chez*) the merchant's whose warehouse you saw yester-

day.—Has he sold them to you on credit?—He has sold them to me for cash.—Do you often buy for cash?—Not so often as you.—Have you forgotten any thing here?—I have forgotten nothing.—Does it suit you to learn this (*ceci*) by heart?—I have not much time to study, so that it does not suit me to learn it by heart.—Has that man tried to speak to your father?—He has tried to speak to him, but he has not succeeded in it.—Have you succeeded in writing an exercise?—I have succeeded in it.—Have those merchants succeeded in selling their horses?—They have not succeeded therein.—Have you tried to clean my inkstand?—I have tried, but I have not succeeded in it.—Do your children succeed in learning English?—They do succeed in it.—Is there any wine in this cask?—There is some in it.—Is there any vinegar in this glass?—There is none in it.—Is wine or cider in it (*dedans*)?—There is neither wine nor cider in it?—What is there in it?—There is some vinegar in it.

## 147.

Are there any men in your warehouse?—There are some there.—Is there any one in the warehouse?—There is no one there.—Were there many people in the theatre?—There were many there.—Will there be many people at your ball?—There will be many there.—Are there many children that will not play?—There are many that will not study, but all will play.—Hast thou cleaned my trunk?—I have tried to do it, but I have not succeeded.—Do you intend buying an umbrella?—I intend buying one, if the merchant sells it me on credit.—Do you intend to keep mine?—I intend to give it you back (Lesson XXXIX.), if I buy one.—Have you returned the books to my brother?—I have not returned them to him yet.—How long do you intend keeping them?—I intend keeping them till next Saturday.—How long do you intend keeping my horse?—I intend keeping it till my father returns.—Have you cleaned my knife?—I have not had time yet, but I will do it this instant.—Have you made a fire?—Not yet, but I will make one presently.—Why have you not worked?—I have not yet been able.—What

had you to do?—I had to clean your carpet, and to mend your thread stockings.—Do you intend to sell your coat?—I intend keeping it, for I want it.—Instead of keeping it you had better sell it.—Do you sell your horses?—I do not sell them.—Instead of keeping them you had better sell them.—Does our friend keep his parasol?—He does keep it; but instead of keeping it he had better sell it, for it is worn out.—Does your son tear his book?—He does tear it; but he is wrong in doing so, for instead of tearing it he had better read it.



## FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

*Quarante-huitième Leçon.**To go away.*

When will you go away?

I will go soon.

By and by.

He will go away soon (by and by).

We will go to-morrow.

They will go to-morrow.

Thou wilt go immediately.

† *S'en aller*\*. (Less. XLIII.)

Quand vous en irez-vous ?

Je m'en irai bientôt.

Tout à l'heure.

Il s'en ira tout à l'heure.

Nous nous en irons demain.

Ils s'en iront demain.

Tu t'en iras sur le champ.

*When.*| *Lorsque* (conjunction).*To become.*What will become *of you* if you  
lose your money ?I do not know what will become  
*of me*.What will become *of him* ?What will become *of us* ?What will become *of them* ?I do not know what will become  
*of them*.*Devenir* 2 \*. (Less. XLIV.)† Que deviendrez-vous si vous  
perdez votre argent ?† Je ne sais pas ce que *je* devien-  
drai.

† Que deviendra-t-il ?

† Que deviendrons-nous ?

† Que deviendront-ils ?

† Je ne sais pas ce qu'*ils* devien-  
dront.*The turn.*

My turn.

In my turn.

In his turn.

*Le tour.*

Mon tour.

'A mon tour.

'A son tour.

In my brother's turn.	Au tour de mon frère.
Each in his turn.	Chacun à son tour.
When it comes to your turn.	† Quand votre tour viendra.
Our turn will come.	† Nous aurons notre tour.

To take a turn (a walk).	{ Faire un tour.
	{ Faire un tour de promenade.
He is gone to take a walk.	{ Il est allé faire un tour.
	{ Il est allé faire un tour de promenade.
To walk round the garden.	† Faire un tour <i>de</i> jardin.

<i>To run.</i>	<i>Courir 2*. past part. couru;</i>
	<i>pres. part. courant.</i>
I run, thou runnest, he runs.	Je cours, tu cours, il court.
Do you run?	Courez-vous?
I do run.	Je cours.
Shall or will you run?	Courrez-vous? (See Less. XLVI.)
I shall or will run.	Je courrai.

<i>Behind.</i>	<i>Derrière.</i>
Behind him.	Derrière lui.

A blow, a kick, a knock, a stab.	} Un coup.
A clap, a slap.	
Have you given that man a blow?	Avez-vous donné un coup à cet homme?
I have given him one.	Je lui en ai donné un.
A blow with a stick.	Un coup de bâton.
A kick (with the foot).	Un coup de pied.
A blow with the fist.	Un coup de poing.
A stab of a knife.	Un coup de couteau.
A shot or the report of a gun.	Un coup de fusil.
The shot of a pistol.	Un coup de pistolet.
A glance of the eye.	Un coup d'œil.
A clap of thunder.	Un coup de tonnerre.

To give a cut with a knife.  
 To give a man a blow with a stick.  
 To give a man a kick (with the foot).  
 To give a man a blow with the fist.

Donner un coup de couteau.  
 Donner un coup de bâton à un homme.  
 Donner un coup de pied à un homme.  
 Donner un coup de poing à un homme.

*To pull, to draw.*

*To shoot, to fire.*

} *Tirer* 1.

To fire a gun.  
 To fire a pistol.  
 To fire at some one.

† Tirer un coup de fusil.  
 † Tirer un coup de pistolet.  
 † Tirer un coup de fusil sur quelqu'un.

I have fired at that bird.

† J'ai tiré un coup de fusil à cet oiseau.

I have fired twice.

† J'ai tiré deux coups de fusil.

I have fired three times.

† J'ai tiré trois coups de fusil.

I have fired several times.

† J'ai tiré quelques coups de fusil.

How many times have you fired?

† Combien de coups de fusil avez-vous tirés?

How many times have you fired at that bird?

Combien de fois avez-vous tiré sur cet oiseau?

I have fired at it several times.

J'ai tiré plusieurs fois sur lui.

I have heard a shot.

† J'ai entendu un coup de fusil.

He has heard the report of a pistol.

† Il a entendu un coup de pistolet.

We have heard a clap of thunder.

† Nous avons entendu un coup de tonnerre.

The fist.

Le poing.

*To cast an eye upon some one or something.*

*Jeter un coup d'œil sur quelqu'un ou quelque chose.*

Have you cast an eye upon that book?

Avez-vous jeté un coup d'œil sur ce livre?

I have cast an eye upon it.

J'y ai jeté un coup d'œil.

Has that man gone away?  
 He has gone away.  
 Have your brothers gone away?  
 They have gone away.  
 They have not gone away.  
 Have they gone away?  
 They were not willing to go away.

Cet homme s'en est-il allé?  
 Il s'en est allé.  
 Vos frères s'en sont-ils allés?  
 Ils s'en sont allés.  
 Ils ne s'en sont pas allés.  
 S'en sont-ils allés?  
 Ils n'ont pas voulu s'en aller.

---

### EXERCISES.

148.

Are you going away already?—I am not going yet.—When will that man go away?—He will go presently.—Will you go away soon?—I shall go away next Thursday.—When will your friends go away?—They will go away next month.—When wilt thou go away?—I will go away instantly.—Why has your father gone away so soon (*si tôt*)?—He has promised his friend to be at his house at a quarter to nine, so that he went away early in order to keep what he has promised.—When shall we go away?—We shall go away to-morrow.—Shall we start early?—We shall start at five o'clock in the morning.—When will you go away?—I shall go away as soon as I have done writing.—When will your children go away?—They will go as soon as they have done their exercises.—Will you go when (*lorsque*) I shall go?—I shall go away when you go (*quand vous vous en irez*).—Will our neighbours soon go away?—They will go away when they have done speaking.—What will become of your son if he does not study?—If he does not study he will learn nothing.—What will become of you if you lose your money?—I do not know what will become of me.—What will become of your friend if he loses his pocket-book?—I do not know what will become of him if he loses it.—What has become of your son?—I do not know what has become of him.—Has he enlisted?—He has not enlisted.—What will become of us if our friends go away?—I do not know what will become of us if they go away.—What has become of your relations?—They have gone away.

## 149.

Do you intend buying a horse?—I cannot buy one, for I have not yet received my money.—Must I go to the theatre?—You must not go thither, for it is very bad weather.—Why do you not go to my brother?—It does not suit me to go to him, for I cannot yet pay him what I owe him.—Why does your servant give that man a cut with his knife?—He gives him a cut, because the man has given him a blow with the fist.—Which of these two pupils begins to speak?—The one who is studious begins to speak.—What does the other do who is not so?—He also begins to speak, but he knows neither how to write nor to read.—Does he not listen to what you tell him?—He does not listen to it, if I do not give him a beating (*de coups*).—Why do those children not work?—Their master has given them blows with his fist, so that they will not work.—Why has he given them blows with his fist?—Because they have been disobedient.—Have you fired a gun?—I have fired three times.—At what did you fire?—I fired at a bird.—Have you fired a gun at that man?—I have fired a pistol at him.—Why have you fired a pistol at him?—Because he has given me a stab with his knife.—How many times have you fired at that bird?—I have fired at it twice.—Have you killed it?—I have killed it at the second shot (*au deuxième coup*).—Have you killed that bird at the first shot (*du premier coup*)?—I have killed it at the fourth (*du quatrième*).—Do you fire at the birds which you see upon the trees, or at those which you see in the gardens?—I fire neither at those which I see upon the trees nor at those which I see in the gardens, but at those which I perceive on the castle behind the wood.

## 150.

How many times have the enemies fired at us?—They have fired at us several times.—Have they killed any one?—They have killed no one.—Have you a wish to fire at that bird?—I have a desire to fire at it.—Why do you not fire at those birds?—I cannot, for I have a sore finger.—When did the captain fire?—He fired when his soldiers fired.—How many birds have you shot at?—I have shot at all that I have perceived, but I have



killed none, because my gun is good for nothing.—Have you cast an eye upon that man?—I have cast an eye upon him.—Has he seen you?—He has not seen me, for he has sore eyes.—Have you drunk of that wine?—I have drunk of it, and it has done me good.—What have you done with my book?—I have put it upon your trunk.—Am I to answer you?—You will answer me when it comes to your turn.—Is it (*est-ce*) my brother's turn?—When it comes to his turn I shall ask him, for—each in his turn.—Have you taken a walk this morning?—I have taken a walk round the garden.—Where is your uncle gone to?—He is gone to take a walk.—Why do you run?—I run because I see my best friend.—Who runs behind us?—Our dog runs behind us.—Do you perceive that bird?—I perceive it behind the tree.—Why have your brothers gone away?—They have gone away, because they did not wish to be seen by the man whose dog they have killed. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## FORTY-NINTH LESSON.

*Quarante-neuvième Leçon.**To hear of.*

Have you heard of your brother ?

I have heard of him.

Is it long since you breakfasted ?

How long is it since you breakfasted ?

*Obs. A.* The impersonal *il y a* cannot be rendered into English by *there is, there are*, when it is used in reply to the question : *How long is it since ?*

It is not long since I breakfasted.

It is a great while since.

It is a short time since.

How long is it since you heard of your brother ?

It is a year since I heard of him.

It is only a year since.

It is more than a year since.

*Entendre parler.*

† Avez-vous entendu parler de votre frère ?

† J'en ai entendu parler.

† Y a-t-il long temps que vous avez déjeuné ?

† Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous avez déjeuné ?

† Il n'y a pas long temps que j'ai déjeuné.

† Il y a très long temps que.

† Il y a peu de temps que.

† Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous avez entendu parler de votre frère ?

† Il y a un an que j'ai entendu parler de lui.

† Il y a un an que j'en ai entendu parler.

*Obs. B.* *Than*, when before a number, is rendered by *de*.

More than nine.

More than twenty times.

It is hardly six months since.

Plus *de* neuf.Plus *de* vingt fois.

† Il y a à peine six mois que.

A few hours ago.	† Il y a quelques heures.
Half an hour ago.	† Il y a une demi-heure.
Two years ago.	† Il y a deux ans.
Two hours and a half ago.	† Il y a deux heures et demie. (See Note 2, Lesson XIX.)
A fortnight ago.	† Il y a quinze jours.
A fortnight.	† Quinze jours <sup>1</sup> .

Have you been long in France ?	† Y a-t-il long temps que vous êtes en France ?
--------------------------------	---

*Obs. C.* In English the state of existence or of action, when in its duration, is always expressed in the preterperfect tense, whilst in French it is expressed by the present tense.

He has been in Paris these three years.	Il y a trois ans qu'il est à Paris.
I have been living here these two years.	Il y a deux ans que je demeure ici.

*Obs. D.* *De temps* is often not expressed, but understood. Ex.

How long have you had that horse ?	Combien y a-t-il que vous avez ce cheval ? (Instead of combien <i>de temps</i> y a-t-il.)
I have had it these five years.	Il y a cinq ans que je l'ai.

How long (since when) ?	Depuis quand ?
How long has he been here ?	Depuis quand est-il ici ?
These three days.	Depuis trois jours.
This month.	Depuis un mois.
I have seen him more than twenty times.	Je l'ai vu plus de vingt fois.
It is six months since I spoke to him.	Il y a six mois que je <i>ne</i> lui ai parlé.

*Obs. E.* When *que* means *depuis* *que*, *il y a* must be followed by the negative *ne*. In such instances the English use no negative.

Since I saw you it has rained very often.	Depuis que je <i>ne</i> vous ai vu il a plu très souvent.
It is more than a year since I heard of him.	Il y a plus d'un an que je <i>n'en</i> ai entendu parler.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, fifteen days.

*To have just.*

I have just seen your brother.

*Venir 2\* de.*

† Je viens de voir votre frère.

*Obs. F.* To express an action recently past, we often make use of the verb *venir* \* immediately followed by the preposition *de*, and the infinitive.

He has just done writing.

The men have just arrived.

Has that man been waiting long?

He has but just come.

† Il vient d'écrire.

† Les hommes viennent d'arriver.

† Y a-t-il long temps que cet homme attend?

† Il ne fait que d'arriver.

*To do one's best.*

I will do my best.

He will do his best.

† *Faire de son mieux.*

† Je ferai *de* mon mieux.

† Il fera *de* son mieux.

*To spend money.*

How much have you spent to-day?

He has fifty crowns a month to live upon.


*Dépenser 1.*

Combien avez-vous dépensé aujourd'hui?

Il a cinquante écus par mois à dépenser.

Have the horses been found?

| Les chevaux ont-ils été trouvés?

 The passive participle agrees with the nominative in number, that is, when the nominative is plural the participle takes an s.

They have been found.

Where? When?

The men have been seen.

Our children have been praised and rewarded, because they have been good and studious.

By whom have they been rewarded?

By whom have we been blamed?

Ils ont été trouvés.

Où? Quand?

Les hommes ont été vus.

Nos enfants ont été loués et récompensés, parcequ'ils ont été sages et assidus.

De qui ont-ils été récompensés?

De qui avons-nous été blâmés?

*To pass.*  
*Before.*

*Passer* 1.  
*Devant.*

*Obs. G.* *Before* is expressed in French by *avant* when it denotes priority. (See Lesson XXVIII.), and by *devant*, when it signifies in presence of. Ex.

To pass before some one.

Passer devant quelqu'un.

To pass before a place.

Passer devant un endroit.

A place.

Un endroit.

I have passed before the theatre.

J'ai passé devant le théâtre.

He has passed before me.

Il a passé devant moi.

*To spend time in something.*

*Passer le temps à quelque chose.*

What do you spend your time in?

† 'A quoi passez-vous le temps?

I spend my time in studying.

† Je passe le temps à étudier.

What has he spent his time in?

† 'A quoi a-t-il passé le temps?

What shall we spend our time in?

† 'A quoi passerons-nous le temps?

*To miss, to fail.*

*Manquer* 1 (takes *de* before the infinitive).

The merchant has failed to bring the money.

Le marchand a manqué d'apporter l'argent.

You have missed your turn.

Vous avez manqué votre tour.

You have failed to come to me this morning.

Vous avez manqué de venir chez moi ce matin.

*To be good for something.*

† *Être bon à quelque chose.*

Of what use is that?

† 'A quoi cela est-il bon?

It is good for nothing.

† Cela n'est bon à rien.

The good-for-nothing fellow.

Le vaurien.

Is the gun which you have bought a good one?

Le fusil que vous avez acheté est-il bon?

No, it is worth nothing (good for nothing).

Non, il ne vaut rien.



*To throw away.*

Have you thrown away any thing?

I have not thrown away any thing.

*Jeter 1 (rejeter).*

Avez-vous jeté quelque chose?

Je n'ai rien jeté.

# EXERCISES.

151.

Have you heard of any one?—I have not heard of any one, for I have not gone out this morning.—Have you not heard of the man who has killed a soldier?—I have not heard of him.—Have you heard of my brothers?—I have not heard of them.—Of whom has your cousin heard?—He has heard of his friend who is gone to America.—Is it long since he heard of him?—It is not long since he heard of him.—How long is it?—It is only a month.—Have you been long in Paris?—These three years.—Has your brother been long in London?—He has been there these ten years.—How long is it since you dined?—It is long since I dined, but it is not long since I supped.—How long is it since you supped?—It is half an hour.—How long have you had these books?—I have had them these three months.—How long is it since your cousin set out?—It is more than a year since he set out.—What is become of the man who has lent you money?—I do not know what has become of him, for it is a great while since (*que je ne*) I saw him.—Is it long since you heard (*que vous n'avez entendu parler*) of the soldier who gave your friend a cut with the knife?—It is more than a year since I heard of him.—How long have you been learning French?—I have been learning it only these two months.—Do you know already how to speak it?—You see that I am beginning to speak it.—Have the children of the English noblemen been learning it long?—They have been learning it these three years, and they do not yet begin to speak.—Why do they not know how to speak it?—They do not know how to speak it, because they are learning it badly.—Why do they not learn it well?—They have not a good master, so that they do not learn it well.

## 152.

Is it long since you saw the young man who learnt German with (*chez*) the master with whom we learnt it?—I have not seen him for nearly a year.—How long is it since that child ate?—It ate a few minutes ago.—How long is it since those children drank?—They drank a quarter of an hour ago.—How long has your friend been in Spain?—He has been there this month.—How often have you seen the king (*le roi*)?—I saw him more than ten times when I was in Paris.—When did you meet my brother?—I met him a fortnight ago.—Where did you meet him?—I met him before the theatre.—Did he do you any harm?—He did me no harm, for he is a very good boy.—Where are my gloves?—They (*on*) have thrown them away.—Have the horses been found?—They have been found.—Where have they been found?—They have been found behind the wood, on this side of the road.—Have you been seen by any body?—I have been seen by nobody.—Do you expect any one?—I expect my cousin the captain.—Have you not seen him?—I have seen him this morning; he has passed before my warehouse.—What does this young man wait for?—He waits for money.—Art thou waiting for any thing?—I am waiting for my book.—Is this young man waiting for his money?—He is waiting for it.—Has the king passed here (*par ici*)?—He has not passed here (*par ici*), but before the theatre.—Has he not passed before the castle?—He has passed there, but I have not seen him.

## 153.

What do you spend your time in?—I spend my time in studying.—What does your brother spend his time in?—He spends his time in reading and playing.—Does this man spend his time in working?—He is a good-for-nothing fellow; he spends his time in drinking and playing.—What do your children spend their time in?—They spend their time in learning.—Can you pay me what you owe me?—I cannot pay it you, for the merchant has failed to bring me my money.—Why have you breakfasted without me?—You failed to come at nine o'clock, so that we have breakfasted

without you.—Has the merchant brought you the gloves which you bought at his house (*chez lui*)?—He has failed to bring them to me.—Has he sold them you on credit?—He has sold them me, on the contrary, for cash.—Do you know those men?—I do not know them; but I believe that they are (*ce sont*) good-for-nothing fellows, for they spend their time in playing.—Why did you fail to come to my father this morning?—The tailor did not bring me the coat which he promised me, so that I could not go to him.—Who is the man who has just spoken to you?—He is a merchant.—What has the shoemaker just brought?—He has brought the shoes which he has made us.—Who are the men that have just arrived?—They are Russians.—Where did your uncle dine yesterday?—He dined at home.—How much did he spend?—He spent five francs.—How much has he a month to live upon?—He has two hundred francs a month to live upon.—Do you throw your hat away?—I do not throw it away, for it fits me very well.—How much have you spent to-day?—I have not spent much; I have only spent two francs.—Do you spend every day as much as that?—I sometimes spend more than that.—Has that man been waiting long?—He has but just come.—What does he wish?—He wishes to speak to you.—Are you willing to do that?—I am willing to do it.—Shall you be able (Lesson XLVI.) to do it well?—I will do my best.—Will this man be able to do that?—He will be able to do it, for he will do his best.

## FIFTIETH LESSON.

*Cinquantième Leçon.**Far.*

*How far* (meaning *what distance*) ?

*Obs.* The impersonal *il y a* cannot be rendered into English by *there is, there are*, when it is used in reply to the question, *How far ?* *Quelle distance ?*

How far is it from here to Paris ?

Is it far from here to Paris ?

It is far.

It is not far.

How many miles is it ?

It is twenty miles.

A mile.

It is almost two hundred miles from here to Paris.

It is nearly a hundred miles from Berlin to Vienne.

*Loin.*

*Quelle distance ?*

*Quelle distance y a-t-il d'ici à Paris ?*

*Y a-t-il loin d'ici à Paris ?*

*Il y a loin.*

*Il n'y a pas loin.*

*Combien de milles y a-t-il ?*

*Il y a vingt milles.*

*Un mille.*

*Il y a près de deux cents milles d'ici à Paris.*

*Il y a environ cent milles de Berlin à Vienne.*

*From.*

From Venice.

From London.

I am from Paris.

What countryman are you ?

Are you from France ?

I am.

The Parisian.

He is a Parisian (from Paris).

The king.

The philosopher.

*De.*

De Venise.

De Londres.

Je suis de Paris.

† De quel pays êtes-vous ?

Êtes-vous de France ?

J'en suis

Le Parisien.

† Il est Parisien.

Le roi.

Le philosophe.

The preceptor, the tutor.	Le précepteur.
The professor.	Le professeur.
The landlord, the innkeeper.	L'aubergiste.

Are you an Englishman ?	Êtes-vous Anglais ?
Whence do you come ?	D'où venez-vous ?
I come from Paris.	Je viens de Paris.

*To fly, to run away.*

I run away, thou runnest away,  
 he runs away.  
 Why do you fly ?  
 I fly because I am afraid.

*S'enfuir* 2 \* ; pres. part. *fuyant* ; past part. *fui*.

Je m'enfuis, tu t'enfuis, il s'enfuit.

Pourquoi vous enfuyez-vous ?  
 Je m'enfuis parceque j'ai peur.

*To assure.*

I assure you that he is arrived.

*Assurer* 1.

Je vous assure qu'il est arrivé.

*To hear.*

Have you heard nothing new ?

I have heard nothing new.

† *Apprendre* \* (is conjugated like its primitive *prendre* \*, Lesson XXXIV.).

† N'avez-vous rien appris de nouveau ?

† Je n'ai rien appris de nouveau.

*To happen.*

The happiness, fortune.

The unhappiness, misfortune.

A great misfortune has happened.

He has met with a great misfortune.

What has happened to you ?

Nothing has happened to me.

I have met with your brother.

*Arriver* 1.

Le bonheur.

Le malheur.

Il est arrivé un grand malheur.

† Il lui est arrivé un grand malheur.

Que vous est-il arrivé ?

Il ne m'est rien arrivé.

J'ai rencontré votre frère.



The poor man.

I have cut his finger.

You have broken the man's neck.

*To pity.*

I pity, thou pitiest, he pities.

Do you pity that man?

I pity him with all my heart.

With all my heart.

Le pauvre homme. (See Note 1, Lesson XXVI.)

† Je lui ai coupé le doigt.

† Vous avez cassé le cou à l'homme.

*Plaindre* 4 \*; pres. part. *plaignant*; past part. *plaint*.

Je plains, tu plains, il plaint.

Plaiguez-vous cet homme?

Je le plains de tout mon cœur.

† De tout mon cœur.

*To complain.*

Do you complain?

I do not complain.

Do you complain of my friend?

I do complain of him.

I do not complain of him.

† *Se plaindre* 4 \*.

† Vous plaiguez-vous?

† Je ne me plains pas.

Vous plaiguez-vous de mon ami?

Je m'en plains.

Je ne m'en plains pas.

*To dare.*

*To spoil, to damage.*

*To serve, to wait upon.*

Dost thou wait upon (serve)?

I do wait upon (I serve).

He waits upon (he serves).

Do you wait upon (do you serve)?

To serve some one, to wait upon some one.

Has he been in your service?

Has he served you?

How long has he been in your service?

The service.

*Oser* 1.

*Gâter* 1.

*Servir* 2 \*; pres. part. *servant*; past part. *servi*.

Sers-tu?

Je sers.

Il sert.

Servez-vous?

Servir quelqu'un.

A-t-il été à votre service?

Vous a-t-il servi?

† Combien y a-t-il qu'il vous sert?

† Combien y a-t-il qu'il est à votre service?

Le service.

*To offer.*

Do you offer?  
I do offer.  
Thou offerest.  
He offers.

*Offrir* 2\*; pres. part. *offrant*;  
past part. *offert*.  
*Offrez-vous*?  
*J'offre*.  
*Tu offres*.  
*Il offre*.

*To confide, to trust with, to entrust.*

Do you trust me with your money?  
I do trust you with it.  
I have entrusted that man with a secret.

The secret.

To keep any thing secret.

I have kept it secret.

*Confier* 1.

*Me confiez-vous votre argent*?  
*Je vous le confie*.  
*J'ai confié un secret à cet homme*.

*Le secret*.

† *Garder le secret de quelque chose*.

† *J'en ai gardé le secret*.

*To take care of something.*

Do you take care of your clothes?  
I do take care of them.  
Will you take care of my horse?

I will take care of it.

*To leave.**To squander, to dissipate.*

He has squandered all his wealth.

*To hinder, to prevent.**To keep from.*

You hinder me from sleeping.

{ *Avoir* \* *soin*, } de quelque  
{ *Prendre* \* *soin*, } chose.

*Avez-vous soin de vos habits*?

*J'en ai soin*.

*Voulez-vous prendre soin de mon cheval*?

*Je veux en prendre soin*.

*Laisser* 1.*Dissiper* 1.

*Il a dissipé tout son bien*.

{ *Empêcher* 1 (takes *de* before  
the infinitive).

| † *Vous m'empêchez de dormir*.

*To purchase.*

What have you purchased to-day?

{ *Faire emplette* (a feminine noun;  
takes *de* before the substantive).  
*Faire des emplettes*.

† *De quoi avez-vous fait emplette aujourd'hui*?

I have purchased two handkerchiefs.

Have you purchased any thing to-day?

† J'ai fait emplette *de* deux mouchoirs.

Avez-vous fait des emplettes aujourd'hui?

Most lovely, charming.

Admirably.

That hat fits you admirably.

That coat fits him very well.

It is charming.

Charmant (an adjective), très bien, extrêmement bien (adverbs).

'A merveille (an adverb).

Ce chapeau vous va à merveille.

Cet habit lui va très bien.

C'est charmant.

## EXERCISES.

### 154.

How far is it from Paris to London?—It is nearly two hundred miles from Paris to London.—Is it far from here to Berlin?—It is far.—Is it far from here to Vienna?—It is almost a hundred and fifty miles from here to Vienna.—Is it farther from Paris to Blois than from Orleans to Paris?—It is farther from Orleans to Paris than from Paris to Blois.—How far is it from Paris to Berlin?—It is almost a hundred and thirty miles from Paris to Berlin.—Do you intend to go to Paris soon?—I intend to go thither soon.—Why do you wish to go this time (*cette fois*)?—In order to buy good books and good gloves there, and to see my good friends.—Is it long since you were there?—It is nearly a year since I was there.—Do you not go to Italy this year (*cette année*)?—I do not go thither, for it is too far from here to Italy.—Who are the men that have just arrived?—They are philosophers.—Of what country are they?—They are from London.—Who is the man who has just started?—He is an Englishman, who has squandered away (*dissipé*) all his fortune (*tout son bien*) in France.—What countryman are you?—I am a Spaniard, and my friend is an Italian.—Are you from Tours?—No, I am a Parisian.—How much money have your children spent to-day?—They have spent but little; they have spent but one crown.—Where did you dine yesterday?—I dined at the innkeeper's.—Did you spend much?—I spent a crown and a half.—Has the king passed here

(*par ici*)?—He has not passed here, but before the theatre.—Have you seen him?—I have seen him.—Is it the first time (*la première fois que*) you have seen him?—It is not the first time, for I have seen him more than twenty times.

## 155.

Why does that man run away?—He runs away because he is afraid.—Why do you run away?—I run away because I am afraid.—Of whom are you afraid (Lesson XLIII.)?—I am afraid of the man who does not love me.—Is he your enemy?—I do not know whether he (*s'il*) is my enemy; but I fear all those who do not love me, for if they do me no harm, they will do me no good.—Do you fear my cousin?—I do not fear him, for he has never done any body harm.—You are in the wrong to run away before that man, for I assure you that he is (*que c'est*) a very good man (*brave homme*), who has never done harm to any one.—Of whom has your brother heard?—He has heard of a man to whom a misfortune has happened.—Why have your scholars not done their exercises?—I assure you that they have done them, and you are mistaken if you believe that they have not done them.—What have you done with my book?—I assure you that I have not seen it.—Has your son had my knives?—He assures me that he has not had them.—Has your uncle arrived already?—He has not arrived yet.—Will you wait till he returns?—I cannot wait, for I have a good deal (*beaucoup*) to do.—Have you not heard any thing new?—I have heard nothing new.—Has the king arrived?—They say that he has arrived.—What has happened to you?—A great misfortune has happened to me.—What (*lequel*)?—I have met with my greatest enemy, who has given me a blow with a stick.—Then I pity you with all my heart.—Why do you pity that man?—I pity him because you have broken his neck.—Why do you complain of my friend?—I complain of him because he has cut my finger.—Does that man serve you well?—He does serve me well, but he spends too much.—Are you willing to take this servant?—I am willing to take him, if he will serve me.—Can I take that servant?—You can take him, for he has served me very well.—How long is it since he is out of (*hors de*) your service?—

It is but two months since.—Has he served you long?—He has served me for (*pendant*) six years.

## 156.

Do you offer me any thing?—I have nothing to (*à*) offer you.—What does my friend offer you?—He offers me a book.—Have the Parisians offered you any thing?—They have offered me wine, bread, and good beef.—Why do you pity our neighbour?—I pity him, because he has trusted a merchant of (*de*) Paris with his money, and the man (*et que celui-ci*) will not return it to him.—Do you trust this man with any thing?—I do not trust him with any thing.—Has he already kept any thing from you?—I have never trusted him with any thing, so that he has never kept any thing from me.—Will you trust my father with your money?—I will trust him with it.—With what secret has my son entrusted you?—I cannot entrust you with that with which he has entrusted me, for he has desired me (*m'a prié*) to keep it secret.—Whom do you entrust with your secrets?—I entrust nobody with them, so that nobody knows them.—Has your brother been rewarded?—He has, on the contrary, been punished; but I beg you (*prier*) to keep it secret, for no one knows it.—What has happened to him?—I will tell you what has happened to him, if you promise me to keep it secret. Do you promise me to keep it secret?—I do promise you, for I pity him with all my heart.—Will you take care of my clothes?—I will take care of them.—Are you taking care of the book which I lent you?—I am taking care of it.—Who will take care of my servant?—The landlord will take care of him.—Do you throw away your hat?—I do not throw it away, for it fits me admirably.—Does your friend sell his coat?—He does not sell it, for it fits him most beautifully.—Who has spoiled my book?—No one has spoiled it, because no one has dared to touch it (*le toucher*).



## THIRD MONTH.

*Troisième Mois.*

## FIFTY-FIRST LESSON.

*Cinquante et unième Leçon.*

Will the people come soon?	Le monde viendra-t-il bientôt?
<i>Soon, very soon.</i>	<i>Bientôt.</i>
A violin.	Un violon.
To play upon the violin.	} † Jouer du violon.
To play the violin.	

*Obs.* When a musical instrument is spoken of, the verb *jouer*, to play, governs the genitive, but the dative when a game is spoken of.  
*Ex.* To play at cards, *jouer aux cartes*; to play at chess, *jouer aux échecs*.

The harpsichord.	Le clavecin.
To play the harpsichord.	} † Jouer du clavecin.
To play upon the harpsichord.	
What instrument do you play?	† De quel instrument jouez-vous?

*To touch.* | *Toucher* 1.

<i>Near.</i>	<i>Près de.</i>
Near me.	Près de moi.
Near them.	Près d'eux.
Near the fire.	Près du feu.
Near the trees.	Près des arbres.
Near going.	Près d'aller.
Where do you live?	Où demeurez-vous?
I live near the castle.	Je demeure près du château.
What are you doing near the fire?	Que faites-vous près du feu?

*To dance.**To fall.**To drop (meaning to let fall).*

Has he dropt any thing?

He has not dropt any thing.

*Danser 1.**Tomber 1* (takes *être* for its auxiliary).*Laisser tomber.*

A-t-il laissé tomber quelque chose?

Il n'a rien laissé tomber.

*To retain, to hold back.**Retenir 2\** (is conjugated like *tenir*\*, Less. XL.).*To approach, to draw near.*

Do you approach the fire?

I do approach it.

*To approach, to have access to one.*

He is a man difficult of access.

I go away (withdraw) from the fire.

*To withdraw from.**To go away from.*

I go away from it.

Why does that man go away from the fire?

He goes away from it because he is not cold.

*S'approcher 1* (governs the genitive).

Vous approchez-vous du feu?

Je m'en approche.

*Approcher quelqu'un.*

C'est un homme qu'on ne peut approcher.

Je m'éloigne du feu.

*S'éloigner 1* (governs the genitive).

Je m'en éloigne.

Pourquoi cet homme s'éloigne-t-il du feu?

Il s'en éloigne parcequ'il n'a pas froid.

*To recollect.*

Do you recollect that?

I do recollect it.

Does your brother recollect that?

He does recollect it.

Do you recollect the words?

I do recollect them.

† *Se rappeler 1* (governs the accusative. See Obs. Les. XXXIII. on the doubling of the letter *l* when it is followed by *e* mute).

Vous rappelez-vous cela?

Je me le rappelle.

Votre frère se rappelle-t-il cela?

Il se le rappelle.

Vous rappelez-vous les mots?

Je me les rappelle.

Have you recollected the words ?	Vous êtes-vous rappelé les mots ?
I have recollected them.	Je me les suis rappelés.
I have not recollected them.	Je ne me les suis pas rappelés.
Have you recollected them ?	Vous les êtes-vous rappelés ?
You have recollected them.	Vous vous les êtes rappelés.
Has he recollected them ?	Se les est-il rappelés ?
He has recollected them.	Il se les est rappelés.
We have recollected them.	Nous nous les sommes rappelés.
They have recollected them.	Ils se les sont rappelés.

*To remember, to recollect.* { *Se souvenir* 2 \*, or  
*Se ressouvenir* 2 \* (govern the  
genitive; are conjugated like  
*venir* \*, their primitive, Lessons  
XXIV. & XXXIV.).

Do you remember that man ?	Vous souvenez-vous de cet homme ?
I do remember him.	Je m'en souviens.
Do you remember that ?	Vous souvenez-vous de cela ?
I do remember it.	Je m'en souviens.
What do you remember ?	De quoi vous souvenez-vous ?
I remember nothing.	Je ne me souviens de rien.

*To sit down.*

	† <i>S'asseoir</i> *; pres. part. <i>s'asseyant</i> ; past part. <i>assis</i> .
Are you sitting down ?	Vous asseyez-vous ?
I am sitting down.	Je m'assieds.
Thou art sitting down.	Tu t'assieds.
He is sitting down.	Il s'assied.
I shall or will sit down.	Je m'assiérai, or je m'asseierai. (See Lesson XLVI.)
He sits near the fire.	} Il est assis près du feu.
He is sitting near the fire.	

*To like better, to prefer.*

	<i>Aimer mieux.</i>
Do you like to stay here better than going out ?	Aimez-vous mieux rester ici que de sortir ?
I like staying here better than going out.	J'aime mieux rester ici que de sortir.

He likes to play better than to study.

Do you like to write better than to speak ?

I like to speak better than to write.

*Better than.*

Il aime mieux jouer que d'étudier.

Aimez-vous mieux écrire que de parler ?

J'aime mieux parler que d'écrire.

*Mieux—que de.*

He likes to do both.

I like beef better than mutton.

Do you like bread better than cheese ?

I like neither the one nor the other.

I like tea as much as coffee.

Just as much.

Some veal.

A calf, calves.

Il aime à faire l'un et l'autre.

J'aime mieux le bœuf que le mouton.

Aimez-vous mieux le pain que le fromage ?

Je n'aime ni l'un ni l'autre.

J'aime tout autant le thé que le café.

Tout autant.

Du veau.

Un veau, des veaux.

*Quick, fast.*

*Slow, slowly.*

*Aloud.*

Does your master speak aloud ?

He speaks aloud.

In order to learn French one must speak aloud.

*Quicker, faster.*

*Not so quick, less quick.*

As fast as you.

He eats quicker than I.

Do you learn as fast as I ?

I learn faster than you.

I do not understand you because you speak too fast.

*Vite.*

*Lentement.*

*Haut or à haute voix.*

Votre maître parle-t-il haut ?

Il parle haut.

Pour apprendre le français, il faut parler haut.

*Plus vite.*

*Pas si vite, moins vite.*

Aussi vite que vous.

Il mange plus vite que moi.

Apprenez-vous aussi vite que moi ?

J'apprends plus vite que vous.

Je ne vous comprends pas parce-que vous parlez trop vite.

*To sell cheap.*

*To sell dear.*

Does he sell cheap ?

*Vendre à bon marché.*

*Vendre cher.*

Vend-il à bon marché ?

He does not sell dear.  
He has sold to me very dear.

*So.*

This man sells every thing so dear,  
that one cannot buy any thing  
of him.

You speak so fast that I cannot  
understand you.

To buy something of some one.

I have bought it of him.

Il ne vend pas cher.  
Il m'a vendu fort cher.

*Si.*

Cet homme vend tout si cher,  
qu'on ne peut rien acheter chez  
lui.

Vous parlez si vite que je ne puis  
vous comprendre.

Acheter quelque chose à quel-  
qu'un.

Je le lui ai acheté<sup>1</sup>.

*So much, so many.*

I have written so many notes that  
I cannot write any more.

*Tant.*

J'ai écrit tant de billets, que je ne  
puis plus en écrire.

Do you fear to go out?

I do fear to go out.

*To run away, to fly.*

Did you run away?

I did not run away.

Why did that man run away?

He ran away because he was  
afraid.

Who has run away?

He has run away.

Craignez-vous *de* sortir?

Je crains *de* sortir.

*Se sauver* 1; *s'enfuir* 2\*

(Lesson L.).

Vous êtes-vous sauvé?

Je ne me suis pas sauvé.

Pourquoi cet homme s'est-il  
sauvé?

Il s'est sauvé parcequ'il a eu  
peur.

{ Qui s'est enfui?

{ Qui s'est sauvé?

{ Il s'est enfui.

{ Il s'est sauvé.

<sup>1</sup> *Acheter à quelqu'un* means to buy *of* or *for* some one. Ex. *J'ai acheté ce cheval à votre frère*, I have bought that horse of your brother; i. e. *Je l'ai acheté de lui*, I have bought it of him. *J'ai acheté un gâteau à mon enfant*, I have bought a cake for my child; i. e. *Je l'ai acheté pour lui*, I have bought it for him.



## EXERCISES.

157.

Do you play the violin?—I do not play the violin, but the harpsichord.—Shall we have a ball to-night?—We shall have one.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter to eleven.—What o'clock is it now?—It is almost eleven, and the people will soon come.—What instrument will you play?—I shall play the violin.—If you play the violin I shall play upon the harpsichord.—Are there to be (*doit-il y avoir*) a great many people at our ball?—There is to be a great many.—Will you dance?—I shall dance.—Will your children dance?—They will dance if they please (*si cela leur convient*, or *si cela leur plaît*).—In what do you spend your time in this country?—I spend my time in playing on the harpsichord, and in reading.—In what does your cousin divert himself?—He diverts himself in playing upon the violin.—Does any one dance when you play?—A great many people dance when I play.—Who?—At first (*d'abord*) our children, then our cousins, at last our neighbours.—Do you amuse yourselves?—I assure you that we amuse ourselves very much.—Whom do you pity?—I pity your friend.—Why do you pity him?—I pity him because he is ill.—Has any body pitied you?—Nobody has pitied me, because I have not been ill.—Do you offer me any thing?—I offer you a fine gun.—What has my father offered you?—He has offered me a fine book.—To whom have you offered your fine horses?—I have offered them to the English captain.—Dost thou offer thy pretty little dog to these children?—I offer it to them, for I love them with all my heart.—Why have you given that boy a blow with your fist?—Because he hindered me from sleeping.—Has any body hindered you from writing?—Nobody has hindered me from writing, but I have hindered somebody from hurting your cousin.

158.

Have you dropt any thing?—I have dropt nothing, but my cousin dropt some money.—Who has picked it up?—Some men

have picked it up.—Was it returned to him (*le lui a-t-on rendu*)?—It was returned to him, for those who picked it up did not wish to keep it.—Is it cold to-day?—It is very cold.—Will you draw near the fire?—I cannot draw near it, for I am afraid of burning myself.—Why does your friend go away from the fire?—He goes away from it because he is afraid of burning himself.—Art thou coming near the fire?—I am coming near it, because I am very cold.—Do you go away from the fire?—I do go away from it.—Why do you go away from it?—Because I am not cold.—Are you cold or warm?—I am neither cold nor warm.—Why do your children approach the fire?—They approach it because they are cold.—Is any body cold?—Somebody is cold.—Who is cold?—The little boy, whose father has lent you a horse, is cold.—Why does he not warm himself?—Because his father has no money to buy wood.—Will you tell him to come to me to warm himself?—I will tell him so (*le*).—Do you remember any thing?—I remember nothing.—What does your uncle recollect?—He recollects what you have promised him.—What have I promised him?—You have promised him to go to France with him next winter.—I intend to do so, if it is not too cold.—Why do you withdraw from the fire?—I have been sitting near the fire this hour and a half, so that I am no longer cold.—Does your friend not like to sit near the fire?—He likes, on the contrary, much (*beaucoup*) to sit near the fire, but only when he is cold.—May one approach your uncle?—One may approach him, for he receives every body.—Will you sit down?—I will sit down.—Where does your father sit down?—He sits down near me.—Where shall I sit down?—You may sit near me.—Do you sit down near the fire?—I do not sit down near the fire, for I am afraid of being too warm.—Do you recollect my brother?—I do recollect him.

## 159.

Do your parents recollect their old friends?—They do recollect them.—Do you recollect these words?—I do not recollect them.—Have you recollected that?—I have recollected it.—Has your uncle recollected those words?—He has recollected them.—Have I recollected my exercise?—You have recollected it.—Have you

recollected your exercises?—I have recollected them, for I have learnt them by heart; and my brothers have recollected theirs because they have learnt them by heart.—Is it long since you saw your friend from Paris?—I saw him a fortnight ago.—Do your scholars like to learn by heart?—They do not like to learn by heart; they like reading and writing better than learning by heart.—Do you like cider better than wine?—I like wine better than cider.—Does your brother like to play?—He likes to study better than to play.—Do you like veal better than mutton?—I like the latter better than the former.—Do you like to drink better than to eat?—I like to eat better than to drink; but my uncle likes to drink better than to eat.—Does the Frenchman like fowl better than fish?—He likes fish better than fowl.—Do you like to write better than to speak?—I like to do both.—Do you like honey better than sugar?—I like neither.—Does your father like coffee better than tea?—He likes neither.—Can you understand me?—No, Sir, for you speak too fast.—Will you be kind enough (*avoir la bonté*) not to speak so fast?—I will not speak so fast, if you will listen to me.

## 160.

Can you understand what my brother tells you?—He speaks so fast, that I cannot understand him.—Can your pupils understand you?—They understand me when I speak slowly; for in order to be understood one must speak slowly.—Is it necessary to speak aloud to learn French?—It is necessary to speak aloud.—Does your master speak aloud?—He does speak aloud and slow.—Why do you not buy any thing of that merchant?—He sells so dear that I cannot buy any thing of him.—Will you take me to another?—I will take you to the son of the one whom you bought of last year (*l'année passée*).—Does he sell as dear as this one?—He sells cheaper.—Do your children like learning Italian better than Spanish?—They do not like to learn either; they only like to learn French.—Do you like mutton?—I like beef better than mutton.—Do your children like cake better than bread?—They like both.—Has he read all the books which he

bought?—He bought so many (*tant*) that he cannot read them all.—Do you wish to write some exercises?—I have written so many that I cannot write any more.—Why does that man run away?—He runs away because he is afraid.—Will any one do him harm?—No one will do him harm; but he dares not stay, because he has not done his task, and is afraid of being punished.—Will any one touch him?—No one will touch him, but he will be punished by his master for not having (*pour n'avoir pas*) done his task. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## FIFTY-SECOND LESSON.

*Cinquante-deuxième Leçon.**By the side of.*

To pass by the side of some one.  
 I have passed by the side of you.  
 Have you passed by the side of  
 my brother?  
 I have passed by the side of him.

*'A côté de.*

Passer à côté de quelqu'un.  
 J'ai passé à côté de vous.  
 Avez-vous passé à côté de mon  
 frère?  
 J'ai passé à côté de lui.

*Obs. A.* Prepositions formed with *à*, *au*, or *aux*, and a noun, require the genitive case after them; almost all others require the accusative.

*To pass by a place.*

I have passed by the theatre.  
 He has passed by the castle.  
 You have passed before my ware-  
 house.

† *Passer auprès d'un endroit.*

† J'ai passé auprès du théâtre.  
 † Il a passé auprès du château.  
 Vous avez passé devant mon ma-  
 gasin.

*To dare.*

I dare not go thither.  
 He dares not do it.  
 I did not dare to tell him so.

*Oser 1.*

(See *Obs. A.* Lesson XXX. on verbs not taking a preposition before the infinitive.)  
 Je n'ose pas y aller.  
 Il n'ose pas le faire.  
 Je n'ai pas osé le lui dire.

*To make use of, to use.*

Do you use my horse?  
 I do use it.

† *Se servir 2\* de.*

(See Lesson L.)  
 Vous servez-vous de mon cheval?  
 Je m'en sers.



Does your father use it?  
 He does use it.  
 Have you used my gun?  
 I have used it.  
 They have used your books.  
 They have used them.

Votre père s'en sert-il?  
 Il s'en sert.  
 Vous êtes-vous servi de mon fusil  
 Je m'en suis servi.  
 Ils se sont servis de vos livres.  
 Ils s'en sont servis.

*To instruct.*

I instruct, thou instructest, he  
 instructs.

*Instruire* 4\*; pres. part. *instruisant*; past part. *instruit*.

J'instruis, tu instruis, il instruit.

*To teach.*

*To teach some one something.*

He teaches me arithmetic.  
 I teach you French.  
 I have taught him French.

*To teach some one to do  
 something.*

He teaches me to read.  
 I teach him to write.

*Enseigner* 1. *Apprendre* 4\*.  
*Enseigner quelque chose à  
 quelqu'un.*

Il m'enseigne le calcul.  
 Je vous enseigne le français.  
 Je lui ai enseigné le français.

*Apprendre à quelqu'un à faire  
 quelque chose.*

Il m'apprend à lire.  
 Je lui apprend à écrire.

The French master (meaning the  
 master of the French language).

The French master (meaning that  
 the master is a Frenchman,  
 whatever he teaches).

Le maître de français.

Le maître français.

*To shave.*

*To get shaved.*

*To dress.**To undress.*

*To dress one's self.*

*To undress one's self.*

*Raser* 1.

† *Se faire raser.*

*Habiller* 1.*Déshabiller* 1.

*S'habiller* 1.

*Se déshabiller* 1.

Have you dressed yourself?  
 I have not yet dressed myself.  
 Have you dressed the child?  
 I have dressed it.

Vous êtes-vous habillé?  
 Je ne me suis pas encore habillé.  
 Avez-vous habillé l'enfant?  
 Je l'ai habillé.

*To undo.*

*To get rid of.*

Are you getting rid of your damaged sugar?  
 I am getting rid of it.  
 Did you get rid of your old ship?  
 I did get rid of it.

*Défaire\*.*

(Conjugated like its primitive,  
 Lessons XXIV. and XXXIII.)

*Se défaire\* de.*

Vous défaites-vous de votre sucre avarié?  
 Je m'en défais.  
 Vous êtes-vous défait de votre vieux vaisseau?  
 Je m'en suis défait.

*To part with.*

The design, the intention.

*To intend or to have the intention.*

I intend to go thither.  
 We have the intention to do it.  
 Do you intend to part with your horses?  
 I have already parted with them.  
 He has parted with his gun.  
 Have you parted with (discharged) your servant?  
 I have parted with (discharged) him.

† *Se défaire\* de.*

Le dessein.

*Avoir dessein* (takes *de* before infinitive).

J'ai dessein d'y aller.  
 Nous avons dessein de le faire.  
 Avez-vous dessein de vous défaire de vos chevaux?  
 Je m'en suis déjà défait.  
 Il s'est défait de son fusil.  
 Vous êtes-vous défait de votre domestique?  
 Je m'en suis défait.

*To get rid of some one.*

I did get rid of him.  
 Did your father get rid of that man?  
 He did get rid of him.

*Se débarrasser de quelqu'un.*

Je me suis débarrassé de lui.  
 Votre père s'est-il débarrassé de cet homme?  
 Il s'en est débarrassé.

*To wake.**To awake.**Éveiller* 1. *Réveiller* 1.*S'éveiller* 1. *Se réveiller* 1.

*Obs. B. Éveiller* means to put an end to sleep; *réveiller*, to interrupt sleep. The same distinction must be observed with respect to the reflectives, *s'éveiller* and *se réveiller*. Ex.

I generally awake at six o'clock in the morning.

My servant generally wakes me at six o'clock in the morning.

A slight noise wakes me.

A dream has waked me.

I do not make a noise in order not to wake him.

Je m'éveille ordinairement à six heures du matin.

Mon domestique m'éveille ordinairement à six heures du matin.

Un bruit léger me réveille.

Un songe m'a réveillé.

Je ne fais pas de bruit pour ne pas le réveiller.

A dream.

Generally.

Un songe, un rêve.

Ordinairement.

*To come down.*

To alight from one's horse, to dismount.

*Descendre* 4.

Descendre de cheval.

*To conduct one's self.**To behave.*

I conduct myself well.

How does he conduct himself?

*Se conduire* 4\*. (Les. XXXIV.)*Se comporter* 1.

Je me conduis bien.

Comment se conduit-il?

*Towards.*

He behaves ill towards that man.

He has behaved ill towards me.

*Envers* or *vers*.

Il se comporte mal envers cet homme.

Il s'est mal comporté envers moi.

*To be worth while.*

Is it worth while?

It is worth while.

† *Valoir la peine.*

† Cela vaut-il la peine?

† Cela vaut la peine.

Is it not worth while ?	† Cela ne vaut-il pas la peine ?
Is it worth while to do that ?	† Cela vaut-il la peine de le faire ?
Is it worth while to write to him ?	† Cela vaut-il la peine de lui écrire ?
	† Est-ce la peine de lui écrire ?
It is worth nothing.	Cela ne vaut rien.

Is it better ?	† Vaut-il mieux ?
It is better.	† Il vaut mieux.
Will it be better ?	† Vaudra-t-il mieux ?
It will not be better.	† Il ne vaudra pas mieux.
It is better to do this than that.	† Il vaut mieux faire ceci que de faire cela.
It is better to stay here than go a walking.	† Il vaut mieux rester ici que de se promener.

## EXERCISES.

161.

Have your books been found?—They have been found.—Where?—Under the bed.—Is my coat on the bed?—It is under it.—Are your brother's stockings under the bed?—They are upon it.—Have I been seen by any body?—You have been seen by nobody.—Have you passed by any body?—I passed by the side of you and you did not see me.—Has any body passed by the side of you?—Nobody has passed by the side of me.—Where has your son passed?—He has passed by the theatre.—Shall you pass by the castle?—I shall pass there.—Why have you not cleaned my trunk?—I was afraid to soil my fingers.—Has my brother's servant cleaned his master's guns?—He has cleaned them.—Has he not been afraid to soil his fingers?—He has not been afraid to soil them, because his fingers are never clean (*propre*).—Do you use the books which I have lent you?—I do use them.—May I (*puis-je*) use your knife?—Thou mayest use it, but thou must not cut thyself.—May my brothers use your books?—They may use them.—May we use your gun?—You may use it, but you must not spoil it.—What have you done with my wood?—I have used it

to warm myself.—Has your father used my horse?—He has used it.—Have our neighbours used our clothes?—They have not used them, because they did not want them.—Who has used my hat?—Nobody has used it.—Have you told your brother to come down?—I did not dare to tell him.—Why have you not dared to tell him?—Because I did not wish to wake him.—Has he told you not to wake him?—He has told me not to wake him when he sleeps.

## 162.

Have you shaved to-day?—I have shaved.—Has your brother shaved?—He has not shaved himself, but he got shaved.—Do you shave often?—I shave every morning, and sometimes also in the evening.—When do you shave in the evening?—When I do not dine at home.—How many times a day does your father shave?—He shaves only once a day, but my uncle shaves twice a day.—Does your cousin shave often?—He shaves only every other day (*de deux jours l'un*).—At what o'clock do you dress in the morning?—I dress as soon as I have breakfasted, and I breakfast every day at eight o'clock, or at a quarter past eight.—Does your neighbour dress before he breakfasts?—He breakfasts before he dresses.—At what o'clock in the evening dost thou undress?—I undress as soon as I return from the theatre.—Dost thou go to the theatre every evening?—I do not go every evening, for it is better to study than to go to the theatre.—At what o'clock dost thou undress when thou dost not go to the theatre?—I then undress as soon as I have supped, and go to bed at ten o'clock.—Have you already dressed the child?—I have not dressed it yet, for it is still asleep (*dort encore*).—At what o'clock does it get up?—It gets up as soon as it is waked.—Do you rise as early as I?—I do not know at what o'clock you rise, but I rise as soon as I awake.—Will you tell my servant to wake me to-morrow at four o'clock?—I will tell him.—Why have you risen so early?—My children have made such a (*tant de*) noise that they wakened me.—Have you slept well?—I have not slept well, for you made too much noise.—At what o'clock did the good captain awake?—He awoke at a quarter past five in the morning.



## 163.

How did my child behave?—He behaved very well.—How did my brother behave towards you?—He behaved very well towards me, for he behaves well towards every body.—Is it worth while to write to that man?—It is not worth while to write to him.—Is it worth while to dismount from my horse in order to buy a cake?—It is not worth while, for it is not long since you ate.—Is it worth while to dismount from my horse in order to give something to that poor man?—Yes, for he seems (*paraît*) to want it; but you can give him something without dismounting from your horse.—Is it better to go to the theatre than to study?—It is better to do the latter than the former.—Is it better to learn to read French than to speak it?—It is not worth while to learn to read it without learning to speak it.—Is it better to go to bed than to go a walking?—It is better to do the latter than the former.—Is it better to go to France than to Germany?—It is not worth while to go to France or to Germany when one has no wish to travel.—Did you at last get rid of that man?—I did get rid of him.—Why has your father parted with his horses?—Because he did not want them any more.—Has your merchant succeeded at last to get rid of his damaged sugar?—He has succeeded in getting rid of it.—Has he sold it on credit?—He was able to sell it for cash, so that he did not sell it on credit.—Who has taught you to read?—I have learnt it with (*chez*) a French master.—Has he taught you to write?—He has taught me to read and to write.—Who has taught your brother arithmetic?—A French master has taught it him.—Do you call me?—I do call you.—What is your pleasure (*que vous plaît-il*, Lesson XLVII.)?—Why do you not rise: do you not know that it is already late?—What do you want me for (*demander*, Lesson XL.)?—I have lost all my money, and I come to beg (*prier*) you to lend me some.—What o'clock is it?—It is already a quarter past six, and you have slept long enough (*assez dormi*).—Is it long since you rose?—It is an hour and a half since I rose.—Do you wish to take a walk with me?—I cannot go a walking, for I am waiting for my French master.

## FIFTY-THIRD LESSON.

*Cinquante-troisième Leçon.*


---

*To hope, to expect.* | *Espérer* 1.

*Obs. A.* In verbs having the acute accent (') on the last syllable but one of the infinitive, the letter *e* takes the grave accent (') in all persons and tenses where it is followed by a consonant having *e* mute after it, as: *céder*, to yield; *je cède*, I yield; *tu cèdes*, thou yieldest; *il cède*, he yields.

I hope.	J'espère.
Thou hopest.	Tu espères.
He hopes.	Il espère.
Do you hope?	Espérez-vous?
We do hope.	Nous espérons.

---

Do you expect to find him there?	Espérez-vous l'y trouver? ( <i>Obs.</i>
	<i>A. B. Lesson XXX.</i> )
I do expect it.	Je l'espère.

---

*To change (meaning, to exchange).* | *Changer* 1.

To change one thing for another.	Changer quelque chose contre quelque chose.
I change my hat for his.	Je change mon chapeau contre le sien.

---

*To change (meaning, to put on other things).* | *Changer* 1 (takes *de* before substantive).

Do you change your hat?	† Changez-vous <i>de</i> chapeau?
I do change it.	† J'en change.
He changes his linen.	† Il change <i>de</i> linge.
They change their clothes.	† Ils changent <i>d'</i> habits.

*To mix.*

I mix among the men.  
 He mixes among the soldiers.  
 Among.

† *Se mêler* 1.

† Je me mêle parmi les hommes.  
 † Il se mêle parmi les soldats.  
 Parmi.

*To recognise or to acknowledge.*

Do you recognise that man?  
 It is so long since I saw him that  
 I do not recollect him.

*Reconnaître* 4\*. (Is conjug. like its primitive *connaître*\*, Less. XXVIII. and XXXIII.)

Reconnaissez-vous cet homme  
 Il y a si long temps que je ne l'ai vu que je ne le reconnais plus.

I have more bread than I can eat.

J'ai *plus* de pain que je *n'en* puis manger.

*Obs. B.* When there is a comparison between two sentences, the verb which follows *plus*, or *moins*, requires the negative *ne*.

That man has more money than he will spend.

Cet homme a plus d'argent qu'il *n'en* dépensera.

There is more wine than is necessary.

Il y a plus de vin qu'il *n'en* faut.

You have more money than you want.

Vous avez plus d'argent qu'il *ne* vous *en* faut.

We have more shoes than we want.

Nous avons plus de souliers qu'il *ne* nous *en* faut.

That man has fewer friends than he imagines.

Cet homme a moins d'amis qu'il *ne* pense.

To fancy.

S'imaginer 1.

To think.

Penser 1.

*To earn, to gain, to get.*

Has your father already started (departed)?  
 He is ready to depart.

*Gagner* 1.

Votre père est-il déjà parti?  
 Il est prêt à partir.

<i>Ready.</i>	<i>Prêt</i> (takes à before the inf.).
<i>To make ready.</i>	<i>Préparer</i> 1.
<i>To make one's self ready.</i>	<i>Se préparer</i> 1.
<i>To keep one's self ready.</i>	<i>Se tenir</i> * <i>prêt</i> .

<i>To split.</i>	<i>Fendre</i> 4.
<i>To break somebody's heart.</i>	<i>Fendre le cœur à quelqu'un.</i>
You break that man's heart.	Vous fendez le cœur à cet homme.
Whose heart do I break?	'A qui est-ce que je fends le cœur?

<i>To spill.</i>	<i>Répandre</i> 4.
<i>To spread.</i>	<i>Étendre</i> 4.
<i>To expatiate, to lay stress upon.</i>	<i>S'étendre sur.</i>
That man is always expatiating upon that subject.	Cet homme s'étend toujours sur ce sujet.
The subject.	Le sujet.
Always.	Toujours.
To stretch one's self along the floor.	S'étendre sur le plancher.

<i>To hang on or upon.</i>	<i>Pendre</i> 4 à.
The wall.	Le mur.
I hang my coat on the wall.	Je pends mon habit au mur.
He hangs his hat upon the tree.	Il pend son chapeau à l'arbre.
We hang our shoes upon the nails.	Nous pendons nos souliers aux clous.
The thief has been hanged.	Le voleur a été pendu.
Who has hanged the basket on the tree?	Qui a pendu le panier à l'arbre?
The thief.	Le voleur.
The robber, the highwayman.	Le brigand, le voleur de grand chemin.

You are always studious, and will always be so.	Vous êtes toujours studieux et vous le serez toujours.
---	--

*Obs. C.* The personal pronouns are almost always repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative case, whether they are or are not repeated in English; but when they are not in the nominative case they must always be repeated. Ex.

Your brother is, and will always be good.	Votre frère est toujours sage, et <i>il</i> le sera toujours.
A well-educated son never gives his father any grief; he loves, honours, and respects him.	Un fils bien élevé ne fait jamais de chagrin à son père; <i>il</i> l'aime, l'honore, et <i>le</i> respecte.

---

### EXERCISES.

164.

Do you hope to receive a note to-day?—I hope to receive one.—From (*de*) whom?—From a friend of mine.—What dost thou hope?—I hope to see my parents to-day, for my tutor has promised me to take me to them.—Does your friend hope to receive any thing?—He hopes to receive something, for he has worked well.—Do you hope to arrive early in Paris?—We hope to arrive there at a quarter past eight, for our father is waiting for us this evening.—Do you expect to find him at home?—We do expect it.—For what have you exchanged your coach of which you have spoken to me?—I have exchanged it for a fine Arabian (Lesson XXVI.) horse.—Do you wish to exchange your book for mine?—I cannot, for I want it to study French.—Why do you take your hat off?—I take it off because I see my old master coming (*je vois venir*).—Do you put on another (*changer*) hat to go to the market?—I do not put on another to go to the market, but to go to the concert.—When will the concert take place?—It will take place the day after to-morrow.—Why do you go away? Do you not amuse yourself here?—You are mistaken when you say, that I do not amuse myself here, for I assure you that I find a great deal of (*beaucoup de*) pleasure in conversing (*à causer*) with you; but I am going because I am expected (*on m'attend*, *Obs. A. Less. XLIV.*) at my relation's ball.—Have you promised to go?—I have promised.—Have you changed your hat in order to go to the English captain?—I have changed my hat, but I



have not changed my coat or my shoes.—How many times a day dost thou change thy clothes?—I change them to dine and to go to the theatre.

## 165.

Why do you mix among these men?—I mix among them in order to know what they say of me.—What will become of you if you always mix among the soldiers?—I do not know what will become of me, but I assure you that they will do me no harm, for they do not hurt any body.—Have you recognised your father?—It was so long since I saw him, that I did not recognise him.—Has he recognised you?—He recognised me instantly.—How long have you had this coat?—It is a long time since I have had it.—How long has your brother had that gun?—He has had it a great while.—Do you still (*toujours*) speak French?—It is so long since I spoke it, that I have nearly forgotten it all.—How long is it since your cousin has been learning French?—It is only three months since.—Does he know as much as you?—He knows more than I, for he has been learning it longer.—Do you know why that man does not eat?—I believe he is not hungry, for he has more bread than he can eat.—Have you given your son any money?—I have given him more than he will spend.—Will you give me a glass of cider?—You need not drink cider, for there is more wine than is necessary.—Am I to sell my gun in order to buy a new hat?—You need not sell it, for you have more money than you want.—Do you wish to speak to the shoemaker?—I do not wish to speak to him, for we have more shoes than we want.—Why do the French rejoice?—They rejoice because they flatter themselves they have many good friends.—Are they not right in rejoicing (*de se réjouir*)?—They are wrong, for they have fewer friends than they imagine.

## 166.

Are you ready to depart with me?—I am so.—Does your uncle depart with us?—He departs with us if he pleases (*s'il le veut*).—Will you tell him to be ready to start to-morrow at six o'clock in the evening?—I will tell him so.—Is this young man ready to go out?—Not yet, but he will soon be ready.—Why have they

hanged that man?—They have hanged him because he has killed somebody.—Have they hanged the man who stole (Lesson XXXVIII.) a horse from your brother?—They have punished him, but they have not hanged him; they only hang highwaymen in our country.—What have you done with my coat?—I have hanged it on the wall.—Will you hang my hat upon the tree?—I will hang it thereon.—Have you not seen my shoes?—I found them under your bed, and have hanged them upon the nails.—Has the thief who stole your gun been hanged?—He has been punished, but he has not been hanged.—Why do you expatiate so much upon that subject?—Because it is necessary to speak upon all subjects.—If it is necessary to (*s'il faut*) listen to you, and to answer you when you expatiate upon that subject, I will hang my hat upon the nail (repeat the pronoun *je* before each verb), stretch myself along the floor, listen to you, and answer you as well as I can.—You will do well.

## FIFTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Cinquante-quatrième Leçon.*


---

<i>To be well.</i>	† <i>Se porter bien.</i>
How do you do ?	† Comment vous portez-vous ?
I am well.	† Je me porte bien.

*Obs. A.* The verbs *to be* and *to do* are both expressed in French by the reflective verb, *se porter*, when they are used in English to inquire after, or to speak of a person's health.

How is your father ?	Comment se porte monsieur votre père ?
----------------------	--

*Obs. B.* The qualifications of *monsieur*, Mr. ; *madame*, Mrs. ; *mademoiselle*, Miss, usually precede the possessive pronouns in French, when we speak to a person respecting his parents, relations, or friends, and we mean to pay them some respect.

He is ill.	Il se porte mal.
Your brother.	† Monsieur votre frère.
Your cousin.	† Monsieur votre cousin.
Your brothers.	† Messieurs vos frères.

*Obs. C.* It may be seen that the plural of *monsieur* is *messieurs*, *mon* being changed into *mes*.

Your uncles.	† Messieurs vos oncles.
--------------	-------------------------

---

<i>To doubt a thing.</i>	} <i>Douter 1 de quelque chose.</i>
<i>To question any thing.</i>	
Do you doubt that ?	Doutez-vous de cela ?
I do doubt it.	J'en doute.

I do not doubt it.	}	Je n'en doute pas.
I make no question, have no doubt of it.		
What do you doubt?		De quoi doutez-vous?
I doubt what that man has told me.		Je doute de ce que cet homme m'a dit.
The doubt.		Le doute.
Without doubt, no doubt.		Sans doute.

*To agree to a thing.*

*Convenir 2\* de quelque chose*  
(conjugated like its primitive *venir \**).

Do you agree to that?  
I do agree to it.

Convenez-vous de cela?  
J'en conviens.

How much have you paid *for* that hat?

† Combien avez-vous payé ce chapeau?

I have paid three crowns *for* it.

† Je l'ai payé trois écus.

*Obs. D.* When one of the prepositions, *for*, *at*, is used in English to mark the price of a thing, it is not rendered in French. (See Less. XL.)

I have bought this horse *for* five hundred francs.

† J'ai acheté ce cheval cinq cents francs.

                    The price.

Le prix.

Have you agreed about the price?

Êtes-vous convenus du prix?

We have agreed about it.

Nous en sommes convenus.

About what have you agreed?

De quoi êtes-vous convenus?

About the price.

Du prix.

*To agree, to compose a difference.*

*S'accorder 1.*

*To feel.*

*Sentir 2\*; pres. part. sentant; past part. senti.*

I feel, thou feelest, he feels.

Je sens, tu sens, il sent.

*To consent.*

*Consentir 2\* (is conj. like its primitive sentir\*: takes à or de bef. the infin. and à bef. the noun).*

I consent to go thither.

Je consens à (d'y) aller.

                    However.

Cependant.

*To wear (meaning to wear garments).*

What garments does he wear?

He wears beautiful garments.

The garment.

*Porter 1.*

Quels vêtements porte-t-il ?

Il porte de beaux vêtements.

Le vêtement.

Against my custom.

As customary.

My partner.

Contre mon ordinaire.

Comme à l'ordinaire.

Mon associé.

*To observe something.*

*To take notice of something.*

Do you take notice of that ?

I do take notice of it.

Did you observe that ?

Did you notice what he did ?

I did notice it.

} † *S'apercevoir 3 de quelque chose.*

Vous apercevez-vous de cela ?

Je m'en aperçois.

Vous êtes-vous aperçu de cela ?

Vous êtes-vous aperçu de ce qu'il a fait ?

Je m'en suis aperçu.

*To expect (to hope).*

Do you expect to receive a note from your uncle ?

I expect it.

He expects it.

We expect it.

Have we expected it ?

We have expected it.

† *S'attendre 4 (takes à before the infinitive).*

Vous attendez-vous à recevoir un billet de votre oncle ?

Je m'y attends.

Il s'y attend.

Nous nous y attendons.

Nous y sommes-nous attendus ?

Nous nous y sommes attendus.

*To get (meaning to procure).* | † *Se procurer 1.*

I cannot procure any money.

{ Je ne peux pas me procurer d'argent.

{ Je ne puis me procurer de l'argent.

He cannot procure any thing to eat.

{ Il ne peut se procurer de quoi manger.

*To make fun of some one or something.*

*To laugh at some one or something.*

} † *Se moquer de quelqu'un ou de quelque chose.*



He laughs at every body.  
 He criticises every body.  
 Do you laugh at that man?  
 I do not laugh at him.

} Il se moque de tout le monde.  
 Vous moquez-vous de cet homme?  
 Je ne m'en moque pas.

*To stop, to stay.*  
 Have you stayed long at Berlin?

I stayed there only three days.

*To sojourn, to stay.*  
 Where does your brother stay at present?

At present, actually.  
 The residence, stay, abode.  
 Paris is a fine place to live in.

*S'arrêter 1.*

Vous êtes-vous arrêté long-temps à Berlin?

Je ne m'y suis arrêté que trois jours.

*Séjourner 1.*

Où Monsieur votre frère séjourne-t-il actuellement?

Actuellement.

Le séjour.

† C'est un beau séjour que Paris.

After reading.  
 After cutting myself.

† Après avoir lu.  
 † Après m'être coupé.

*Obs. See Lesson XL.*

After dressing yourself.  
 After dressing himself.  
 After shaving ourselves.  
 After warming themselves.  
 I returned the book after reading it.  
 I threw the knife away after cutting myself.  
 You went to the concert after dressing yourself.  
 He went to the theatre after dressing himself.  
 We breakfasted after shaving ourselves.  
 They went out after warming themselves.

† Après vous être habillé.  
 † Après s'être habillé.  
 † Après nous être rasés.  
 † Après s'être chauffés.  
 † J'ai rendu le livre après l'avoir lu.  
 † J'ai jeté le couteau après m'être coupé.  
 † Vous êtes allé au concert après vous être habillé.  
 † Il est allé au théâtre après s'être habillé.  
 † Nous avons déjeuné après nous être rasés.  
 † Ils sont sortis après s'être chauffés.

The sick person (the patient).

Tolerably well.

It is rather late.

It is rather far.

Le malade.

Assez bien, passablement.

Il est bien tard.

C'est bien loin.

### EXERCISES.

167.

How is your father (*Monsieur votre père*)?—He is (only) so so. (Lesson XXXV.)—How is your patient?—He is a little better to-day than yesterday.—Is it long since you saw your brothers (*Messieurs vos frères*)?—I saw them two days ago.—How art thou?—I am tolerably well.—How long has your cousin been learning French?—He has been learning it only three months.—Does he already speak it?—He already speaks, reads, and writes it better than your brother who has been learning it these two years.—Is it long since you heard of my uncle?—It is hardly a fortnight (*quinze jours*) since I heard of him.—Where is he staying now?—He is staying at Berlin, but my father is in London.—Did you stay long at Vienna?—I stayed there a fortnight.—How long did your cousin stay at Paris?—He stayed there only a month.—Do you like to speak to my uncle?—I like much to speak to him, but I do not like him to (*qu'il se moque*) laugh at me.—Why does he laugh at you?—He laughs at me because I speak badly.—Why has your brother no friends?—He has none because he criticises every body.—Why are you laughing at that man?—I do not intend (*je n'ai pas dessein*) to laugh at him.—I beg (*prier*) you not to do it, for you will break his heart if you laugh at him.—Do you doubt what I am telling you?—I do not doubt it.—Do you doubt what that man has told you?—I doubt it, for he has often told stories (*mentir*\*, Lesson XLIV.).—Have you at last bought the horse which you wished to buy last month?—I have not bought it, for I have not been able to procure money.

168.

Has your uncle at last bought the garden?—He has not bought it, for he could not agree about the price.—Have you at

last agreed about the price of that picture?—We have agreed about it.—How much have you paid for it?—I have paid fifteen hundred francs for it.—What hast thou bought to-day?—I have bought two fine horses, three beautiful pictures, and a fine gun.—For how much hast thou bought the pictures?—I have bought them for seven hundred francs.—Do you find them dear?—I do not find them dear.—Have you agreed with your partner?—I have agreed with him.—Does he consent to pay you the price of the ship?—He consents to pay it me.—Do you consent to go to France?—I consent to go thither.—Have you seen your old friend again (*revoir* \*, conjug. like *voir* \*, Lessons XXIV. and XXXIII.)?—I have seen him again.—Did you recognise him?—I could hardly (*je ne l'ai presque plus*) recognise him, for, contrary to his custom, he wears a large hat.—How is he?—He is very well.—What garments does he wear?—He wears beautiful new garments.—Have you taken notice of what your boy has done?—I have taken notice of it.—Have you (*l'en*) punished him for it?—I have punished him for it.—Has your father already written to you?—Not yet; but I expect (*je m'attends*) to receive a note from him to-day.—Of what do you complain?—I complain of not being able to procure some money.—Why do these poor men complain?—They complain because they cannot procure any thing to eat.—How are your parents?—They are as usual (*comme à l'ordinaire*), very well.—Is your uncle well?—He is better than he usually is.—Have you already heard of your friend who is in Germany?—I have already written to him several times; however he has not answered me yet.

## 169.

What have you done with the books which the English captain has lent you?—I have returned them to him after reading them.—Why have you thrown away your knife?—I have thrown it away after cutting myself.—When did I go to the concert?—You went thither after dressing yourself.—When did your brother go to the ball?—He went thither after dressing himself.—When did you breakfast?—We breakfasted after shaving ourselves.—When did our neighbours go out?—They went out after warming

themselves.—Why have you punished your boy?—I have punished him because he has broken my finest glass. I gave him some wine, and instead of drinking it, he spilt it on the new carpet, and (*et il*) broke the glass.—What did you do this morning?—I shaved after rising, and went out after breakfasting.—What did your father do last night (*hier soir*)?—He supped after going to the play, and went to bed after supping.—Did he rise early?—He rose at sunrise. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

*Cinquante-cinquième Leçon.*

## FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

## DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE FEMININE.

		<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>
The	{ <i>Singular</i> . . .	La,	de la,	à la,	la.
	{ <i>Plural</i> . . . . .	Les,	des,	aux,	les.

*Obs. A.* It will be observed that the plural of the definite article is alike for both genders. (See Lesson IX.)

When the definite article stands before a vowel or an *h* mute, in the singular it is also alike for both genders, viz. *Nom. l', the* ; *Gen. de l', of the* ; *Dat. à l', to the* ; *Acc. l', the*. (See Lesson IV.)

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The woman—women.	La femme,	les femmes.
The mother.	La mère,	les mères.
The daughter <i>or</i> the girl.	La fille,	les filles.
The sister.	La sœur,	les sœurs.
The candle.	La chandelle,	les chandelles.
The bottle.	La bouteille,	les bouteilles.
The key.	La clef,	les clefs.
The shirt or shift.	La chemise,	les chemises.

She—they.	Elle—elles. (See Table of the Personal Pronouns, Less. XX.)
Has she ?	A-t-elle ?
She has.	Elle a.
She has not.	Elle n'a pas.



Have they (feminine)?

They have. „

They have not. „

Ont-elles?

Elles ont.

Elles n'ont pas.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>
My (feminine singular).	Ma,	de ma,	à ma,	ma.
Thy. „	Ta,	de ta,	à ta,	ta.
His, her. „	Sa,	de sa,	à sa,	sa.
My (plural for both genders).	Mes,	de mes,	à mes,	mes.

*Obs. B.* In the plural the possessive pronouns are always alike for both genders. (See Lesson IX.)

The father and <i>his</i> son or <i>his</i> daughter.	Le père et <i>son</i> fils ou <i>sa</i> fille.
The mother and <i>her</i> son or <i>her</i> daughter.	La mère et <i>son</i> fils ou <i>sa</i> fille.
The child and <i>its</i> brother or <i>its</i> sister.	L'enfant et <i>son</i> frère ou <i>sa</i> sœur.

*Obs. C.* The following most important rule must be attended to.

**RULE.**—The English possessive adjectives or pronouns are in the gender of the possessor; in French they must be in the gender of the thing possessed. My, thy, his, her, its, must be expressed by *mon, ton, son*, when the thing possessed is masculine, and by *ma, ta, sa*, when it is feminine, without considering in the least the gender of the possessor, as may be seen from the above examples.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
My pen, my pens.	Ma plume,	mes plumes.
Thy fork, thy forks.	Ta fourchette,	tes fourchettes.
His or her nut, his or her nuts.	Sa noix,	ses noix.
Our hand, our hands.	Notre main,	nos mains.
Your mouth, your mouths.	Votre bouche,	vos bouches.
Their door, their doors.	Leur porte,	leurs portes.

*Obs. D.* The personal pronoun *leur* must not be mistaken for the possessive *leur*. The former never takes an *s*, whilst the latter does when the possessed is in the plural. Ex. Je *leur* parle, I speak to them; je vois *leurs* frères et *leurs* sœurs, I see their brothers and their sisters.

The pretty woman.	La jolie femme.
The pretty women.	Les jolies femmes.

RULE.—All adjectives, without exception, end in *e* mute in the feminine singular, and *es* in the feminine plural.

The small candle,	the small candles.	La petite chandelle,	les petites chandelles.
The large bottle,	the large bottles.	La grande bouteille,	les grandes bouteilles.

Which woman?	which women?	Quelle femme?	quelles femmes?
Which daughter?	which daughters?	Quelle fille?	quelles filles?

This or that woman.	Cette femme.
These or those women.	Ces femmes.

This young lady,	these young ladies.	Cette demoiselle-ci,	ces demoiselles-ci.
That young lady,	those young ladies.	Cette demoiselle-là,	ces demoiselles-là.

The hand,	the hands.	La main,	les mains.
The right hand.		La main droite.	
The left hand.		La main gauche.	
I have a sore hand.		J'ai mal à la main.	

*Obs. E.* *Avoir mal* is used with the dative in French to express that a part of the body is affected with illness or pain. (Lesson XXV.)

The tooth,	the teeth.	La dent,	les dents.
Have you the tooth-ache?		Avez-vous mal aux dents?	
I have the head-ache.		J'ai mal à la tête.	
I feel a pain in my side.		J'ai mal au côté.	
His feet are sore.		Il a mal aux pieds.	
The face.		La figure.	
The mouth.		La bouche.	
The cheek.		La joue.	
The tongue, the language.		La langue.	

The door.	La porte.
The window.	La fenêtre.
The street.	La rue.
The town.	La ville.
The linen.	La toile.
The old woman.	La vieille femme.

## REMARK.

From what precedes this principle may be deduced :—The characteristic ending of French feminine nouns and adjectives is the letter *e*. (See p. 24 in my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.) There are, however, some adjectives which have this ending also in the masculine, and then they are of both genders, as :

An amiable man.	Un homme aimable.
An amiable woman.	Une femme aimable.
The room.	La chambre.
The front room.	La chambre du devant <i>or</i> sur le devant.
The back room.	La chambre du derrière <i>or</i> sur le derrière.
The upper room.	La chambre du haut.

## PARTITIVE ARTICLE FEMININE.

<i>Nom.</i>	} de la.	<i>Gen.</i> de.
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>Dat.</i> à de la.

*Obs. F.* For the plural of this article, and when it stands before an adjective, see Lesson XI.

Some light.	De la lumière.
Some silk.	De la soie.
Some good soup.	De bonne soupe.

*Obs. G.* Most adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*, *on*, and *et*, double their final consonant before the *e* mute of the feminine. Examples :

A cruel certitude.	Une <i>cruelle</i> certitude.
Such a promise.	Une <i>pareille</i> promesse.
An old acquaintance.	Une <i>ancienne</i> connaissance.
A good truth.	Une <i>bonne</i> vérité.
A dumb woman.	Une femme <i>muette</i> .

*Obs. H.* In the masculine the above adjectives would be *cruel*, *pareil*, *ancien*, *bon*, *muet*.

## INDEFINITE ARTICLE FEMININE.

<i>Nom.</i>	} une.	<i>Gen.</i> d'une.
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>Dat.</i> à une.

A virtuous woman.		Une femme vertueuse.
-------------------	--	----------------------


*Obs. I.* Adjectives ending in the masculine in *x* become feminine by changing *x* into *se* ; as, masc. *vertueux* ; fem. *vertueuse*, virtuous.

A happy young lady.		Une demoiselle heureuse <sup>1</sup> .
An active young woman.		Une jeune personne <sup>2</sup> active.

*Obs. K.* Adjectives ending in the masculine in *f*, become feminine by changing *f* into *ve* : as, masc. *actif* ; fem. *active*, active.

A new gown.		Une robe neuve <sup>3</sup> .
An ingenious proposal.		Une proposition naïve <sup>4</sup> .

Have you my pen ?		Avez-vous ma plume ?
No, Madam, I have it not.		Non, Madame, je ne l'ai pas.
Which bottle have you broken ?		Quelle bouteille avez-vous cassée ?
Which door have you opened ?		Quelle porte avez-vous ouverte ?

 The past participle agrees with its noun in gender as well as in number.

Which windows have you opened ?		Quelles fenêtres avez-vous ouvertes ?
Which bottles has the woman broken ?		Quelles bouteilles la femme a-t-elle cassées ?
Which young lady have you conducted to the ball ?		Quelle demoiselle avez-vous conduite au bal ?
Which water have you drunk ?		Quelle eau avez-vous bue ?
Which letters have you written ?		Quelles lettres avez-vous écrites ?
These.		Celles-ci.
Those.		Celles-là.
Have you this or that pen ?		Avez-vous cette plume-ci ou celle-là ?
I have neither this nor that.		Je n'ai ni celle-ci ni celle-là.

<sup>1</sup> From the masculine *heureux*.

<sup>2</sup> *Personne* as a pronoun is masculine, as a substantive it is feminine.

<sup>3</sup> From the masculine *neuf*.

<sup>4</sup> From the masculine *naïf*.

*It or her—them.*

Do you see that woman?  
 I see her.  
 Have you seen my sisters?  
 No, my lady, I have not seen them.

*La—les.*

Voyez-vous cette femme?  
 Je la vois.  
 Avez-vous vu mes sœurs?  
 Non, Mademoiselle, je ne les ai pas vues.

*To her, to him—to them.*

Do you speak to my sisters?  
 I speak to them.  
 Some coarse linen.  
 Some good water.  
 A napkin, a towel.

*Lui—leur.* (See Obs. D. above.)

Parlez-vous à mes sœurs?  
 Je leur parle.  
 De grosse toile.  
 De bonne eau.  
 Une serviette.

*Obs. L.* Some adjectives form their feminine in various ways, viz.

## 1. The following double the last consonant:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
Low.	Bas,	basse.
Thick.	Épais,	épaisse.
Express.	Exprès,	expresse.
Genteel, gentle, pretty.	Gentil,	gentille.
Fat.	Gras,	grasse.
Big.	Gros,	grosse.
Weary.	Las,	lasse.
No, none.	Nul,	nulle.
Initiated.	Profès,	professe.
Silly.	Sot,	sotte.

2. The following double the letter *l*.

Handsome.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{before a conso-} \\ \text{nant} \end{array} \right\}$ Beau $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{before a vowel} \\ \text{or } h \text{ mute} \end{array} \right\}$ Bel	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Beau} \\ \text{Bel} \end{array} \right\}$ belle.
New.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{before a conso-} \\ \text{nant} \end{array} \right\}$ Nouveau $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{before a vowel} \\ \text{or } h \text{ mute} \end{array} \right\}$ Nouvel	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Nouveau} \\ \text{Nouvel} \end{array} \right\}$ nouvelle.
Old.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{before a conso-} \\ \text{nant} \end{array} \right\}$ Vieux $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{before a vowel} \\ \text{or } h \text{ mute} \end{array} \right\}$ Vieil	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Vieux} \\ \text{Vieil} \end{array} \right\}$ vieille.



Foolish. { Fou  
Fol<sup>5</sup> } folle.

Soft. { Mou  
Mol<sup>6</sup> } molle.

3. Several, which in the masculine terminate in *eur*, change this termination in the feminine, (a) some into *euse*, (b) others into *rice*, and (c) others again into *eresse*. Ex.

		Masculine.	Feminine.
(a) Deceitful	( <i>eur—euse</i> ).	Trompeur,	trompeuse.
Lying	„ „ .	Menteur,	menteuse.
Talkative	„ „ .	Parleur,	parleuse.
(b) Executing	( <i>eur—rice</i> ).	Exécuteur,	exécutrice.
Persecuting	„ „ .	Persécuteur,	persécutrice.
(c) Enchanting	( <i>eur—eresse</i> ).	Enchanteur,	enchanteresse.
Sinning	„ „ .	Pécheur,	pécheresse.
Avenging	„ „ .	Vengeur,	vengeresse.

4. The following form their feminine quite irregularly :

Absolved.	Absous,	absoute.
Benign.	Bénin,	bénigne.
White.	Blanc,	blanche.
Declining.	Caduc,	caduque.
Sweet.	Doux,	douce.
False.	Faux,	fausse.
Favourite.	Favori,	favorite.
Fresh.	Frais,	fraîche.
Free.	Franc,	franche.
Greek.	Grec,	grecque.
Long.	Long,	longue.
Wicked.	Malin,	maligne.
Public.	Public,	publique.
Red.	Roux,	rousse.

<sup>5</sup> *Fol* is used instead of *fou* before nouns beginning with a vowel. *Fol* always precedes, and *fou* always follows its substantive. Ex. *Un marché fou*, a foolish bargain; *un fol espoir*, a foolish hope. Substantively *fou* means a madman, and *folle* a mad woman.

<sup>6</sup> Formerly *mol* was more in use than *mou*. The Academy writes: “*Un homme mou et efféminé*,” a weak and effeminate man. We read, however, in Buffon, “*Les Chinois sont des peuples mols*,” the Chinese are an effeminate people.

Dry.	Sec,	sèche.
Third.	Tiers,	tierce.
Turkish.	Turc,	Turque.
Traitorous.	Traître,	traîtresse.

*Obs. M.* As for the plural of adjectives, it is formed like that of the substantives (Lesson IX.). Of the following twenty-eight adjectives the first eighteen have no plural for the masculine ; the last ten may form it by adding an *s* ; but it is better to avoid using them in the plural for the masculine gender.

Austral,	southern.	Sentimental,	sentimental.
Bénéficial,	beneficiary.	Vocal,	vocal.
Boréal,	northern.	Zodiacal,	zodiacal.
Brumal,	brumal.		
Canonial,	canonical.		
Diamétral,	diametrical.	Amical,	friendly.
Expérimental,	experimental.	Fatal,	fatal.
Labial,	labial.	Filial,	filial.
Lingual,	lingual.	Final,	final.
Lustral,	lustral.	Frugal,	frugal.
Matinal,	early.	Glacial,	frozen.
Médical,	medical.	Jovial,	jovial.
Mental,	mental.	Naval,	naval.
Natal,	natal.	Pascal,	pascal.
Patronal,	patronal.	Virginal,	virginal.

Some beautiful linen shirts.  
 Some fine silk stockings.  
 The Christian.  
 The Jew.  
 The negro.  
 A companion.  
 A friend.

De belles chemises de toile.  
 De beaux bas de soie.  
 Le Chrétien, *Fem.* la Chrétienne  
 (Obs. G.)  
 Le Juif, „ la Juive (Obs.  
 K).  
 Le nègre, „ la négresse.  
 Un compagnon, „ une compagne.  
 Un ami, „ une amie (see  
 Remark, p. 297).

*To celebrate, to feast.* Célébrer 1 ; fêter 1.

### EXERCISES.

170.

How are your brothers?—They have been very well for these few days.—Where do they reside?—They reside in Paris.—

Which day of the week do the Turks celebrate?—They celebrate Friday (*le vendredi*) ; but the Christians celebrate Sunday, the Jews Saturday, and the negroes their birth-day (*le jour de leur naissance*).—Amongst you country people (*parmi vous autres gens de campagne*) there are many fools, are there not (*n'est-ce pas*) ? asked (*demanda*) a philosopher lately (*l'autre jour*) of a peasant (with dative). The latter answered (*répondit*) : “ Sir, they are to be found (*on en trouve*) in all stations (*l'état*). ” “ Fools sometimes tell the truth (*la vérité*), ” said (*dit*) the philosopher.—Has your sister my gold ribbon?—She has it not.—What has she?—She has nothing.—Has your mother any thing?—She has a fine gold fork.—Who has my large bottle?—Your sister has it.—Do you sometimes see my mother?—I see her often.—When did you see your sister?—I saw her a fortnight ago.—Who has my fine nuts?—Your good sister has them.—Has she also my silver forks?—She has them not.—Who has them?—Your mother has them.—What fork have you?—I have my iron fork.—Have your sisters had my pens?—They have not had them, but I believe that their children have had them.—Why does your brother complain?—He complains because his right hand aches.—Why do you complain?—I complain because my left hand aches.

## 171.

Is your sister as old as my mother?—She is not so old, but she is taller.—Has your brother purchased any thing?—He has purchased something (*il en a fait*).—What has he bought?—He has bought fine linen and good pens.—Has he not bought some silk stockings?—He has bought some.—Is your sister writing?—No, Madam, she is not writing.—Why does she not write?—Because she has a sore hand.—Why does not the daughter of your neighbour go out?—She does not go out because she has sore feet.—Why does my sister not speak?—Because she has a sore mouth.—Hast thou not seen my silver pen?—I have not seen it.—Hast thou a front room?—I have one behind, but my brother has one in the front.—Is it (*est-ce*) an upper room?—It is one (*c'en est une*).—Does the wife (*la femme*) of our shoemaker go out already?—No, my lady, she does not go out yet, for she is still very ill.—Which bottle has your little sister broken?—She broke

the one (*celle*) which my mother bought yesterday.—Have you eaten of my soup or of my mother's?—I have eaten neither of yours (*de la vôtre*) nor your mother's, but of that of my good sister.—Have you seen the woman who was with me this morning?—I have not seen her.—Has your mother hurt herself?—She has not hurt herself.

## 172.

Have you a sore nose?—I have not a sore nose, but I have the tooth-ache.—Have you cut your finger?—No, my lady, I have cut my hand.—Will you give me a pen?—I will give you one.—Will you have this or that?—I will have neither.—Which (*laquelle*) one do you wish to have?—I wish to have that which your sister has.—Do you wish to have my mother's good black silk (*bonne soie noire*) or my sister's?—I wish to have neither your mother's nor your sister's, but that which you have.—Can you write with this pen?—I can write with it.—Each (*chaque*) woman thinks herself amiable, and each (*chacune*) is conceited (*a de l'amour propre*).—The same as (*de même que*) men, my dear friend. Many a one (*tel*) thinks himself (*se croit*) learned who is not so (*ne l'est pas*), and many men (*bien des hommes*) surpass (*surpasser*) women in vanity (*en vanité*).—What is the matter with you?—Nothing is the matter with me.—Why does your sister complain?—Because she has a pain in her cheek.—Has your brother a sore hand?—No; but he feels a pain in his side.—Do you open the window?—I open it because it is too warm.—Which windows has your sister opened?—She has opened those of the front room.—Have you been at the ball of my old acquaintance?—I have been there.—Which young ladies have you taken to the ball?—I took my sister's friends there.—Did they dance?—They danced a good deal.—Did they amuse themselves?—They amused themselves.—Did they remain long at the ball?—They remained there two hours.—Is this young lady a Turk?—No; she is a Greek.—Does she speak French?—She speaks it.—Does she not speak English?—She speaks it also, but she speaks French better.—Has your sister a companion?—She has one.—Does she like her?—She likes her very much, for she is very amiable.

## FIFTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Cinquante-sixième Leçon.*

To go to the country.	Aller à la campagne.
To be in the country.	Être à la campagne.
To go to the bank.	Aller à la banque.
To be at the bank.	Être à la banque.
To or at the exchange.	'A la bourse.
To or at the river.	'A la rivière.
To or at the kitchen.	'A la cuisine.
To or at the cellar.	'A la cave.
To or at church.	'A l'église.
To or at school.	'A l'école.
To or at the French school.	'A l'école de français.
To or at the dancing school.	'A l'école de danse.
The play (the comedy).	La comédie.
The opera.	L'opéra (a masculine noun <sup>1</sup> ).
To go a hunting.	† Aller à la chasse.
To be a hunting.	† Être à la chasse.
To go a fishing.	Aller à la pêche.
To be a fishing.	Être à la pêche.
<i>To hunt.</i>	<i>Chasser</i> 1.

The whole day, all the day.	Toute la journée.
The whole morning.	Toute la matinée.
The whole evening.	Toute la soirée <sup>2</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> All nouns ending in *a*, without any exception, are of the masculine gender. (See p. 10 in my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.)

<sup>2</sup> The words *day*, *morning*, and *evening*, are expressed by *jour*, *matin*, and *soir*, when we speak of a part of them, and by *journée*, *matinée*, and *soirée*, when their whole duration is to be expressed. Ex. *Il vient*



The whole night, all the night.	Toute la nuit.
The whole year.	Toute l'année <sup>3</sup> .
The whole week.	Toute la semaine.
The whole society.	Toute la société.
All at once.	{ Tout à la fois.
	{ Tout à coup.
Suddenly, all of a sudden.	Soudainement.

This week.	Cette semaine.
This year.	Cette année.
Last week.	La semaine passée.
Next week.	La semaine prochaine.
Every woman.	Toutes les femmes.
Every time.	Toutes les fois.
Every week.	Toutes les semaines.

Your mother.	Madame votre mère. (See Obs. B. Lesson LIV.)
Your sister.	Mademoiselle votre sœur.
Your sisters.	Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs. (See Obs. C. Lesson LIV.)
A person.	Une personne. (See Note 2, Less. LV.)
The ear-ache.	† Le mal d'oreille.
The heart-ache.	† Le mal de cœur.
The belly-ache.	† Le mal de ventre.
The stomach-ache.	† Le mal d'estomac.

*me voir tous les jours*, he comes to see me every day; *j'ai resté chez moi toute la journée*, I stayed at home all the day long; *je me promène tous les matins pendant une heure*, I take an hour's walk every morning; *il a plu toute la matinée*, it has been raining all the morning; *j'irai vous voir demain au soir*, I shall call upon you to-morrow evening. Where shall you spend the evening? *Où passerez-vous la soirée?*

<sup>3</sup> *Year* is expressed by *an* when we wish to express one or more units of a twelvemonth, and by *année* when it is considered as a twelvemonth in its duration. Ex. *Il y a six ans que mon frère ne m'a écrit*, it is six years since my brother wrote to me; *une année heureuse est celle que l'on passe sans ennui et sans infirmité*, a happy year is that which is spent without tediousness or infirmity.

She has the stomach-ache.

† Elle a une douleur dans l'estomac.

His sister has a violent head-ache.

† Sa sœur a un violent mal de tête.

I have the stomach-ache.

† J'ai des maux d'estomac.

PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE ABSOLUTE—FEMININE.

*Singular.*

Mine, thine, his (hers, its).

Ours, yours, theirs.

*Plural.*

Mine, thine, his (hers, its).

Ours, yours, theirs.

*Singular.*

La mienne, la tienne, la sienne.

La nôtre, la vôtre, la leur.

*Plural.*

Les miennes, les tiennes, les siennes.

Les nôtres, les vôtres, les leurs.

*Obs. A.* It will be remarked that *nôtre* and *vôtre* as absolute possessive pronouns have a circumflex accent (^) upon *o*.

Have you my pen or hers?

I have hers.

What do you wish to send to your aunt?

I wish to send her a tart.

Will you send her some fruit also?

I will send her some.

Have you sent the books to my sisters?

I have sent them to them.

Avez-vous ma plume ou la sienne?

J'ai la sienne.

Que voulez-vous envoyer à votre tante?

Je veux lui envoyer une tourte.

Voulez-vous lui envoyer aussi des fruits?

Je veux lui en envoyer.

Avez-vous envoyé les livres à mes sœurs?

Je les leur ai envoyés.

The ache, pain, la douleur.

The tart, la tourte.

The peach, la pêche.

The strawberry, la fraise.

The cherry, la cerise.

The newspaper, la gazette.

The merchant, la marchandise.

The aunt, la tante.

The female-cousin, la cousine.

The niece, la nièce.

The maid-servant, la servante.

The female-relation, la parente.

The female-neighbour, la voisine.

The female-cook, la cuisinière.

The brother-in-law, le beau-frère.

The sister-in-law, la belle-sœur.

*Obs. B.* The following substantives have a distinct form for individuals of the female sex.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
An abbot,	un abbé,	une abbesse.
An accuser,	un accusateur,	une accusatrice.
An actor,	un acteur,	une actrice.
An ambassador,	un ambassadeur,	une ambassadrice.
An apprentice,	un apprenti,	une apprentie.
A baron,	un baron,	une baronne.
A shepherd,	un berger,	une bergère.
A benefactor,	un bienfaiteur,	une bienfaitrice.
A canon,	un chanoine,	une chanoinesse.
A singer,	un chanteur,	une chanteuse.
A hunter,	un chasseur,	une chasseuse.
———— (in poetry),	un chasseur,	une chasseresse.
A count,	un comte,	une comtesse.
A dancer,	un danseur,	une danseuse.
A god,	un dieu,	une déesse.
A duke,	un duc,	une duchesse.
An elector,	un électeur,	une électrice.
An emperor,	un empereur,	une impératrice.
A founder,	un fondateur,	une fondatrice.
A lad,	un jouvenceau,	une jouvencelle.
A lion,	un lion,	une lionne.
A heathen,	un païen,	une païenne.
A peacock,	un paon,	une paonne.
A peasant,	un paysan,	une paysanne.
A prior,	un prieur,	une prieure.
A prince,	un prince,	une princesse.
A protector,	un protecteur,	une protectrice.
A king,	un roi,	une reine.

*Obs. C.* The three substantives, *auteur*, author ; *peintre*, painter ; *poète*, poet, are only of the masculine gender, and are used for both sexes.

She is a poetess.	Elle est poète.
Is she a painter ?	Est-elle peintre ?
She is an author.	Elle est auteur.

To hire, to let.	Louer 1.
Have you already hired a room ?	Avez-vous déjà loué une chambre ?

To admit or grant a thing.	}	Convenir * de quelque chose.
To confess a thing.		
Do you grant that ?		Convendez-vous de cela ?
I do grant it.		J'en conviens.
Do you confess your fault ?		Convendez-vous de votre faute ?
I confess it.		J'en conviens.
I confess it to be a fault.		Je conviens que c'est une faute.
To confess, to avow, to own, to acknowledge.	}	Avouer 1.
To confess.		
		Confesser 1.
<hr/>		
So much.		Tant.
She has so many candles that she cannot burn them all.		Elle a tant de chandelles qu'elle ne peut pas les brûler toutes.
To catch a cold.		† S'enrhumer 1.
To make sick.		† Rendre malade.
If you eat so much it will make you sick.		Si vous mangez tant, <i>cela</i> vous rendra malade.
 <i>Obs. D.</i> When the English pronoun <i>it</i> relates to a preceding circumstance, it is translated by <i>cela</i> ; when to a following circumstance by <i>il</i> .		
Does it suit you to lend your gun ?		Vous convient-il de prêter votre fusil ?
It does not suit me to lend it.		<i>Il</i> ne me convient pas de le prêter.
It does not suit me.		Cela ne me convient pas.
Where did you catch a cold ?		† Où vous êtes-vous enrhumé ?
I caught a cold in going from the opera.		† Je me suis enrhumé en sortant de l'opéra.
To have a cold.		† Être enrhumé.
The cold.		Le rhume.
The cough.		La toux.
I have a cold.		† J'ai un rhume de cerveau.
You have a cough.		† Vous avez un rhume de poitrine.
The brain.		Le cerveau.
The chest.		La poitrine.

## EXERCISES.

173.

Where is your cousin ?—He is in the kitchen.—Has your cook (fem.) already made the soup ?—She has made it, for it is



already upon the table.—Where is your mother?—She is at church.—Is your sister gone to school?—She is gone thither.—Does your mother often go to church?—She goes thither every morning and every evening.—At what o'clock in the morning does she go to church?—She goes thither as soon as she gets up.—At what o'clock does she get up?—She gets up at sunrise.—Dost thou go to school to-day?—I do go thither.—What dost thou learn at school?—I learn to read, write, and speak there.—Where is your aunt?—She is gone to the play with my little sister.—Do your sisters go this evening to the opera?—No, Madam, they go to the dancing school.—Do they not go to the French school?—They go thither in the morning, but not (*mais non*) in the evening.—Is your father gone a hunting?—He has not been able to go a hunting, for he has a cold.—Do you like to go a hunting?—I like to go a fishing better than a hunting.—Is your father still in the country?—Yes, Madam, he is still there.—What does he do there?—He goes a hunting and a fishing.—Did you hunt in the country?—I hunted the whole day.—How long did you stay with my mother?—I stayed with her the whole evening.—Is it long since you were at the castle?—I was there last week.—Did you find many people there?—I found only three persons there, the count, the countess, and their daughter.

## 174.

Are these girls as good (*sage*) as their brothers?—They are better than they.—Can your sisters speak German?—They cannot, but they are learning it.—Have you brought any thing to your mother?—I brought her some good fruit and a fine tart.—What has your niece brought you?—She has brought us good cherries, good strawberries, and good peaches.—Do you like peaches?—I like them much.—How many peaches has your neighbour (fem.) given you?—She has given me more than twenty.—Have you eaten many cherries this year?—I have eaten many.—Did you give any to your little sister?—I gave her so many that she cannot eat them all.—Why have you not given any to your good neighbour (fem.)?—I wished to give her some, but she would not take any, because she does not like cherries.—Were there many pears (*la poire*) last year?—There



were not many.—Has your cousin (fem.) any strawberries?—She has so many that she cannot eat them all.

## 175.

Why do your sisters not go to the play?—They cannot go thither because they have a cold, and that makes them very ill.—Where did they catch a cold?—They caught a cold in going from the opera last night.—Does it suit your sister to eat some peaches?—It does not suit her to eat any, for she has already eaten a good many, and if she eats so much it will make her ill.—Did you sleep well last night?—I did not sleep well, for my children made too much noise in my room.—Where were you last night?—I was at my brother-in-law's.—Did you see your sister-in-law?—I did see her.—How is she?—She is better than usual.—Did you play?—We did not play, but we read some good books; for my sister-in-law likes to read better than to play.—Have you read the gazette to-day?—I have read it.—Is there any thing new in it?—I have not read any thing new in it.—Where have you been since I saw you?—I have been at Vienna, Paris, and Berlin.—Did you speak to my aunt?—I did speak to her.—What does she say?—She says that she wishes to see you.—Whither have you put my pen?—I have put it upon the bench.—Do you intend to see your niece to-day?—I intend to see her, for she has promised me to dine with us.—I admire (*admirer*) that family (*la famille*), for the father is the king and the mother is the queen of it. The children and the servants are the subjects (*le sujet*) of the state (*l'état*). The tutors of the children are the ministers (*le ministre*), who share (*partager*) with the king and the queen the care (*le soin*) of the government (*le gouvernement*). The good education (*l'éducation*, fem.) which is given to children (See Obs. A. Lesson XLIV.) is the crown (*la couronne*) of monarchs (*le monarque*).

## 176.

Have you already hired a room?—I have already hired one.—Where have you hired it?—I have hired it in William-street (*dans la rue* or *rue Guillaume*), number one hundred and fifty-two.—At whose house (*chez qui*) have you hired it?—At the house of the

man whose son has sold you a horse.—For (*pour*) whom has your father hired a room?—He has hired one for his son, who has just arrived from France.—Why have you not kept your promise (*la promesse*)?—I do not remember what I promised you.—Did you not promise us to take us to the concert last Thursday?—I confess that I was wrong in promising you; the concert, however (*cependant*), has not taken place.—Does your brother confess his fault?—He confesses it.—What does your uncle say to (*de*) that note?—He says that it is written very well, but he admits that he has been wrong in sending it to the captain.—Do you confess your fault now?—I confess it to be a fault.—Where have you found my coat?—I have found it in the blue room (Obs. B. Lesson XXXVIII.).—Will you hang my hat on the tree?—I will hang it thereon.—How are you to-day?—I am not very well.—What is the matter with you?—I have a violent head-ache and a cold.—Where did you catch a cold?—I caught it last night in going from the play.

## FIFTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

*Cinquante-septième Leçon.*


## OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

THE present participle is formed from the first person plural of the present of the indicative by changing *ons* into *ant*.

We speak,	speaking.	1. Nous parlons,	parlant.
We finish,	finishing.	2. Nous finissons,	finissant.
We receive,	receiving.	3. Nous recevons,	recevant.
We render,	rendering.	4. Nous rendons,	rendant.

The five following verbs form exceptions to this rule :

To have,	having.	Avoir,	ayant.
To be,	being.	Être,	étant.
To expire <sup>1</sup> ,	expiring.	Échoir,	écheant.
To know,	knowing.	Savoir,	sachant.
To become,	becoming.	Seoir,	séant.

*Obs. A.* This form of the verb is very seldom used in French ; for whenever it is used in English after a preposition it is rendered into French by the infinitive. (See  Lessons XL. and LIV.) Yet it is used when an agent performs two actions at the same time, as for example :

The man eats while running.	L'homme mange en courant.
I correct while reading.	Je corrige en lisant.
I question while speaking.	Je questionne en parlant.
You speak while answering me.	Vous parlez en me répondant.

*Obs. B.* These examples show how the preposition *en*, in, always precedes the present participle, although it is sometimes not expressed, but understood.

---

<sup>1</sup> In speaking of a lease or a given portion of time.

*To question.*

The cravat.  
 The carriage.  
 The house.  
 The letter.  
 The table.  
 The family.  
 The promise.  
 The leg.  
 The sore throat.  
 The throat.  
 I have a sore throat.  
 The meat.  
 Salt meat.  
 Fresh meat.  
 Fresh beef.  
 Cold water.  
 The food (victuals).  
 The dish (mess).  
 Salt meats.  
 Milk-food.

*Questionner 1.*

La cravate.  
 La voiture.  
 La maison.  
 La lettre.  
 La table.  
 La famille.  
 La promesse.  
 La jambe.  
 Le mal de gorge.  
 La gorge.  
 J'ai mal à la gorge.  
 La viande.  
 De la viande salée.  
 De la viande fraîche.  
 Du bœuf frais.  
 De l'eau fraîche.  
 L'aliment.  
 Le mets.  
 Des mets salés.  
 Du laitage.

The traveller.

Le voyageur.

*To march, to walk, to step.*

*Marcher 1.*

*Obs. C.* *Marcher* must not be mistaken for *se promener*. (Lesson XLIV.) The former means to walk, and the latter to walk for pleasure.

I have walked a good deal to-day.

J'ai marché beaucoup aujourd'hui.

I have been walking in the garden with my mother.

Je me suis promené dans le jardin avec ma mère.

To walk or travel a mile.

† Faire un mille.

To walk or travel a league.

† Faire une lieue.

To walk a step.

† Faire un pas.

To take a step (meaning to take measures).

† Faire une démarche.

To go on a journey.

† Faire un voyage.

To make a speech.

† Faire un discours.

A piece of business.

} Une affaire.

An affair.

To transact business.

| Faire des affaires.

*To meddle with something.*

What are you meddling with?

I am meddling with my own business.

That man always meddles with other people's business.

I do not meddle with other people's business.

*Others, other people.*

He employs himself in painting.

The art of painting.

Chemistry.

The chemist.

The art.

Strange.

It is strange.

*To employ one's self in.*† *Se mêler de quelque chose.*

De quoi vous mêlez-vous?

Je me mêle de mes propres affaires.

Cet homme se mêle toujours des affaires des autres.

Je ne me mêle pas des affaires d'autrui.

*Autrui* (indeterminate pronoun, without gender or plural).

{ † Il se mêle de peindre.

{ † Il s'occupe de peinture.

La peinture.

La chimie.

Le chimiste.

L'art (masculine).

Étrange, étonnant.

C'est étrange.

*S'occuper* 1 *de* or *à*.*To concern some one.**Concerner* 1 or *regarder* 1 *quelqu'un*.*To look at some one.**Regarder* 1 *quelqu'un*.

I do not like to meddle with things that do not concern me.

† Je n'aime pas à me mêler de ce qui ne me regarde pas.

That concerns nobody.

Cela ne regarde personne.

To concern one's self about something.

To trouble one's head about something.

Se soucier de quelque chose.

*To attract.**Attirer* 1.

Loadstone attracts iron.

L'aimant attire le fer.

Her singing attracts me.

Son chant m'attire.

To charm.

Charmer 1.

To enchant.

Enchanter 1.

I am charmed with it.

J'en suis charmé (*fem. ée*).

The beauty.

La beauté.

*Obs. D.* All nouns ending in *té*, and expressing properties or qualities, are feminine. (See p. 5, and *Obs. A. B.* p. 16, in my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.)



The harmony.	L'harmonie.
The voice.	La voix.
The power.	Le pouvoir.
<i>To repeat.</i>	<i>Répéter 1.</i>
The repetition.	La répétition.
The commencement, beginning.	Le commencement.
The wisdom.	La sagesse.
Study.	L'étude.
The lord.	Le seigneur.
A good memory.	Une bonne mémoire.
A memorandum.	Un mémoire.
The nightingale.	Le rossignol.
All beginnings are difficult.	Tous les commencements sont difficiles.

---

<i>To create.</i>	<i>Créer 1.</i>
Creation.	La création.
The Creator.	Le Créateur.
The benefit.	Le bienfait.
The fear of the Lord.	La crainte du Seigneur.
Heaven.	Le ciel.
The earth.	La terre.
Solitude.	La solitude.
The lesson.	La leçon.
The goodness.	La bonté. (See Obs. D. above.)
Flour, meal.	De la farine.
The mill.	Le moulin.

---


*Obs. E.* We have seen (Lesson XLIV.) that all reflective verbs are in French conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, to be, in their compound tenses. There are besides some other verbs which, in French, are likewise compounded with the auxiliary *être*, to be, though they are not reflective, and generally take *to have* for their auxiliary in English. They are the following :

To go,	aller 1 *.	To come in,	entrer 1.
To stop,	s'arrêter 1.	To die,	mourir 2 *.
To arrive,	arriver 1.	To be born,	naître 4 *.
To decay,	déchoir 3 *.	To set out,	partir 2 *.
To die,	décéder 1.	To go out,	sortir 2 *.

To fall,	tomber 1.	To attain,	parvenir 2 *.
To come,	venir 2 *.	To come back,	revenir 2 *.
To become,	devenir 2 *.	To happen,	survenir 2 *.
To disagree,	disconvenir 2 *.	(See Lesson XXXIV. <i>Neuter Verbs.</i> )	
To intervene,	intervenir 2 *.		

---

Has your mother come ? | Votre mère est-elle *venue* ?

 The past participle of these verbs must agree in gender and number with the nominative of the verb *être*, to be.

She has not come yet.	Elle n'est pas encore <i>venue</i> .
Have the women already come ?	Les femmes sont-elles déjà <i>venues</i> ?
They have not come yet.	Elles ne sont pas encore <i>venues</i> .
Has your sister arrived ?	Votre sœur est-elle <i>arrivée</i> ?

---

## EXERCISES.

177.

Will you dine with us to-day ?—With much pleasure.—What have you for dinner (*quels mets avez-vous*) ?—We have good soup, some fresh and salt meat, and some milk food.—Do you like milk food ?—I like it better than (*préférer à*) all other food.—Are you ready to dine ?—I am ready.—Do you intend to set out soon ?—I intend setting out next week.—Do you travel alone (*seul*) ?—No, Madam, I travel with my uncle.—Do you travel on foot or in a carriage (Lesson XLII.) ?—We travel in a carriage.—Did you meet any one in your last journey (*dans votre dernier voyage*) to Berlin ?—We met many travellers.—What do you intend to spend your time in (Lesson XLIX.) this summer ?—I intend to take a short (*petit*) journey.—Did you walk much in your last journey ?—I like much to walk, but my uncle likes to go in a carriage.—Did he not wish to walk ?—He wished to walk at first (*d'abord*), but he wished to get into the coach (*monter en voiture*) after having taken a few steps, so that I did not walk much.—What have you been doing at school to-day ?—We have been listening to our professor.—What did he say ?—He made a long (*grand*) speech on (*sur*) the goodness of God. After saying, “ Repetition

is the mother of studies, and a good memory is a great benefit of God," he said, "God is the Creator of heaven and earth; the fear of the Lord is the beginning of all wisdom."—What are you doing all day in this garden?—I am walking in it.—What is there in it that attracts you (*qu'est-ce qui vous y attire*)?—The singing of the birds attracts me (*m'y attire*).—Are there any nightingales in it?—There are some in it, and the harmony of their singing enchants me.—Have those nightingales more power over (*sur*) you than the beauties of painting, or the voice of your tender (*tendre*) mother, who loves you so much?—I confess the harmony of the singing of those little birds has more power over me than the most tender words (*que les paroles les plus tendres*) of my dearest friends.

## 178.

What does your niece amuse herself with (Lesson XLIII.) in her solitude?—She reads a good deal, and writes letters to her mother.—What does your uncle amuse himself with in his solitude?—He employs himself in painting and chemistry.—Does he no longer do any business?—He no longer does any, for he is too old to do it.—Why does he meddle with your business?—He does not generally (*ordinairement*) meddle with other people's business, but he meddles with mine because he loves me.—Has your master made you repeat your lesson to-day?—He has made me repeat it.—Did you know it?—I knew it pretty well.—Have you also done some exercises?—I have done some, but what is that to you (*qu'est-ce que cela vous fait*) I beg (*je vous prie*)?—I do not generally meddle with things that do not concern me, but I love you so much that I concern myself much about (*que je m'intéresse beaucoup à*) what you are doing.—Does any one trouble his head about you?—No one troubles his head about me, for I am not worth the trouble (*je n'en vaud pas la peine*).—Who corrects your exercises?—My master corrects them.—How (*comment*) does he correct them?—He corrects them in reading them, and in reading them he speaks to me.—How many things (*combien de choses*) does your master do at the same time (*à la fois*)?—He does four things at the same time.—How so (*comment cela*)?—He reads and corrects my exercises, speaks to me

and questions me all at once (*tout à la fois*).—Does your sister sing (*chanter*) while dancing?—She sings while working, but she cannot sing while dancing.—Has your mother left?—She has not left yet.—When will she set out?—She will set out to-morrow evening.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter to seven.—Have your sisters arrived?—They have not arrived yet, but we expect them this evening.—Will they spend (*passer*) the evening (Note 2, Less. LVI.) with us?—They will spend it with us, for they have promised me to do so.—Where have you spent the morning?—I have spent it in the country.—Do you go every morning to the country?—I do not go every morning, but twice a week.—Why has your niece not called upon me (*venir voir quelqu'un*)?—She is very ill, and has spent the whole day in her room. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## FIFTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

*Cinquante-huitième Leçon.*

## OF THE PAST FUTURE.

THE past or compound future is formed from the future of the auxiliary, and the past participle of the verb you conjugate. Ex.

I shall have loved.	J'aurai aimé.
Thou wilt have loved.	Tu auras aimé.
He or she will have loved.	Il ou elle aura aimé.
We shall have loved.	Nous aurons aimé.
You will have loved.	Vous aurez aimé.
They will have loved.	Ils ( <i>fem.</i> elles) auront aimé.

I shall have come.	Je serai venu, <i>Fem.</i> venue.
Thou wilt have come.	Tu seras venu, „ venue.
He will have come.	Il sera venu.
She will have come.	Elle sera venue.
We shall have come.	Nous serons venus, <i>Fem.</i> venues.
You will have come.	Vous serez venus, „ venues <sup>1</sup> .
They will have come.	Ils seront venus.
They will have come, <i>fem.</i>	Elles seront venues.

I shall have been praised.	J'aurai été loué, <i>Fem.</i> louée.
Thou wilt have been praised.	Tu auras été loué, „ louée.
He will have been praised.	Il aura été loué.
She will have been praised.	Elle aura été louée.

<sup>1</sup> It is hardly necessary to remark, that if you speak only to one person, i.e. when the second person plural *vous* is employed instead of the second person singular, *tu*, there is no *s* put to the past participle.



We shall have been praised.  
 You will have been praised.  
 They will have been praised.  
 They (*fem.*) will have been praised.

Nous aurons été loués, *fem.* louées.  
 Vous aurez été loués, „, louées.  
 Ils auront été loués.  
 Elles auront été louées.

*To have left.*

When I have paid for the horse I  
 shall have only ten crowns left.  
 How much money have you left?  
 I have one franc left.  
 I have only one franc left.  
 How much has your brother left?  
 He has one crown left.  
 How much has your sister left?  
 She has only three sous left.  
 How much have your brothers  
 left?  
 They have one louis left.  
 When they have paid the tailor  
 they will have a hundred francs  
 left.

† *Rester 1.*

Quand j'aurai payé le cheval il ne  
 me restera que dix écus.  
 Combien d'argent vous reste-t-il?  
 Il me reste un franc.  
 Il ne me reste qu'un franc.  
 Combien reste-t-il à votre frère?  
 Il lui reste un écu.  
 Combien reste-t-il à votre sœur?  
 Il ne lui reste que trois sous.  
 Combien reste-t-il à vos frères?  
 Il leur reste un louis.  
 Quand ils auront payé le tailleur  
 il leur restera cent francs.

*Obs. A.* In English the present, or the compound of the present, is used after the conjunctions, *when, as soon as, or after*, when futurity is to be expressed; but in French the future must in such instances always be employed. Ex.

When I am at my aunt's will you  
 come to see me?  
 After you have done writing will  
 you take a turn with me?  
 You will play when you have  
 finished your exercise.  
 What will you do when you have  
 dined?  
 When I have spoken to your bro-  
 ther I shall know what I have  
 to do.

*Quand je serai* chez ma tante vien-  
 drez-vous me voir?  
*Quand vous aurez fini* d'écrire  
 viendrez-vous faire un tour avec  
 moi?  
*Vous jouerez*, quand *vous aurez fini*  
 votre thème.  
 Que ferez-vous quand vous aurez  
 dîné?  
 Quand j'aurai parlé à votre frère  
 je saurai ce que j'ai à faire.

## IDIOMS WITH FAIRE.

Does it rain ?	† Fait-il de la pluie ?
It rains.	† Il fait de la pluie.
Does it snow ?	† Fait-il de la neige ?
It snows.	† Il fait de la neige.
Is it muddy ?	† Fait-il de la boue ?
It is muddy.	† Il fait de la boue.
Is it muddy out of doors ?	† Fait-il sale dehors ?
It is very muddy.	† Il fait très sale.
Is it dusty ?	† Fait-il de la poussière ?
It is very dusty.	† Il fait beaucoup de poussière.
Is it smoky ?	† Fait-il de la fumée ?
It is too smoky.	† Il fait trop de fumée.
Out of doors.	Dehors.

<i>To enter, to go in, to come in.</i>	<i>Entrer 1 dans.</i>
Will you go into my room ?	Voulez-vous entrer dans ma chambre ?
I will go in.	Je veux y entrer.
Will you go in ?	Y entrerez-vous ?
I shall go in.	J'y entrerai.

To sit down.	S'asseoir 3 *. (See Lesson LI.)
<i>To sit, to be seated.</i>	<i>Être assis ; fem. assise.</i>
He is seated upon the large chair.	Il est assis sur la grande chaise.
She is seated upon the bench.	Elle est assise sur le banc.

<i>To fill with.</i>	<i>Remplir 2 de.</i>
To fill a bottle with wine.	Remplir de vin une bouteille.
Do you fill that bottle with water ?	Remplissez-vous d'eau cette bouteille ?
I fill my purse with money.	Je remplis d'argent ma bourse.
He fills his belly with meat.	Il se remplit de viande le ventre (a vulgar expression).
The pocket.	La poche.

Have you come quite alone ?	Êtes-vous venu tout seul ?
No, I have brought all my men along with me.	Non, j'ai amené tout mon monde.

*To bring.* | *Amener* 1.

*Obs. B.* *Amener* must, in French, not be mistaken for *apporter*. The former is used when the object can walk, and the latter when it cannot. Ex.

He has brought all his men along with him.	Il a amené tout son monde.
Have you brought your brother along with you?	Avez-vous amené votre frère?
I have brought him along with me.	Je l'ai amené.
Have you told the groom to bring me the horse?	Avez-vous dit au palefrenier de m'amener le cheval?
The groom.	Le palefrenier.
Are you bringing me my books?	M'apportez-vous mes livres?
I am bringing them to you.	Je vous les apporte.
<i>To take, to carry.</i>	<i>Mener</i> 1.

*Obs. C.* The same distinction must be observed with regard to *mener* and *porter* as with *amener* and *apporter*. Ex.

Will you take that dog to the stable?	Voulez-vous mener ce chien à l'écurie?
I will take it thither.	Je veux l'y mener.
Are you carrying this gun to my father?	Portez-vous ce fusil à mon père?
I carry it to him.	Je le lui porte.
The cane, stick.	La canne.
The stable.	L'écurie.

*To come down, to go down.*

'To go down into the well.

'To go or come down the hill.

'To go down the river.

*Descendre* 4.

Descendre dans le puits.

Descendre la montagne.

Descendre la rivière<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> The verb *descendre* takes the auxiliary *avoir* in its compound tenses when, as in these examples, it is construed with the accusative, otherwise it takes *être*. Ex. *Il a descendu la montagne*, he has gone down the mountain; *elle est descendue d'une famille honorable*, she is descended from an honourable family.

To alight from one's horse, to  
dismount.

To alight, to get out.

*To go up, to mount, to ascend.*

To go up the mountain.

Where is your brother gone to?

He has ascended the hill.

To mount the horse.

To get into the coach.

To get on board the ship.

*To desire, to beg, to pray, to  
request.*

Will you desire your brother to  
come down?

The beard.

The river.

The stream, torrent.

To go or come up the river.

Descendre de cheval. (Less. LII.)

Descendre de voiture.

*Monter* 1.

Monter la montagne.

Où votre frère est-il allé?

Il a monté la colline<sup>2</sup>.

Monter à cheval.

† Monter en voiture.

Monter sur un vaisseau.

*Prier* 1 (takes *de* before in-  
finitive).

Voulez-vous prier votre frère de  
descendre?

La barbe.

La rivière, le fleuve.

Le torrent.

Remonter la rivière.

## EXERCISES.

179.

Will your parents go into the country to-morrow?—They will not go, for it is too dusty.—Shall we take a walk to-day?—We will not take a walk, for it is too muddy out of doors.—Do you see the castle of my relation behind (*derrière*) yonder mountain (*cette montagne-là*)?—I see it.—Shall we go in?—We will go in if you like.—Will you go into that room?—I shall not go into it, for it is smoky.—I wish you a good morning, Madam (Obs. B. Lesson XXVI.).—Will you not come in? Will you not sit down?—I will sit down upon that large chair.—Will you tell me what has become of your brother?—I will tell you.—Where is your sister?—Do you not see her? She sits upon the bench.—Is your father seated upon the bench?—No, he sits upon the chair.—Hast thou spent all

<sup>2</sup> *Monter* also takes *avoir* when, as in these examples, it is construed with the accusative, and *être*, when otherwise. Ex. *Il est monté par degrés aux plus hautes charges militaires*, he has ascended by degrees to the highest military employments.

thy money?—I have not spent all.—How much hast thou left?—I have not much left. I have but five francs left.—How much money have thy sisters left?—They have but three crowns left.—Have you money enough left to pay your tailor?—I have enough left to pay him; but if I pay him I shall have but little left.—How much money will your brothers have left?—They will have a hundred crowns left.—When will you go to Italy?—I shall go as soon as (*aussitôt que*) I have learnt Italian.—When will your brothers go to France?—They will go thither as soon as they know French.—When will they learn it?—They will learn it when they have found a good master.—How much money shall we have left when we have paid for our horses?—When we have paid for them we shall have only a hundred crowns left.

## 180.

Do you gain (*gagner*, Lesson LIII.) any thing by (*à*) that business?—I do not gain much by it (*y*), but my brother gains a good deal by it. He fills his purse with money.—How much money have you gained?—I have gained only a little, but my cousin has gained much by it. He has filled his pocket with money.—Why does that man not work?—He is a good-for-nothing fellow, for he does nothing but eat all the day long. He continually (*toujours*) fills his belly with meat, so that he will make himself (*se rendre*) ill if he continues (*continuer*) to eat so much.—With what have you filled that bottle?—I have filled it with wine.—Will this man take care of my horse?—He will take care of it.—Who will take care of my servant?—The landlord will take care of him.—Does your servant take care of your horses?—He does take care of them.—Is he taking care of your clothes?—He takes care of them, for he brushes them every morning.—Have you ever drunk French wine?—I have never drunk any.—Is it long since you ate French bread?—It is almost three years since I ate any.—Have you hurt my brother-in-law?—I have not hurt him, but he has cut my finger.—What has he cut your finger with?—With the knife which you have lent him.

## 181.

Is your father arrived at last?—Every body says that he is



arrived, but I have not seen him yet.—Has the physician hurt your son?—He has hurt him, for he has cut his finger.—Have they cut off (*couper*) that man's leg (*à cet homme*)?—They have cut it off.—Are you pleased (*content*) with your servant?—I am much pleased with him, for he is fit for any thing (*propre à tout*).—What does he know?—He knows every thing (*tout*).—Can he ride (*monter à cheval*)?—He can.—Has your brother returned at last from England?—He has returned thence, and has brought you a fine horse.—Has he told his groom to bring it to me?—He has told him to bring it you.—What do you think (*que dites-vous*) of that horse?—I think (*je dis*) that it is a fine and good one (*qu'il est beau et bon*), and beg you to lead it into the stable.—In what did you spend your time yesterday?—I went to the concert, and afterwards (*ensuite*) to the play.—When did that man go down into the well?—He went down into it this morning.—Has he come up again yet (*remonter*)?—He came up an hour ago.—Where is your brother?—He is in his room.—Will you tell him to come down?—I will tell him so, but he is not dressed (Lesson LII.) yet.—Is your friend still (*toujours*) on the mountain?—He has already come down.—Did you go down or up (*remonter*) the river?—We went down it.—Did my cousin speak to you before he started?—He spoke to me before he got into the coach.—Have you seen my brother?—I saw him before I went on board the ship.—Is it better to get into a coach than to go on board the ship?—It is not worth while to get into a coach or to go on board the ship when one has no wish to travel.

## FIFTY-NINTH LESSON.

*Cinquante-neuvième Leçon.*

## OF THE IMPERFECT.

THE imperfect of the indicative is formed from the present participle by changing *ANT*

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
For the singular into	<i>AIS,</i>	<i>AIS,</i>	<i>AIT.</i>
For the plural into	<i>IONS,</i>	<i>IEZ,</i>	<i>AIENT.</i>

	<i>Pres. Participle.</i>	<i>Imperfects.</i>
Speaking—I spoke. 1. <i>Parlant.</i>	{	Je parlais, tu parlais, il (elle) parlait.
		Nous parlions, vous parliez, ils (elles) parlaient <sup>1</sup> .
Finishing—I finished. 2. <i>Finissant.</i>	{	Je finissais, tu finissais, il (elle) finissait.
		Nous finissions, vous finissiez, ils (elles) finissaient.
Perceiving—I perceived. 3. <i>Apercevant.</i>	{	J'apercevais, tu apercevais, il (elle) apercevait.
		Nous apercevions, vous aperceviez, ils (elles) apercevaient.

<sup>1</sup> Formerly the orthography of the first and second persons singular, and the third person plural of the imperfect were *je parlois, tu parlois, il parloit, ils parloient*. Some authors still persist in this way of spelling, but they ought not to be imitated. The orthography we follow was first proposed in 1675 by a lawyer of the name of Bérain, and has since been adopted by the generality of French authors. According to the ancient orthography the conditionals and other words, as: *j'aimerais, paraître, disparaître, faible, monnaie, Anglais, Français, Hollandais, Irlandais*, &c. were written: *j'aimerois, paroître, disparaître, foible, monnoie, Anglois, François, Irlandois, Hollandois*, &c.

*Pres. Par.**Imperfects.*

Rendering—I rendered.

4. Rendant.

{ Je rendais, tu rendais, il (elle) rendait.  
 { Nous rendions, vous rendiez, ils (elles) rendaient.

*Obs. A.* There are only two exceptions to this rule, viz.

Having—I had.

3. Ayant.

{ J'avais, tu avais, il (elle) avait.  
 { Nous avions, vous aviez, ils (elles) avaient.

Knowing—I knew.

3. Sachant

{ Je savais, tu savais, il (elle) savait.  
 { Nous savions, vous saviez, ils (elles) savaient.

I was, thou wast, he (she) was.

We were, you were, they were.

J'étais, tu étais, il (elle) était.

Nous étions, vous étiez, ils (elles) étaient.

*Obs. B.* The imperfect is a past tense which was still present at the time spoken of, and may always be recognised by using the two terms "WAS DOING," or "USED TO DO." Ex.

When I was at Berlin I often went to see my friends.

When you were in Paris you often went to the Champs-Élysées.

Rome was at first governed by kings.

Cæsar was a great man.

Cicero was a great orator.

Our ancestors went a hunting every day.

The Romans cultivated the arts and sciences, and rewarded merit.

Were you walking?

I was not walking.

Were you in Paris when the king was there?

I was there when he was there.

Quand j'étais à Berlin, j'allais souvent voir mes amis.

Quand vous étiez à Paris vous alliez souvent aux Champs-Élysées.

Rome était d'abord gouvernée par des rois.

César était un grand homme.

Cicéron était un grand orateur.

Nos ancêtres allaient tous les jours à la chasse.

Les Romains cultivaient les arts et les sciences et récompensaient le mérite.

Vous promeniez-vous?

Je ne me promenais pas.

Étiez-vous à Paris lorsque le roi y était?

J'y étais lorsqu'il y était.

Where were you when I was in London?

At what time did you breakfast when you were in Germany?

I breakfasted when my father breakfasted.

Did you work when he was working?

I studied when he was working.

Some fish.

Some game.

When I lived at my father's I rose earlier than I do now.

When we lived in that country we went a fishing often.

When I was ill I kept in bed all day.

Last summer, when I was in the country, there was a great deal of fruit.

Où étiez-vous lorsque j'étais à Londres?

Quand déjeuniez-vous lorsque vous étiez en Allemagne?

Je déjeunais lorsque mon père déjeunait.

Travailliez-vous lorsqu'il travaillait?

J'étudiais lorsqu'il travaillait.

Du poisson.

Du gibier.

Quand je demeurais chez mon père, je me levais de meilleure heure que je ne le fais à présent. (See Obs. B. Lesson LIII.)

Quand nous demeurions dans ce pays-là, nous allions souvent à la pêche.

Quand j'étais malade je gardais le lit toute la journée.

L'été passé, pendant que j'étais à la campagne, il y avait beaucoup de fruit.

---

*A thing.*

The same thing.

The same man.

It is all one (the same).

*Une chose.*

La même chose.

Le même homme.

† C'est égal.

---

*Such.*

Such a man.

Such men.

Such a woman.

Such things.

Such.

Such men merit esteem.

Mas. *Un tel*; fem. *Une telle.*

Un tel homme.

De tels hommes.

Une telle femme.

De telles choses.

Pareil; fem. pareille.

De pareils hommes méritent de l'estime.

---

*Out.*

Out of the city (the town).

Without or out doors.

The church stands outside the town.

I shall wait for you before the town gate.

The town or city gate.

The barrier, the turnpike.

*Hors de.*

Hors de la ville.

Dehors.

L'église est hors de la ville.

Je vous attendrai devant la porte de la ville.

La porte de la ville.

La barrière.

Seldom (rarely).

Some brandy.

The life.

To get one's livelihood by.

I get my livelihood by working.

He gets his living by writing.

I gain my money by working.

By what does that man get his livelihood?

Rarement.

De l'eau de vie.

La vie.

Gagner sa vie à.

Je gagne ma vie à travailler.

Il gagne sa vie à écrire.

Je gagne mon argent à travailler.

'A quoi cet homme gagne-t-il sa vie?

*To proceed, to go on, to continue.*

He continues his speech.

A good appetite.

The narrative, the tale.

The edge, the border, the shore.

The edge of the brook.

The sea-shore.

On the sea-shore.

The shore, the water-side, the coast, the bank.

*Continuer* 1 (*de* or *à* bef. inf.).

Il continue son discours.

Un bon appétit.

Le conte (la narration).

Le bord.

Le bord du ruisseau.

Le bord de la mer.

Au bord de la mer.

Le rivage, la rive.

People or folks.

They are good folks.

Gens.

↑ Ce sont de bonnes gens.

*Obs. C.* *Gens* is masculine when it comes before its adjective, and feminine when after it.

They are wicked people. | Ce sont de méchantes gens.



## EXERCISES.

182.

Were you loved when you were at Dresden (*Dresde*)?—I was not hated.—Was your brother esteemed when he was in London?—He was loved and esteemed.—When were you in Spain?—I was there when you were there.—Who was loved and who was hated?—Those that were good, assiduous, and obedient were loved, and those who were naughty (*méchant*), idle, and disobedient were punished, hated, and despised.—Were you in Berlin when the king was there?—I was there when he was there.—Was your uncle in London when I was there?—He was there when you were there.—Where were you when I was at Dresden?—I was in Paris.—Where was your father when you were in Vienna?—He was in England.—At what time did you breakfast when you were in France?—I breakfasted when my uncle breakfasted.—Did you work when he was working?—I studied when he was working.—Did your brother work when you were working?—He played when I was working.—On what (*De quoi*) lived our ancestors?—They lived on nothing but fish and game, for they went a hunting and a fishing every day.—What sort of people were the Romans?—They were very good people, for they cultivated the arts and sciences and rewarded merit.—Did you often go to see your friends when you were at Berlin?—I went to see them often.—Did you sometimes go to the Champs-Elysées when you were at Paris?—I often went thither.

183.

What did you do when you lived in that country?—When we lived there we went a fishing often.—Did you not go out walking (*aller se promener*)?—I went out walking sometimes.—Do you rise early?—Not so early as you, but when I lived at my uncle's I rose earlier than I do now.—Did you sometimes keep in bed when you lived at your uncle's?—When I was ill I kept in bed all day.—Is there much fruit this year?—I do not know; but last summer, when I was in the country, there was a great deal of fruit.—What do you get your livelihood by?—I get my livelihood by working.—Does your friend get his livelihood by writing?—He gets it by speaking and writing.—Do these gentlemen get their livelihood

by working?—They get it by doing nothing (*à ne rien faire*), for they are too idle to work.—What has your friend gained that money by?—He has gained it by working.—What did you get your livelihood by when you were in England?—I got it by writing.—Did your cousin get his livelihood by writing?—He got it by working.—Have you ever seen such a person?—I have never seen such a one (*une pareille*).—Have you already seen our church?—I have not seen it yet. Where does it stand?—It stands outside the town. If you wish to see it I will go with you in order to show it you.—What do the people live upon that live on the sea-shore?—They live on fish alone.—Why will you not go a hunting any more?—I hunted yesterday the whole day, and I killed nothing but an ugly bird, so that I shall not go any more a hunting.—Why do you not eat?—Because I have not a good appetite.—Why does your brother eat so much?—Because he has a good appetite.

## 184.

Whom are you looking for?—I am looking for my little brother.—If you wish to find him you must go (*il faut aller*) into the garden, for he is there.—The garden is large, and I shall not be able to find him if you do not tell me in which part (*dans quelle partie*) of the garden he is.—He is sitting under the large tree under which we were sitting yesterday.—Now I shall find him.—Why did you not bring my clothes?—They were not made, so that I could not bring them, but I bring them you now.—You have learnt your lesson; why has not your sister learnt hers?—She has taken a walk with my mother, so that she could not learn it, but she will learn it to-morrow.—When will you correct my exercises?—I will correct them when you bring me those of your sister.—Do you think you have made faults in them?—I do not know.—If you have made faults you have not studied your lessons well; for the lessons must be learnt well (*il faut bien apprendre*), to make no faults in the exercises.—It is all the same: if you do not correct them to-day, I shall not learn them before (*ne les apprendrai que*) to-morrow.—You must not (*il ne faut pas*) make any faults in your exercises, for you have all you want in order to make none.

## SIXTIETH LESSON.

*Soixantième Leçon.*

## THE IMPERFECT (CONTINUED).

I forgot, thou forgottest, he or she forgot.	J'oubliais, tu oubliais, il ou elle oubliait.
We forgot, you forgot, they forgot.	Nous oubliions, vous oubliiez, ils ou elles oubliaient.

*Obs. A.* All verbs whose present participle ends in *iant*, as *oublier*, *oubliant*; *rire*, to laugh, *riant*; *prier*, to pray, to desire, *priant*, &c. do not drop the letter *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative (and present of the subjunctive, of which hereafter).

When we went to school we often forgot our books.	Quand nous allions à l'école nous oubliions souvent nos livres.
When you went to church you often prayed to the Lord for your children.	Quand vous alliez à l'église vous priiez souvent le Seigneur pour vos enfants.

I paid, thou paidest, he or she paid.	Je payais, tu payais, il ou elle payait.
We paid, you paid, they paid.	Nous payions, vous payiez, ils ou elles payaient.

*Obs. B.* All verbs whose present participle ends in *yant*, as *payer*, *payant*; *appuyer*, to support, *appuyant*; *croire*, to believe, *croyant*; *s'asseoir*, to sit down, *s'asseyant*; *employer*, to employ, *employant*; *envoyer*, to send, *envoyant*; *essayer*, to try, *essayant*; *fuir*, to flee, *fuyant*; *voir*, to see, *voyant*, &c. do not drop the letter *i* after *y* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect indicative (and present subjunctive, of which hereafter).

When we received some money we employed it in purchasing good books.	Quand nous recevions de l'argent nous l'employions à acheter de bons livres.
--	--

When you bought of that merchant you did not always pay in cash.

Quand vous achetiez chez ce marchand vous ne payiez pas toujours comptant.

Has your sister succeeded in mending your cravat?

Votre sœur est-elle parvenue à raccommoder votre cravate?

She has succeeded in it.

Elle y est parvenue.

Has the woman returned from the market?

La femme est-elle revenue du marché?

She has not yet returned.

Elle n'en est pas encore revenue.

Did the women agree to that?

Les femmes sont-elles convenues de cela?

They did agree to it.

Elles en sont convenues.

Where is your sister gone to?

Où votre sœur est-elle allée?

She is gone to the church.

Elle est allée à l'église.

### OF THE CONDITIONAL OR POTENTIAL PRESENT.

This mood is formed from the Future by changing the endings.

RAI,	RAS,	RA,	RONs,	REZ,	RONt, into
RAIS,	RAIS,	RAIT,	RIONs,	RIEZ,	RAIENT.

*Obs. C.* It will be observed that it remains like the future as far as the letter *R*, after which it is exactly like the imperfect. *Ex.*

I shouldst have, thou wouldst have,  
he or she would have.

J'aurais, tu aurais, il ou elle aurait.

We should have, you would have,  
they would have.

Nous aurions, vous auriez, ils ou elles auraient.

I should be, thou wouldst be, he  
or she would be.

Je serais, tu serais, il ou elle serait.

We should be, you would be,  
they would be.

Nous serions, vous seriez, ils ou elles seraient.

I should speak, thou wouldst  
speak, he or she would speak.

Je parlerais, tu parlerais, il ou elle parlerait.

We should speak, you would  
speak, they would speak.

Nous parlerions, vous parleriez,  
ils ou elles parleraient.

*Obs. D.* Whenever this mood is used there is always an *IF* in the sentence expressed or understood; but the verb which follows *IF* must be in the imperfect tense.

If I had money I would have a new coat.

If thou couldst do this thou wouldst do that.

If he could he would.

I would go if I had time.

If he knew what you have done he would scold you.

*To scold.*

If there were any wood he would make a fire.

Should the men come it would be necessary to give them something to drink.

Should we receive our letters, we would not read them until to-morrow.

*Not until* (meaning *not before*).

Si j'avais de l'argent j'aurais un habit neuf.

Si tu savais faire ceci tu voudrais faire cela.

S'il pouvait il voudrait.

J'irais si j'avais le temps.

S'il savait ce que vous avez fait il vous gronderait.

*Gronder* 1.

S'il y avait du bois il ferait du feu.

Si les hommes venaient, il faudrait leur donner quelque chose à boire.

Si nous recevions nos lettres, nous ne les lirions pas avant demain.

*Pas avant* (takes *de* before inf.).

### CONDITIONAL OR POTENTIAL PAST.

This is formed from the present of the conditional of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb you conjugate. Ex.

I should, thou wouldst, he or she would have spoken.

We should, you would, they would have spoken.

J'aurais, tu aurais, il ou elle aurait parlé.

Nous aurions, vous auriez, ils ou elles auraient parlé.

I should, thou wouldst, he or she would have } departed.

We should, you would, they would have } departed.

Je serais, tu serais, il ou elle serait } *fem.* partie.

Nous serions, vous seriez, ils ou elles seraient } *pl. mas.* partis; *pl. fem.* parties.



If I had received my money I would have bought new shoes.  
 If he had had a pen he would have recollected the word.  
 If you had risen early, you would not have caught a cold.

If they had got rid of their old horse, they would have procured a better one.

If he had washed his hands he would have wiped them.

If I knew that, I would behave differently.

If I had known that, I would have behaved differently.

If thou hadst taken notice of that, thou wouldst not have been mistaken.

Si j'avais reçu mon argent, j'aurais acheté des souliers neufs.

S'il avait eu une plume, il se serait rappelé le mot.

Si vous vous étiez levé de bonne heure, vous ne vous seriez pas enrhumé.

S'ils s'étaient défaits de leur vieux cheval, ils s'en seraient procuré un meilleur.

S'il s'était lavé les mains, il se les serait essuyées.

Si je savais cela, je me comporterais différemment.

Si j'avais su cela, je me serais comporté autrement.

Si tu t'étais aperçu de cela, tu ne te serais pas trompé.

Would you learn French if I learnt it?

I would learn it if you learnt it.

Would you have learnt German if I had learnt it?

I would have learnt it if you had learnt it.

Would you go to France if I went thither with you?

I would go thither, if you went thither with me.

Would you have gone to Germany, if I had gone thither with you?

Would you go out, if I remained at home?

I would remain at home if you went out.

Would you have written a letter if I had written a note?

Apprendriez-vous le français si je l'apprenais?

Je l'apprendrais si vous l'appreniez.

Auriez-vous appris l'allemand si je l'avais appris?

Je l'aurais appris si vous l'aviez appris.

Iriez-vous en France, si j'y allais avec vous?

J'irais, si vous y alliez avec moi.

Seriez-vous allé en Allemagne si j'y étais allé avec vous?

Sortiriez-vous si je restais à la maison?

Je resterais à la maison, si vous sortiez.

Auriez-vous écrit une lettre si j'avais écrit un billet?

There is my book.	}	Voilà mon livre.
Behold my book.		
Here is my book.		Voici mon livre.
There it is.		Le voilà; <i>fem.</i> la voilà.
There they are.		Les voilà.
Here I am.		Me voici.
That is the reason why.		Voilà pourquoi.
Therefore I say so.		Voilà pourquoi je le dis.

My feet are cold.	† J'ai froid aux pieds.
His feet are cold.	† Il a froid aux pieds.
Her hands are cold.	† Elle a froid aux mains.
My body is cold.	† J'ai froid au corps.
My head hurts me.	† La tête me fait mal.
Her leg hurts her.	† La jambe lui fait mal.
He has a pain in his side.	† Il a mal au côté.
Her tongue hurts her very much.	† La langue lui fait beaucoup de mal.

A plate.	Une assiette.
The son-in-law.	Le beau-fils, le gendre.
The step-son.	Le beau-fils.
The daughter-in-law.	La belle-fille, la bru.
The step-daughter.	La belle-fille.
The progress.	Le progrès.
To profit.	† Faire des progrès.
To improve in learning.	† Faire des progrès dans les études, dans les sciences.
The progress of a malady.	Le progrès or les progrès d'une maladie <sup>1</sup> .
The father-in-law, the step-father.	Le beau-père.
The mother-in-law, the step-mother.	La belle-mère.

<sup>1</sup> All nouns ending in *ie* are feminine. This ending frequently answers to the English termination *y*. (See Obs. p. 17, in my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.)

## EXERCISES.

185.

Did you forget any thing when you went to school?—We often forgot our books.—Where did you forget them?—We forgot them at the school.—Did we forget any thing?—You forgot nothing.—Did your mother pray for any one when she went to church?—She prayed for her children.—For whom did we pray?—You prayed for your parents.—For whom did our parents pray?—They prayed for their children.—When you received your money what did you do with it (*qu'en faisiez-vous*)?—We employed it in purchasing some good books.—Did you employ yours also in purchasing books?—No; we employed it in assisting the poor (*à secourir les pauvres*).—Did you not pay your tailor?—We did pay him.—Did you always pay in cash when you bought of that merchant?—We always paid in cash, for we never buy on credit.—Has your sister succeeded in mending your stockings?—She has succeeded in it.—Has your mother returned from church?—She has not yet returned.—Whither has your aunt gone?—She has gone to church.—Whither have our cousins (fem.) gone?—They have gone to the concert.—Have they not yet returned from it?—They have not yet returned.

186.

Who is there?—It is I (*c'est moi*).—Who are those men?—They are foreigners who wish to speak to you.—Of what country are they?—They are Americans.—Where is my book?—There it is.—And my pen?—Here it is.—Where is your sister?—There she is.—Where are our cousins (fem.)?—There they are.—Where are you, John (*Jean*)?—Here I am.—Why do your children live in France?—They wish to learn French; that is the reason why they live in France.—Why do you sit near the fire?—My hands and feet are cold; that is the reason why I sit near the fire.—Are your sister's hands cold?—No; but her feet are cold.—What is the matter with your aunt?—Her leg hurts her.—Is any thing the matter with you?—My head hurts me.—What is the matter with that woman?—Her tongue hurts her very much.

—Why do you not eat?—I shall not eat before I have (*avant d'avoir*) a good appetite.—Has your sister a good appetite?—She has a very good appetite; that is the reason why she eats so much.—If you have read the books which I lent you why do you not return them to me?—I intend reading them once more (*encore une fois*); that is the reason why I have not yet returned them to you; but I will return them to you as soon as I have read them a second time (*pour la seconde fois*).—Why have you not brought my shoes?—They were not made, therefore I did not bring them; but I bring them you now: here they are.—Why has your daughter not learnt her exercises?—She has taken a walk with her companion (*fem.*); that is the reason why she has not learnt them: but she promises to learn them to-morrow, if you do not scold her.

## 187.

Would you have money if your father were here?—I should have some if he were here.—Would you have been pleased if I had had some books?—I should have been much pleased if you had had some.—Would you have praised my little brother if he had been good?—If he had been good I should certainly (*certainement*) not only (*non seulement*) have praised, but also loved, honoured (*honorer*), and rewarded him.—Should we be praised if we did our exercises?—If you did them without a fault (*sans faute*) you would be praised and rewarded.—Would my brother not have been punished if he had done his exercises?—He would not have been punished if he had done them.—Would my sister have been praised if she had not been skilful?—She would certainly not have been praised if she had not been very skilful, and if she had not worked from morning (*depuis le matin*) till evening.—Would you give me something if I were very good?—If you were very good, and if you worked well, I would give you a fine book.—Would you have written to your sister if I had gone to Paris?—I would have written to her, and sent her something handsome if you had gone thither.—Would you speak if I listened to you?—I would speak if you listened to me, and if you would answer me.—Would you have spoken to my mother if you had seen her?—I would have spoken to her, and have begged of



her (*prier quelqu'un*) to send you a handsome gold watch (*la montre en or*) if I had seen her.

## 188.

One of the valets de chambre (*un des valets de chambre*) of Louis XIV. (*de Louis XIV.*) requested that prince, as he was going to bed (*comme il se mettait au lit*), to recommend (*de faire recommander*) to the first president (*à Monsieur le premier président*) a law-suit (*un procès*) which he had against (*contre*) his father-in-law, and said, in urging him (*en le pressant*); "Alas (*Hélas*), Sire (*Sire*), you have but to say one word." "Well, (*Eh !*)" said Louis XIV., "it is not that which embarrasses me (*ce n'est pas de quoi je suis en peine*); but tell me (*dis-moi*), if thou wert in thy father-in-law's place (*à la place de —*), and thy father-in-law in thine, wouldst thou be glad (*bien aise*) if I said that word?"

If the men should come it would be necessary to give them something to drink.—If he could do this he would do that.—I have always flattered myself, my dear brother, that you loved me as much as I love you; but I now see that I have been mistaken. I should like (*je voudrais*) to know why you went a walking without me.—I have heard, my dear sister, that you are angry with me (*être fâché contre quelqu'un*), because I went a walking without you. I assure you, that had I known that you were not ill, I should have come for you (*venir chercher quelqu'un*); but I inquired (*s'informer*) at (*chez*) your physician's about your health (*de votre santé*), and he told me, that you had been keeping your bed (*que vous gardiez le lit*) the last eight days (*depuis huit jours*).

## 189.

A French officer having arrived (*étant arrivé*) at the court (*la cour*) of Vienna, the empress Theresa (*Thérèse*) asked (*demanda*) him, if he believed that the princess of N., whom he had seen the day before (*la veille*), was really the handsomest woman in the (*du*) world, as was said. (See Obs. A. Lesson XLIV.) "Madam," replied (*répliqua*) the officer, "I thought so yesterday."—How do



you like (Lesson XLI.) that meat?—I like it very well.—May I ask you for (*oserais-je vous demander*) a piece of that fish?—If you will have the goodness (*la bonté*) to pass me your plate I will give you some.—Would you have the goodness to pour me out (*verser*) some drink (*à boire*)?—With much pleasure.—Cicero, seeing his son-in-law, who was very short (*petit*), arrive (*venir*) with a long sword (*une longue épée*) at his side (*au côté*), said, “Who has fastened (*qui est-ce qui a attaché*) my son-in-law to this sword?” (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SIXTY-FIRST LESSON.

*Soixante et unième Leçon.*

What has become of your aunt?  
I do not know what has become  
of her.  
What has become of your sisters?  
I cannot tell you what has become  
of them.

Qu'est devenue votre tante ?  
Je ne sais pas ce qu'elle est deve-  
nue.  
Que sont devenues vos sœurs ?  
Je ne peux pas vous dire ce  
qu'elles sont devenues.

*To die (to lose life).*

I die, thou diest, he or she dies.  
  
Shall or will you die?  
I shall die.  
The man died this morning, and  
his wife died also.  
The man is dead.  
The woman died this morning.

*Mourir* 2\* ; pres. part. *mou-  
rant* ; past part. *mort*.  
Je meurs, tu meurs, il ou elle  
meurt.  
Mourrez-vous? (See Less. XLVI.)  
Je mourrai.  
L'homme est mort ce matin et sa  
femme est morte aussi.  
L'homme est mort.  
La femme est morte ce matin.

Wine sells well.

Wine will sell well next year.

That door shuts easily.

That window does not open easily.

That picture is seen far off.

Far off, from afar.

Winter clothes are not worn in  
summer.

† Le vin se vend bien.

† Le vin se vendra bien l'année  
prochaine.

† Cette porte se ferme facilement.

† Cette fenêtre ne s'ouvre pas  
facilement.

† Ce tableau se voit de loin.

De loin.

† Les vêtements d'hiver ne se  
portent pas en été.

That is not said.

That cannot be comprehended.

*To conceive, to comprehend.*

It is clear.

† Cela ne se dit pas.

† Cela ne se conçoit pas.

*Concevoir* 3.

C'est clair.

According to circumstances.

The circumstance.

That is according to circumstances.

It depends.

† Selon les circonstances.

La circonstance.

† C'est selon.

Glad.

Pleased.

Sorry, displeased.

Are you rich.

I am.

Are the women handsome?

They are; they are rich and handsome.

Are you from France?

I am.

What countrywoman is she?

She is from France.

Would you be sorry if you were rich?

I should not be sorry for it.

*To be angry with somebody.*

*To be angry about something.*

What are you angry about?

Are you sorry for having done it?

I am sorry for it.

Honest, polite.

Impolite.

Polite, courteous.

Impolite, uncivil.

Happy, lucky.

Unhappy, unlucky.

Easy.

Difficult.

Bien aise (*de* before inf.).

Content (*de* before inf.).

Fâché.

Êtes-vous riche?

Je le suis.

Les femmes sont-elles bien?

Elles le sont; elles sont riches et belles.

Êtes-vous de France?

J'en suis.

De quel pays est-elle?

Elle est de France.

Seriez-vous fâché si vous étiez riche?

Je n'en serais pas fâché.

<sup>A</sup>*Être fâché contre quelqu'un.*

<sup>A</sup>*Être fâché de quelque chose.*

De quoi êtes-vous fâché?

Êtes-vous fâché de l'avoir fait?

J'en suis fâché.

Honnête.

Malhonnête.

Poli.

Impoli.

Heureux; *fem.* heureuse.

Malheureux; „, malheureuse.

Facile.

Difficile.

Useful.

Useless.

Is it useful to write a great deal?

It is useful.

Is it well (right) to take the property of others?

It is bad (wrong).

It is not well (wrong).

*Well, right.**Bad, wrong.*

Utile.

Inutile.

Est-il utile d'écrire beaucoup?

C'est utile.

Est-il bien de prendre le bien des autres?

C'est mal.

Ce n'est pas bien.

*Bien.**Mal.*

Of what use is that?

That is of no use.

What is that?

I do not know what that is.

What is it?

I do not know what it is.

† 'A quoi cela est-il bon?

† Cela n'est bon à rien.

† Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

† Je ne sais pas ce que c'est que cela.

† Qu'est-ce que c'est?

† Je ne sais pas ce que c'est.

What is your name?

My name is Charles.

What do you call this in French?

How do you express this in French?

What is that called?

† Comment vous appelez-vous?

† Je m'appelle Charles.

† Comment cela s'appelle-t-il en français?

† Comment dit-on cela en français?

Comment appelle-t-on cela?

George the Third. | George trois.

*Obs. A.* After the Christian name of a sovereign the French employ the cardinal numbers without an article, whilst the English use the ordinal.

Lewis the Fourteenth.

Henry the Fourth.

Louis quatorze.

Henri quatre.

*Obs. B.* The first number, however, forms an exception to this rule, and the second is used indifferently with the ordinal or cardinal number.

Henry the First.  
 Henry the Second.  
 Charles the Fifth spoke several  
 European languages fluently.  
 Europe, European.  
 Fluently.

Henri premier.  
 Henri second *or* Henri deux.  
 Charles quint parlait couramment  
 plusieurs langues européennes.  
 L'Europe, européen.  
 Couramment.

### *Rather.*

Rather—than.  
 Rather than squander my money  
 I will keep it.  
 I will rather pay him than go thi-  
 ther.  
 I will rather burn the coat than  
 wear it.  
 He has arrived sooner than I.  
 A half worn coat.  
 To do things imperfectly (by  
 halves).

### *Plutôt—que.*

Plutôt—que de.  
 Plutôt que de dissiper mon argent  
 je le garderai.  
 Je le paierai plutôt que d'y aller.  
 Je brûlerai plutôt l'habit que de  
 le porter.  
 Il est arrivé plus tôt que moi.  
 † Un habit à demi usé.  
 † Faire les choses à demi.

## EXERCISES.

190.

What has become of your uncle?—I will tell you what has become of him. Here is the chair (*la chaise*) upon which he often sat (*être assis*, Lesson LVIII.).—Is he dead?—He is dead.—When did he die?—He died two years ago.—I am very much afflicted (*affligé*) at it.—Why do you not sit down?—If you will stay with (*auprès de*) me I will sit down; but if you go I shall go along with you.—What has become of your aunt?—I do not know what has become of her.—Will you tell me what has become of your sister?—I will tell you what has become of her.—Is she dead?—She is not dead.—What has become of her?—She is gone to Vienna.—What has become of your sisters?—I cannot tell you what has become of them, for I have not seen them these two years.—Are your parents still alive?—They are dead.—How long is it since your cousin (fem.) died?—It is six months since she died.—Did wine sell well last year?—It did not sell very well (*pas trop bien*); but it will sell better (*mieux*)



next year, for there will be a great deal, and it will not be dear.—Why do you open the door?—Do you not see how it smokes here?—I see it, but you must (*il faut*) open the window instead of opening the door.—The window does not open easily ; that is the reason why I open the door.—When will you shut it?—I will shut it as soon as there is (Obs. *A.* Lesson LVIII.) no more smoke.—Did you often go a fishing when you were in that country?—We often went a fishing and a hunting.—If you will go with us into the country you will see my father's castle.—You are very polite, Sir ; but I have seen that castle already.

## 191.

When did you see my father's castle?—I saw it when I was travelling last year. It is a very fine castle, and is seen far off.—How is that said?—That is not said.—That cannot be comprehended.—Cannot every thing be expressed in your language?—Every thing can be expressed, but not as in yours.—Will you rise early to-morrow?—It will depend upon circumstances ; if I go to bed early I shall rise early, but if I go to bed late I shall rise late.—Will you love my children?—If they are good I shall love them.—Will you dine with us to-morrow?—If you get ready (*faire préparer*) the food I like I shall dine with you.—Have you already read the letter which you received this morning?—I have not opened it yet.—When will you read it?—I shall read it as soon as I have time.—Of what use is that?—It is of no use.—Why have you picked it up?—I have picked it up in order to show it you.—Can you tell me what it is?—I cannot tell you, for I do not know ; but I will ask (*demander à*, Lesson XL.) my brother, who will tell you.—Where did you find it?—I found it on the shore of the river, near the wood.—Did you perceive it from afar?—I had no need to perceive it from afar, for I passed by the side of the river.—Have you ever seen such a thing?—Never.—Is it useful to speak much?—It is according to circumstances : if one wishes to learn a foreign (*étranger*) language it is useful to speak a great deal.—Is it as useful to write as to speak?—It is more useful to speak than to write ; but in order to learn a foreign language one must do both (*l'un et l'autre*).—Is it useful to write all that one says?—That is useless.

## 192.

Where did you take this book from?—I took it out of (*dans*) the room of your friend (fem.).—Is it right to take the books of other people?—It is not right, I know; but I wanted it, and I hope that your friend will not be displeased, for I will return it to her as soon as I have read (Obs. *A.* Lesson LVIII.) it.—What is your name?—My name is William (*Guillaume*).—What is your sister's name?—Her name is Eleanor (*Léonore*).—Why does Charles complain of his sister?—Because she has taken his pens.—Of whom do those children complain?—Francis (*François*) complains of Eleanor, and Eleanor of Francis.—Who is right?—They are both (*tous deux*) wrong; for Eleanor wishes to take Francis's books, and Francis Eleanor's.—To whom have you lent Racine's works (*les œuvres de*)?—I have lent the first volume to William and the second to Louisa (*Louise*).—How is that said in French?—It is said thus (*ainsi*).—How is that said in German?—That is not said in German.—Has the tailor brought you your new coat?—He has brought it me, but it does not fit (Lesson XLVII.) me well.—Will he make you another?—He will make me another; for rather than wear it I will give it away (*donner*).—Will you use that horse?—I shall not use it.—Why will you not use it?—Because it does not suit me.—Will you pay for it?—I will rather pay for it than use it.—To whom do those fine books belong (*à qui appartiennent*)?—They belong to William.—Who has given them to him?—His father.—Will he read them?—He will tear them rather than read them.—Who has told you that?—He has told me so himself (*lui-même*).

## 193.

What countrywoman is that lady (*la dame*)?—She is from France.—Are you from France?—No, I am from Germany.—Why do you not give your clothes to mend?—It is not worth while, for I must have new clothes.—Is the coat which you wear not a good one?—It is a half-worn coat, and is good for nothing.—Would you be sorry if your mother were to arrive to-day?—I should not be sorry for it.—Would your sister be sorry if she were rich?—She would not be sorry for it.—Are you angry with

any one?—I am angry with Louisa, who went to the opera without telling me a word of it.—Where were you when she went out?—I was in my room.—I assure you that she is very sorry for it; for had she known that you were in your room, she would have called you in order to take you along with her to the opera.—Charles V., who spoke fluently several European languages, used to say (*avait coutume de dire*), that we should speak (*qu'il fallait parler*) Spanish with the gods, Italian with our (*son*) friend (fem.), French with our friend (mas.), German with soldiers, English with geese (*une oie*), Hungarian (*hongrois*) with horses, and Bohemian (*bohémien*) with the devil (*le diable*). (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SIXTY-SECOND LESSON.

*Soixante-deuxième Leçon.*


---

<i>As to (as for).</i>	<i>Quant à.</i>
As to me.	Quant à moi.
As to that I do not know what to say.	Quant à cela je ne sais que dire.

*Obs. A.* *What* before an infinitive is translated by *que*, and if the sentence is negative *pas* is not used.

I do not know what to do.	Je ne sais que faire.
I do not know where to go.	Je ne sais où aller.
He does not know what to answer.	Il ne sait que répondre.
We do not know what to buy.	Nous ne savons qu'acheter.

---

To die of a disease.	Mourir d'une maladie.
She died of the small-pox.	Elle est morte de la petite vérole.
The small-pox.	La petite vérole.
The fever.	La fièvre.
The intermittent fever.	La fièvre intermittente.
The apoplexy.	{ L'attaque d'apoplexie.
	{ L'apoplexie.
He had a cold fit.	† Il avait un accès de fièvre.
He has an ague.	† La fièvre l'a pris.
His fever has returned.	† La fièvre l'a repris.
He has been struck with apoplexy.	Il a été frappé d'apoplexie.
To strike.	Frapper l.

---

*Sure.**To be sure of a thing.*

I am sure of that.

I am sure that she has arrived.

I am sure of it.

Something has happened.

Nothing has happened.

What has happened?

What has happened to her?

She had an accident.

*Sûr, sûre.**Être sûr de quelque chose.*

{ J'en suis sûr.

{ Je suis sûr de cela.

Je suis sûr qu'elle est arrivée.

J'en suis sûr.

Il est arrivé quelque chose.

Il n'est rien arrivé.

Qu'est-il arrivé?

Que lui est-il arrivé?

Il lui est arrivé un accident.

*To shed, to pour out.*

A tear.

To shed tears.

To pour out some drink.

I pour out some drink for that man.

With tears in his, her, our, or my eyes.

*Verser 1.*

Une larme.

Verser des larmes.

Verser à boire.

† Je verse à boire à cet homme.

Les larmes aux yeux.

Sweet, mild.

Sour, acid.

Some sweet wine.

A mild air.

A mild zephyr.

A soft sleep.

Nothing makes life more agreeable than the society of, and intercourse with, our friends.

Doux; *fem.* douce.

Sur.

Du vin doux.

Un air doux.

Un doux zéphyr.

Un doux sommeil.

Rien ne rend la vie si douce que la société et le commerce de nos amis.

*To repair to.*

To repair to the army, to one's regiment.

An army, a regiment.

I repaired to that place.

He repaired thither.

*Se rendre à.*

Se rendre à l'armée, à son régiment.

Une armée, un régiment.

Je me suis rendu à cet endroit.

Il s'y est rendu.



*To cry, to scream, to shriek.**To help.*

I help him to do it.

I help you to write.

I will help you to work.

*To cry out for help.**The help.**Crier* 1.*Aider* 1 (governs the accus. and takes à before the inf.).

Je l'aide à le faire.

Je vous aide à écrire.

Je veux vous aider à travailler.

{ *Crier* à l'aide.

{ Appeler du secours.

{ L'aide<sup>1</sup>, le secours.*To inquire after some one.*

Will you have the goodness to pass me that plate?

Will you pass me that plate, if you please?

If you please.

As you please.

At your pleasure.

As you like.

*S'informer* 1 *de quelqu'un.*

Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de me passer ce plat?

Voulez-vous me passer ce plat, s'il vous plaît?

S'il vous plaît.

{ Comme il vous plaira.

*To knock at the door.**Frapper* 1 *à la porte.**To trust some one.**To distrust one.*

Do you trust that man?

I do trust him.

He trusts me.

We must not trust every body.

† *Se fier* 1 *à quelqu'un.*† *Se défier de quelqu'un.*

Vous fiez-vous à cet homme?

Je me fie à lui.

Il se fie à moi.

Il ne faut pas se fier à tout le monde.

*To laugh at something.*

I laugh, thou laughest, he or she laughs.

Do you laugh at that?

*Rire* 4\* *de quelque chose*; pres. part. *riant*; past part. *ri*.

Je ris, tu ris, il ou elle rit.

Riez-vous de cela?

<sup>1</sup> *Aide* in the signification of *help* is feminine; it is masculine when it means an *assistant*.

I do laugh at it.

At what do they laugh?

*To laugh in a person's face.*

We laughed in his face.

*To laugh at, to deride some one.*

I laugh at (deride) you.

Did you laugh at us?

We did not laugh at you.

J'en ris.

De quoi rient-ils ; *fem.* elles ?

*Rire au nez de quelqu'un.*

Nous lui avons ri au nez.

*Se rire, ou se moquer de quelqu'un.*

Je me ris (me moque) de vous.

Vous riez-vous de nous ? (See

Obs. A. Lesson LX.)

Nous ne nous rions pas de vous.

Full.

A book full of errors.

Plein, pleine.

Un livre plein de fautes.

*To afford.*

Can you afford to buy that horse?

I can afford it.

I cannot afford it.

† *Avoir les moyens (de before infinitive).*

† Avez-vous les moyens d'acheter ce cheval ?

† J'en ai les moyens.

† Je n'en ai pas les moyens.

Who is there?

It is I.

It is not I.

Is it he?

It is not he.

Are they your brothers?

It is they.

It is not they.

Is it she?

It is she.

It is not she.

Are they your sisters?

It is they (*feminine*).

It is not they. ,,

It is I who speak.

Qui est là ?

C'est moi.

Ce n'est pas moi.

Est-ce lui ?

Ce n'est pas lui.

{ Sont-ce vos frères ? *or,*

{ Est-ce que ce sont vos frères ?

Ce sont eux.

Ce ne sont pas eux.

Est-ce elle ?

C'est elle.

Ce n'est pas elle.

{ Sont-ce vos sœurs ? *or,*

{ Est-ce que ce sont vos sœurs ?

Ce sont elles.

Ce ne sont pas elles.

C'est moi qui parle.

Is it they who laugh ?	{ Sont-ce eux (elles) qui rient ? <i>or</i> , Est-ce que ce sont eux (elles) qui rient ?
It is you who laugh.	C'est vous qui riez.
It is thou who hast done it.	C'est toi qui l'as fait.
It is you, gentlemen, who have said that.	C'est vous, Messieurs, qui avez dit cela.
We learn French, my brother and I.	† Mon frère et moi nous appre- nons le français.

*Obs. B.* The personal pronoun must be repeated before the verb when it has two or more different nominatives.

You and I will go into the coun- try.	† Vous et moi <i>nous</i> irons à la campagne.
You and he will stay at home.	† Vous et lui <i>vous</i> resterez à la maison.
You will go to the country and I will return to town.	Vous irez à la campagne, et <i>moi</i> je reviendrai à la ville.
A lady.	Une dame.
What were you doing when your tutor was here ?	Que faisiez-vous quand votre in- stituteur était ici ?
I was doing nothing.	Je ne faisais rien.
What did you say ?	Que disiez-vous ?
I said nothing.	Je ne disais rien.

### EXERCISES.

194.

Of what illness did your sister die ?—She died of (*de la*) fever.  
—How is your brother ?—My brother is no longer living. He died  
three months ago.—I am surprised (*étonné*) at it, for he was very  
well last summer when I was in the country.—Of what did he  
die ?—He died of apoplexy.—How is the mother of your friend ?  
—She is not well ; she had an attack of ague the day before yes-  
terday, and this morning the fever has returned.—Has she an  
intermittent fever ?—I do not know, but she often has cold fits.  
—What has become of the woman whom I saw at your mother's ?  
—She died this morning of apoplexy.—Do your scholars learn  
their exercises by heart ?—They will rather tear them than learn  
them by heart.—What does this man ask me for ?—He asks you

for the money which you owe him.—If he will repair to-morrow morning (*demain matin*) to my house I will pay him what I owe him.—He will rather lose his money than repair thither.—Why does the mother of our old servant shed tears? What has happened to her?—She sheds tears because the old clergyman (*le vieil ecclésiastique*), her friend, who was so very good to her (*qui lui faisait tant de bien*), died a few days ago.—Of what illness did he die?—He was struck with apoplexy.—Have you helped your father to write his letters?—I have helped him.—Will you help me to work when we go to town?—I will help you to work if you help me to get a livelihood.

## 195.

Have you inquired after the merchant who sells so cheap?—I have inquired after him, but nobody could tell me what has become of him.—Where did he live when you were here three years ago?—He lived then (*alors*) in Charles street (*rue Charles*), No. 57.—How do you like (Lesson XLI.) this wine?—I like it very well, but it is a little sour.—How does your sister like those apples (*la pomme*)?—She likes them very well, but she says that they are a little too sweet.—Will you have the goodness to pass that plate to me?—With much pleasure.—Shall I (*faut-il*) pass these fishes to you?—I will thank you to (*je vous prie de*) pass them to me.—Shall I (*faut-il*) pass the bread to your sister?—You will oblige her by (*vous lui ferez plaisir de*) passing it to her.—How does your mother like our food?—She likes it very well, but she says that she has eaten enough.—What dost thou ask me for?—Will you be kind enough to (*je vous prie de*) give me a little bit (*un petit morceau*) of that mutton?—Will you pass me the bottle, if you please?—Have you not drunk enough?—Not yet, for I am still thirsty.—Shall I give you (*faut-il vous verser*) some wine?—No; I like cider better.—Why do you not eat?—I do not know what to eat.—Who knocks at the door?—It is a foreigner.—Why does he cry?—He cries because a great misfortune has happened to him.—What has happened to you?—Nothing has happened to me.—Where will you go to this evening?—I do not know where to go to.—Where will your brothers go to?—I do not know where they will go to; as for me, I shall

go to the theatre.—Why do you go to town?—I go thither in order to purchase some books. Will you go thither with me?—I will go with you, but I do not know what to do there.

## 196.

Must I sell to that man on credit?—You may (*pouvoir\**) sell to him, but not on credit; you must not trust him (*vous fier à lui*), for he will not pay you.—Has he already deceived (*tromper*) any body?—He has already deceived several merchants who have trusted him.—Must I trust those ladies?—You may trust them; but as to me I shall not trust them, for I have often been deceived by (*par les*) women, and that is the reason why I say: We must not trust every body.—Do those merchants trust you?—They trust me, and I trust them.—Whom do those gentlemen laugh at?—They laugh at those ladies who wear red gowns (*la robe*) with yellow ribbons.—Why do those people laugh at us?—They laugh at us because we speak badly (*mal*).—Ought we to laugh (*faut-il se moquer*) at persons who speak badly?—We ought not to laugh at them; we ought, on the contrary, to listen to them, and if they make blunders (*fautes*), we ought to correct them to them.—What are you laughing at?—I am laughing at your hat: how long (*depuis quand*) have you been wearing it so large (*grand*)?—Since (*depuis que*) I returned from Germany.—Can you afford to buy a horse and a carriage?—I can afford it.—Can your brother afford to buy that large house?—He cannot afford it.—Will your cousin buy that horse?—He will buy it, if it pleases (*convenir\**) him.—Have you received my letter?—I have received it with much pleasure. I have shown it to my French master, who was surprised (*s'étonner*), for there was not a single fault in it.—Have you already received Corneille's and Boileau's works (*les œuvres*)?—I have received those of Boileau; as to those of Corneille, I hope to receive them next week.

## 197.

Is it thou, Charles, who hast soiled my book?—It is not I, it is your little sister who has soiled it.—Who has broken my fine inkstand?—It is I who have broken it.—Is it you who have spoken of me?—It is we who have spoken of you, but we have



said of you nothing but good (*du bien*).—Who knocks at the door?—It is I, will you open it?—What do you want (*désirer*)?—I come (to) ask you for the money which you owe me, and the books which I lent you.—If you will have the goodness to come to-morrow I will return both to you.—Is it your sister who is playing on the harpsichord?—It is not she.—Who is it?—It is my cousin (fem.).—Are they your sisters who are coming?—It is they.—Are they your neighbours (fem.) who were laughing at you?—They are not our neighbours.—Who are they?—They are the daughters of the countess whose brother has bought your house.—Are they the ladies you have spoken of to me?—They are.—Shall you learn German?—My brother and I will learn it.—Shall we go to the country to-morrow?—I shall go to the country, and you will remain in town.—Shall my sister and I go to the opera?—You and she will remain at home, and your brother will go to the opera.—What did you say when your tutor was scolding you?—I said nothing, because I had nothing to say, for I had not done my task, and he was in the right to scold me.—What were you doing whilst he (*pendant qu'il*) was out?—I was playing on the violin, instead of doing what he had given me to do.—What has my brother told you?—He has told me that he would be the happiest man in the (*du*) world, if he knew the French language, the most useful of all languages.

## SIXTY-THIRD LESSON.

*Soixante-troisième Leçon.**To get into a bad scrape.*† *S'attirer* 1 (*se faire*) *de mauvaises affaires.**To get out of a bad scrape.*† *Se tirer* 1 *d'affaire.*

I got out of the scrape.

Je me suis tiré d'affaire.

That man always gets into bad scrapes, but he always gets out of them again.

Cet homme s'attire toujours de mauvaises affaires, mais il s'en tire toujours.

Between.

Entre.

Amongst or amidst.

Parmi.

*To make some one's acquaintance.**Faire connaissance avec quelqu'un.**To become acquainted with somebody.*

I have made his or her acquaintance.

J'ai fait sa connaissance.

I have become acquainted with him or her.

Are you acquainted with him (or her)?

Le (ou la) connaissez-vous <sup>1</sup>?

Do you know him (or her)?

I am acquainted with him (or her).

Je le (ou la) connais.

I know him (or her).

<sup>1</sup> The verb *to know* is always expressed by *connaître* \* when it signifies *to be acquainted with*, and by *savoir* \* in all other cases. Ex. I know that man, that lady, *je connais cet homme, cette dame*; I know my lesson, *je sais ma leçon*; I know what you wish to say, *je sais ce que vous voulez dire*.

He is an acquaintance of mine.  
 She is my acquaintance.  
 He is not a friend, he is but an  
 acquaintance.

Il est de ma connaissance.  
 Elle est de ma connaissance.  
 Ce n'est pas un ami, ce n'est  
 qu'une connaissance.

*To enjoy.*  
 Do you enjoy good health ?

*Jouir 2 de.*  
 Jouissez-vous d'une bonne santé ?

*To be well.*

{ *Être bien portant, portante.*  
 { *Être en bonne santé.*

She is well.

{ † Elle est bien portante.  
 { † Elle se porte bien.  
 { † Elle est en bonne santé.

*To imagine.*

| *S'imaginer 1.*

Our fellow-creatures.  
 He has not his equal, or his match.  
*To resemble some one, to look*  
*like some one.*

That man resembles my brother.  
 That beer looks like water.

Each other.

We resemble each other.  
 They do not resemble each other.  
 The brother and the sister love  
 each other.

Are you pleased with each other ?  
 We are.

As, or as well as.

Nos semblables.  
 Il n'a pas son semblable.  
 † *Ressembler 1 à quelqu'un.*

Cet homme ressemble à mon frère.  
 Cette bière ressemble à de l'eau.  
 L'un l'autre, l'une l'autre.  
 Nous nous ressemblons.  
 Ils ou elles ne se ressemblent pas.  
 Le frère et la sœur s'aiment l'un  
 l'autre.

Êtes-vous contents l'un de l'autre ?  
 Nous le sommes.  
 Ainsi que.

The appearance, the countenance.

*To show a disposition to.*

That man whom you see shows a  
 desire to approach us.

*To look pleased with some one.*

*To look cross at some one.*

La mine.

*Faire mine de.*

Cet homme que vous voyez fait  
 mine de nous approcher.

*Faire bonne mine à quelqu'un.*

*Faire mauvaise mine à quel-  
 qu'un.*

When I go to see that man, instead of receiving me with pleasure, he looks displeased.

A good-looking man.

A bad-looking man.

Bad-looking people, or folks.

To go to see some one.

To pay some one a visit.

To frequent a place.

To frequent societies.

To associate *with* some one.

Quand je vais voir cet homme, au lieu de me faire bonne mine il me fait mauvaise mine.

Un homme de bonne mine.

Un homme de mauvaise mine.

Des gens de mauvaise mine.

Aller voir quelqu'un.

{ Faire une visite } à quelqu'un.  
{ Rendre visite }

Fréquenter un lieu.

Fréquenter des sociétés.

† Fréquenter quelqu'un.

*To look like, to appear.*

How does he look ?

He looks gay (sad, contented).

You appear very well.

You look like a doctor.

She looks angry, appears to be angry.

They look contented, appear to be contented.

To look good, to appear to be good.

*Avoir l'air.*

Quelle mine a-t-il ?

Il a l'air enjoué (triste, content).

Vous avez l'air bien portant.

Vous avez l'air d'un médecin.

Elle a l'air fâché.

Ils ont l'air content.

Avoir l'air bon.

To drink to some one.

To drink some one's health.

I drink your health.

Boire à quelqu'un.

† Boire à la santé de quelqu'un.

† Je bois à votre santé.

It is all over with me !

It is all over.

† C'est fait de moi !

† C'en est fait.

To hurt some one's feelings.

You have hurt that man's feelings.

† Faire de la peine à quelqu'un.

† Vous avez fait de la peine à cet homme.

A place.

I know a good place to swim in.

Un endroit.

Je connais un bon endroit pour nager.

*To experience, to undergo.*

I have experienced a great many misfortunes.

*To suffer.*

Dost thou suffer?

I do suffer.

He suffers.

To feel a pain in one's head or foot.

I felt a pain in my eye.

*To neglect.**To yield.*

We must yield to necessity.

*Éprouver* 1.

J'ai éprouvé beaucoup de malheurs.

*Souffrir* 2\* ; pres. part. *souffrant* ; past part. *souffert*.

Souffres-tu ?

Je souffre.

Il souffre.

† Souffrir de la tête, du pied.

† J'ai souffert de l'œil.

*Négliger* 1 (*de* before infin.).

*Céder*. (See Obs. A. Lesson LIII.)

Il faut céder à la nécessité.

*To spring forward.*

The cat springs upon the rat.

To leap on horseback.

† *S'élancer*.

Le chat s'élance sur le rat.

S'élancer sur son cheval.

An increase, an augmentation.

For more bad luck.

For more good luck.

For more bad luck I have lost my purse.

Un surcroît.

Pour surcroît de malheur.

Pour surcroît de bonheur.

Pour surcroît de malheur j'ai perdu ma bourse.

To lose one's wits.

That man has lost his wits, and he does not know what to do.

*Obstinately, by all means.*

That man wishes by all means to lend me his money.

Perdre la tête.

Cet homme a perdu la tête, et il ne sait que faire. (See Obs. A. Lesson LXII.)

*A toute force.*

Cet homme veut à toute force me prêter son argent.

*To follow.*

I follow, thou followest, he or she follows.

*Suivre* 4\* ; pres. part. *suis* ; past part. *suivi*.

Je suis, tu suis, il ou elle suit.



*To pursue.**Poursuivre* 4\*. (Is conjugated like *suivre*.)*To preserve, to save.**Conserver* 1.

## EXERCISES.

198.

Why do you associate with those people?—I associate with them because they are useful to me.—If you continue to associate with them you will get into bad scrapes, for they have many enemies.—How does your cousin conduct himself?—He does not conduct himself very well, for he is always getting into some bad scrape (or other).—Do you not sometimes get into bad scrapes?—It is true (*vrai*) that I sometimes get into them (*m'en fais*), but I always get out of them again.—Do you see those men (*gens*) who seem desirous of approaching us?—I do see them, but I do not fear them (Lesson XLIII.); for they hurt nobody.—We must go away (*il faut nous éloigner*), for I do not like to mix with people whom I do not know.—I beg of you (Lesson LVIII.) not to be afraid of them (*en*), for I perceive my uncle among them.—Do you know a good place to swim in?—I know one.—Where is it?—On that side (Lesson XXXVIII.) of the river, behind the wood (*la forêt*), near the high-road (*le grand chemin*).—When shall we go to swim?—This evening, if you like.—Will you wait for me before the city gate?—I shall wait for you there; but I beg of you not to forget it.—You know that I never forget my promises.—Where did you become acquainted with that lady?—I became acquainted with her at the house of one of my relations.—Why does your cousin ask me for (Lesson XL.) money and books?—Because he is a fool (Obs. Lesson XXVI.); of me, (*car à moi*), who am his nearest relation (*son plus proche parent*), and his best friend, he asks nothing.—Why did you not come to dinner (*venir dîner*)?—I have been hindered, but you have been able to dine without me.—Do you think (*croire\**) that we shall not dine, if you cannot come?—How long (*jusqu'à quand*) did you wait for me?—We waited for you till a quarter past seven,

and as you did not come we dined without you.—Have you drunk my health?—We have drunk yours (*à la vôtre*) and that of your parents.

## 199.

How does your uncle look (*quelle mine a —*)?—He looks (*à l'air*) very gay (*enjoué*), for he is much pleased with his children.—Do his friends look (*ont-ils la mine*) as gay as he?—They, on the contrary, look sad, because they are discontented. My uncle has no money, and is always contented, and his friends who have a good deal of it, are scarcely ever so.—Do you like your sister?—I like her much, and as (*et comme*) she is very good-natured (*complaisante*) to (*envers*) me I am so to her; but how do you like yours?—We love each other, because we are pleased with each other.—A certain (*certain*) man liked much wine, but he found in it (*lui*) two bad qualities (*une qualité*). “If I put water to it,” said he, “I spoil it; and if I do not put any to it, it spoils me.”—Does your cousin resemble you?—He resembles me.—Do your sisters resemble each other?—They do not resemble each other; for the elder (*l'aînée*) is idle and naughty, and the younger (*la cadette*) assiduous and good-natured towards every body.—How is your aunt?—She is very well.—Does your mother enjoy good health?—She imagines she enjoys (*s'imaginer jouir*) good health, but I believe she is mistaken, for she has had a bad cough (*la toux*) these six months of which (*dont*) she cannot get rid.—Is that man angry with you?—I think he is angry with me because I (*de ce que je*) do not go to see him: but I do not like to go to his house, for when I go to him, instead of receiving me with pleasure, he looks displeased.—You must not believe that; he is not angry with you, for he is not so bad (*méchant*) as he looks (*qu'il en a l'air*). He is the best man in the (*du*) world; but one must know him in order to appreciate him (*pour pouvoir l'apprécier*).—There is a great difference (*la différence*) between you and him (*lui*); you look pleased with all those who come to see you, and he looks cross with them.

## 200.

Is it right to laugh thus at every body?—If I laugh at your coat, I do not laugh at every body.—Does your son resemble any one?

—He resembles no one.—Why do you not drink?—I do not know what to drink, for I like good wine, and yours looks like vinegar.—If you wish to have some other I shall go down (*descendre*) into the cellar to fetch you some.—You are too polite, Sir, I shall drink no more to-day.—Have you known my father long?—I have known him long, for I made his acquaintance when I was yet at school. We often worked for one another, and we loved each other like brothers.—I believe it, for you resemble each other.—When I had not done my exercises he did them for me, and when he had not done his I did them for him.—Why does your father send for the physician?—He is ill, and as (*et comme*) the physician does not come he sends for him.—Ah (*Ah*), it is all over with me!—But, bless me (*mon Dieu*)! why do you cry thus (*comme cela*)?—I have been robbed (*Obs. A. Lesson XLIV.*) of my gold rings (*la bague d'or*), my best clothes, and all my money; that is the reason why I cry.—Do not make (*ne faites pas*) so much noise, for it is we who have taken them all (*tout cela*) in order to teach you to take better care (*avoir plus de soin*, Lesson L.) of your things (*affaires*), and to shut the door of your room when you go out.—Why do you look so sad?—I have experienced great misfortunes; after having lost all my money I was beaten by bad-looking men; and to my still greater ill-luck, I hear that my good uncle, whom I love so much, has been struck with apoplexy.—You must not afflict yourself (*s'affliger*) so much, for you know that we must yield to necessity.

## SIXTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Soixante-quatrième Leçon.*

*Obs. A.* *How, how much, how many*, before an exclamation, are translated by *que*. *Ex.*

How good you are !	{ Que vous êtes bon !
	{ Que de bonté vous avez !
How foolish he is !	Qu'il est sot !

*Obs. B.* The adjective which in English follows *how* stands in French after the verb, and when *que* is followed by a substantive *de* must always precede it.

How foolish she is !	Qu'elle est sotte !
How rich that man is !	Que cet homme est riche !
How handsome that woman is !	Que cette femme est belle !
How much kindness you have for me !	Que de bonté vous avez pour moi !
How many obligations I am under to you !	† Que d'obligations je vous ai !
<i>To be under obligations to some one.</i>	† <i>Avoir des obligations à quelqu'un.</i>
I am under many obligations to him.	† Je lui ai beaucoup d'obligations.
How many people !	Que de monde !
How happy you are !	Que vous êtes heureux !
How much wealth that man has !	Que de richesses cet homme a !
How much money that man has spent in his life !	Que d'argent cet homme a dépensé dans sa vie !

To be obliged to some one for something.	Être obligé à quelqu'un de quelque chose.
To be indebted to some one for something.	Être redevable à quelqu'un de quelque chose.
I am indebted to him for it.	Je lui en suis redevable.

*To thank.*

*Remercier* 1 (governs the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the object).

*To thank some one for something.*

*Remercier quelqu'un de quelque chose.*

I thank you for the trouble you have taken for me.

Je vous remercie de la peine que vous avez prise pour moi.

*Obs. C.* When one is thanked for any thing he answers :

There is no reason for it.

| † Il n'y a pas de quoi.

Is there any thing more grand ?

Qu'y a-t-il de plus grand ?

Is there any thing more cruel ?

Y a-t-il rien de plus cruel ?

Is there any thing more wicked ?

Qu'y a-t-il de plus méchant ?

Can any thing be more handsome ?

Est-il rien de plus beau ?

How large ? Of what size ?

De quelle grandeur ?

How high ? Of what height ?

De quelle hauteur ?

How deep ? Of what depth ?

De quelle profondeur ?

*Obs. D.* When speaking of dimension we use in French the verb *avoir*, when the English use the verb *to be*, and the preposition *de* stands before the noun or adjective of dimension. Ex.

Of what height is his or her house ?

† Combien sa maison a-t-elle de haut *ou* de hauteur ?

It is nearly fifty feet high.

† Elle a environ cinquante pieds de haut *ou* de hauteur.

Our house is thirty feet broad.

† Notre maison a trente pieds de large *ou* de largeur.

That table is six feet long.

† Cette table a six pieds de long *ou* de longueur.

That river is twenty feet deep.

† Cette rivière a vingt pieds de profondeur<sup>1</sup>.

The size.

La taille.

Of what size is that man ?

De quelle taille cet homme est-il ?

<sup>1</sup> In general the substantive is more elegantly used than the adjective, but *deep* cannot be expressed by *de profond*.



How was that child dressed?

Comment cet enfant était-il habillé?

It was dressed in green.

† Il était habillé de vert.

The man with the blue coat.

† L'homme à l'habit bleu.

The woman with the red gown.

† La femme à la robe rouge.

*True.*

Is it true that his house is burnt?

*Vrai.*

Est-il vrai que sa maison est brûlée?

It is true.

C'est vrai.

Is it not (or is it not true)?

N'est-ce pas (n'est-il pas vrai)?

Perhaps.

I shall perhaps go thither.

Peut-être.

J'irai peut-être.

*To share, to divide.*

*Partager 1.*

*Whose?*

Whose horse is this?

*'A qui?* (See Lessons XXI. and XXIX.)

It is mine, *or* it belongs to me.

*'A qui est ce cheval?*

Whose horses are these?

C'est le mien *ou* il est à moi.

They are mine, *or* they belong to me.

*'A qui sont ces chevaux?*

Whose house is that?

Ce sont les miens, *ou* ils sont à moi.

It is mine, *or* it belongs to me.

*'A qui est cette maison?*

Whose houses are these?

C'est la mienne, *ou* elle est à moi.

They are mine, *or* they belong to me.

*'A qui sont ces maisons?*

Ce sont les miennes, *ou* elles sont à moi.

*To run up.*

Many men had run up; but instead of extinguishing the fire they set to plundering.

*Accourir 2\**, (conjugated like *courir*\*, Lesson XLVIII.)

To run to the assistance of some one.

Beaucoup d'hommes étaient accourus, mais au lieu d'éteindre le feu, les misérables s'étaient mis à piller.

*Accourir*\* au secours de quelqu'un.

<i>To save, to deliver.</i>	<i>Sauver</i> 1.
To save any body's life.	Sauver la vie à quelqu'un.
To plunder (to rob).	Piller 1.
To set about something.	† Se mettre * à quelque chose.
Have they succeeded in extinguishing the fire?	Est-on parvenu à éteindre le feu?
They have succeeded in it.	On y est parvenu.

The watch indicates the hours.	La montre marque les heures.
<i>To indicate, to mark.</i>	<i>Marquer</i> 1; <i>indiquer</i> 1.

<i>To quarrel.</i>	<i>Se quereller</i> 1.
To quarrel with one.	† Quereller quelqu'un.
<i>To dispute (to contend) about something.</i>	<i>Disputer sur quelque chose.</i>
About what are these people disputing?	Sur quoi ces gens disputent-ils?
They are disputing about who shall go first.	† Ils disputent à qui ira le premier.

<i>Thus or so.</i>	<i>Ainsi.</i>
To be ignorant of, or	} <i>Ignorer</i> 1.
Not to know.	
<i>The day before.</i>	<i>La veille</i> (takes <i>de</i> before the noun that follows it).
The day before that day was Saturday.	† La veille <i>de</i> ce jour-là était un samedi.
The day before Sunday is Saturday.	† La veille <i>de</i> dimanche est samedi.

## EXERCISES.

201.

Can you not get rid of that man (Lesson LII.)?—I cannot get rid of him, for he will absolutely (*à toute force*) follow me.—Has he not lost his wits?—It may be (*cela se peut*).—What does he

ask you for?—He wishes to sell me a horse which I do not want.—Whose houses are those?—They are mine.—Do these pens belong to you?—No, they belong to my sister.—Are those (*sont-ce là*) the pens with which she writes so well?—They are the same.—Whose gun is this?—It is my father's.—Are these books your sister's?—They are hers.—Whose carriage is this?—It is mine.—Which is the man of whom you complain?—It is he (*celui*) who wears a red coat.—“What is the difference (*la différence*) between a watch and me?” inquired (*demanda*) a lady of a young officer.—“My lady,” replied he (*lui répondit celui-ci*), “a watch marks the hours, and near (*auprès de*) you one forgets them.”—A Russian peasant who had never seen asses (*un âne*), seeing (*en voyant*) several in France, said (*dit*), “Lord (*mon Dieu*), what large hares (*le lièvre*) there are in this country!”—How many obligations I am under to you, my dear friend! you have saved my life! without you I had been lost.—Have those miserable men hurt you?—They have beaten and robbed me, and when you ran to my assistance they were about to (*ils allaient*) strip (*déshabiller*) and kill me.—I am happy to have delivered you from the (*des*) hands of those robbers.—How good you are!

## 202.

Will you go to Mr. Tortenson's to-night?—I shall, perhaps, go.—And will your sisters go?—They will, perhaps.—Had you any pleasure yesterday at the concert?—I had no pleasure there, for there was such a multitude of people there that one could hardly get in.—I bring you a pretty present with which you will be much pleased.—What is it?—It is a silk cravat.—Where is it?—I have it in my pocket (*dans ma poche*).—Does it please you?—It pleases me much, and I thank you for it with all my heart. I hope that you will at last accept (*accepter*) something of me.—What do you intend to give me?—I will not tell you, for if I do tell you, you will have no pleasure when I give it you.—Have you seen any one at the market?—I have seen a good many people there.—How were they dressed?—Some were dressed in blue, some in green, some in yellow, and several in red.—Who are those men?—The one who is dressed in grey is my neighbour, and the man with the black coat the physician whose son has

given my neighbour a blow with the stick.—Who is the man with the green coat?—He is one of my relations.—Are there many philosophers in your country?—There are as many there as in yours.—How does this hat fit me?—It fits you very well.—How does that coat fit your brother?—It fits him admirably.—Is your brother as tall (*grand*) as you?—He is taller than I, but I am older (*âgé*) than he.—Of what size (*de quelle taille*) is that man?—He is five feet four inches (*un pouce*) high.—How high is the house of our landlord?—It is sixty feet high.—Is your well deep?—Yes, Sir, for it is fifty feet deep.—“There are many learned men (*un savant*) in Rome, are there not (*n'est-ce pas*)?” Milton asked a Roman. “Not so many as when you were there,” answered (*répondit*) the Roman.

## 203.

Is it true that your uncle has arrived?—I assure you that he has arrived.—Is it true that the king has assured you of his assistance (*de son assistance*)?—I assure you that it is true.—Is it true that the six thousand (*mille*; takes no *s* in the plural) men, whom we were expecting, have arrived?—I have heard so.—Will you dine with us?—I cannot dine with you, for I have just eaten.—Will your brother drink a glass of wine?—He cannot drink, for I assure you that he has just drunk.—Why are those men quarrelling.—They are quarrelling because they do not know what to do.—Have they succeeded in extinguishing the fire?—They have at last succeeded in it; but it is said (*on dit*, Obs. *A.* Less. XLIV.) that several houses have been burnt.—Have they not been able to save any thing?—They have not been able to save any thing; for instead of extinguishing the fire, the miserable wretches (*les misérables*) who had come up, set to plundering.—What has happened?—A great misfortune has happened.—Why did my friends set out without me?—They waited for you till twelve o'clock, and seeing that you did not come they set out.—What is the day before Monday called?—The day before Monday is Sunday.—Why did you not run to the assistance of your neighbour whose house has been burnt?—I was quite (*entièrement*) ignorant of his house being on fire (*que le feu fût à sa maison*); for had I known it I would have run to his assistance. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SIXTY-FIFTH LESSON.

*Soixante-cinquième Leçon.**To propose.*

I propose going on that journey.  
He proposes joining a hunting party.

A game at chess.  
A game at billiards.  
A game at cards.

*Se proposer* 1 (*de* bef. infin.).

Je me propose de faire ce voyage.  
Il se propose d'aller à une partie de chasse.

Une partie d'échecs.  
Une partie de billard.  
Une partie de cartes.

*To succeed.*

Do you succeed in doing that?  
I do succeed in it.

*To endeavour.*

I endeavour to do it.  
I endeavour to succeed in it.  
Endeavour to do better.

*Réussir* 2 (*à* before infin.).

Réussissez-vous à faire cela?  
J'y réussis.

*Tâcher* 1 (*de* before infin.).

Je tâche de le faire.  
Je tâche d'y réussir.  
Tâchez de faire mieux.

*Since, considering.*

Since you are happy, why do you complain?

*Puisque.*

Puisque vous êtes heureux, pourquoi vous plaignez-vous?

*To be thoroughly acquainted with a thing.*

*To make one's self thoroughly acquainted with a thing.*

That man understands that business perfectly.

I understand that well.

*Être au fait de quelque chose.*

*Se mettre au fait de quelque chose.*

Cet homme est au fait de cette affaire.

Je suis au fait de cela.



<i>Since or from.</i>	<i>Depuis.</i>
From that time.	Depuis ce moment.
From my childhood.	Depuis ma jeunesse.
From morning until evening.	Depuis le matin jusqu'au soir.
From the beginning to the end.	Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin.
From here to there.	Depuis ici jusque là.
I have had that book these two years.	J'ai ce livre depuis deux ans.
I have lived in Paris these three years.	Je demeure à Paris depuis trois ans.

<i>To blow, to blow out.</i>	<i>Souffler 1.</i>
<i>To reduce.</i>	<i>Réduire 4*; pres.part. réduisant; past part. réduit.</i>
Dost thou reduce?	Réduis-tu?
I do reduce.	Je réduis.
He reduces.	Il réduit.
<i>To translate.</i>	<i>Traduire 4* (is conjugated like réduire *).</i>
<i>To produce.</i>	<i>Produire 4*. „ „</i>
<i>To destroy.</i>	<i>Détruire 4*. „ „</i>
<i>To construct.</i>	<i>Construire 4*. „ „</i>
<i>To introduce.</i>	<i>Introduire 4*. „ „</i>

To reduce the price.	Réduire le prix.
To reduce the price to a crown.	Réduire le prix un écu.
To translate into French.	Traduire en français.
To translate from French into English.	Traduire du français en anglais.
To translate from one language into another.	Traduire d'une langue dans une autre.
I introduce him to you.	{ Je l'introduis chez vous. † Je vous le présente.

<i>Self, selves.</i>	<i>Même, mêmes.</i>
Myself.	Moi-même.
Thyself.	Toi-même.
Himself.	Lui-même.

Herself.	Elle-même.
Ourselves.	Nous-mêmes.
Yourself.	Vous-même.
Themselves.	Eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes.
One's self.	Soi-même.
He himself has told it me.	Il me l'a dit lui-même.
He has told it me, myself (not to another person).	Il me l'a dit à moi-même.
One does not like to flatter one's self.	On n'aime pas à se flatter soi-même.

*Obs.* Sometimes the word *même* is an adverb, and answers to the English word *even*.

He has not even money enough to buy some bread.	Il n'a pas même assez d'argent pour acheter du pain.
We must love every body, even our enemies.	Il faut aimer tout le monde, même nos ennemis.

Again (anew).	De nouveau.
He speaks again.	Il parle de nouveau.
<i>To fall.</i>	<i>Baisser</i> 1 ( <i>tomber</i> 1, Les. LI.).
The price of the merchandise falls.	La marchandise baisse de prix.
<i>To deduct.</i>	<i>Rabattre</i> 4, (see <i>battre</i> , Less. XXXVI.).
<i>To overcharge, to ask too much.</i>	<i>Surfaire</i> * (like <i>faire</i> *).
Not having overcharged you, I cannot deduct any thing.	Ne vous ayant pas surfait, je ne saurais rien rabattre.
An ell, a yard.	Une aune.
<i>A metre (measure).</i>	<i>Un mètre.</i>
<i>To produce (to yield, to profit).</i>	<i>Rapporter</i> 1.
How much does that employment yield you a year?	Combien cet emploi (cette charge) vous rapporte-t-il (elle) par an?
An employment.	Un emploi, une charge.

<i>To make one's escape.</i>	}	<i>Prendre la fuite.</i>
<i>To run away, to flee.</i>		
<i>To take to one's heels.</i>		

<i>To desert.</i>	<i>Désert<sup>er</sup> 1.</i>
He deserted the battle.	Il a déserté la bataille.
<i>To run away.</i>	<i>S'évader 1.</i>
The thief has run away.	Le voleur s'est évadé.

By no means.	Pas du tout.
Not at all.	Point du tout.

## EXERCISES.

204.

Well (*Eh bien*)! does your sister make any progress?—She would make some, if she were as assiduous as you.—You flatter me.—Not at all; I assure you that I should be highly satisfied (*très-content*), if all my pupils worked like you.—Why do you not go out to-day?—I would go out if it were fine weather.—Shall I have the pleasure of seeing you to-morrow?—If you wish it I will come.—Shall I still be here when you arrive (*à votre arrivée*)?—Will you have occasion (*occasion*) to go to town this evening?—I do not know, but I would go now if I had an opportunity (*une bonne occasion*).—You would not have so much pleasure, and you would not be so happy, if you had not friends and books.—Man (*l'homme*) would not experience so much misery (*la misère*) in his career (*la carrière*), and he would not be so unhappy, were he not so blind (*aveugle*).—You would not have that insensibility (*cette insensibilité*) towards (*pour*) the poor, and you would not be so deaf (*sourd*) to their supplication (*la prière*), if you had been yourself in misery for some time (*quelque temps*).—You would not say that if you knew me well.—Why has your sister not done her exercises?—She would have done them if she had not been prevented.—If you worked more, and spoke oftener, you would speak better.—I assure you, Sir, that I should learn better if I had more time.—I do not complain of you, but of your sister.—

You would have no reason (*vous n'auriez pas lieu*) to complain of her, had she had time to do what you gave her to do.—Do you already know what has happened?—I have not heard any thing.—The house of our neighbour has been burnt down (*brûlée*).—Have they not been able to save any thing?—They were very fortunate (*bien heureux*) in saving the persons that were in it; but out of the (*des*) things that were there (*se trouver*), they could save nothing.—Who has told you that?—Our neighbour himself has told it me.

## 205.

Why are you without a light (*sans lumière*, Obs. *A.* Less. LII.)?—The wind blew it out when you came in.—What is the price of this cloth?—I sell it at (Obs. *D.* Lesson LIV.) three crowns and a half the ell.—I think (*trouver*) it very dear. Has the price of cloth not fallen?—It has not fallen: the price of all goods (*la marchandise*) has fallen, except that of cloth (*excepté celui du drap*).—I will give you three crowns for it (*en*).—I cannot let you have (*donner*) it for (*à*) that price, for it costs me (*il me coûte*) more.—Will you have the goodness to show me some pieces (*la pièce*) of English cloth?—With much pleasure.—Does this cloth suit you?—It does not suit me.—Why does it not suit you?—Because it is too dear; if you will lower the price (*en rabattre quelque chose*), I shall buy twenty yards of it.—Not having asked too much, I cannot take off any thing.—You learn French: does your master let you translate?—He lets me read, write, and translate.—Is it useful to translate in learning a foreign language?—It is useful to translate when you (*on*) nearly know the language you are learning; but while (*quand*) you do not yet know any thing it is entirely (*tout-à-fait*) useless.—What does your French master make you do?—He makes me read a lesson; afterwards he makes me translate English exercises into French on the lesson which he has made me read; and from the beginning to the end of the Lesson he speaks French to me, and I have to answer him (*il me faut lui répondre*) in the very language (*dans la langue même*) which he is teaching me.—Have you already learnt much in that manner?—You see that I have already learnt something, for I have hardly been learning in three months, and I already

understand you when you speak to me, and can answer you.—Can you read (it) as well?—I can read and write as well as speak (it).—Does your master also teach German?—He teaches it.—Wishing to make (*désirant faire*) his acquaintance, I must beg of you (*je vous prierai*) to introduce me to him.

## 206.

How many exercises do you translate a day?—If the exercises are not difficult I translate from three to four (*trois à quatre*) every day; and when they are so I translate but one.—How many have you already done to-day?—It is the third which I am translating; but to-morrow I hope to be able to do one more (*un de plus*), for I shall be alone (*seul*).—Have you paid a visit to my aunt?—I went to see her two months ago, and as she looked displeased, I have not gone to her any more since that time.—How do you do to-day?—I am very unwell (*très-mal*).—How do you like that soup?—I think (*trouver*) it is very bad; but since I have lost my appetite (*l'appétit*) I do not like any thing (*je ne trouve rien de bon*).—How much does that employment yield to your father?—It yields him more than four thousand (*mille* has no *s* in the plural) crowns.—What news do they mention (*dire*)?—They say nothing new.—What do you intend to do to-morrow?—I propose joining a hunting party.—Does your brother purpose playing (*de faire*) a game at billiards?—He proposes playing a game at chess.—Why do some people laugh when I speak?—Those are unpolite people; you have only to laugh also, and they will no longer laugh at you. If you did as I do (*comme moi*) you would speak well. You must study (*il vous faut étudier*) a little every day, and you will soon be no longer afraid to speak.—I will endeavour to follow your advice, for I have resolved (*se proposer*) to rise every morning at six o'clock, to study till ten o'clock, and to go to bed early.—Why does your sister complain?—I do not know; since she succeeds in every thing, and since (*et qu'elle*) she is happy, even happier than you and I, why does she complain?—Perhaps she complains (*se plaint-elle*) because she is not thoroughly acquainted with that business.—That may be (*cela se peut*).



## SIXTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Soixante-sixième Leçon.*

<i>A kind, sort (a species).</i>	<i>Une espèce.</i>
What kind of fruit is that ?	Quelle espèce de fruit est cela (or est-ce là) ?
A stone (of a fruit).	Un noyau.
A stone of a peach, an apricot, a plum.	Un noyau de pêche, d'abricot, de prune.
Stone-fruit.	Fruits à noyau.
One must break the stone before one comes at the kernel.	Il faut casser le noyau pour en avoir l'amande ( <i>a proverb</i> ).
A kernel.	Une amande, un pepin.
An almond.	Une amande.
Kernel-fruit.	Fruits à pepin.
It is a kernel fruit.	C'est un fruit à pepin.
<i>To gather.</i>	<i>Cueillir 2* ; pres. part. cueillant ; past. part. cueilli.</i>
I gather, thou gatherest, he gathers.	Je cueille, tu cueilles, il cueille <sup>1</sup> .
<i>To gather fruit.</i>	<i>Cueillir du fruit.</i>
<i>To serve up the soup.</i>	<i>Servir la soupe.</i>
<i>To bring in the dessert.</i>	<i>Servir le dessert.</i>
The fruit.	Le fruit.
An apricot.	Un abricot.
A peach.	Une pêche.
A plum.	Une prune.
An anecdote.	Une anecdote.
Roast-meat.	Du rôti.

<sup>1</sup> The verb *cueillir*, though of the second, is in the present of the indicative conjugated according to the first conjugation.

The last.	Le dernier, la dernière.
Last week.	La semaine dernière.
<i>To cease, to leave off.</i>	<i>Cesser 1 de.</i>
I leave off reading.	Je cesse de lire.
She leaves off speaking.	Elle cesse de parler.

<i>To avoid.</i>	<i>Éviter 1 (de before infin.).</i>
To escape.	Échapper 1.
To escape a misfortune.	† Échapper à un malheur.
He ran away to avoid death.	Il a pris la fuite pour échapper à la mort.

To do without a thing.	Se passer de quelque chose.
Can you do without bread ?	Pouvez-vous vous passer de pain ?
I can do without it.	Je puis (je peux) m'en passer.
There are many things which we must do without.	Il y a bien des choses dont il faut se passer.

<i>To execute a commission.</i>	} <i>S'acquitter 1 d'une commission.</i>
<i>To acquit one's self of a commission.</i>	
I have executed your commission.	Je me suis acquitté de votre commission.
Have you executed my commission ?	} Vous êtes-vous acquitté de ma commission ?
I have executed it.	Avez-vous fait ma commission ?
	Je m'en suis acquitté.
<i>To do one's duty.</i>	<i>Faire son devoir.</i>
<i>To discharge, to do, or to fulfil one's duty.</i>	<i>Remplir son devoir.</i>
That man always does his duty.	Cet homme fait toujours son devoir.
That man always fulfils his duty.	Cet homme s'acquitte toujours de son devoir.

*To rely, to depend upon something.*

He depends upon it.

I rely upon you.

You may rely upon him.

*Compter 1 sur quelque chose.*

Il y compte.

{ Je compte sur vous.

{ Je me fie à vous.

{ Vous pouvez vous fier à lui.

{ Vous pouvez vous y fier.

{ Vous pouvez compter sur lui.

*To suffice, to be sufficient.*

Is that bread sufficient for you?

It is sufficient for me.

I suffice, thou dost suffice.

Will that money be sufficient for that man?

It will be sufficient for him.

Little wealth suffices for the wise.

Has that sum been sufficient for that man?

Was that man contented with that sum?

It has been sufficient for him.

He has been contented with it.

To be contented with something.

It would be sufficient for him if you would only add a few crowns.

He would be contented if you would only add a few crowns.

*To add.*

*To build.*

*To embark, to go on board.*

A sail.

To set sail.

*Suffire 4\* ; pres. part. suffisant ; past part. suffi.*

Ce pain vous suffit-il?

Il me suffit.

Je suffis, tu suffis.

Cet argent suffira-t-il à cet homme?

Il lui suffira.

Peu de bien suffit au sage.

Cette somme a-t-elle suffi à cet homme?

Cet homme s'est-il contenté de cette somme?

Elle lui a suffi.

Il s'en est contenté.

Se contenter de quelque chose.

Elle lui suffirait, si vous vouliez seulement y ajouter quelques écus.

Il se contenterait, si vous vouliez seulement y ajouter quelques écus.

*Ajouter 1.*

*Bâtir 2.*

*S'embarquer 1.*

Une voile<sup>2</sup>.

† Mettre à la voile.

<sup>2</sup> Voile, meaning a veil, a cover, is masculine. Ex. She has bought a veil, elle s'est achetée un voile.

To set sail for.	† Faire voile pour.
To sail for America.	Faire voile pour l'Amérique (aller en Amérique).
To sail.	Marcher.
Under full sail.	'A pleines voiles (à toutes voiles).
To sail under full sail.	Marcher à pleines voiles (cingler).
He embarked on the sixteenth of last month.	Il s'est embarqué le seize du mois dernier.
He sailed on the third instant.	Il a mis à la voile le trois courant.
The instant, the present month.	Le courant.
The fourth or fifth instant.	Le quatre ou le cinq du courant.
The letter is dated the 6th instant.	La lettre est du six du courant.

<i>That is to say</i> (i. e.).	<i>C'est-à-dire. Savoir.</i>
<i>Et cætera</i> (etc.).	<i>Et catéra</i> (etc.).
My pen (quill) is better than yours.	Ma plume est meilleure que la vôtre.
I write better than you.	J'écris mieux que vous.

They will warm the soup.	On fera chauffer la soupe.
Dinner (or supper) is on the table (is served up).	On a servi.
Do you choose any soup?	} † Vous servirai-je de la soupe?
Shall I help you to some soup?	
I will trouble you for a little.	
<i>To serve up, to attend.</i>	† Je vous en demanderai un peu. <i>Servir</i> *.

## EXERCISES.

207.

I should like to (*je voudrais bien*) know why I cannot speak as well as you.—I will tell you: you would speak quite as well (*tout aussi bien*) as I, if you were not so bashful (*timide*). But if you had studied your lessons more carefully (*mieux*) you would not be afraid to speak; for in order to speak well one must know, and it is very natural (*très naturel*) that he who does not know well what he has learnt, should be timid (*soit timide*, pres. subj., of which

hereafter). You would not be so timid as you are, if you were sure to make no faults.

I come to wish you a good morning.—You are very kind (*aimable*).—Would you do me a favour?—Tell me what you want, for I would do any thing (*je ferais tout*) to oblige you (*pour vous obliger*).—I want five hundred crowns, and I beg you to lend them to me. I will return them to you as soon as I have received my money. You would oblige (*obliger*) me much (*beaucoup*) if you would render (*rendre*) me this service.—I would do it with all my heart if I could; but having lost all my money, it is impossible for me (*il m'est impossible*) to render you this service.—Will you ask your brother whether he (*s'il*) is satisfied with (*content de*) the money which I have sent him?—As to my brother he is satisfied with it, but I am not so; for having suffered shipwreck (*faire naufrage*) I am in want of the money which you owe me.

## 208.

Have they served up the soup?—They have served it up some minutes ago.—Then (*alors*) it must be cold, and I only like soup hot (*la soupe chaude*).—They will warm it for you.—You will oblige me (*obliger*).—Shall I help you to some of this roast meat?—I will trouble you for a little.—Will you eat some of this mutton?—I thank you, I like fowl better.—May I offer you (*vous offrirai-je*) some wine?—I will trouble you for a little.—Have they already brought in the dessert?—They have brought it in.—Do you like fruit?—I like fruit, but I have no more appetite.—Will you eat a little cheese?—I will eat a little.—Shall I help you to English or Dutch cheese?—I will eat a little Dutch cheese.—What kind of fruit is that?—It is stone-fruit.—What is it called?—It is called thus.—Will you wash your hands?—I should like to (*je voudrais bien*) wash them, but I have no towel to (*pour*) wipe them with.—I will let you have (*faire donner*) a towel, some soap, and some water.—I shall be much obliged (*fort obligé*) to you.—May I ask you for (*oserais-je vous demander*) a little water?—Here is some (*en voici*).—Can you do without soap?—As for soap I can do without it, but I must have a towel to wipe my hands with.—Do you often do without soap?—There are many things which we must do without.—Why has that man run



away?—Because he had no other means of escaping the punishment (*la punition*) which he had deserved (*mériter*).—Why did your brothers not get (*se procurer*) a better horse?—If they had got rid of their old horse, they would have got a better.—Has your father arrived already?—Not yet, but we hope that he will arrive this very day (*aujourd'hui même*).—Has your friend set out in time (*à temps*)?—I do not know, but I hope he has (*qu'il sera*, Obs. *A.* Less. LVIII.) set out in time.

## 209.

Have you executed my commission?—I have executed it.—Has your brother executed the commission which I gave him?—He has executed it.—Would you (*voudriez-vous*) execute a commission for me?—I am under so many obligations to you that I will always execute your commissions, when it shall please you to give me any.—Will you ask the merchant whether (*si*) he can let me have (*me donner*) the horse at the price (*au prix*) which I have offered him?—I am sure that he would be satisfied if you would add a few crowns more.—If I were sure of that I would add a few crowns more.—Good morning, my children! have you done your task?—You well know that we always do it; for we must be ill (*il faudrait que nous fussions malades*, imperfect of the subjunctive, of which hereafter,) not to (*pour*) do it. What do you give us to do to-day?—I give you to study the sixty-sixth lesson, and to do the exercises belonging to it (*qui en dépendent*); that is to say, the 207th, 208th, and 209th. Will you endeavour to commit no errors (*faire des fautes*)?—We shall endeavour to commit none.—Is this bread sufficient for you?—It would be sufficient for me if I was not very hungry.—When did your brother embark for America?—He sailed on the 30th of last month.—Do you promise me to speak to your brother?—I promise you, you may depend upon it.—I rely upon you.—Will you work harder (*mieux*) for next lesson than you have done (*que vous n'avez travaillé*) for this?—I will work harder.—May I rely upon it?—You may.

## SIXTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

*Soixante-septième Leçon.**To be a judge of something.*

Are you a judge of cloth?

I am a judge of it.

I am not a judge of it.

I am a good judge of it.

I am not a good judge of it.

† *Se connaître en quelque chose.*† *Vous connaissez-vous en drap?**Je m'y connais.**Je ne m'y connais pas.**Je m'y connais très-bien.**Je ne m'y connais pas beaucoup.**To draw.**To chalk, to trace, (to counterdraw).*

To draw a landscape.

To draw after life.

The drawing.

The drawer.

Nature.

*Dessiner 1.**Calquer 1.**Dessiner un paysage.**Dessiner d'après nature.**Le dessin.**Le dessinateur.**La nature.**To manage, or to go about a thing.*

How do you manage to make a fire without tongs?

I go about it so.

You go about it the wrong way.

*S'y prendre.**Comment vous y prenez-vous pour faire du feu sans pincette<sup>1</sup>?**Je m'y prends comme cela.**Vous vous y prenez mal.*

<sup>1</sup> All nouns ending in *tte* are feminine, except the two following: *un amulette*, an amulet; *un squelette*, a skeleton; and some compounds, as: *un porte-mouchettes*, a snuffer-stand; *un tire-botte*, a boot-jack; *un casse-noisette*, nut-crackers. (See my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.)

I go about it the right away.  
 How does your brother manage  
 to do that?  
 Skilfully, handily, dexterously,  
 cleverly.  
 Awkwardly, unhandily, badly.

Je m'y prends bien.  
 Comment votre frère s'y prend-il  
 pour faire cela?  
 Adroitement.  
 Maladroitement.

*To forbid.*  
 I forbid you to do that.  
*To lower.*  
 To cast down one's eyes.  
     The curtain.  
     The curtain rises, falls.  
     The stocks have fallen.  
     The day falls.  
     It grows towards night.  
     Night comes on.  
     It grows dark.  
     It grows late.

*Défendre* 4 (*de before inf.*).  
 Je vous défends de faire cela.  
*Baisser* 1.  
 † Baisser les yeux.  
 La toile, le rideau.  
 † La toile (le rideau) se lève, se  
     baisse.  
 Le change a baissé.  
 Le jour baisse.  
 } Il se fait nuit.  
 Il se fait tard.  
*To stoop.*      *Se baisser.*

*To smell, to feel* (Les. LIV.).  
 He smells of garlic.  
 To feel some one's pulse.  
*To consent to a thing.*  
 I consent to it.

*Sentir* \*. (Lesson LIV.)  
 Il sent l'ail.  
 † Tâter le pouls à quelqu'un.  
*Consentir* \* à quelque chose.  
 (Lesson LIV.)  
 J'y consens.

*To hide, to conceal.*  
     The mind.  
     Indeed.  
     In fact.  
     The truth.  
     The effect.  
     True.  
     A true man.  
 This is the right place for that  
 picture.

*Cacher* 1.  
 L'esprit.  
 En vérité.  
 En effet.  
 La vérité.  
 L'effet.  
 Vrai.  
 Un homme vrai.  
 Voilà la vraie place de ce tableau.

*To think much of one (to esteem one).*

*To esteem some one.*

I do not think much of that man.

I think much of him (I esteem him much).

The case.

*Faire cas de quelqu'un.*

*Estimer l quelqu'un.*

Je ne fais pas grand cas de cet homme.

Je fais grand cas de lui (je l'estime beaucoup).

Le cas.

The flower, the bloom, the blossom.

*On a level with, even with.*

That man has his eyes on a level with his head.

*To blossom (to flourish).*

*To grow.*

I grow, thou growest, he or she grows.

To grow rapidly (fast).

To grow tall or big.

That child grows so fast that we may even see it.

The child has grown very fast in a short time.

That rain has made the corn grow.  
Corn.

La fleur.

*'A fleur de.*

Cet homme a les yeux à fleur de tête.

*Fleurir* 2<sup>2</sup>.

*Croître* 4\*; pres. part. *croissant*; past part. *crû*.

Je crois, tu crois, il ou elle croît.

Croître rapidement.

Grandir 2.

† Cet enfant grandit à vue d'œil.

Cet enfant a bien grandi en peu de temps.

Cette pluie a fait grandir les blés.  
Du blé.

A cover.

A shelter.

A cottage, a hut.

Un gîte.

Un abri.

Une chaumière.

<sup>2</sup> *Fleurir*, to blossom, is regular; but when it means *to flourish*, its present participle is *florissant*, and its imperfect indicative *florissait*, *florissaient*. Ex. *Un empire florissant*, a flourishing empire; *une armée florissante*, a flourishing army; *cet auteur florissait sous son règne*, that author flourished under his reign; *les arts et les sciences florissaient alors*, arts and sciences were then flourishing.

To shelter one's self from something.	}	Se mettre à l'abri de quelque chose.
To take shelter from something.		
Let us shelter ourselves from the rain, the wind.		Mettons-nous à l'abri de la pluie, du vent.
Let us enter that cottage in order to be sheltered from the storm (the tempest).		Entrons dans cette chaumière, pour être à couvert de la tempête, <i>ou</i> pour être à l'abri des injures du temps.

<i>Everywhere, all over, throughout.</i>	<i>Partout.</i>
All over (throughout) the town.	Par toute la ville.
A shade.	Une ombre <sup>3</sup> .
<i>Under the shade.</i>	<i>'A l'ombre.</i>
Let us sit down under the shade of that tree.	Allons-nous asseoir à l'ombre de cet arbre.

<i>To pretend.</i>	<i>Faire semblant de.</i>
That man pretends to sleep.	Cet homme fait semblant de dormir.
That young lady pretends to know French.	Cette demoiselle fait semblant de savoir le français.
They pretend to come near us.	Ils font semblant de s'approcher de nous.

<i>Now.</i>	<i>Maintenant.</i>
<i>From, since.</i>	<i>Dès.</i>
From morning.	Dès le matin.
From the break of day.	Dès le point du jour.
From the cradle, from a child.	Dès le berceau.
From this time forward.	Dès à présent.
<i>As soon as.</i>	<i>Dès que.</i>
As soon as I see him I shall speak to him.	Dès que je le verrai je lui parlerai.

<sup>3</sup> *Ombre*, a shadow, is feminine, but *ombre*, a kind of fish, and *l'ombre*, a game at cards, are masculine. (See p. 36, in my Treatise on the Gender of French substantives.)



*For fear of.**To catch a cold.*

I will not go out for fear of catching a cold.

He does not wish to go to town for fear of meeting with one of his creditors.

He does not wish to open his purse for fear of losing his money.

*De crainte ou de peur de.**Prendre froid, s'enrhumer.*

Je ne veux pas sortir, de peur de m'enrhumer.

Il ne veut pas aller à la ville, de peur de rencontrer un de ses créanciers.

Il ne veut pas ouvrir sa bourse, de peur de perdre son argent.

*To copy, transcribe.**To decline.**To transcribe fairly.*

A substantive, an adjective, a pronoun.

A verb, a preposition, a grammar, a dictionary.

*Copier 1. (See Obs. A. Less. LX.)**Décliner 1.**Mettre \* au net. (Less. XXXIII.)*

Un substantif, un adjectif, un pronom.

Un verbe, une préposition, une grammaire, un dictionnaire.

## EXERCISES.

210.

Are you a judge of cloth?—I am a judge of it.—Will you buy some yards for me (*m'en*)?—If you will give me the money I will buy you some (*vous en*).—You will oblige (*obliger*) me.—Is that man a judge of cloth?—He is not a good judge of it.—How do you manage to do that?—I manage it so.—Will you show me how you manage it?—I will show you (*je le veux bien*).—What must I do (*que me faut-il faire*) for my lesson of to-morrow?—You will transcribe your exercises fairly, do three others, and study the next lesson (*la leçon suivante*).—How do you manage to get goods (*des marchandises*) without money?—I buy on credit.—How does your sister manage to learn French without a dictionary (Obs. Lesson LII.)?—She manages it thus.—She manages it very dexterously. But how does your brother manage it (*Mais M. votre frère comment s'y prend-il*)?—He manages it very awkwardly; he reads, and looks for the words in the dictionary.—He may (*peut*) learn in this manner twenty years without knowing how to make a single sentence (*une seule phrase*).—Why does your sister cast down her eyes?—She casts them down

because she is ashamed of not having done her task.—Shall we breakfast in the garden to-day?—The weather is so fine, that we should (*qu'il faut*) take advantage of it (*en profiter*).—How do you like that coffee?—I like it very much (*excellent*).—Why do you stoop?—I stoop to pick up the handkerchief which I have dropped.—Why do your sisters hide themselves?—They would not hide themselves if they did not fear to be seen.—Whom are they afraid of?—They are afraid of their governess (*une institutrice*) who scolded them yesterday because they had not done their tasks (*leur devoir*).

## 211.

Have you already seen my son?—I have not seen him yet; how is he?—He is very well; you will not be able to recognise him, for he has grown very tall in a short time.—Why does that man give nothing to the poor (*aux pauvres*)?—He is too avaricious (*avare*); he does not wish to open his purse for fear of losing his money.—What sort of weather is it?—It is very warm; it is long since we had any rain: I believe we shall have a storm (*un orage*).—It may be (*cela se peut bien*).—The wind rises (*s'élever*), it thunders already; do you hear it?—Yes, I hear it, but the storm is still far off (*encore bien loin*).—Not so far as you think; see how it lightens.—Bless me (*mon Dieu*)! what a shower (*quelle averse*)!—If we go into some place (*quelque part*) we shall be sheltered from the storm.—Let us go into that cottage, then (*donc*); we shall be sheltered there from the wind and the rain.—Where shall we go to now? Which road shall we take?—The shortest (*court*) will be the best.—We have too much sun, and I am still very tired; let us sit down under the shade of that tree.—Who is (*quel est*) that man who is sitting under the tree?—I do not know him.—It seems he (*il paraît qu'il*) wishes to be alone (*seul*); for when we offer (*vouloir* \*) to approach him, he pretends to be asleep.—He is like your sister: she understands French very well (*fort bien*); but when I begin to speak to her, she pretends not to understand me.—You have promised me to speak to the captain; why have you not done so?—I have not seen him yet; but as soon as I see him I shall speak to him. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SIXTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

*Soixante-huitième Leçon.*

## OF THE PRETERITE DEFINITE.

(Prétérît Défini.)

THIS past tense is formed from the past participle by changing, for the first conjugation, *é* into

SING.	1st pers.	2d pers.	3d pers.	PLUR.	1st pers.	2d pers.	3d pers.
	<i>ai,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>a,</i>		<i>âmes,</i>	<i>âtes,</i>	<i>èrent.</i>

For the second and fourth conjugations *i* and *u* into :

<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it,</i>	<i>îmes,</i>	<i>îtes,</i>	<i>irent.</i>
------------	------------	------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

And for the third conjugation *u* into :

<i>us,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>ut,</i>	<i>ûmes,</i>	<i>ûtes,</i>	<i>urent.</i>
------------	------------	------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

## EXAMPLES.

INFINITIVE.	PAST PART.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.					
		Je	Tu	Il	Nous	Vous	Ils
Parler,	parlé.	parlai,	parlas,	parla,	parlâmes,	parlâtes,	parlèrent.
Finir,	fini.	finis,	finis,	finit,	finîmes,	finîtes,	finirent.
Recevoir,	reçu.	reçus,	reçus,	reçut,	reçûmes,	reçûtes,	reçurent.
Vendre,	vendu.	vendis,	vendis,	vendit,	vendîmes,	vendîtes,	vendirent.

*Obs. A.* This rule holds good even throughout almost all the irregular verbs, with this difference only, that when the past participle ends in *is* or *it*, it is equally changed in the Prétérît défini for the terminations :

<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it,</i>	<i>îmes,</i>	<i>îtes,</i>	<i>irent.</i>
------------	------------	------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

## EXAMPLES.

INFINITIVE.	PAST PART.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.					
		Je	Tu	Il	Nous	Vous	Ils
Sentir *,	senti.	sentis,	sentis,	sentit,	sentîmes,	sentîtes,	sentirent.
Mettre *,	mis.	mis,	mis,	mit,	mîmes,	mîtes,	mirent.
Dire *,	dit.	dis,	dis,	dit,	dîmes,	dîtes,	dirent.

The following irregular verbs are exceptions to this rule :

INFINITIVE.		PAST PART.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.						
Couvrir *	to cover,	couvert.	Je couvris,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	iren	
Offrir *	to offer,	offert.	J'offris,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Ouvrir *	to open,	ouvert.	J'ouvris,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Souffrir *	to suffer,	souffert.	Je souffris,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Tenir *	to hold,	tenu.	Je tins,	ins,	int,	înmes,	întes,	inre	
Venir *	to come,	venu.	Je vins,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Mourir *	to die,	mort.	Je mourus,	us,	ut,	ûmes,	ûtes,	uren	
Vêtir *	to clothe,	vêtu.	Je vêtis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	iren	
Voir *	to see,	vu.	Je vis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	iren	
Prévoir *	to foresee,	prévu.	Je prévis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	iren	
Ceindre *	to gird,	ceint.	Je ceignis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	iren	
Astreindre *	to restrain,	astreint.	J'astreignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Craindre *	to fear,	craint.	Je craignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Empreindre *	to imprint,	empreint.	J'empreignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Enfreindre *	to infringe,	enfreint.	J'enfreignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Épreindre *	to squeeze,	épreint.	J'épreignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Feindre *	to feign,	feint.	Je feignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Joindre *	to join,	joint.	Je joignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Oindre *	to anoint,	oint.	J'oignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Peindre *	to paint,	peint.	Je peignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Plaindre *	to lament,	plaint.	Je plaignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Restreindre *	to restrain,	restreint.	Je restreignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Teindre *	to dye,	teint.	Je teignis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Cuire *	to cook,	cuit.	Je cuisis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	iren	
Conduire *	to conduct,	conduit.	Je conduisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Construire *	to construct,	construit.	Je construisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Détruire *	to destroy,	détruit.	Je détruisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Enduire *	to lay over,	enduit.	J'enduisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Induire *	to induce,	induit.	J'induisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Instruire *	to instruct,	instruit.	J'instruisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Introduire *	to introduce,	introduit.	J'introduisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Réduire *	to reduce,	réduit.	Je réduisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Séduire *	to seduce,	séduit.	Je séduisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Traduire *	to translate,	traduit.	Je traduisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Luire *	to shine,	lui.	Je luisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Nuire *	to hurt,	nui.	Je nuisis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Coudre *	to sow,	cousu.	Je cousis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Écrire *	to write,	écrit.	J'écrivis,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Être *	to be,	été.	Je fus,	fus,	fut,	ûmes,	ûtes,	uren	
Faire *	to do,	fait.	Je fis,	fis,	fit,	fîmes,	fîtes,	firen	
Naître *	to be born,	né.	Je naquis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent	
Vaincre *	to vanquish,	vaincu.	Je vainquis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent	



## REMARK.

The learner will remark, that in the above list some irregular verbs follow the conjugation of others; thus we see three verbs conjugated exactly like *couvrir*, to cover, viz. *offrir*, to offer; *ouvrir*, to open; *souffrir*, to suffer: *venir*, to come, we see conjugated like *tenir*, to hold; twelve verbs after *ceindre*, to gird; ten after *cuire*, to bake, to cook; and one after *luire*, to shine, viz. *nuire*, to hurt. Now this is not only the case with respect to the *prétérit défini* of these verbs, but for all the other tenses. It would therefore be of essential importance to the learner to commit them to memory in the order we have given them, as by their help the greatest difficulties of the irregular verbs are almost overcome.

## ON THE USE OF THE PRETERITE DEFINITE.

This tense is so called, because it always expresses an action completed at a time specified either by an adverb, or some other circumstance. Ex.

I had done reading <i>when he entered.</i>	J'avais fini de lire, <i>quand il entra.</i>
You had lost your purse <i>when I found mine.</i>	Vous aviez perdu votre bourse <i>quand je trouvai la mienne.</i>

Obs. B. These examples show that the pluperfect is formed in French as in English with the imperfect of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb you conjugate.

We had dined when he arrived.	Nous avions dîné, <i>lorsqu'il arriva.</i>
The king had named an admiral <i>when he heard of you.</i>	Le roi avait nommé un amiral, <i>quand on lui parla de vous.</i>
<i>After having spoken you went away.</i>	<i>Après avoir parlé, vous vous en allâtes.</i>
<i>After shaving I washed my face.</i>	<i>Après m'être rasé, je me lavai la figure.</i>
<i>After having warmed themselves they went into the garden.</i>	<i>Après s'être chauffés, ils allèrent au jardin.</i>
As soon as the bell rung you awoke.	Dès que la cloche sonna, vous vous reveillâtes.
<i>As soon as they called me I got up.</i>	<i>Dès qu'ils m'appelèrent, je me levai.</i>



*As soon as he was ready he came to see me.*

*As soon as we had our money we agreed to that.*

*As soon as he had his horse he came to show it me.*

*After trying several times they succeeded in doing it.*

*As soon as I saw him I obtained what I wanted.*

*As soon as I spoke to him he did what I told him.*

*The business was soon over.*

*Aussitôt qu'il fut prêt, il vint me voir.*

*Aussitôt que nous eûmes notre argent, nous convînmes de cela.*

*Aussitôt qu'il eut son cheval, il vint me le montrer.*

*Après avoir essayé plusieurs fois, ils parvinrent à le faire.*

*Aussitôt que je le vis, j'obtins ce dont j'avais besoin.*

*Aussitôt que je lui parlai, il fit ce que je lui dis.*

*L'affaire fut bientôt faite.*

## ON THE PRETERITE ANTERIOR<sup>1</sup>.

(*Prétérit antérieur.*)

This tense is compounded of the *Prétérit Défini* of the auxiliary, and the past participle of the verb you conjugate. It is used (from its name *antérieur*, anterior) to express an action past before another which is likewise past, and is hardly ever used except after one of the conjunctions :

As soon as.	{	Aussitôt que.
		Sitôt que.
		D'abord que.
		Dès que.
After.		Après que.
When.	{	Lorsque.
		Quand.
No sooner.		Pas plutôt.
Scarcely.		'A peine.

<sup>1</sup> There is another *Prétérit Antérieur* called the *Prétérit Antérieur Indéfini*, which is however seldom employed. It is formed from the perfect of the auxiliary and the past participle of another verb. Ex. *Quand nous avons eu dîné, nous sommes allés à la promenade*, when we had done dinner we went to take a walk ; *quand j'ai eu parlé à votre père, je m'en suis allé*, when I had spoken to your father I went away ; *j'ai eu déjeuné ce matin à dix heures*, I had done breakfast this morning at ten o'clock.

It also expresses an action as quickly done.

## EXAMPLES.

*As soon as I had finished my work*  
I carried it to him.

*As soon as I had dressed myself* I  
went out.

*When they had done playing* they  
began singing.

*When I had dined* it struck twelve.

*As soon as the guests were assem-*  
bled the repast commenced.

I had *soon* done eating.

*After* the soldiers had pillaged the  
town, they slaughtered without  
pity the women and the chil-  
dren.

*Scarcely* had we arrived when we  
were conducted to the king.

He had *no sooner* perceived us  
than he advanced towards us.

*Aussitôt que j'eus fini mon ouvrage,*  
je le lui portai.

*Aussitôt que je me fus habillé,* je  
sortis.

*Quand ils eurent achevé de jouer,*  
ils se mirent à chanter.

*Quand j'eus dîné,* midi sonna.

*Dès que les convives se furent as-*  
semblés, le repas commença.

*J'eus bientôt fini de manger.*

*Après que les soldats eurent pillé*  
la ville, ils égorgèrent sans pitié  
les femmes et les enfants.

*A peine fûmes-nous arrivés,* qu'on  
nous conduisit au roi.

Il ne nous *eut pas plutôt aperçus,*  
qu'il s'avança vers nous.

## EXERCISES.

212.

What did you do (*que fîtes-vous*) when you had finished your letter?—I went to my brother, who took (*conduire* \*) me to the theatre, where I had the pleasure to find one of my friends whom I had not seen for ten years.—What didst thou do after getting up this morning?—When I had read the letter of the Polish count I went to see (*je sortis pour voir*) the theatre of the prince which I had not seen before (*pas encore*).—What did your father do when he had breakfasted?—He shaved and went out.—What did your friend do after he had been a walking?—He went to the baron (*le baron*).—Did the baron cut the meat after he had cut the bread?—He cut the bread after he had cut the meat.—When do you set out?—I do not set out till (*je ne pars que*) to-morrow; for before I leave I will once more see my good friends.—What did your children do when they had breakfasted?—They went a walking with their dear preceptor (*précepteur*).—Where did your

uncle go to after he had warmed himself?—He went nowhere. After he had warmed himself he undressed and went to bed.—At what o'clock did he get up?—He got up at sunrise.—Did you wake him?—I had no need to wake him, for he had got up before me.—What did your cousin do when he heard of the death (*la mort*) of his best friend?—He was much afflicted (*très-affligé*), and went to bed without saying a word.—Did you shave before you breakfasted?—I shaved when I had breakfasted.—Did you go to bed when you had eaten supper?—When I had eaten supper I wrote my letters, and when I had written them I went to bed.—At what (*de quoi*) are you afflicted?—I am afflicted at that accident.—Are you afflicted at the death (*de la mort*) of your relation?—I am much afflicted at it (*en*).—When did your relation die?—He died last month.—Of whom do you complain?—I complain of your boy.—Why do you complain of him?—Because he has killed the pretty dog which I received from one of my friends.—Of what has your uncle complained?—He has complained of what you have done.—Has he complained of the letter which I wrote to him the day before yesterday?—He has complained of it.

## 213.

Why did you not stay longer in Holland?—When I was there the living was dear, and I had not money enough to stay there longer.—What sort of weather was it when you were on the way to Vienna?—It was very bad weather, for it was stormy and snowed and rained very heavily (*à verse*).—Where have you been since I saw you?—We sojourned long on the sea-shore (Lesson LIX.), until a ship arrived (*jusqu'à l'arrivée d'un* —) which brought us (*amener*) to France.—Will you continue your narrative (Lesson LIX.)?—Scarcely had we arrived in France when we were taken (*conduire* \*) to the king, who received us very well, and sent us back to our country.—A peasant having seen that old men (*le vieillard*) used (*se servir* \* *de*) spectacles (*lunettes*, fem.) to read, went to an optician (*un opticien*) and asked for a pair (*et en demanda*). The peasant then took a book, and having opened it, said the spectacles were not good (fem.). The optician put another pair (*une autre paire*) of the best which he could find in his shop (*la boutique*) upon his nose; but the peasant being still

unable to read, the merchant said to him : " My friend, perhaps you cannot read at all." " If I could (*si je savais lire*)," said the peasant, " I should not want your spectacles."—Henry IV. meeting one day in his palace (*le palais*) a man whom he did not know (*qui lui était inconnu*), asked him to whom he belonged : " I belong to myself," replied this man. " My friend," said the king, " you have a stupid master."—Tell us (*racontez-nous*) what has happened to you lately (*l'autre jour*).—Very willingly (*très-volontiers*) : but on condition (*sous la condition*) that you will listen to me without interrupting (*interrompre*) me.—We will not interrupt you, you may be (*pouvez être*) sure of it (*en*).—Being lately at the theatre I saw the *speaking picture* and the *weeping* (*pleurer*) woman performed (*voir \* représenter*).—This latter play (*cette dernière pièce*) not being very (*trop*) amusing to me (*pour moi*), I went to the concert where the music (*la musique*) caused me a violent head-ache (*une violente migraine*). I then left (*quitter*) the concert, cursing it (*en le maudissant*), and went straight (*et j'allai droit*) to the madhouse (*un hôpital des fous*) in order to see my cousin. On entering the hospital of my cousin I was struck with horror (*être saisi d'horreur*) at (*en*) seeing several madmen (*le fou*), who came up to me (*s'approcher de quelqu'un*), jumping (*sauter*) and howling (*hurler*).—What did you do then ?—I did the same (*autant*), and they set up a laugh (*se mettre \* à rire*) as they were withdrawing (*se retirer*).

## SIXTY-NINTH LESSON.

*Soixante-neuvième Leçon.*


---

To get beaten (whipped).	† Se faire battre.
To get paid.	† Se faire payer.
To get one's self invited to dine.	† Se faire inviter à dîner.

---

At first.	D'abord.
Firstly.	Premièrement, en premier lieu.
Secondly.	Secondement, en second lieu.
Thirdly, &c.	Troisièmement, en troisième lieu, &c.
Is your mother at home?	{ Votre mère est-elle chez elle ? Votre mère est-elle à la maison ?
She is.	Elle y est.
I am going to her house.	Je vais chez elle.

---

<i>A cause.</i>	<i>Un sujet.</i>
A cause of complaint.	Un sujet de chagrin.
A cause of sadness.	Un sujet de tristesse.
She has reason to be sad.	Elle a un sujet de tristesse.
Grief, sorrow, sadness.	Le chagrin, la tristesse.
Is that woman ready to go out?	Cette femme est-elle prête à sortir ?
She is.	Elle l'est.

---

<i>Notwithstanding, in spite of.</i>	<i>Malgré, en dépit de.</i>
Notwithstanding that.	Malgré cela.
In spite of him, her, them.	Malgré lui, elle, eux.

---



*To manage.*

Do you manage to finish your work every Saturday night?

Do you manage to have your work done every Saturday night?

Try to do that *to* oblige me.

*Faire en sorte de.*

Faites-vous en sorte de finir votre ouvrage tous les samedis soir?

Faites-vous en sorte d'avoir fini votre ouvrage tous les samedis soir?

Faites en sorte de faire cela *pour* m'obliger.

*Obs. A.* Whenever *in order to* can be substituted for the preposition *to* the latter is rendered in French by *pour*, to express the end, the design, or the cause for which a thing is done.

I will do every thing *to* oblige you.

Je ferai tout *pour* vous obliger.

*To look upon.*

The window looks into the street.  
The window looks out upon the river.

The back-door looks into the garden.

*Donner sur.*

La fenêtre donne sur la rue.

La fenêtre donne sur la rivière.

La porte de derrière donne sur le jardin.

*To drown.*

To drown a dog.

To be drowned, to be drowning.

To drown one's self, to get drowned.

To leap through the window.

To throw out of the window.

I am drowning.

He jumped out of the window.

*To fasten.*

He was fastened to a tree.

*Noyer 1.*

Noyer un chien.

Se noyer.

Sauter par la fenêtre.

Jeter par la fenêtre.

Je me noie. (See *Obs. D. Less. XXIV.*)

Il sauta par la fenêtre.

*Attacher 1.*

On l'attacha à un arbre.

The cattle.

To keep warm.

To keep cool.

To keep clean.

Le bétail; *plur.* les bestiaux.

† Se tenir chaud.

† Se tenir frais.

† Se tenir propre.

To keep on one's guard against  
some one.

Keep on your guard against that  
man.

*To take care (to beware) of  
somebody or something.*

If you do not take care of that  
horse it will kick you.

Take care that you do *not* fall.

To keep on one's guard *against*  
some one.

To beware of somebody or some-  
thing.

Keep on your guard against that  
man.

Take care.

† Se tenir en garde contre quel-  
qu'un.

† Tenez-vous en garde contre cet  
homme.

*Prendre garde à quelqu'un  
ou à quelque chose.*

Si vous ne prenez pas garde à ce  
cheval, il vous donnera un coup  
de pied.

† Prenez garde de tomber.

† Se tenir (être) sur ses gardes  
*avec* quelqu'un.

† Se garder de quelqu'un ou quel-  
que chose.

† Tenez-vous sur vos gardes avec  
cet homme.

Prenez garde.

A thought.

An idea.

A sally.

To be struck with a thought.

A thought strikes me.

That never crossed my mind.

*To take it into one's head.*

He took it into his head lately to  
rob me.

What is in your head?

Une pensée.

Une idée.

Une saillie.

Venir en pensée (à l'idée, à l'esprit.)

Il me vient une pensée.

Cela ne m'est jamais venu à l'es-  
prit.

† *S'aviser* 1.

† Il s'avisa l'autre jour de me  
voler.

† De quoi vous avisez-vous?

*In my, your, his, or her place.*

We must put every thing in its  
place.

Around, round.

All around.

We sailed around England.

*'A ma, votre, sa place.*

Il faut mettre chaque chose à sa  
place.

Autour.

Tout autour.

Nous naviguâmes autour de l'An-  
gleterre.

They went about the town to look  
at the curiosities.

To go around the house.

To go about the house.

*To cost.*

How much does that cost you ?

How much does this book cost  
you ?

It costs me three crowns and a  
half.

That table costs him twenty  
crowns.

*Alone, by one's self.*

I was alone.

One woman only.

One God.

God alone can do that.

The very thought of it is criminal.

A single reading is not sufficient  
to satisfy a mind that has a true  
taste.

† Ils allèrent çà et là dans la ville,  
pour en voir les choses remar-  
quables.

Aller autour de la maison.

Faire le tour de la maison.

Aller çà et là dans la maison.

*Coûter* 1.

Combien cela vous coûte-t-il ?

Combien ce livre vous coûte-t-il ?

Il me coûte trois écus et demi.

Cette table lui coûte sept écus.

*Seul; fem. seule.*

J'étais seul.

Une seule femme.

Un seul Dieu.

Dieu seul peut faire cela.

La seule pensée de cela est crimi-  
nelle.

Une seule lecture ne suffit pas  
pour contenter un homme qui a  
du goût.

*To kill by shooting.*

To blow out some one's brains.

To shoot one's self with a pistol.

He has blown out his brains.

He has blown out his brains with  
a pistol.

*Tuer d'un coup d'arme à feu.*

Brûler la cervelle à quelqu'un.

Se brûler la cervelle d'un coup de  
pistolet.

Il s'est brûlé la cervelle.

Il s'est brûlé la cervelle d'un coup  
de pistolet.

He served for a long time, ac-  
quired honours, and died con-  
tented.

Il servit long-temps, parvint aux  
honneurs, et mourut content.

*Obs. B.* In some instances, when the verbs are in the same tenses, the pronouns of the third person are not usually repeated.

He arrived poor, grew rich in a short time, and lost all in a still shorter time.	Il arriva pauvre, devint riche en peu de temps, et perdit tout en moins de temps encore.
---	--

## EXERCISES.

### 214.

What is the matter with you? Why do you look so melancholy (*avoir l'air mélancolique*)?—I should not look so melancholy if I had no reason to be sad. I have heard just now (Lesson XLIX.) that one of my best friends has shot himself with a pistol, and that one of my wife's best friends has drowned herself.—Where has she drowned herself?—She has drowned herself in the river which is behind her house. Yesterday, at four o'clock in the morning, she rose without saying a word to any one (*à personne*), leaped out of the window which looks into the garden, and threw herself into the river, where she was drowned.—I have a great mind (*grande envie*) to bathe (*se baigner*) to-day.—Where will you bathe?—In the river.—Are you not afraid of being drowned?—Oh, no! I can swim.—Who taught you?—Last summer I took a few lessons in the swimming school (*à l'école de natation*).

When had you finished your task?—I had finished it when you came in.—Those who had contributed (*contribuer*) most (*le plus*) to his elevation to the throne (*à son élévation sur le trône*) of his ancestors, were those who laboured (*travailler*) with the most eagerness (*le plus d'acharnement*) to precipitate (*précipiter*) him from it (*en*).—As soon as Cæsar (*César*) had crossed (*passer*) the Rubicon, he had no longer to deliberate (*délibérer*): he was obliged (*devoir*) to conquer (*vaincre*) or to die.—An emperor (*un empereur*) who was irritated at (*irrité contre*) an astrologer (*un astrologue*), asked him: "Wretch (*misérable*)! what death (*de quel genre de mort*) dost thou believe thou wilt die?" "I shall die of the fever," replied the astrologer. "Thou liest," said the

emperor, "thou wilt die this instant of a violent death (*de mort violente*).” As he was going to be seized (*saisir*), he said to the emperor, "Sire (*Seigneur*), order some one (*ordonnez*) to feel (*qu'on me tâte*, pres. subjunctive, of which hereafter) my pulse, and it will be found that I have a fever." This sally saved his life.

## 215.

Do you perceive yonder house (*cette maison là-bas*)?—I do perceive it: what house is it?—It is an inn (*une auberge*); if you like we will go into it to drink a glass of wine, for I am very (*bien*) thirsty.—You are always thirsty when you see an inn.—If we enter I shall drink your health (Lesson LXIII.)—Rather than (Lesson LXI.) go into an inn I will not drink.—When will you pay what you owe me?—When I have money: it is useless to ask me for some to-day, for you know very well that there is nothing to be had of him who has nothing.—When do you think you will have money?—I think I shall have some next year.—Will you do what I shall tell you?—I will do it if it is not too difficult.—Why do you laugh at me?—I do not laugh at you, but at your coat.—Does it not look like (Lesson LXIII.) yours?—It does not look like it, for mine is short (*court*), and yours is too long (*long*); mine is black, and yours is green.—Why do you associate with (Lesson LXIII.) that man?—I would not associate with him if he had not rendered me great services (*le service*).—Do not trust him (*ne vous y fiez pas*), for if you are not on your guard, he will cheat (*tromper*) you.—Why do you work so much (*tant*)?—I work in order to be one day useful to my country.—When I was yet (*étant encore*) little, I once (*un jour*) said to my father, "I do not know (*entendre*) commerce (*le commerce*), and I do not know how to sell; let me (*permettez-moi de*) play." My father answered me, smiling (*en souriant*), "In dealing (*c'est en marchandant que*) one learns to deal, and in selling to sell." "But, my dear father," replied (*répliquer*) I, "in playing one learns also to play." "You are right," said he to me, "but you must first (*auparavant*) learn what is necessary (*nécessaire*) and useful."—



Judge not (*ne jugez point*), that you may not (*vous qui ne voulez pas*) be judged! Why do you perceive the mote (*une paille*) in your brother's eye, you who do not perceive the beam (*une poutre*) which is in your own eye?—Would you copy your exercises if I copied mine?—I would copy them if you copied yours.—Would your sister have transcribed her letter if I had transcribed mine?—She would have transcribed it.—Would she have set out if I had set out?—I cannot tell you what she would have done if you had set out. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SEVENTIETH LESSON.

*Soixante et dixième Leçon.*

## OF THE IMPERATIVE.

THE second person singular of this mood is formed, in all French verbs, from the first person singular of the indicative by omitting the pronoun *je*, I. Examples :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperat. 2d pers. sing.</i>
I speak,	speak thou.	Je parle,	parle <sup>1</sup> .
I come,	come thou.	Je viens,	viens.
I perceive,	perceive thou.	J'aperçois,	aperçois.
I take,	take thou.	Je prends,	prends.

The five following verbs must be excepted from this rule : *j'ai*, I have ; imperat. *aie*, have thou ; *je suis*, I am ; *sois*, be thou ; *je vais*, I go ; *va*, go thou<sup>2</sup> ; *je sais*, I know ; *sache*, know thou ; *je veux*, I am willing ; *veuille*, be thou willing<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> When the second person singular of the imperative ends in *e*, it takes *s* after it before the relative pronouns *en*, *y*. Ex. *Offres-en à ta sœur*, offer some to thy sister ; *portes-y tes livres*, carry thy books thither. But when *en* is a preposition the imperative takes no *s*. Ex. *Donne en cette occasion des preuves de ton zèle*, give on this opportunity a proof of thy zeal.

<sup>2</sup> The imperative *va* takes *s*, when it is followed by the relative pronoun *y*. Ex. *Vas-y*, go thou thither ; but when there is another verb after the pronoun *y*, *va* must be written without an *s*. Ex. *Va y donner ordre*, go thither to give the order ; *va y faire un tour*, go thither to take a turn. In the expression *va-t'en*, go away, an apostrophe must be placed after the letter *t*, and not a hyphen, as it is not here the euphonic *t*, but *te*, an apostrophe supplying the place of *e* before a vowel.

<sup>3</sup> These verbs are also irregular in all the other persons of the imperative, which are as follows :

[Qu'il

*Obs. A.* All the other persons of the imperative, except the third of both numbers, which is derived from, and is like the present of the subjunctive (of which hereafter), are derived from the present of the indicative.

Have patience.	Ayez patience.
Be (ye) attentive.	Soyez attentif.
Go (ye) thither.	Allez-y.
Give it me.	Donnez-le-moi.
Send it to him.	Envoyez-le-lui.
Lend it to me.	Prêtez-le-moi.
Have the goodness to hand me that plate.	Ayez la bonté de me passer ce plat.

*Obs. B.* The second person singular, and the first and second persons plural admit of no pronouns before them ; but the third in both numbers is always preceded by the pronouns *il, ils, elle, elles*, and the conjunction *que* (of which hereafter, when we speak of the present of the subjunctive).

<i>To borrow.</i>	<i>Emprunter 1.</i>
I will borrow some money of you.	Je veux vous emprunter de l'argent.
I will borrow that money of you.	Je veux vous emprunter cet argent.
Borrow it of (or from) him.	Empruntez-le-lui.
I borrow it from him.	Je le lui emprunte.
Do not tell him or her.	Ne le lui dites pas.
Do not return it to them.	Ne le leur rendez pas.
Patience, impatience.	La patience, l'impatience.
The neighbour.	Le prochain.
The snuff-box.	La tabatière.

---

Qu'il ait; ayons, ayez, qu'ils aient.	Let him have; let us have, have ye, let them have.
Qu'il soit; soyons, soyez, qu'ils soient.	Let him be; let us be, be ye, let them be.
Qu'il aille; allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.	Let him go; let us go, go ye, let them go.
Qu'il sache; sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.	Let him know; let us know, know ye, let them know.
Qu'il veuille; veuillez, qu'ils veuillent.	Let him be willing; be ye willing, let them be willing.

Be (ye) good.  
Know (ye) it.

Soyez bons.  
Sachez-le.

Obey your masters, and never give them any trouble.

Pay what you owe, comfort the afflicted, and do good to those that have offended you.

Love God, and thy neighbour as thyself.

*To obey.*

*To comfort.*

*To offend.*

Let us always love and practise virtue, and we shall be happy both in this life and in the next.

*To practise.*

Let us see which of us can shoot best.

Obéissez à vos maîtres, et ne leur donnez jamais de chagrin.

Payez ce que vous devez, consolez les malheureux, et faites du bien à ceux qui vous ont offensés.

† Aimez le bon Dieu, et le prochain comme vous-même.

*Obéir 2.*

*Consoler 1.*

*Offenser 1.*

Aimons et pratiquons toujours la vertu, et nous serons heureux dans cette vie et dans l'autre.

*Pratiquer 1.*

Voyons qui tirera le mieux.

*To express.*

*To express one's self.*

*To make one's self understood.*

*To have the habit.*

*To accustom.*

To accustom one's self to something.

Children must be accustomed early to labour.

*To be accustomed to a thing.*

I am accustomed to it.

I cannot express myself in French, for I am not in the habit of speaking.

You speak properly.

*Exprimer 1.*

*S'exprimer 1.*

*Se faire comprendre.*

*Avoir l'habitude.*

*Accoutumer 1.*

S'accoutumer à quelque chose.

Il faut accoutumer de bonne heure les enfants au travail.

*Être accoutumé à quelque chose.*

J'y suis accoutumé.

Je ne puis pas bien m'exprimer en français, parceque je n'ai pas l'habitude de parler.

Vous parlez comme il faut.

<i>To converse.</i>	<i>Causer</i> 1.
<i>To chatter.</i>	<i>Bavarder</i> 1.
To prate.	Jaser 1.
A prattler.	Un causeur ; <i>fem.</i> euse <sup>4</sup> .
A chatterer.	Un jaseur ; <i>fem.</i> euse.
To practise.	Exercer 1.
I practise speaking.	Je m'exerce à parler.
<hr/>	
<i>To permit, to allow.</i>	<i>Permettre</i> 4 * (is conj. like <i>mettre</i> *).
The permission.	La permission.
I permit you to go thither.	Je vous permets d'y aller.
<hr/>	
Do good to the poor, have compassion on the unfortunate, and God will take care of the rest.	Faites du bien aux pauvres, et ayez compassion des malheureux, et le bon Dieu aura soin du reste.
<i>To do good to some one.</i>	<i>Faire du bien à quelqu'un.</i>
To have compassion on some one.	Avoir compassion de quelqu'un.
Compassion.	La compassion.
Pity.	La pitié.
The rest.	Le reste.
<hr/>	
If he comes tell him I am in the garden.	<i>S'il</i> vient dites-lui que je suis au jardin.
<i>Obs. C.</i> The letter <i>i</i> suffers elision in the conjunction <i>si</i> , if before the personal pronouns, <i>il</i> , he ; <i>ils</i> , they (not before <i>elle</i> or <i>elles</i> ). Ex.	
Ask the merchant whether he can let me have the horse at the price which I have offered him.	Demandez au marchand <i>s'il</i> peut me donner le cheval au prix que je lui ai offert.
<hr/>	
I read, and was told.	J'ai lu et <i>l'on</i> m'a raconté.
<i>Obs. D.</i> The indeterminate pronoun <i>on</i> takes <i>l</i> with an apostrophe ( <i>l'</i> ) after the words <i>et</i> , <i>ou</i> , <i>où</i> , or <i>si</i> . Ex.	
There they laugh and weep by turns.	On y rit et <i>l'on</i> y pleure tour à tour.
If they knew what you have done.	Si <i>l'on</i> savait ce que vous avez fait.
The country where diamonds are found.	Le pays où <i>l'on</i> trouve le diamant.
You have been, or will soon be told.	On vous a dit, ou <i>l'on</i> vous dira bientôt.

<sup>4</sup> *Une causeuse* means also a small sofa for two persons.



*Obs. E.* *Que* and *qui* also have sometimes *l'on* after them when the harmony of the sentence requires it. *Ex.*

What we conceive well we express clearly.

Ce que *l'on* conçoit bien s'énonce clairement.

*Boileau, Art Poétique, ch. i.*

To appear before me his merit is too great :

Pour paraître à mes yeux, son mérite est trop grand :

We do not like to see those to whom we owe so much.

On n'aime pas à voir ceux à qui *l'on* doit tant.

*Corneille, Nicomède, acte ii. sc. 1.*

It is from a king (Agésilas) that we have that excellent maxim :

C'est d'un roi (Agésilas) que *l'on* tient cette maxime auguste :

That a man is great only inasmuch as he is just.

Que jamais on n'est grand qu'autant que *l'on* est juste.

*Boileau, Satire IX.*

*Obs. F.* But *l'* must not be made use of before *on* when it is followed by *le, la, or les*. Say : *Je ne veux pas qu'on le tourmente*, I do not wish him to be molested, and not *que l'on le, &c.*

## EXERCISES.

216.

Have patience, my dear friend, and be not sad ; for sadness alters (*changer*) nothing, and impatience makes bad worse (*empirer le mal*). Be not afraid of your creditors ; be sure that they will do you no harm. They will wait if you cannot pay them yet.—When will you pay me what you owe me ?—As soon as I have money I will pay all that you have advanced (*avancer*) for me. I have not forgotten it, for I think of it (*j'y pense*) every day. I am your debtor (*le débiteur*), and I shall never deny (*nier*) it.—What a beautiful inkstand you have there ! pray lend it me.—What do you wish to do with it ?—I wish to show it to my sister.—Take it, but take care of it, and do not break it.—Do not fear (*ne craignez rien*). What do you want of my brother ?—I want to borrow some money of him.—Borrow some of somebody else (*à un autre*).—If he will not lend me any I will borrow some of somebody else.—You will do well.—Do not wish for (*souhaiter*) what you cannot have, but be contented with what Providence (*la Providence*) has given you, and consider (*considérer*) that there are many men who have not what you have.—Life being short (*court*), let us endeavour (Lesson LXV.) to make it (*de nous*).

*la rendre*) as agreeable (*agréable*) as possible (*qu'il est possible*). But let us also consider that the abuse (*l'abus*) of pleasure (in the plural in French) makes it bitter. (*amère*, fem.)—Have you done your exercises?—I could not do them, because my brother was not at home.—You must not get your exercises done by your brother, but you must do them yourself.—What are you doing there?—I am reading the book which you lent me.—You are wrong in always reading it.—What am I to do?—Draw this landscape (Lesson LXVII.), and when you have drawn it you shall decline some substantives with adjectives.

## 217.

What must we do in order to be happy?—Always love and practise virtue, and you will be happy both in this life and in the next.—Since (*puisque*) we wish to be happy, let us do good to the poor, and let us have compassion on the unfortunate; let us obey our masters, and never give them any trouble; let us comfort the unfortunate (*les infortunés*), love our neighbour as ourselves, and not hate those (*et ne haïssons pas ceux*) that have offended us; in short (*en un mot*), let us always fulfil our duty, and God will take care of the rest.—My son, in order to be loved you must be laborious (*laborieux*) and good. Thou art accused (*on t'accuse*) of having been idle and negligent (*négligent*) in thy affairs. Thou knowest, however (*pourtant*), that thy brother has been punished for having been naughty. Being lately (*l'autre jour*) in town, I received a letter from thy tutor, in which he strongly (*fort*) complained of thee. Do not weep (*pleurer*); now go into thy room, learn thy lesson, and be a good boy (*sage*), otherwise (*autrement*) thou wilt get nothing for dinner (*à dîner*).—I shall be so good, my dear father, that you will certainly (*certainement*) be satisfied with me.—Has the little boy kept his word (*tenir\* parole*)?—Not quite; for after having said that, he went into his room, took his books, sat down at the table (*se mit à une table*), and fell asleep (*s'endormit*).—"He is a very good boy when he sleeps," said his father, seeing him some time (*quelque temps*) after.

Good morning, Miss N.—Ah! here you are at last (*vous voilà enfin*). I have been waiting for you with impatience.—You will pardon me (*pardonner à quelqu'un*), my dear, I could not come sooner.—Sit down, if you please.—How is your mother?—She is better to-day than she was yesterday.—I am glad of it (*j'en suis*

*bien aise*).—Were you at the ball yesterday?—I was there.—Were you much amused (*se divertir*)?—Only so so (*passablement*).—At what o'clock did you return (*retourner*) home?—At a quarter past eleven.

## 218.

Have you been learning French long?—No, Sir, I have only been learning it these six months.—Is it possible! you speak tolerably well (*assez bien*) for so short a time (*si peu de temps*).—You jest (*plaisanter*); I do not know much of it yet.—Indeed, you speak it well already.—I think you flatter me a little.—Not at all; you speak it properly.—In order to speak it properly one must know more of it than I know (*que je n'en sais*, Obs. B. Less. LIII.).—You know enough of it to make yourself understood.—I still make many faults.—That is nothing (*ne fait rien*); you must not be bashful (*timide*); besides (*d'ailleurs*), you have made no faults in all you have said just now.—I am still timid (*timide*) because I am afraid of being laughed at (*qu'on ne se moque de moi*, pres. of the subjunctive).—They would be (*il faudrait être*) very unpolite to laugh at you. Who would be so unpolite as to laugh at you?—Do you not know the proverb (*le proverbe*)?—What proverb?—He who wishes to speak well must begin (*doit commencer*) by (*par*) speaking badly.—Do you understand all I am telling you?—I understand (*entendre*) and comprehend (*comprendre\**) it very well; but I cannot yet express myself well in French, because I am not in the habit of speaking it.—That will come in (*avec le*) time.—I wish (*souhaiter*) it with all my heart.

Do you sometimes see my brother?—I see him sometimes; when I met him the other day he complained of you. “If he had behaved better, and had been more economical (*économe*),” said he, “he would have no debts (*la dette*) and I would not have been angry with him.” I begged of him to have compassion on you, telling him that you had not even money enough to buy bread. “Tell him, when you see him,” replied he to me, “that notwithstanding his bad behaviour (*la conduite*) towards me, I pardon (*pardonner à quelqu'un*) him. Tell him also,” continued he, “that one should not laugh (*qu'on ne se moque pas*) at those to whom one is under obligation. Have the goodness to do this, and I shall be much obliged to you,” added he in going away (*s'éloigner*).

## SEVENTY-FIRST LESSON.

*Soixante et onzième Leçon.*


---

<i>To stand up.</i>	<i>Être debout.</i>
<i>To remain up.</i>	<i>Rester debout.</i>
Will you permit me to go to the market?	Voulez-vous me permettre d'aller au marché?
<i>To hasten, to make haste.</i>	† <i>Se dépêcher</i> 1.
Make haste, and return soon.	Dépêchez-vous et revenez bientôt.

---

Go <i>and</i> tell him that I cannot come to-day.	Allez lui dire que je ne puis venir aujourd'hui.
---	--

*Obs. A.* In French the verbs *aller* \*, to go, and *venir* \*, to come, are always followed by the infinitive instead of another tense used in English, and the conjunction *and* is not rendered.

He came <i>and</i> told us he could not come.	Il vint nous dire qu'il ne pouvait pas venir.
Go and see your friends.	Allez voir vos amis.

---

<i>To weep, to cry.</i>	<i>Pleurer</i> 1.
The least blow makes him cry.	Le moindre coup le fait pleurer.
<i>To frighten.</i>	<i>Effrayer</i> 1.
<i>To be frightened, to startle.</i>	<i>S'effrayer</i> 1.
The least thing frightens him or her.	La moindre chose l'effraie.
Be not frightened.	Ne vous effrayez pas.
To be frightened at something.	S'effrayer de quelque chose.
What are you frightened at?	De quoi vous effrayez-vous?

---



At my expense.

At his, her, our expense.

At other people's expense.

That man lives at every body's expense.

*To depend.*

That depends upon circumstances.

That does not depend upon me.

It depends upon him to do that.

O! yes, it depends upon him.

'A mes dépens.

'A ses, à nos dépens.

Aux dépens d'autrui.

Cet homme vit aux dépens de tout le monde.

*Dépendre de.*

Cela dépend des circonstances.

Cela ne dépend pas de moi.

Il dépend de lui de faire cela.

Oh! oui, cela dépend de lui.

*To astonish, to surprise.*

*To be astonished, to wonder.*

*To be surprised at something.*

I am surprised at it.

An extraordinary thing happened which surprised every body.

*To take place.*

Many things have passed which will surprise you.

*To surprise.*

Many days will pass before that.

A man came in who asked me how I was.

*Étonner* 1.

*S'étonner* 1.

*Être étonné de quelque chose.*

J'en suis étonné.

Il arriva une chose extraordinaire qui étonna tout le monde.

*Se passer* 1.

Il s'est passé plusieurs choses qui vous surprendront.

*Surprendre* \*.

Il se passera plusieurs jours avant cela.

Il entra un homme qui me demanda comment je me portais.

*Then, thus, consequently.*

*Therefore.*

The other day.

Lately.

In a short time.

*In.*

*Donc.*

*C'est pourquoi.*

L'autre jour.

Dernièrement.

Dans peu de temps.

*Dans, en.*

*Obs. B.* When speaking of time *dans* expresses the epoch, and *en* the duration.

He will arrive in a week (when a week is elapsed).

Il arrivera *dans* huit jours.



It took him a week to make this journey.

He will have finished his studies in three months.

He finished his studies in a year.

He has applied himself particularly to geometry.

Il a fait ce voyage *en* huit jours.

Il aura fini ses études *dans* trois mois.

Il a fini ses études *en* un an.

Il a fait une étude particulière de la géométrie.

He has a good many friends.

{ Il a *bien* des amis.  
Il a beaucoup d'amis.

*Obs. C.* The word *bien* is always followed by the partitive article, and *beaucoup* by the preposition *de*.

You have a great deal of patience.

{ Vous avez bien de la patience.  
Vous avez beaucoup de patience.

They have a great deal of money.

Ils ont bien de l'argent.

You have a great deal of courage.

Vous avez bien du courage.

*To make a present of something to some one.*

Mr. Lambert wrote to me lately, that his sisters would be here in a short time, and requested me to tell you so; you will then be able to see them, and to give them the books which you have bought. They hope that you will make them a present of them. Their brother has assured me that they esteem you, without knowing you personally.

*Faire présent de quelque chose à quelqu'un.*

Monsieur Lambert m'écrivit l'autre jour que mesdemoiselles ses sœurs viendraient *ici* dans peu de temps, et me pria de vous le dire. Vous pourrez donc les voir et leur donner les livres que vous avez achetés. Elles espèrent que vous leur en ferez présent. Leur frère m'a assuré qu'elles vous estiment, sans vous connaître personnellement.

*To want amusement.*

*To get or be tired.*

{ † S'ennuyer 1.

How could I get tired in your company?

† Comment pourrais-je m'ennuyer auprès de vous?

He gets tired every where.

Il s'ennuie partout.

Agreeable (pleasing).	Agréable.
To be welcome.	† Être le bienvenu.
You are welcome every where.	† Vous êtes partout le bienvenu.

## EXERCISE.

219.

Will you drink a cup of tea?—I thank you; I do not like tea.  
 —Do you like coffee?—I like it, but I have just drunk some.  
 —Do you not get tired here?—How could I get tired in this agreeable society?—As to me I always want amusement.—If you did as I do, you would not want amusement, for I listen to all those who tell me any thing. In this manner I learn a thousand agreeable things, and I have no time to get tired; but you do nothing of that kind (*de tout cela*), that is the reason why you want amusement.—I would do every thing like (*comme*) you, if I had no reason to be sad.—Have you seen Mr. Lambert?—I have seen him; he told me that his sisters would be here in a short time, and desired (*prier*) me to tell you so. When they have arrived you may give them the gold rings (*la bague*) which you have bought; they flatter themselves that you will make them a present of them, for they love you without knowing you personally.—Has my sister already written to you?—She has written to me; I am going to answer her.—Shall I (*faut-il*) tell her that you are here?—Tell her; but do not tell her that I am waiting for her impatiently (*avec impatience*).—Why have you not brought (Obs. B. Less. LVIII.) your sister along with you?—Which one?—The one you always bring, the youngest.—She did not wish to go out because she has the tooth-ache.—I am very sorry for it, for she is a very good girl.—How old is she?—She is nearly fifteen years old.—She is very tall (*grande*) for her age (*l'âge*).—How old are you?—I am twenty-two.—Is it possible! I thought you were not yet twenty.

## SEVENTY-SECOND LESSON.

*Soixante-douzième Leçon.*

## PLACE OF THE NEGATION.

Not.	{ Ne—pas.
	{ Ne—point.

*Ne* stands before the verb or its auxiliary, and *pas* or *point* after it.  
Examples :

Have you not my book ?	N'avez-vous pas mon livre ?
I have it not.	Je ne l'ai pas.
Do not speak to that man.	Ne parlez pas à cet homme.
Have you not seen my brother ?	N'avez-vous pas vu mon frère ?
Has he not learnt French ?	N'a-t-il pas appris le français ?
He has not learnt it.	Il ne l'a pas appris.

*Obs. A.* *Ne* and *pas* are placed before the verb with the preposition *pour* before an infinitive. Ex.

He is too fond of me not to do it.	Il m'aime trop pour ne pas le faire.
I go away not to displease him or her.	Je m'en vais pour ne pas lui déplaire.
One must be a fool not to perceive that.	Il faut être peu sensé pour ne pas voir cela.

*Obs. B.* *Ne* is used without *pas* with the four verbs :

<i>To cease.</i>	<i>Cesser</i> 1.
<i>To dare.</i>	<i>Oser</i> 1.
<i>To be able.</i>	{ <i>Pouvoir</i> *.
	{ <i>Savoir</i> *.

You continually ask me for money.	Vous ne cessez de me demander de l'argent.
She does not cease complaining.	Elle ne cesse de se plaindre.

I do not dare to ask you for it.  
 She does not dare to tell you so.  
 I cannot go thither.  
 I cannot tell you.  
 You cannot believe it.

Je n'ose vous le demander.  
 Elle n'ose vous le dire.  
 Je ne puis y aller.  
 Je ne saurais vous dire.  
 Vous ne sauriez le croire.

*Obs. C. Point* is a stronger negation than *pas*; *pas* is used to deny simply, *point* to deny with energy. The first often denies a thing indifferently, the latter exclusively and without reserve. The best example that can be given on the difference of the two negations are the two following lines by Molière:

I do not answer for my father's  
 will,  
 But I will wed no other than  
 Valère.

Je ne vous réponds *pas* des volon-  
 tés d'un père,  
 Mais je ne serai *point* à d'autre  
 qu'à Valère.

*Tartuffe*, Acte ii. Scène 5.

*Moreover, besides.*

Besides that.  
 Besides what I have just said.  
 There are no means of finding  
 money now.

*To push.*

Along the road.  
 Along the street.  
 All along.  
 All the year round.

*En outre, d'ailleurs.*

Outre cela.  
 Outre ce que je viens de dire.  
 Il n'y a pas moyen de trouver de  
 l'argent à présent.

*Pousser 1.*

Le long du chemin.  
 Le long de la rue.  
 Tout le long de.  
 † Tout le long de l'année.

*To enable to.*

*To be able to.*

To the right. On the right side  
 or hand.

To the left. On the left side or  
 hand.

Could you not tell me which is  
 the nearest way to the city-gate?

*Mettre à même—de.*

*Être en état ou être à même*  
*—de.*

'A droite. Sur la droite.

'A gauche. Sur la gauche.

Ne pourriez-vous pas me dire quel  
 est le chemin le plus court pour  
 arriver à la porte de la ville?

Go to the bottom of this street, and when you are there, turn to the right, and you will find a cross-way, which you must take.

And then ?

You will then enter a broad street which will bring you to a great square, where you will see a blind alley.

You must leave the blind alley on your left, and pass under the arcade that is near it.

Then you must ask again.

An arcade.

The cross-way.

The blind alley.

The shore (the bank).

Suivez toute cette rue, et quand vous serez au bout, tournez à droite; vous trouverez un carrefour que vous traverserez.

Et puis ?

Puis vous entrerez dans une rue assez large, qui vous mènera sur une grande place où vous verrez un cul-de-sac.

Vous laisserez le cul-de-sac à main gauche, et vous passerez sous les arcades qui sont à côté.

† Ensuite vous demanderez.

Une arcade.

Le carrefour.

Le cul-de-sac.

Le rivage.

*To get married (to enter into matrimony).*

*To marry somebody.*

*To marry (to give in marriage).*

My cousin, having given his sister in marriage, married Miss Delby.

Is your cousin married ?

No, he is still a bachelor.

To be a bachelor.

*Embarrassed, puzzled, at a loss.*

An embarrassment, a puzzle.

You embarrass (puzzle) me.

You puzzle (perplex) me.

The marriage.

He asks my sister in marriage.

† *Se marier* 1.

*Épouser* 1 *quelqu'un*.

*Marier* (*donner en mariage*).

Mon cousin ayant marié sa sœur, épousa Mademoiselle Delby.

M. votre cousin est-il marié ?

Non, il est encore garçon.

Être garçon.

*Embarrassé.*

Un embarras.

Vous m'embarrassez.

Vous me mettez dans l'embarras.

Le mariage.

Il demande ma sœur en mariage.



*The measure.*

To take measures.  
I shall take other measures.

*La mesure.*

Prendre des mesures.  
Je prendrai d'autres mesures.

Goodness! how rapidly time  
passes in your society!

*The compliment.*

You make me a compliment  
which I do not know how to  
answer.

Mon Dieu! que le temps passe  
vite dans votre société (en votre  
compagnie)!

*Le compliment.*

Vous me faites un compliment au  
quel je ne sais que répondre.

*The fault.*

It is not my fault.  
Do not lay it to my charge.

*To lay to one's charge.*

Who can help it?  
Whose fault is it?

I cannot help it.

*La faute.*

Ce n'est pas ma faute.  
Ne me l'imputez pas.

*Imputer 1 à quelqu'un.*

} 'A qui est la faute?  
} Je ne sais qu'y faire.  
} Je ne saurais qu'y faire.

*The delay.*

He does it without delay.  
I must go (must be off).  
Go away! Begone!

*Le délai.*

Il le fait sans délai.  
Je vais me sauver.  
Sauvez-vous! Allez-vous en!

*To jest.*

The jest, joke.

You are jesting.

He cannot take a joke, is no joker.

*To beg some one's pardon.**To pardon.*

I beg your pardon.  
The pardon.

*Plaisanter 1.*

La plaisanterie, le badinage.

{ Vous badinez.  
{ Vous vous moquez.

† Il n'entend pas raillerie.

*Demander pardon à quel-  
qu'un.**Pardonner 1.*

Je vous demande pardon.  
Le pardon.

*To advance.*

The watch goes too fast (gains).

*To retard.*

The watch goes too slow (loses).

My watch has stopped.

To stop.

*Avancer 1.*

La montre avance.

*Retarder 1.*

La montre retarde.

Ma montre s'est arrêtée.

S'arrêter 1.

Where did we stop?

We left off at the fortieth lesson,  
page one hundred and thirty-  
six.

To wind up a watch.

To regulate a watch.

Your watch is twenty minutes too  
fast, and mine a quarter of an  
hour too slow.

It will soon strike twelve.

Has it already struck twelve?

To strike.

† Où en étions-nous?

† Nous étions en leçon quarante,  
page cent-trente-six.

Monter une montre.

Régler une montre.

Votre montre avance de vingt mi-  
nutes, et la mienne retarde d'un  
quart d'heure.

Il va sonner midi.

Midi est-il déjà sonné?

Sonner 1.

On condition, or provided.

I will lend you money, provided  
you will henceforth be more  
economical than you have  
hitherto been.

Hereafter, for the future, hence-  
forth.

The future.

Economical.

To renounce gambling.

To follow advice (counsel).

You look so melancholy.

Adieu, farewell.

God be with you, good-bye.

Till I see you again.

I hope to see you again soon.

'A condition.

Sous condition.

Je vous prêterai de l'argent, à con-  
dition que vous serez désormais  
plus économe que vous n'avez  
été jusqu'ici.

Désormais, dorénavant, à l'avenir.

L'avenir.

Économe, économique, ménager.

Renoncer au jeu.

Suivre un conseil.

Vous avez l'air si mélancolique.

Adieu.

Au plaisir de vous revoir (au re-  
voir).

## EXERCISES.

220.

What o'clock is it?—It is half-past one.—You say it is half-past one, and by (*à*) my watch it is but half-past twelve.—It will soon strike two.—Pardon me, it has not yet struck one.—I assure you it is five and twenty minutes past one, for my watch goes very well.—Bless me! how rapidly time passes in your society.—You make me a compliment which I do not know how to answer.—Have you bought your watch in Paris?—I have not bought it, my uncle has made me a present of it (*en*).—What has that woman entrusted you with?—She has entrusted me with a secret about a (*d'un*) great count who is in great embarrassment about the (*à cause du*) marriage of one of his daughters.—Does any one ask her in marriage?—The man who demands her in marriage is a nobleman of the neighbourhood (*le voisinage*).—Is he rich?—No, he is a poor devil (*diable*) who has not a sou (*le sou*).—You say you have no friends among your schoolfellows (*le condisciple*); but is it not your fault? You have spoken ill (*mal parlé*) of them, and they have not offended you. They have done you good, and nevertheless (*néanmoins*) you have quarrelled with them (Lesson LXIV.). Believe me, he who has no friends deserves (*mériter*) to have none.

221.

*Dialogue (le dialogue) between a tailor and his journeyman (le garçon).*—Charles, have you taken the clothes to the Count Narissi?—Yes, Sir, I have taken them to him.—What did he say?—He said nothing but (*sinon*) that he had a great mind to give me a box on the ear (*des soufflets*, plur.), because I had not brought them sooner.—What did you answer him?—Sir, said I, I do not understand that joke: pay me what you owe me; and if you do not do so instantly I shall take other measures. Scarcely had I said that, when he put his hand to his sword (*porter la main à son épée*), and I ran away (*prendre \* la fuite*).

222.

What are you astonished at?—I am astonished to find you still

E e

in bed.—If you knew how (*combien*) sick I am, you would not be astonished (*fem.*) at it. Has it already struck twelve?—Yes, madam, it is already half-past twelve.—Is it so late? Is it possible?—That is not late, it is still early.—Does your watch go well (*bien*)?—No, Miss N., it is a quarter of an hour too fast.—And mine is half an hour too slow.—Perhaps it has stopped.—In fact, you are right.—Is it wound up?—It is wound up, and yet (*pourtant*) it does not go.—Do you hear? it is striking one o'clock.—Then I will regulate my watch and go home.—Pray (*de grâce*) stay a little longer (*encore un peu*)!—I cannot, for we dine precisely at one o'clock (*à une heure précise*).—Adieu, then, till I see you again.

## 223.

What is the matter with you, my dear friend? why do you look so melancholy?—Nothing ails me (*je n'ai rien*).—Are you in any trouble (*Auriez-vous par hasard quelque chagrin*)?—I have nothing, and even less than nothing, for I have not a sou (*le sou*), and I owe a great deal to my creditors: am I not very unhappy?—When a man is well and has friends he is not unhappy.—Dare I ask you a favour?—What do you wish?—Have the goodness to lend me fifty crowns.—I will lend you them with all my heart, but on condition that you will renounce gambling (*renoncer au jeu*), and be more economical than you have hitherto been.—I see now, that you are my friend, and I love you too much not to follow your advice.

John (*Jean*)! What is your pleasure, Sir?—Bring some wine.—Presently, Sir.—Henry!—Madam?—Make the fire (*du feu*).—The maid-servant has made it already.—Bring me some paper, pens, and ink. Bring me also some sand (*de la poudre*) or blotting-paper (*du papier brouillard*), sealing-wax (*de la cire à cacheter*), and a light (*de la lumière*). Go and tell my sister not to wait for me, and be back again (*de retour*) at twelve o'clock in order to carry my letters to the post (*la poste*).—Very well (*bien*), madam. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SEVENTY-THIRD LESSON.

*Soixante-treizième Leçon.**To last (to wear well).*

That cloth will wear well.

How long has that coat lasted  
you?*Durer 1.*

Ce drap durera bien.

Combien de temps cet habit vous  
a-t-il duré?*To my liking.*

To every body's liking.

Nobody can do any thing to his  
liking.*'A mon gré.*

Au gré de tout le monde.

On ne peut rien faire à son gré.

A boarding-house.

A boarding-school.

} Une pension.

To keep a boarding-house.

| Tenir pension.

To board with any one or any  
where.

| Être en pension.

| Se mettre en pension.

*To exclaim.**To make uneasy.**To get or grow uneasy.*

To be uneasy.

Why do you fret (are you uneasy)?

I do not fret (am not uneasy).

That news makes me uneasy.

I am uneasy at not receiving any  
news.

She is uneasy about that affair.

Do not be uneasy.

The uneasiness, trouble.

Quiet.

*S'écrier 1.**Inquiéter 1.**S'inquiéter.*Être inquiet; *fem.* inquiète.

Pourquoi vous inquiétez-vous?

Je ne m'inquiète pas.

Cette nouvelle m'inquiète.

Je suis inquiet de ne point rece-  
voir de nouvelles.

Elle est inquiète sur cette affaire.

Ne vous inquiétez pas.

L'inquiétude.

Tranquille.



*To quiet.*

Compose yourself.

*To alter, to change.*

That man has altered a great deal  
since I saw him.

*Tranquilliser 1.*

Tranquillisez-vous.

*Changer 1.*

Cet homme a beaucoup changé  
depuis que je ne l'ai vu.

*To be of use.*

Of what use is that to you?

That is of no use to me.

Of what use is that to your brother?

It is of no use to him.

Of what use is that stick to you?

I use it to beat my dogs.

Of what use is that horse to your brother?

He uses it to carry his vegetables to the market.

Of what use are these bottles to your landlord?

They serve him to put his wine in.

*To stand instead, to be as.*

I use my gun as a stick.

This hole serves him for a house.

He used his cravat as a nightcap.

*To avail.*

What avails it to you to cry?

It avails me nothing.

† Servir \*.

† 'A quoi cela vous sert-il?

† Cela ne me sert à rien.

† 'A quoi cela sert-il à votre frère?

† Cela ne lui sert à rien.

† 'A quoi ce bâton vous sert-il?

† Il me sert à battre mes chiens.

† 'A quoi ce cheval sert-il à votre frère?

† Il lui sert à porter ses légumes au marché.

† 'A quoi ces bouteilles servent-elles à votre hôte?

† Elles lui servent à mettre son vin.

† Servir \* de.

† Mon fusil me sert de bâton.

† Ce trou lui sert de maison.

† Sa cravate lui a servi de bonnet de nuit.

† Servir \* (de bef. inf.).

† 'A quoi vous sert-il de pleurer?

† Cela ne me sert à rien.

*Opposite to.*

Opposite that house.

Opposite the garden.

Opposite to me.

Right opposite.

He lives opposite the castle.

*Vis-à-vis de.*

Vis-à-vis de cette maison.

Vis-à-vis du jardin.

Vis-à-vis de moi.

Tout vis-à-vis.

Il demeure vis-à-vis du château.

I live opposite the king's library.	Je demeure vis-à-vis de la bibliothèque royale.
To get hold of.	} S'emparer de.
To take possession of.	
To witness.	} Témoigner 1.
To show.	
To give evidence against some one.	Témoigner contre quelqu'un.
He has shown a great deal of friendship for me.	Il m'a témoigné beaucoup d'amitié.
To turn some one into ridicule.	Tourner quelqu'un en ridicule.
To become ridiculous.	Tomber dans le ridicule.
To make one's self ridiculous.	Se rendre ridicule.

<i>To be born.</i>	<i>Être né.</i>
Where were you born?	† Où êtes-vous né?
I was born in this country.	† Je suis né dans ce pays.
Where was your sister born?	† Où votre sœur est-elle née?
She was born in the United States of North America.	† Elle est née aux États Unis de l'Amérique du Nord.
Where were your brothers born?	† Où vos frères sont-ils nés?
They were born in France.	† Ils sont nés en France.

The boarder.	Le pensionnaire.
The pouch.	La gibecière.
A pillow.	Un oreiller.
Down.	Le duvet.

## EXERCISES.

224.

Sir, may (*oser*) I ask where the Earl of B. lives?—He lives near the castle on the other side of the river.—Could you tell me which road I must (*je dois*) take to go thither?—You must go (*suivez*) along the shore, and you will come to a little street (*quand vous serez au bout, prenez une petite rue*) on the right, which will lead you straight (*directement*) to his house.—It is a fine house, you will find it easily.—I thank you, Sir.—Does

Count N. live here?—Yes, Sir, walk in (*donnez-vous la peine d'entrer*), if you please.—Is the count at home?—I wish to have the honour (*l'honneur*) to speak to him.—Yes, Sir, he is at home; whom shall I have the honour to announce (*annoncer*)?—I am from B., and my name is (*s'appeler*) F.

Which is the shortest (*court*) way to the arsenal (*un arsenal*)?—Go down (*suivez*) this street, and when you come to the bottom (*au bout*), turn to the left, and take the cross-way (*vous trouverez un—que vous traverserez*); you will then enter into a rather narrow (*étroit*) street, which will lead you to a great square (*la place*), where you will see a blind-alley.—Through (*par*) which I must pass?—No, for there is no outlet (*une issue*).—You must leave it on the right, and pass under the arcade which is near it.—And then?—And then you must inquire (further).—I am very much obliged to you.—Do not mention it (*il n'y a pas de quoi*).—Are you able to translate an English letter into French?—I am.—Who has taught you?—My French master has enabled me to do it.

## 225.

Why does your mother fret?—She frets at receiving no news from her son who is with the army.—She need not be uneasy about him, for whenever he gets into a bad scrape he knows how to get out of it again.—Last summer when we were a hunting together (*ensemble*) night grew upon us (*la nuit nous surprit*) at at least ten leagues (*une lieue*) from our country-seat (*la maison de campagne*).—Well (*Eh bien*), where did you pass the night?—I was very uneasy at first, but your brother not in the least (*pas le moins du monde*); on the contrary, he tranquillized me, so that I lost my uneasiness. We found at last a peasant's hut where we passed the night. Here I had an opportunity to see how clever your brother is. A few benches and a truss of straw (*une botte de paille*) served him to make a comfortable (*commode*) bed; he used a bottle as a candlestick, our pouches served us as a pillow, and our cravats as nightcaps. When we awoke in the morning we were as fresh and healthy (*bien portant*) as if we had slept on down and silk.—A candidate (*un candidat*) petitioned (*demandeur à*) the king

of Prussia (*de Prusse*) for an employment (*un emploi*). This prince asked him where he was born. "I was born at Berlin," answered he. "Begone!" said the monarch (*le monarque*), "all the men of Berlin (*un Berlinois*) are good for nothing." "I beg your majesty's (*la majesté*) pardon," replied the candidate, "there are some good ones, and I know two." "Which are those two?" asked the king. "The first," replied the candidate, "is your majesty, and I am the second." The king could not help laughing (*ne put s'empêcher de rire*) at this answer (*la réponse*), and granted (*accorder*) the request (*la demande*). (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SEVENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Soixante-quatorzième Leçon.**To lose sight of.*

## The sight.

I wear spectacles because my sight is bad (or because I have bad sight).

I am near-sighted.

The ship is so far off that we shall soon lose sight of it.

I have lost sight of that.

As it is long since I was in England I have lost sight of your brother.

As it is long since I have read any French I have lost sight of it.

*Perdre de vue.*

## La vue.

Je porte des lunettes parceque j'ai la vue mauvaise. (See Obs. B. Lesson XXVI.)

† J'ai la vue courte.

Le bâtiment est si loin, que nous le perdrons bientôt de vue.

J'ai perdu cela de vue.

Comme il y a long-temps que je n'ai été en Angleterre, j'ai perdu votre frère de vue.

Comme il y a long-temps que je n'ai lu de français, je l'ai perdu de vue.

*Obs.* *Ought* and *should* are rendered into French by the conditionals of the verb *devoir*, to be obliged, to owe. *Ex.*

You *ought* or *should* do that.

He *ought* not to speak thus to his father.

We *ought* to go thither earlier.

They *should* listen to what you say.

You *should* pay more attention to what I say.

You *ought* to have done that.

He *should* have managed the thing better than he has done.

Vous *devriez* faire cela.

Il ne *devrait* pas parler ainsi à son père.

Nous *devrions* y aller de meilleure heure.

Ils *devraient* écouter ce que vous dites.

Vous *devriez* faire plus d'attention à ce que je dis.

Vous *auriez dû* faire cela.

Il *aurait dû s'y prendre* mieux qu'il n'a fait.



You *should have managed* the thing differently.

They *ought to have managed* the thing as I did.

We *ought to have managed* it differently from what they did.

Vous *auriez dû vous y prendre* d'une manière différente.

Ils *auraient dû s'y prendre* comme je m'y suis pris.

Nous *aurions dû nous y prendre* d'une autre manière qu'ils ne s'y sont pris.

To bid or to wish.

I bid you good morning.

I wish you a good morning.

I wish you a good journey.

| Souhaiter 1 (*de* bef. infin.).

} Je vous souhaite le bonjour. (See

} Obs. B. Lesson XXVI.).

| Je vous souhaite un bon voyage.

To play a game at billiards.

To play upon the flute.

A fall.

To have a fall.

A stay, a sojourn.

To make a stay.

Do you intend to make a long stay in the town?

I do not intend to make a long stay in it.

Faire une partie de billard. (See Obs. Lesson LI.)

Jouer de la flûte. (Obs. Less. LI.)

Une chute.

† Faire une chute.

Un séjour.

Faire un séjour.

Comptez-vous faire un long séjour dans la ville?

Je ne compte pas y faire un long séjour.

To *propose* (meaning to *intend*).

I propose going on that journey.

I propose (intend) joining a hunting party.

*Se proposer* (*de* bef. infin.).

Je me propose de faire le voyage.

Je me propose d'aller à une partie de chasse.

To *suspect*, to *guess*.

I suspect what he has done.

He does not suspect what is going to happen to him.

To *think of* some one or of something.

Of whom do you think?

Of what do you think?

*Se douter* (governs the gen.).

Je me doute *de* ce qu'il a fait.

Il ne se doute pas *de* ce qui va lui arriver.

*Penser à quelqu'un* ou à *quelque chose*.

'A qui pensez-vous?

'A quoi pensez-vous?

*To turn upon.**To be the question.*} † *S'agir de.*

It is questioned, it turns upon.

The question is not your pleasure,  
but your improvement.You play, Sir; but playing is not  
the thing, but studying.

What is going on?

The question is to know what we  
shall do to pass the time agree-  
ably.

Il s'agit de.

Il ne s'agit pas de votre plaisir,  
mais de vos progrès.Vous jouez, Monsieur; mais il ne  
s'agit pas de jouer, il s'agit  
d'étudier.

De quoi s'agit-il?

Il s'agit de savoir ce que nous  
ferons pour passer notre temps  
agréablement.*On purpose.*I beg your pardon, I have not  
done it on purpose.*To hold one's tongue.*

To stop speaking, to be silent.

Do you hold your tongue?

I hold my tongue.

He holds his tongue.

After speaking half an hour he  
held his tongue.*Exprès.*Je vous demande pardon, je ne l'ai  
pas fait exprès.} † *Se taire* 4; pres. part. *taisant*;past part. *tu*.

Vous taisez-vous?

Je me tais.

Il se tait.

Après avoir parlé pendant un  
demi-heure, il se tut.

## EXERCISES.

226.

A thief having one day entered a boarding-house stole three cloaks (*le manteau*). In going away he was met by one of the boarders who had a fine laced (*galonné*) cloak. Seeing so many cloaks, he asked the man where he had taken them. The thief answered boldly (*froidement*) that they belonged to three gentlemen of the house who had given them to be cleaned (*à dégraisser*). "Then you must also clean (*dégraissez donc aussi*) mine, for it is very much in need of it (*en avoir grand besoin*)," said the boarder; "but," added he, "you must return it to me at three o'clock." "I shall not fail (*y manquer*), Sir," answered the thief, as he carried off (*emporter*) the four cloaks with which he (*qu'il*) is still to return (*n'a pas encore rapportés*).—You are singing (*chanter*),

gentlemen, but it is not a time for (*il ne s'agit pas de*) singing; you ought to be silent, and to listen to what you are told.—We are at a loss.—What are you at a loss about?—I am going to tell you: the question is with us how we shall pass our time agreeably.—Play a game at billiards or at chess (See Obs. Lesson LI.).—We have proposed joining a hunting party; do you go with us (*êtes-vous des nôtres*)?—I cannot, for I have not done my task yet; and if I neglect it, my master will scold me.—Every one according to his liking; if you like staying at home better than going a hunting we cannot hinder you.—Does Mr. B. go with us?—Perhaps.—I should not like to go with him, for he is too great a talker (*trop bavard*), excepting that (*à cela près*) he is an honest man.

What is the matter with you? You look angry.—I have reason to (*avoir lieu de*) be angry, for there is no means of getting money now.—Have you been to Mr. A.'s?—I have been to his house; but there is no possibility (*pas moyen*) of borrowing from him. I suspected that he would not lend me any, that is the reason why I did not wish to ask him; and had you not told me to do so, I should not have subjected myself (*s'exposer*) to a refusal (*un refus*).

## 227.

I suspected that you would be thirsty, and that your sister would be hungry; that is the reason why I brought you hither. I am sorry, however (*pourtant*), not to see your mother.—Why do you not drink your coffee?—If I were not sleepy I would drink it.—Sometimes (*tantôt*) you are sleepy, sometimes cold, sometimes warm, and sometimes something else is the matter with you (*et tantôt quelque autre chose*). I believe that you think too much of the misfortune that has happened to your friend (fem.)—If I did not think about it, who would think about it?—Of whom does your brother think?—He thinks of me, for we always think of each other (*l'un à l'autre*) when we are not together (*ensemble*).

I have seen six players (*le joueur*) to day, who were all winning (*gagner*) at the same time (*en même temps*).—That cannot be; for a player can only win when another loses.—You would be right if I were speaking of people that had played at cards or billiards

(Obs. Lesson LI.) ; but I am speaking of flute and violin players (*de joueurs de flûte et de violon*).—Do you sometimes practise (*faire\**) music (*de la musique*)?—Very often, for I like it much.—What instrument (Lesson LI. Obs.) do you play?—I play the violin, and my sister plays the harpsichord. My brother who plays the bass (*la basse*) accompanies (*accompagner*) us, and Miss Stolz sometimes applauds (*applaudir*) us.—Does she not also play some musical instrument (*un instrument de musique*)?—She plays the harp (*la harpe*), but she is too proud (*fière*) to practise music with us.—A very poor town (*une ville assez pauvre*) went to considerable expense (*faire une dépense considérable*) in feats and illuminations (*en fêtes et en illuminations*) on the occasion of its prince passing through (*du passage de son*—). The latter seemed (*parut*) himself astonished at it.—“It has only done,” said a courtier (*un courtisan*), “what it owed (to your majesty).” “That is true,” replied (*reprendre\**) another, “but it owes all that it has done.” (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SEVENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

*Soixante-quinzième Leçon.*

*Towards* { (physically)  
(morally).

He comes towards me.

He has behaved very well towards me.

We must always behave well towards every body.

The behaviour of others is but an echo of our own. If we behave well towards them, they will also behave well towards us; but if we use them ill, we must not expect better from them.

*To treat or to use somebody well.*

*To use somebody ill.*

As you have always used me well,  
I will not use you ill.

As he has always used me well, I  
have always used him in the  
same manner.

*Vers.*

*Envers.*

Il vient *vers* moi.

Il s'est comporté très-bien *envers* moi.

Il faut nous comporter toujours bien *envers* tout le monde.

La conduite des autres n'est qu'un écho de la nôtre. Si nous nous comportons bien envers eux, ils se comporteront bien aussi envers nous; mais si nous en usons mal avec eux, nous ne devons pas attendre mieux de leur part.

*En user bien avec quelqu'un.*

*En user mal avec quelqu'un.*

Comme vous en avez usé toujours bien avec moi, je n'en userai pas mal avec vous.

Comme il en a toujours bien usé avec moi, j'en ai toujours usé de la même manière avec lui.

*To delay (to tarry).*

Do not be long before you return.  
I shall not be long before I return.

*I long to or for.*

*Tarder* I (takes à before inf.).

Ne tardez pas à revenir.

Je ne tarderai pas à revenir.

† *Il me tarde de.*



*Obs.* When the verb *tarder* is employed impersonally in the signification of *to long for*, it requires the preposition *de* before the verb. *Ex.*

I long to see my brother.

He longs to receive his money.

We long for dinner because we are very hungry.

They long to sleep because they are tired.

† Il me tarde de voir mon frère.

† Il lui tarde de recevoir son argent.

† Il nous tarde de dîner, parceque nous avons bien faim.

† Il leur tarde de dormir, parcequ'ils sont fatigués.

*To be at one's ease.*

*To be comfortable.*

*To be uncomfortable.*

} *Être à son aise.*

*Être mal à son aise.*

I am very much at my ease upon this chair.

You are uncomfortable upon your chair.

What can that be ?

We are uncomfortable in that boarding-house.

That man is well off, for he has plenty of money.

That man is badly off, for he is poor.

*To make one's self comfortable.*

Make yourself comfortable.

*To be uncomfortable.*

Je suis bien à mon aise sur cette chaise.

Vous êtes mal à votre aise sur votre chaise.

† Qu'est-ce que cela peut être ?

Nous sommes mal à notre aise dans cette pension.

Cet homme est à son aise, car il a beaucoup d'argent.

Cet homme est mal à son aise, parcequ'il est pauvre.

*Se mettre à son aise.*

Mettez-vous à votre aise.

*Etre gêné.*

To inconvenience one's self.

To put one's self out of the way.

Do not put yourself out of the way.

That man never inconveniences himself; he never does it for any body.

Can you, without putting yourself to inconvenience, lend me your gun ?

} Se gêner 1.

Ne vous gênez pas.

Cet homme ne se gêne jamais ; il ne se gêne jamais pour personne.

Pouvez-vous sans vous gêner me prêter votre fusil.

*To make entreaties.*

*To beg with entreaty.*

I employed every kind of intreaty  
to engage him to it.

*To solicit, to press, to sue, to  
entreat.*

*Faire des instances.*

*Prier avec instances.*

Je l'en ai sollicité avec toutes les  
instances possibles.

*Solliciter* 1.

Here and there.

Now and then.

From time to time.

Indifferently (as good as bad).

I have made my composition tolerably well.

Par-ci, par-là.

De loin en loin.

De temps en temps.

Tant bien que mal.

J'ai fait ma composition tant bien  
que mal.

*To postpone, to put off.*

Let us put that off until to-mor-  
row.

Let us put off that lesson until  
another time.

*Remettre* \* à.

Remettons cela à demain.

Remettons cette leçon à une autre  
fois.

*To impart something to some-  
body.*

Have you imparted that to your  
father?

I have imparted it to him.

*Faire part de quelque chose à  
quelqu'un.*

Avez-vous fait part de cela à votre  
père?

Je lui en ai fait part.

*In vain.*

In vain I looked all around, I saw  
neither man nor house : not the  
least sign of settlement.

A dwelling, habitation, settlement.

In vain I speak, for you do not  
listen to me.

In vain I do my best, I cannot do  
any thing to his liking.

You may say what you please,  
nobody will believe you.

† *Avoir beau.*

J'avais beau regarder tout autour  
de moi, je ne voyais ni homme,  
ni maison : pas la moindre ap-  
parence d'habitation.

Une habitation.

J'ai beau parler, vous ne m'écou-  
tez pas.

J'ai beau faire de mon mieux, je  
ne peux rien faire à son gré.

Vous avez beau dire, personne ne  
vous croira.

It is in vain that they earn money, they will never be rich.	Ils ont beau gagner de l'argent, ils n'en seront jamais riches.
We search in vain, for what we have lost we cannot find.	Nous avons beau chercher, nous ne pourrions pas trouver ce que nous avons perdu.

<i>To salute.</i>	<i>Saluer 1.</i>
I have the honour to bid you adieu.	J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer.
Present my compliments to him (to her).	} Dites-lui bien des choses de ma part.
Remember me to him (to her).	
Pray present my compliments to your sister.	Je vous prie de faire mes compli- ments à Mademoiselle votre sœur.
Remember me (present my com- pliments) to him (to her).	Présentez-lui mes civilités (mes très-humbles respects).
I shall not fail.	Je n'y manquerai pas.

The present (the present time or tense).	Le présent.
The past.	Le passé.
The future.	L'avenir, le futur.
The loss of time.	La perte du temps.
Enjoy all the pleasures that virtue permits.	Jouissez de tous les plaisirs que la vertu permet.

## EXERCISES.

228.

Have you made your French composition?—I have made it.—  
Was your tutor pleased with it?—He was not. In vain I do my  
best; I cannot do any thing to his liking.—You may say what  
you please, nobody will believe you.—Can you, without putting  
yourself to inconvenience, lend me five hundred francs?—As you  
have always used me well I will use you in the same manner. I  
will lend you the money you want, but on condition that you will  
return it to me next week.—You may depend upon it (*pouvoir y*

*compter*).—How has my son behaved towards you?—He has behaved well towards me, for he behaves well towards every body. His father told him often :—The behaviour of others is but an echo of our own. If we behave well towards them, they will also behave well towards us ; but if we use them ill, we must not expect better from them.—May I see your brothers ?—You will see them to-morrow. As they have just arrived from a long journey (*le voyage*) they long for sleep, for they are very tired.—What has my sister said ?—She said that she longed for dinner, because she was very hungry.—Are you comfortable at your boarding-house ?—I am very comfortable there.—Have you imparted to your brother what I told you ?—As he was very tired, he longed for sleep ; so that I have put off imparting it to him till to-morrow.

## 229.

I have the honour to wish you a good morning. How do you do ?—Very well at your service (*à vous rendre mes devoirs*).—And how are all at home (*comment se porte-t-on chez vous*) ?—Tolerably well, thank God (*Dieu merci*) ! My sister was a little indisposed (*indisposée*), but she is better (*rétablie*) ; she told (*charger*) me to give you her best compliments.—I am glad (*charmé*) to hear that she is well. As for you, you are health itself (*la santé même*) ; you cannot look better (*vous avez la meilleure mine du monde*).—I have no time to be ill : my business (*mes affaires*) would not permit me. Please (*donnez-vous la peine*) to sit down ; here is a chair.—I will not detain (*distraindre*) you from your business (*les occupations*) ; I know that a merchant's time is precious (*que le temps est précieux à un négociant*).—I have nothing pressing (*pressé*) to do now, my courier is already dispatched (*mon courrier est déjà expédié*).—I shall not stay any longer. I only wished in passing by (*en passant par ici*) to inquire about your health.—You do me much honour.—It is very fine weather to day. If you will allow me I shall have the pleasure of seeing you again (*revoir\**) this afternoon (*cette après-dînée*), and if you have time we will take a little turn together.—With the greatest pleasure. In that case I shall wait for you.—I will come for you (*venir prendre*) about (*vers*) seven o'clock.—Adieu, then, till I see you again.—I have the honour to bid you adieu.

## 230.

The loss of time is an irreparable (*irréparable*) loss. A single minute (*une seule* —) cannot be recovered (*recouvrer*) for all the gold in the (*du*) world. It is then of the greatest importance (*de la dernière importance*) to employ well the time which consists (*consister*) only of (*en*) minutes of which we must make good use (*dont il faut tirer parti*). We have but the present; the past is no longer any thing (*n'est plus rien*), and the future is uncertain (*incertain*).—A great many people (*une infinité d'hommes*) ruin themselves (*se ruiner*) because they wish to indulge themselves too much (*à force de vouloir se faire du bien*). If most men (*la plupart des hommes*) knew how to content themselves (*se contenter*) with what they have, they would be happy; but their greediness (*leur avidité*) very often makes (*rendre*) them unhappy.—In order to be happy we must forget the past, not trouble ourselves about (*ne pas s'inquiéter de*) the future, and enjoy the present.—I was very much dejected (*triste*) when my cousin came to me. “What is the matter with you?” he asked me. “Oh (*ah*)! my dear cousin,” replied I, “in losing that money I have lost every thing.” “Do not fret,” said he to me, “for I have found your money.” (See end of Lesson XXIV.)



## FOURTH MONTH.

*Quatrième Mois.*

## SEVENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Soixante-seizième Leçon.**To mean.*

What do you mean ?

I mean.

What does that man mean ?

He means.

What does that mean ?

That means.

That does not mean any thing.

I do not know what that means.

*Vouloir dire.*

† Que voulez-vous dire ?

† Je veux dire.

† Que veut dire cet homme ?

† Il veut dire.

{ † Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire ?

{ † Que veut dire cela ?

† Cela veut dire.

† Cela ne veut rien dire.

† Je ne sais pas ce que cela veut dire.

*To be particular.*

I do not like to deal with that man, for he is too particular.

† *Y regarder de près.*

† Je n'aime pas à faire des affaires avec cet homme, car il y regarde de trop près.

*To grow impatient, to fret.*

Do not fret about that.

† *S'impatisenter de.*

Ne vous impatientez pas de cela.

*To sit up, to watch.*

I have sat up all night.

*Veiller l.*

J'ai veillé toute la nuit.

*To advise.*

The dress, the costume.

An elegant dress.

*To dress one's self.*

That man always dresses well.

*Conseiller 1.*

La mise.

Une mise élégante.

*Se mettre 4\*.*

Cet homme se met toujours bien.

*To find fault with something.*That man always finds fault with  
every thing he sees.

Do you find fault with that?

I do not find fault with it.

† *Trouver à redire à quelque chose.*† Cet homme trouve toujours à  
redire à tout ce qu'il voit.

† Trouvez-vous à redire à cela?

† Je n'y trouve rien à redire.

*A trick, (a turn, a round).*

To play a trick.

To play a trick upon some one.

To take a turn.

I have taken a turn round the  
garden.He has taken a couple of turns  
round the garden.

To take a little turn.

To travel through Europe.

*Un tour.*

Jouer un tour.

Jouer un tour à quelqu'un.

† Faire un tour.

† J'ai fait un tour de jardin.

† Il a fait deux tours de jardin.

† Faire un petit tour.

† Faire le tour de l'Europe.

*More (meaning besides).*You have given me three books,  
but I want three besides.*Less.*

Three less.

Three too many.

*De plus.*Vous m'avez donné trois livres,  
mais j'en veux trois de plus.*De moins.*

Trois de moins.

Trois de trop.

*My reach.*

Within my reach.

Out of my reach.

Those things are not within the  
reach of every body.*Ma portée.*

'A ma portée.

Hors de ma portée.

Ces choses ne sont pas à la portée  
de tout le monde.

Within gun-shot.  
 A gunshot (meaning distance).  
 Two gunshots ( , , ).  
 How many shots have you fired ?

'A la portée du fusil.  
 Une portée de fusil.  
 Deux portées de fusil.  
 Combien de coups de fusil avez-vous tirés ? (See Less. XLVIII.)

I wonder why that man makes such a noise.

*So long as.*

So long as you behave well, people will love you.

To carry off.

A mouthful.

To overwhelm, to heap, to load.

To overwhelm some one with joy.

Generous.

Charitable, beneficent.

You have heaped benefits upon me.

Sincere.

Sincerely.

An advantage.

The disadvantage, prejudice.

I shall never say any thing to your disadvantage.

Je voudrais bien savoir pourquoi cet homme fait un tel bruit.

*Tant que.*

Tant que vous vous comporterez bien, on vous aimera.

Enlever 1.

Une bouchée.

Combler 1.

Combler quelqu'un de joie.

Généreux.

Bienfaisant, charitable.

Vous m'avez comblé de bienfaits.

Sincère.

Sincèrement.

Un avantage.

Le désavantage.

Je ne dirai jamais rien à votre désavantage.

*To surrender.*

The enemies have surrendered.

*To prefer.*

I prefer the useful to the agreeable.

*Se rendre 4.*

Les ennemis se sont rendus.

*Préférer 1.*

Je préfère l'utile à l'agréable.

*Obs.* All adjectives and verbs used substantively are masculine. (See p. 4, in my Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.) *Ex.*

The drinking.

The eating.

Le boire.

Le manger.

*To behold.*

Behold those beautiful flowers  
with their colours so fresh and  
bright.

The colour.

The lily.

The violet.

The forget-me-not.

The rose.

An emblem.

Fresh verdure is salutary to our  
eyes.

*Regarder 1.*

Regardez ces superbes fleurs au  
teint si frais et si éclatant.

La couleur, le teint.

Le lis.

La violette.

La germandrée.

La rose.

Un emblème.

La verdure fraîche fait du bien à  
nos yeux.

## EXERCISES.

## 231.

Why have you played a trick upon that man?—Because he always finds fault with every thing he sees.—What does that mean, Sir?—That means that I do not like to deal with you, because you are too particular.—I wonder why your brother has not done his task.—It was too difficult. He has sat up all night, and has not been able to do it, because it was out of his reach.—As soon as Mr. Flausen sees me he begins to speak English, in order to practise, and overwhelms me with politeness (*d'honnêteté*), so that I often do not know what to answer. His brothers do the same (*en font autant*). However they are very good people (*ils ne laissent pas d'être de fort bonnes gens*); they are not only (*non seulement*) rich and amiable, but they are also generous and charitable. They love me sincerely, therefore I love them also, and consequently (*par conséquent*) shall never say any thing to their disadvantage. I should love them still more, if they did not make so much ceremony (*tant de cérémonies*); but every one has his faults (*le défaut*), and mine is to speak too much of their ceremonies.

## 232.

Have the enemies surrendered?—They have not surrendered,

for they did not prefer life (*la vie*) to death (*la mort*). They had neither bread, nor meat, nor water, nor arms (*une arme*), nor money; notwithstanding they determined to die rather (*ils ont mieux aimé mourir*) than surrender.—Why are you so sad?—You do not know what makes me uneasy, my dear friend (*fem*).—Tell me, for I assure you that I share (*partager*) your sufferings (*la peine*) as well as your pleasures.—I am sure that you feel for me (*prendre* \* *part à mes peines*), but I cannot tell you now (*en ce moment*) what makes me uneasy. I will however tell you when an opportunity offers (*à l'occasion*). Let us speak of something else now. What do you think of the man who spoke to us yesterday at the concert?—He is a man of much understanding (*de beaucoup d'esprit*), and not at all wrapt up in his own merits (*et il n'est pas du tout insatué de son mérite*).—But why do you ask me that?—To speak of something.—It is said: contentment (*contentement*) surpasses (*passer*) riches; let us then always be content. Let us share (*partager*) (with each other) what we have, and remain (*demeurer*) our lifetime (*toute notre vie*) inseparable (*inséparable*) friends. You will always be welcome at my house, and I hope to be equally so (*aussi*) at yours. If I saw you happy I should be equally so, and we should be more contented than the greatest princes, who are not always so. We shall be happy when we are perfectly (*parfaitement*) contented with what we have; and if we do our duty as we ought (*bien*) God (*le bon Dieu*) will take care of the rest. The past being no longer any thing, let us not be uneasy about the future, and enjoy the present.

## 233.

Behold, ladies (*Mesdames*), those beautiful flowers, with their colours so fresh and bright; they drink nothing but water. The white lily has the colour of innocence (*l'innocence*); the violet indicates gentleness (*marque la douceur*); you may see it in Louisa's eyes (*dans les yeux de Louise*). The forget-me-not has the colour of heaven, our future dwelling, and the rose, the queen of flowers, is the emblem of beauty and of joy. You see all that personified (*personnifié*) in seeing the beautiful Amelia (*Amélie*).



How beautiful is the fresh verdure! It is salutary to our eyes, and has the colour of hope (*de l'espérance*), our most faithful (*fidèle*) friend (fem.), who never deserts (*quitter*) us, not even in death (*à la mort*).—One word more, my dear friend.—What is your pleasure?—I forgot to tell you to present my compliments to your mother. Tell her, if you please, that I regret (*regretter*) not having been at home when lately she honoured me with her visit.—I thank you for her (*de sa part*), I shall not fail.—Farewell then. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SEVENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

*Soixante-dix-septième Leçon.*


---

A silk gown.	Une robe <i>de</i> soie.
A kitchen table.	Une table <i>de</i> cuisine.
A mahogany table.	Une table <i>d'</i> acajou.
A brick house.	Une maison <i>de</i> brique.
A stone house.	Une maison <i>de</i> pierre.
A windmill.	Une moulin <i>à</i> vent.
A coffee mill.	Une moulin <i>à</i> café.

*Obs. A.* We have seen (Lesson II.) that the preposition *de* is put between two substantives, the latter of which expresses the matter of which the former is made ; but the preposition *à* is made use of when the latter expresses the use of the former. In both cases the order of the two substantives is inverted in French when they make a compound in English. *Ex.*

A velvet bonnet.	Un chapeau <i>de</i> velours.
A silver tankard.	Un pot <i>d'</i> argent.
A water-mill.	Une moulin <i>à</i> eau.
A steam-mill.	Une moulin <i>à</i> vapeur.
Gunpowder.	De la poudre <i>à</i> canon.
Fire-arms.	Des armes <i>à</i> feu.
A one-horse waggon.	Une voiture <i>à</i> un cheval.
A four-horse carriage.	Une voiture <i>à</i> quatre chevaux.
A two-wheeled waggon.	Une voiture <i>à</i> deux roues.
A four-wheeled carriage.	Une voiture <i>à</i> quatre roues.
A one-story house.	Une maison <i>à</i> un étage.
A two-story house.	Une maison <i>à</i> deux étages.
A three-story house.	Une maison <i>à</i> trois étages.

*To exaggerate.*

That man exaggerates all that he says and does.

*Outrer 1.*

Cet homme outre tout ce qu'il dit et tout ce qu'il fait.

*To take the place of, to be instead of.* | *Tenir lieu de.*

That man is a father to me.	}	† Cette homme me tient lieu de père, <i>or</i>
		† Cet homme me sert de père.
That umbrella serves him as a stick.	}	† Ce parapluie lui tient lieu de canne, <i>or</i>
		† Ce parapluie lui sert de canne.

An inch.	Un pouce.
On a small scale.	En petit.
On a large scale.	En grand.
Thereabouts, nearly.	'A peu près.
Alternately, turn by turn.	Tour à tour.
<i>To endeavour, to strive.</i>	† <i>S'efforcer</i> 1 ( <i>de</i> before the infin.).
<i>To give one's self up to grief.</i>	<i>S'abandonner à la douleur.</i>
<i>To melt.</i>	<i>Fondre</i> 4.
To melt in tears.	Fondre en larmes.

<i>To give birth to (meaning to raise, to cause).</i>	}	<i>Faire naître.</i>
To raise difficulties.		† Faire naître des difficultés.
To cause quarrels.		† Faire naître des querelles.
To cause suspicions.		† Faire naître des soupçons.
The behaviour of that man raised suspicions in my mind.		† La conduite de cet homme a fait naître des soupçons dans mon esprit.

<i>To shake.</i>	<i>Secouer</i> 1.
Shake that tree, and the fruit will fall down.	Secouez cet arbre, et les fruits en tomberont.

To be in want of.	}	<i>Manquer de.</i>
To be short of.		
To want.		

That man is in want of every thing.	Cette homme manque de tout.
I am in want of nothing.	Je ne manque de rien.

A place at table, including knife, fork, and plate.	} Un couvert.
A table for four persons.	Une table de quatre couverts.
A table for ten persons.	Une table de dix couverts.
A writing-table or desk.	Une table à écrire.
A dining-room.	Une salle à manger.
A sleeping or bed-room.	Une chambre à coucher.
A repeater.	Une montre à répétition.
An oil-bottle.	Une bouteille à l'huile.
A mustard-pot.	Un pot à moutarde.
A pitcher.	Un pot à l'eau.
A fowling-piece.	Un fusil de chasse.
A fishing line.	Une ligne à pêcher.

<i>To exact, to want of.</i>	<i>Exiger 1.</i>
What do you want of me?	} Qu'exigez-vous de moi?
What do you exact of me?	
I exact nothing of you.	Je n'exige rien de vous.
A milk-pot.	Un pot au lait.

*Obs. B.* When the second noun is used to determine the first more precisely, it is preceded by *au* or *à la* for the singular, and *aux* for the plural. Ex.

The rabbit-man.	L'homme <i>aux</i> lapins.
The oyster-woman.	La femme <i>aux</i> huîtres.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS TAKEN FROM THE LATIN AND GREEK<sup>1</sup>.

*Obs. C.* Proper names of men ending in English in *a* are the same in both languages; but those of women and goddesses having that ending become French by changing the final *a* into *e* mute. Ex.

<sup>1</sup> All those which deviate from these rules are separately noted.

Caligula.	Caligula.
Dolabella.	Dolabella.
Cleopatra.	Cléopatre.
Diana.	Diane.
Julia.	Julie.

*Obs. D.* Most proper names ending in English in *as* or *es* become French by changing these finals into *e* mute. Ex.

Eneas.	Énée.
Pythagoras.	Pythagore.
Ulysses.	Ulysse.
Socrates.	Socrate.

*Obs. E.* Proper names ending in *o* change it in French into *on*. Ex.

Cicero.	Cicéron.
Dido.	Didon.

*Obs. F.* Most proper names ending in *us* are the same in both languages when they have but two syllables; but when they are composed of three or more syllables they become French by changing it into *e* mute. Ex.

Cyrus.	Cyrus.
Venus.	Vénus.
Camillus.	Camille.
Orpheus.	Orphée.

*Obs. G.* Most of those ending in *al* or *is* are the same in both languages. Ex.

Juvenal.	Juvénal.
Sesostris.	Sésosttris.

*Obs. H.* Those ending in English in *ander* change it in French into *andre*. Ex.

Alexander.	Alexandre.
Lysander.	Lysandre.

REMARK.—As for the proper names of kingdoms, provinces, and towns, ending in English in *a*, they become French by changing the ending *a* into *e* mute, and those of towns ending in *burg*, change it into *bourg*<sup>2</sup>. Ex.

---

<sup>2</sup> Such proper names as deviate from this rule are either separately noted, or are the same in both languages.



Arabia.	L'Arabie.
Asia.	L'Asie.
Friburg.	Fribourg.
Hamburg.	Hambourg.

---

Dainties.	Les bons morceaux.
He is fond of dainties.	Il aime les bons morceaux.
At broad daylight.	En plein jour.
To sit down to dinner.	Se mettre à table.

---

## EXERCISES.

234.

Has your sister been out to-day?—She has *b  en* out to buy several things.—What has she bought?—She has bought (*s'est achet  *) a silk gown, a velvet bonnet, and a lace veil (*un voile de dentelle*).—What have you done with (*de*) my silver tankard?—It is on the kitchen-table together with (*avec*) the oil-bottle, the milk-pot, the pitcher, the mustard-pot, and the coffee-mill.—Do you ask for a wine-bottle?—No, I ask for a bottle of wine, and not for a wine-bottle.—If you will have the goodness to give me the key of the wine-cellar (*la cave au vin*) I shall go for one.—What does that man want of me?—He exacts nothing; but he will accept what you will give him, for he is in want of every thing.—I will tell you that I am not fond of him, for his behaviour raises suspicion in my mind. He exaggerates all that he says and does.—You are wrong in having such a bad opinion (*une opinion*) of him, for he has been a father to you.—I know what I say. He has cheated me on a small and a large scale, and whenever he calls he asks me for something. In this manner he has alternately asked me for all I had: my fowling-piece, my fishing-line, my repeater, and my golden candlesticks.—Do not give yourself up so much to grief, else (*sinon*) you will make me melt in tears.

Democritus and Heraclitus were two philosophers of a very different character (*d'un caract  re bien diff  rent*): the first laughed at the follies (*la folie*) of men, and the other wept at them.—They

were both right, for the follies of men deserve to be laughed and wept at.

## 235.

Have you seen your niece?—Yes ; she is a very good girl, who writes well, and speaks French still better : therefore she is loved and honoured by every body.—And her brother, what is he doing ? —Do not speak to me of him ; he is a naughty boy, who writes always badly, and speaks French still worse ; he is therefore (*aussi n'est-il*) loved by nobody. He is very fond of dainties, but he does not like books. Sometimes he goes to bed at broad daylight, and pretends to be ill ; but when we sit down to dinner he is generally better again (*rétabli*). He is to study physic (*la médecine*), but he has not the slightest inclination for it (*aucune envie*).—He is almost always talking of his dogs, which he loves passionately (*passionnément*). His father is extremely sorry for it. The young simpleton (*un imbécile*) said lately to his sister, “ I shall enlist as soon as a peace (*la paix*) is proclaimed (*publier*). ”

My dear father and my dear mother dined yesterday with some friends at the King of Spain (*l'Espagne*).—Why do you always speak English and never French ?—Because I am too bashful (*timide*). You are joking : is an Englishman ever bashful ?—I have a keen appetite (*grand appétit*) : give me something good to eat.—Have you any money ?—No, Sir.—Then I have nothing to eat for you.—Will you not let me have some (*ne me donnez-vous pas*) on credit ? I pledge (*engager*) my honour.—That is too little.—What (*comment*), Sir !

## SEVENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

*Soixante-dix-huitième Leçon.*

## PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

THE formation of the subjunctive in French presents no difficulty whatsoever, as all verbs of this mood end alike. The present, with a few exceptions, which we shall presently give, is formed from the present participle, by changing *ant* into *e* mute for the first and third persons singular, into *es* for the second person singular, and into *ent* for the third person plural. As for the first and second persons plural they are exactly like the imperfect. Ex.

SPEAKING—That I may speak,  
that thou mayest speak, that he  
or she may speak.

That we may speak, that you may  
speak, that they may speak.

FINISHING—That I may finish,  
that thou mayest finish, that he  
or she may finish.

That we may finish, that you may  
finish, that they may finish.

KNOWING—That I may know,  
that thou mayest know, that he  
or she may know.

That we may know, that you may  
know, that they may know.

RENDERING—That I may render,  
that thou mayest render, that  
he or she may render.

That we may render, that you may  
render, that they may render.

PARLANT—Que je parle, que tu  
parles, qu'il ou qu'elle parle.

Que nous parlions, que vous par-  
liez, qu'ils ou qu'elles parlent.

FINISSANT—Que je finisse, que  
tu finisses, qu'il ou qu'elle  
finisse.

Que nous finissions, que vous  
finissiez, qu'ils ou qu'elles finis-  
sent.

SACHANT—Que je sache, que tu  
saches, qu'il ou qu'elle sache.

Que nous sachions, que vous sa-  
chiez, qu'ils ou qu'elles sachent.

RENDANT—Que je rende, que tu  
rendes, qu'il ou qu'elle rende.

Que nous rendions, que vous ren-  
diez, qu'ils ou qu'elles rendent.

*Obs. A.* The third person singular of the imperative, and the third person singular of the present of the subjunctive, are always alike. (See *Obs. A.* Lesson LXX.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

ALLANT, going—que j'*aille*, que tu *ailles*, qu'il *aille*, que nous *allions*, que vous *alliez*, qu'ils *aient*.

TENANT, holding—que je *tienne*, que tu *tiennes*, qu'il *tienne*, que nous *tenions*, que vous *teniez*, qu'ils *tiennent*.

And all compounds of *tenir* \*, such as: *obtenir* \*, to obtain; *contenir* \*, to contain, &c.

VENANT, coming—que je *vienn*e, que tu *viennes*, qu'il *vienn*e, que nous *venions*, que vous *veniez*, qu'ils *viennent*.

And all compounds of *venir* \*, such as: *revenir* \*, to come back; *devenir* \*, to become, &c.

ACQUÉRANT, acquiring—que j'*acquière*, que tu *acquières*, qu'il *acquière*, que nous *acquérions*, que vous *acquériez*, qu'ils *acquièrent*.

MOURANT, dying—que je *meure*, que tu *meures*, qu'il *meure*, que nous *mourions*, que vous *mouriez*, qu'ils *meurent*.

RECEVANT, receiving—que je *reçoive*, que tu *reçoives*, qu'il *reçoive*, que nous *recevions*, que vous *receviez*, qu'ils *reçoivent*.

And all those ending in *evoir*, such as: *apercevoir*, to perceive; *concevoir*, to conceive; *devoir*, to owe, &c.

POUVANT, being able—que je *puisse*, que tu *puisses*, qu'il *puisse*, que nous *puissions*, que vous *puissiez*, qu'ils *puissent*.

VALANT, being worth—que je *vaille*, que tu *vailles*, qu'il *vaille*, que nous *valions*, que vous *valiez*, qu'ils *vailent*<sup>1</sup>.

MOUVANT, moving—que je *meuve*, que tu *meuves*, qu'il *meuve*, que nous *mouvions*, que vous *mouviez*, qu'ils *meuvent*.

AYANT, having—que j'*aie*, que tu *aies*, qu'il *ait*, que nous *ayons*, que vous *ayez*, qu'ils *aient*.

VOULANT, wishing—que je *veuille*, que tu *veuilles*, qu'il *veuille*, que nous *voulions*, que vous *vouliez*, qu'ils *veuillent*.

ÉTANT, being—que je *sois*, que tu *sois*, qu'il *soit*, que nous *soyons*, que vous *soyez*, qu'ils *soient*.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Prévaloir*, to prevail, is regular in the present of the subjunctive; thus: que je *prévale*, que tu *prévales*, qu'il *prévale*, que nous *prévalions*, que vous *prévaliez*, qu'ils *prévalent*.



BUVANT, drinking—que je *boive*, que tu *boives*, qu'il *boive*, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils *boivent*.

FAISANT, doing—que je *fasse*, que tu *fasses*, qu'il *fasse*, que nous *fassions*, que vous *fassiez*, qu'ils *fassent*.

PRENANT, taking—que je *prenne*, que tu *prennes*, qu'il *prenne*, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils *prennent*.

And all compounds of *prendre* \*, such as: *apprendre* \*, to learn; *comprendre* \*, to understand; *entreprendre* \*, to undertake; *se méprendre* \*, to mistake; *reprendre* \*, to retake, &c.

*Obs. B.* In the above list of exceptions it will be perceived that all those persons which really deviate from our rule on the present of the subjunctive are printed in italics: as the verbs, *aller*, *tenir*, *venir*, *acquiescir*, *mourir*, *recevoir*, *valoir*, *mouvoir*, *vouloir*, *boire*, and *prendre*, do not deviate from it in the first and second persons plural, and *avoir* does not deviate from it in the first and second persons singular.

#### REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN FRENCH.

*A.* The subjunctive in French has scarcely any thing in common with the subjunctive in English, and when it has, it is because preceding words require it. It is required after the following impersonals when the verb that follows is preceded by the conjunction *que*.

It is necessary that.	{ Il faut que.
It is extraordinary that.	{ Il est nécessaire que.
It is sad that.	Il est extraordinaire que.
It is right that.	Il est fâcheux que.
It is wrong that.	Il est juste que.
It is proper that.	Il est injuste que.
It is surprising that.	Il est à propos que.
It is becoming that.	Il est surprenant que.
It is time that.	Il convient que.
It is important, or it matters that.	Il est temps que.
It is sufficient that.	Il importe or il est important que.
	Il suffit que.
It is to be wished that.	{ Il est à désirer que.
	{ Il est à souhaiter que.
It seems that.	Il semble que <sup>2</sup> .
It is possible that.	Il est possible que.
It is better that.	Il vaut mieux que.

<sup>2</sup> *Il semble*, it seems, is also construed with the indicative, particularly when it has an indirect object, as: *il me semble*, it seems to me; *il te semble*, it seems to thee; *il lui semble*, it seems to him or her, &c.



## EXAMPLES.

You must have the goodness to do that.	Il faut que vous <i>ayez</i> la bonté de faire cela.
It is necessary that you should be here at an early hour.	Il faut que vous <i>soyez</i> ici de bonne heure.
You must do that.	Il faut que vous <i>fassiez</i> cela.
It is necessary that one should have money.	Il est nécessaire qu'on <i>ait</i> de l'argent.
I must go to market.	Il faut que j' <i>aille</i> au marché.
I must go away.	Il faut que je m' <i>en aille</i> .
It is right that you should be punished.	Il est juste que vous <i>soyez</i> puni.
It is sufficient for you to know that.	Il suffit que vous <i>sachiez</i> cela.
It is time for you to speak.	Il est temps que vous <i>parliez</i> .
We must sell our goods immediately.	Il faut que nous <i>vendions</i> nos marchandises tout de suite.
What must I say?	Que faut-il que je <i>dise</i> ?
It is important that that should be done.	Il importe que cela <i>se fasse</i> .
It is proper that we should set out.	Il est à propos que nous <i>partions</i> .
It is to be wished that you should go to the country.	Il est à souhaiter que tu <i>ailles</i> à la campagne.
It is to be desired that you should return soon.	Il est à désirer que tu <i>reviennes</i> promptement.
It seems you are angry.	Il semble que vous <i>soyez</i> fâché.
It is necessary I should finish to-day.	Il est nécessaire que je <i>finisse</i> aujourd'hui.
It might be possible that you would not set out before to-morrow.	Il serait possible que tu ne <i>partisses</i> que demain.
It is sufficient that you are satisfied.	Il suffit que vous <i>soyez</i> content.
It is better that we should have arrived this morning.	Il vaut mieux que nous <i>soyons</i> arrivés ce matin.

*Obs. C.* When the impersonal *il est* is accompanied by an adjective denoting *evidence, certainty, or probability*, such as *clair*, clear; *certain*, certain; *vrai*, true; *probable*, probable, &c., it governs the next verb in the indicative, when it is affirmatively, and in the subjunctive when interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally used. Ex.

It is certain that you are in the wrong.

It is not certain that you are in the right.

It is probable that he will do it.

Is it probable that he will do it?

It is true that he is capable of it.

If it were true that he was capable of it.

*Ind.* Il est certain que vous avez tort.

*Subj.* Il n'est pas certain que vous ayez raison.

*Ind.* Il est probable qu'il le fera.

*Subj.* Est-il probable qu'il le fasse?

*Ind.* Il est vrai qu'il en est capable.

*Subj.* S'il était vrai qu'il en fût capable.

REMARK B. The subjunctive with *que* is further used in French after verbs expressing doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, despair, complaint, or any affection of the mind, such as :

Aimer,	to like.
Aimer mieux,	to like better.
Approuver,	to approve.
Appréhender,	to apprehend.
Attendre,	to expect.
Avoir peur,	to be afraid.
Commander,	to command.
Consentir *,	to consent.
Craindre *,	to fear.
Défendre,	to forbid.
Désapprouver,	to disapprove.
Désirer,	to desire.
Douter,	to doubt.
Empêcher,	to hinder.
Être au désespoir,	to despair.
Exiger,	to exact.
Mériter,	to deserve.

Nier,	to deny.
Ordonner,	to order.
Permettre *,	to permit.
Préférer,	to prefer.
Prendre garde,	to take care.
Prier,	to pray.
Regretter,	to regret.
S'étonner,	to wonder.
Se plaindre *,	to complain.
Se réjouir,	to rejoice.
Souffrir *,	to suffer.
Souhaiter,	to wish.
Supposer,	to suppose.
Trembler,	to tremble.
Trouver bon,	to approve.
Trouver mauvais,	to disapprove.
Vouloir *,	to be willing.

## EXAMPLES.

I wish you may succeed.  
 I doubt that he is arrived.  
 I wish to be obeyed.  
 I wish him to be told so.  
 He wishes me to have patience.  
 I doubt his being at home.  
 I fear we shall have a storm.

He denies having done it.

Je désire que vous réussissiez.  
 Je doute qu'il soit arrivé.  
 Je veux qu'on m'obéisse.  
 Je souhaite qu'on le lui dise.  
 Il veut que j'aie patience.  
 Je doute qu'il soit à la maison.  
 Je crains que nous n'ayons un orage.  
 Il nie qu'il l'ait fait.

He complains of your having ill-treated him.

I am very sorry for your having done it.

I regret that you should have been obliged to wait.

You will approve of my not going thither.

He disapproved of your having said it.

What do you wish these men to buy ?

What do you wish him to answer ?

Do you expect him to give you his goods for nothing ?

What do you want me to drink ?

Il se plaint que vous *l'ayez* mal-traité.

Je suis au désespoir que vous *l'ayez* fait.

Je regrette que vous *ayez* été obligé d'attendre.

Vous trouverez bon que je n'y *aille* pas.

Il a trouvé mauvais que vous *l'ayez* dit.

Que voulez-vous que ces hommes *achètent* ?

Que voulez-vous qu'il *réponde* ?

Vous attendez-vous à ce qu'il vous *donne* ses marchandises pour rien ?

Que voulez-vous que je *boive* ?

*Obs. D.* All verbs expressing the intellectual faculties of the mind govern the indicative when they are used affirmatively, and the subjunctive when negatively or interrogatively, or when they are preceded by the conjunction *si*. Such verbs are :

Affirmer,	to affirm.
Assurer,	to assure.
Apercevoir,	to perceive.
Avouer,	to confess.
Conclure *,	to conclude.
Convenir *,	to agree.
Croire *,	to believe.
Déclarer,	to declare.
Dire *,	to say.
Espérer,	to hope.
Juger,	to judge.
Jurer,	to swear.

Maintenir *,	to maintain.
Oublier,	to forget.
Penser,	to think.
Prédire *,	to foretell.
Prévoir *,	to foresee.
Promettre *,	to promise.
Publier,	to publish.
Savoir *,	to know.
Songer,	to think.
Soutenir *,	to maintain.
Supposer,	to suppose.
Voir *,	to see.

#### EXAMPLES.

I believe he is in the right.

Do you believe that horse is worth a hundred crowns ?

I do not believe that it is worth a hundred crowns.

I hope he will come.

*Ind.* Je crois qu'il a raison.

*Subj.* Croyez-vous que ce cheval *vaille* cent écus ?

*Subj.* Je ne crois pas qu'il *vaille* cent écus.

*Ind.* J'espère qu'il viendra.

Do you hope he will come ?  
 I think he has done it.  
 Do you think he has done it ?  
 If you think it will be fine weather let us set out for the country.

*Subj.* Espérez-vous qu'il *vienn*e ?  
*Ind.* Je pense qu'il l'a fait.  
*Subj.* Pensez-vous qu'il l'*ait* fait ?  
 Si vous pensez qu'il *fasse* beau temps, partons pour la campagne.

*Obs. E.* Verbs expressing fear, such as: *craindre*, to fear; *avoir peur*, to be afraid, govern the subjunctive with *ne* before it, when they are not negatively used<sup>3</sup>. Ex.

I fear that they will come.  
 I am afraid you will speak of me.

Je crains qu'ils *ne viennent*.  
 J'ai peur que vous *ne parliez* de moi.  
 Ne craint-il pas que vous *n'en parliez* ?

Does he not fear that you might speak of it ?

*Obs. F.* But when such verbs are used negatively they govern the subjunctive without *ne*. Ex.

I am not afraid that the man will come.

Je n'ai pas peur que l'homme *vienn*e.

*Obs. G.* The verbs *douter*, to doubt, and *nier*, to deny, require the subjunctive with *ne* before it when they are negatively used. Ex.

Do not doubt my being always your friend.

*Ne doutez pas que je ne sois* toujours votre ami.

He does not deny your having done it.

Il ne nie pas que vous ne l'*ayez fait*.

REMARK C. The subjunctive is further governed by an adjective or participle preceded by one of the verbs, *être* \*, to be; *paraître* \*, to appear; *sembler*, to seem. Some of such adjectives or participles are :

Affligé, afflicted  
 Bien aise, glad.  
 Charmé, charmed.  
 Content, satisfied.

Enchanté, enchanted.  
 Étonné, astonished.  
 Fâché, sorry.  
 Surpris, surprised, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Except, however, when the phrase is interrogative, or when it is preceded by *si*. Ex. *Craignez-vous de l'offenser* ? Do you fear to offend him ? *Si je craignais que vous le fissiez*. If I were afraid that you would do it.



## EXAMPLES.

I am sorry that she is ill.	Je suis <i>fâché</i> qu'elle <i>soit</i> malade.
I am charmed that you are here.	Je suis <i>charmé</i> que vous <i>soyez</i> ici.
I am glad that he has received his money.	Je suis <i>bien aise</i> qu'il <i>ait eu</i> son argent.
She is angry that you are my friend.	Elle est <i>fâchée</i> que vous <i>soyez</i> mon ami.
I am surprised that you are not more attentive.	Je suis <i>étonné</i> que vous ne <i>soyez</i> pas plus attentif.
I am extremely glad that your sister has recovered.	Je suis <i>enchanté</i> que votre sœur <i>soit</i> rétablie.
Your father is afflicted that you miss your lessons.	Votre père est <i>affligé</i> que vous <i>manquiez</i> vos leçons.
I am surprised that you have not done your task.	Je suis <i>surpris</i> que vous <i>n'ayez</i> pas fait votre devoir.

*Obs. H.* In all these instances the genitive *de ce* may be used, but then the indicative must follow. Ex.

I am charmed at your being here.	Je suis charmé <i>de ce</i> que vous êtes ici.
He is glad that you have received your money.	Il est bien aise <i>de ce</i> que vous avez eu votre argent.

## EXERCISES.

236.

Will you relate (*raconter*) something to me?—What do you wish me to relate to you?—A little anecdote, if you like.—A little boy one day at table (*à table*) asked for some meat; his father said that it was not polite to ask for any, and that he should wait until some was given to him (*qu'on lui en donnât*, imperf. subjunctive; see the following Lesson).—The poor boy, seeing every one eat, and that nothing was given to him, said to his father: "My dear father, give me a little salt, if you please." "What will you do with it?" asked the father. "I wish to eat it with the meat which you will give me," replied (*répliquer*) the child. Every body admired (*admirer*) the little boy's wit; and his father, perceiving that he had nothing, gave him meat without



his asking for it.—Who was that little boy that asked for meat at table?—He was the son of one of my friends.—Why did he ask for some meat?—He asked for some because he had a good appetite.—Why did his father not give him some immediately?—Because he had forgotten it.—Was the little boy wrong in asking for some?—He was wrong, for he ought to have waited.—Why did he ask his father for some salt?—He asked for some salt, that his father might perceive (*pour que son père s'aperçût*, imperf. subjunctive; see next Lesson) that he had no meat, and that he might give him some (*et qu'il lui en donnât*, imperf. subjunctive; see next Lesson).

Do you wish me to relate to you another anecdote?—You will greatly (*beaucoup*) oblige me.—Some one purchasing some goods of a shopkeeper (*un marchand*), said to him, “You ask too much; you should not sell so dear to me as to another, because I am a friend (*puisque je suis des amis de la maison*).” The merchant replied, “Sir, we must gain something by (*avec*) our friends, for our enemies will never come to the shop.”

## 237.

A young prince, seven years old, was admired by every body for his wit (*à cause de son esprit*); being once in the society of an old officer, the latter observed, in speaking of the young prince, that when children discovered so much genius (*avoir tant d'esprit*) in their early years, they generally grew very stupid (*en ont ordinairement fort peu*) when they came to maturity (*quand ils sont avancés en âge*). “If that is the case,” said the young prince, who had heard it, “then you must have been very remarkable for your genius (*avoir infiniment d'esprit*) when you were a child (*dans votre enfance*).”

An Englishman, on first visiting France, met with a very young child in the streets of Calais, who spoke the French language with fluency and elegance (*couramment et avec élégance*).—“Good Heaven (*Mon Dieu*)! is it possible,” exclaimed he, “that even children here speak the French language with purity (*la pureté*)?”

Let us seek (*rechercher*) the friendship of the good, and avoid (*éviter*) the society of the wicked (*le méchant*); for bad company corrupts (*les mauvaises sociétés corrompent*) good manners (*les*

*bonnes mœurs*).—What sort of weather is it to-day?—It snows continually (*toujours*), as it snowed yesterday, and, according to all appearances, will also snow to-morrow.—Let it snow; I should like it to snow (*qu'il neigedt*, imperf. subjunctive; see next Lesson) still more, for I am always very well when it is very cold.—And I am (*et moi, je me porte*) always very well when it is neither cold nor warm.—It is too windy to-day, and we should do better if we stayed at home.—Whatever weather it may be I must go out; for I promised to be with my sister at a quarter past eleven, and I must keep my word (*tenir\* parole*). (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## SEVENTY-NINTH LESSON.

*Soixante-dix-neuvième Leçon.*

## IMPERFECT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

THE imperfect of the subjunctive is formed from the preterite definite (Lesson LXVIII.) by changing the final *ai* into *asse* for the verbs of the first conjugation, and by adding *se* to all those of the other three conjugations. This rule has not a single exception throughout the French language.

I spoke—that I might speak.

*Je parlai*—que je parlasse, que tu parlasses, qu'il parlât, que nous parlussions, que vous parlassiez, qu'ils parlassent.

I finished—that I might finish.

*Je finis*—que je finisse, que tu finisses, qu'il finît, que nous finissions, que vous finissiez, qu'ils finissent.

I received—that I might receive.

*Je reçus*—que je reçusse, que tu reçusses, qu'il reçût, que nous reçussions, que vous reçussiez, qu'ils reçussent.

I sold—that I might sell.

*Je vendis*—que je vendisse, que tu vendisses, qu'il vendît, que nous vendissions, que vous vendissiez, qu'ils vendissent.

*Obs. A.* As to the formation of the preterite, or preterperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive, it is exactly the same as in the indicative, the former being compounded of the present subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the past participle of another verb, the latter of the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary and the past participle of another verb. Ex.

That I may have loved.

Que j'aie aimé.

That I may have come.

Que je sois venu.

That I might have loved.

Que j'eusse aimé.

That I might have come.

Que j'eusse venu.

*Obs. B.* The past tenses of the subjunctive are used whenever those terms which govern it are in the past tense or in the conditional.

*REMARK D. ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.*—After the following conjunctions the verb is always put in the subjunctive mood :

<i>Afin que,</i>	that, in order that, to the end that.	<i>Nonobstant</i>	for all that, not- withstanding that.
<i>'A moins que,</i>	unless.	<i>Posé que,</i>	suppose that.
<i>Au cas que,</i>	if.	<i>Pour que,</i>	that, in order that.
<i>Avant que,</i>	before.	<i>Pour peu que,</i>	if ever so little, how little soever.
<i>Bien que,</i>	though.	<i>Pourvu que,</i>	provided, save that.
<i>De crainte que,</i>	for fear, lest.	<i>Quoique,</i>	though.
<i>De peur que,</i>	lest.	<i>Sans que,</i>	without.
<i>En cas que,</i>	in case, if.	<i>Si peu que,</i>	however little.
<i>Encore que,</i>	though.	<i>Soit que,</i>	whether.
<i>Jusqu'à ce que,</i>	till, until.	<i>Supposé que,</i>	suppose that <sup>1</sup> .
<i>Loin que,</i>	far from.		
<i>Non que,</i>	} not that.		
<i>Non pas que,</i>			

## EXAMPLES.

Will you stay here until I can go out with you ?	<i>Voulez-vous rester ici jusqu'à ce que je puisse sortir avec vous ?</i>
I will go out before he comes back.	<i>Je sortirai avant qu'il ne revienne.</i>
If you had what you have not, you would be rich.	<i>En cas que vous eussiez ce que vous n'avez pas, vous seriez riche.</i>
I send you my book, that you may read it.	<i>Je vous envoie mon livre, afin que vous le lisiez.</i>
Unless you accompany her, she will not go out.	<i>'A moins que vous ne l'accompagniez, elle ne sortira pas.</i>
Though your children are idle yet they improve.	<i>Bien que vos enfants soient paresseux, ils font des progrès.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Malgré que* may be added to these conjunctions ; but as such it is used only with *en avoir* in the following expressions : *Malgré que j'en aie, que tu en aies, qu'il en ait, &c. ; malgré que j'en eusse, que tu en eusses, &c. &c. ;* in spite of me, of thee, of him, &c. *Ex. Il l'a fait malgré que j'en eusse,* he has done it in spite of me ; *il me faudra partir, malgré que j'en aie,* I shall be obliged to set out in spite of me.



If a man had ever so little acquaintance with another, he was bound to take a part in the dispute, and venture his person as much as if he had himself been angry.

Be it as it may.

Though she is little and bad-looking, she is nevertheless amiable.

I would not have her for a wife, though she is rich, and has a great deal of wit, because she is not good-hearted.

Provided you are my friend I am satisfied.

Whether you are in the right or in the wrong.

I name distinctly the persons I wish to name, always with the intention to praise their virtue and their merit: I write their names in large letters, that they may be seen at a distance, and that the reader may not run the risk of missing them.

Philoctetes naturally spoke less: but he was quick; and however little his vivacity was excited, he was made to say what he had resolved to keep secret.

*Pour peu qu'un homme fût connu d'un autre, il fallait qu'il entrât dans la dispute, et qu'il payât de sa personne, comme s'il avait été lui-même en colère.*

*Quoiqu'il en soit.*

*Quoiqu'elle soit petite et qu'elle ait mauvaise mine, elle ne laisse pas d'être aimable.*

*Je ne la voudrais pas pour femme, quoiqu'elle soit riche, et qu'elle ait beaucoup d'esprit, parce qu'elle n'a pas bon cœur.*

*Pourvu que vous soyez de mes amis je suis content.*

*Soit que vous ayez raison ou tort.*

*Je nomme nettement les personnes que je veux nommer, toujours dans la vue de louer leur vertu ou leur mérite; j'écris leurs noms en lettres capitales, afin qu'on les voie de loin, et que le lecteur ne coure pas risque de les manquer. (La Bruyère.)*

*Philoctète naturellement parlait moins: mais il était prompt; et si peu qu'on excitât sa vivacité, on lui faisait dire ce qu'il avait résolu de taire. (Fénélon.)*

*Obs. C.* Some conjunctions govern the indicative when the sentence affirms positively that the thing in question is or will be, and the subjunctive when it is not certain or only wished for. They are the following:

*De façon que.*

*De manière que.*

*De sorte que.*

*En sorte que.*

*Tellement que.*

*Sinon que.*

} So that, insomuch that.

| Except that.



You behave in such a manner that  
you are loved by every body.

*Ind.* Vous vous conduisez *de façon*  
*que* vous êtes aimé de tout le  
monde.

Behave in such a manner that you  
may be loved.

*Subj.* Conduisez-vous *de façon*  
*que* vous *soyez* aimé.

*Obs. D.* The conjunction *que* employed in the second member of a sentence to avoid repetition of a conjunction occurring in the first, governs the same mood as the word it stands for. *Ex.*

Since you know him, and are re-  
sponsible for him.

*Ind.* Dès *que* vous le connaissez et  
*que* vous répondez de lui.

Unless you are attentive, and do  
your task regularly, you will not  
learn.

*Subj.* 'A moins *que* vous ne soyez  
attentif et *que* vous ne *fassiez*  
régulièrement votre devoir, vous  
n'apprendrez pas.

*Obs. E.* The word *que* used to avoid the repetition of *si* governs the subjunctive. *Ex.*

If your friend were here, and would  
call upon me.

*Si* votre ami était ici et *qu'il* vou-  
lût venir me voir.

If he loved me, and sincerely  
wished my welfare.

S'il m'aimait et *qu'il* désirât sin-  
cèrement mon bonheur.

If any body come, and I should  
not be at home, send for me.

*Si* quelqu'un venait et *que* je ne  
*fusse* pas à la maison, envoyez-  
moi chercher.

If your brother writes to you, and  
you are satisfied with his letter,  
I beg of you to let me know it.

*Si* votre frère vous écrit et *que*  
vous *soyez* content de sa lettre,  
je vous prie de m'en faire part.

*Obs. F.* The subjunctive is used after the conjunction *que* when it is substituted for various conjunctions, such as: *afin que, soit que, sans que, avant que, à moins que, jusqu'à ce que.* *Ex.*

Be industrious, that your parents  
may be satisfied.

Appliquez-vous, *que* vos parents  
*soient* contents (*que* stands for  
*afin que*).

Whether I read or write it is  
always found fault with.

*Que* je lise ou *que* j'écrive on y  
trouve toujours à redire (*que*  
stands here instead of *soit que*).

I can say nothing without your  
knowing it.

Je ne puis rien dire *que* tu ne le  
saches (*que* stands here for *sans*  
*que*).

Do not begin before I give you notice.

He is never punished unless he has deserved it.

Wait till your father returns.

Ne commencez pas *que* je ne vous avertisse (*que* stands here for *avant que*).

Jamais on ne le punit, *qu'il ne l'ait mérité* (*que* stands for *à moins que*).

Attendez *que* votre père revienne (*que* stands for *jusqu'à ce que*).

### EXERCISES.

238.

M. de Turenne would never buy any thing on credit of tradesmen (*le marchand*), for fear, he said, they should lose a great part of it, if he happened to be killed. All the workmen (*un ouvrier*) who were employed about his house had orders (*avait ordre*) to bring in their bills (*un mémoire*), before he set out for the campaign (*se mettre* \* *en campagne*), and they were regularly paid.

You will never be respected (*respecter*) unless you forsake (*abandonner*) the bad company you keep.—You cannot finish your work to-night, unless I help you.—I will explain to you (*expliquer*) every difficulty, that you may not be disheartened (*décourager*) in your undertaking (*une entreprise*).—Suppose you should lose your friends, what would become of you?—In case you want my assistance, call me; I shall help you.—A wise and prudent man (*un homme sage et prudent*) lives with economy when young, in order that he may enjoy the fruit of his labour when he is old.—Carry this money to Mr. N. in order that he may be able to pay his debts (*une dette*).—Will you lend me that money?—I will not lend it you unless you promise to return (*rendre*) it to me as soon as you can.—Did the general arrive?—He arrived yesterday morning at the camp (*le camp*), weary (*las*), and tired, (*harassé*), but very seasonably (*très à propos*); he immediately gave his orders to begin the action, though he had not yet all his troops.—Are your sisters happy?—They are not, though they are rich, because they are not contented. Although they have a

good memory, that is not enough to learn any language whatever (*quelque langue que ce soit*) ; they must make use of their judgment (*le jugement*).—Behold how amiable that lady is ; for all that she (*quoiqu'elle*) has no fortune, I do not love her the less.—Will you lend me your violin ?—I will lend it you, provided you return it to me to-night.—Will your mother call upon me ?—She will, provided you will promise to take her to the concert.—I shall not cease to importune (*importuner*) her, till she has forgiven me.—Give me that penknife (*le canif*).—I will give it you, provided you will not make a bad use of it.—Shall you go to London ?—I will go, provided you accompany (*accompagner*) me ; and I will write again (*récrire* \*) to your brother, lest he should not have received my letter.

## 239.

Where were you during the engagement ?—I was in bed, to have my wounds (*une blessure*) dressed (*panser*). Would to God (*Plût à Dieu*) I had been there ! I would have conquered (*vaincre*) or perished (*périr*).—We avoided an engagement for fear we should be taken, their force being superior (*supérieure*) to ours.—God forbid (*à Dieu ne plaise*, with the subjunctive,) I should blame your conduct, but your business will never be done properly unless you do it yourself.—Will you set out soon ?—I shall not set out till I have dined.—Why did you tell me that my father was arrived, though you knew the contrary ?—You are so hasty (*prompt*), that however little you are contradicted (*contrarié*) you fly into a passion (*s'emporter*) in an instant. If your father does not arrive to-day, and if you want money, I will lend you some.—I am much obliged to you.—Have you done your task ?—Not quite ; if I had had time, and if I had not been so uneasy about (*de*) the arrival (*l'arrivée*) of my father, I should have done it.—If you study, and are attentive, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time.—He who wishes to teach an art, must know it thoroughly (*à fond*) ; he must give none but clear (*précise*) and well-digested (*digérer*) notions (*la notion*) of it ; he must instil (*faire entrer*) them one by one into the minds (*dans l'esprit*) of his pupils, and, above all (*surtout*), he must not over-

burden (*surcharger*) their memory with useless or unimportant (*insignifiant*) rules.

My dear friend, lend me a louis.—Here are (*en voici*) two instead of one.—How much obliged I am to you (*que d'obligations je vous ai*)!—I am always glad when I see you, and I find my happiness in yours.—Is this house to be sold?—Do you wish to buy it?—Why not?—Why does your sister not speak?—She would speak if she were not always so absent (*distract*).—I like pretty anecdotes; they season (*assaisonner*) conversation (*la conversation*), and amuse every body. Pray relate me some.—Look, if you please, at page 148 of the book which I lent you, and you will find some. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)

## EIGHTIETH LESSON.

*Quatre-vingtième Leçon.*

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED).

*However, howsoever.* | *Quelque* (indeclinable).

*Obs. A.* *Quelque*, before an adjective is indeclinable, and governs the subjunctive.

However good you may be.	<i>Quelque bon que vous soyez.</i>
How rich soever they may be.	<i>Quelque riches qu'ils soient.</i>
<i>Whatever, whatsoever.</i>	<i>Quelque</i> (declinable).

*Obs. B.* *Quelque*, followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *être*, to be, is invariable before a noun singular, and takes an *s* only before a noun plural without regard to its gender. It always governs the subjunctive.

Whatsoever courage you may have, he has more than you.	<i>Quelque courage que vous ayez, il en a plus que vous.</i>
Whatsoever patience we may have, we will never have enough.	<i>Quelque patience que nous ayons, nous n'en aurons jamais assez.</i>
Whatsoever riches he may have, he will soon see the end of them.	<i>Quelques richesses qu'il ait, il en verra bientôt la fin.</i>
Whatsoever kindness I have for him, I never shall have as much as he merits.	<i>Quelque bonté que j'aie pour lui, je n'en aurai jamais autant qu'il le mérite.</i>
Whatsoever faults you may make, I will take care to correct them.	<i>Quelques fautes que vous fassiez, j'aurai soin de les corriger.</i>
<i>Whatever, whatsoever.</i>	<i>Mas. Quel que ; plur. quels que. Fem. Quelle que ; plur. quelles que</i> (declinable).



*Obs. C.* *Quel que, quelle que*, in two words, followed by a substantive, and the verb *être*, to be, agrees with the substantive in gender and number, and governs the subjunctive.

Whatever may be the happiness which you enjoy, I am happier than you.

Whatsoever may be the fortune which you enjoy, you may lose it in an instant.

Whatsoever may be the efforts which you make, you never can succeed.

Whatsoever may be the pains which you take, no one will be under obligations to you for them.

*None or not any.*

*Whatever, whatsoever* (meaning *all things soever*).

*Quel que soit* le bonheur que vous ayez, je suis plus heureux que vous.

*Quelle que soit* la fortune dont vous jouissiez, vous pouvez la perdre en un instant.

*Quels que soient* les efforts que vous fassiez, vous ne pouvez jamais réussir.

*Quelles que soient* les peines que vous preniez, on ne vous en aura aucune obligation.

*Aucun ; fem. aucune.*

*Quelque chose que, or quoi que ce soit.*

*Obs. D.* *Whatever* or *whatsoever* (meaning *all things soever*), are generally expressed by *quelque chose que* or *quoi que*, when at the beginning of a sentence, and by *quoi que ce soit*, when after a verb, and govern the next verb in the subjunctive.

Whatsoever you may do for my father, he will reward you for it.

I complain of nothing whatsoever.

*Whoever, whosoever.*

*Quelque chose que* (or *quoi que*) vous fassiez pour mon père, il vous récompensera.

Je ne me plains de *quoi que ce soit*.

*Qui que ce soit.*

*Obs. E.* The indeterminate pronouns: *qui que ce soit*, whoever; *quelque*, whatever; *personne*, nobody; *pas un*, not one; *aucun*, none or not any; *rien*, nothing; require the next verb in the subjunctive.

Of whomsoever you may speak, avoid slander.

I know nobody who is so good as you are.

I have seen nothing that could be blamed in his conduct.

De *qui que ce soit* que vous parliez, évitez la médisance.

Je ne connais *personne qui soit* aussi bon que vous.

Je n'ai *rien vu qu'on puisse* blâmer dans sa conduite.

## REMARK E. ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The superlative followed by *qui* or *que* requires the next verb in the subjunctive. Ex.

You are the most amiable lady I know.

He is the most extraordinary man that I have ever seen.

You are the most studious of the pupils I have ever had.

The best guard a king can have is the heart of his subjects.

Vous êtes la dame la plus aimable que je connaisse.

C'est l'homme le plus extraordinaire que j'aie jamais vu.

Vous êtes les élèves les plus studieux que j'aie jamais eus.

La meilleure garde qu'un roi puisse avoir, c'est le cœur de ses sujets.

2. An ordinal number followed by *qui* or *que*. Ex.

He is the first man who has dared to tell me so.

You are the second amiable lady that I have met with in this town.

C'est le premier homme qui ait osé me le dire.

Vous êtes la deuxième dame aimable que j'aie rencontrée dans cette ville.

3. The words *le seul*, *l'unique*, the only one, followed by *qui* or *que*. Ex.

You are the only one upon whom I can rely.

Vous êtes le seul sur qui je puisse compter.

*Obs. F.* *Qui* or *que* preceded by a genitive does not always govern the subjunctive. Ex.

She is the handsomest woman of those that were at the opera.

I do not know any of the persons who called on you this morning.

I hope you will say nothing of what I have entrusted you with.

I have read the second volume of the work which you have lent me.

C'est la plus belle des femmes qui étaient à l'opéra.

Je ne connais aucune des personnes qui sont venues chez vous ce matin.

J'espère que vous ne direz rien de ce que je vous ai confié.

J'ai lu le second volume de l'ouvrage que vous m'avez prêté.

*Obs. G.* The subjunctive is employed at the beginning of a sentence to express surprise, a desire, or an imprecation. Ex.

May heaven ever preserve you from such a misfortune.	<i>Fasse le Ciel que pareil malheur ne vous arrive jamais.</i>
Would to God.	<i>Plût à Dieu.</i>
	<i>Plût au Ciel.</i>
Would to God it were so !	<i>Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi !</i>
Would to God he had done it !	<i>Plût à Dieu qu'il l'eût fait !</i>
Would to God that all great lords loved peace !	<i>Plût à Dieu que tous les grands seigneurs aimassent la paix !</i>
Would to God we may never be more unhappy !	<i>Plût au Ciel que nous ne fussions jamais plus malheureux !</i>
May you be happy !	<i>Puissiez-vous être heureux !</i>

*Obs. H.* The subjunctive is also sometimes employed at the head of a sentence in lieu of *quand même*, though, and a conditional. Ex.

Though it cost me all I have, I shall know how to preserve myself from such a misfortune.	<i>Dût-il m'en coûter tout ce que je possède, je saurai me préserver d'un semblable malheur<sup>1</sup>.</i>
Though they were a hundred leagues from hence, I would go for them.	<i>Fussent-ils à cent lieues d'ici, j'irais les chercher<sup>2</sup>.</i>

*Obs. I.* It is essential for foreigners to observe, that it is in the genius of the French language to prefer the construction with the infinitive to that with the subjunctive, whenever the former may be employed without ambiguity, and when the construction of the sentence permits it. Say, therefore :

I come (in order) to see you.	<i>Je viens pour vous voir ; and not Je viens pour que je vous voie.</i>
I do not think I shall be able to go out to-morrow.	<i>Je ne crois pas pouvoir sortir de- main ; and not Je ne crois pas que je puisse sortir demain.</i>

#### REMARK F. ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Let us finally remark on the use of the subjunctive that, whenever the subordinate proposition, or the second member of a sentence, is united

<sup>1</sup> Instead of—*Quand même il devrait m'en coûter tout ce que je possède, &c.*

<sup>2</sup> Instead of—*Quand même ils seraient à cent lieues d'ici, &c.*

to the principal proposition, or the first member of the sentence, by one of the relative pronouns, such as : *qui, que, dont, où, &c.* it is put in the indicative when it expresses any thing certain or positive, and in the subjunctive when it relates to any thing uncertain or doubtful. Ex.

I shall marry a woman who will please me.

I shall marry a woman who must please me ; *or*, the woman I shall marry must please me.

Here is a book for you which you may consult occasionally.

Give me a book that I may be able to consult occasionally.

Lend me that book which you do not want.

Lend me a book which you may not be in want of.

Do not leave a place where you are comfortable, and whence you hear well.

Choose a place where you may be comfortable, and whence you may hear well.

*Ind.* J'épouserai une femme *qui* me *plaira*.

*Subj.* J'épouserai une femme *qui* me *plaise*.

*Ind.* Voilà un livre *que* vous *pourrez* consulter au besoin.

*Subj.* Donnez-moi un livre *que* je *puisse* consulter au besoin.

*Ind.* Prêtez-moi ce livre, *dont* vous n'*avez* pas besoin.

*Subj.* Prêtez-moi un livre *dont* vous n'*ayez* pas besoin.

*Ind.* Ne quittez pas une place *où* vous *êtes* commodément, et d'*où* vous *entendez* bien.

*Subj.* Choisissez une place *où* vous *soyez* commodément, et d'*où* vous *entendiez* bien.

#### SOME ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE, TAKEN FROM THE BEST FRENCH AUTHORS.

Like to be advised, and not to be praised.

I had rather he should signify his name,

And say, I am Orestes or Agamemnon,

Than for him, by a heap of confused wonders,

To stun one's ears without saying any thing to the mind.

We must venture at any rate the happy passage of the Rhine :

A real duty commands us to venture it.

*Aimez qu'on vous conseille et non pas qu'on vous loue. Boileau.*

*J'aimerais mieux encor qu'il déclînât son nom,*

*Et dit, Je suis Oreste, ou bien Agamemnon,*

*Que d'aller, par un tas de confuses merveilles,*

*Sans rien dire à l'esprit étourdir les oreilles. The same.*

*Il faut au moins du Rhin tenter l'heureux passage :*

*Un trop juste devoir veut que nous l'essayions. The same.*



On whom, in his misfortune,  
would you have him lean ?

Let me then here, beneath their  
fresh foliage,  
Wait until September shall have  
brought Autumn round,  
And until cheerful Ceres shall  
have made room for Pomona.

Allow the trembling Hippolytus  
for ever  
To disappear from the spot inha-  
bited by your consort.

I am willing that my eyes shall  
for ever remain deceived.

I am willing, to conclude my  
folly,  
That all wines should become  
vins de Brie for me,  
That there should be no game in  
Paris during winter,  
And that in the month of August  
we should hardly eat green peas.

Such as he is, all the Greeks re-  
quest that he may die.

My father himself, alas ! since I  
must tell it thee,  
My father, in saving me, com-  
mands that I should die.

Command yourself to be loved,  
and you will be loved.

My lord, fear lest cruel destiny  
Should hate you enough to grant  
your prayers.

Sur qui, dans son malheur, *voulez-*  
*vous qu'il s'appuie ? Racine.*

Laissez-moi donc ici, sous leurs  
ombrages frais,  
*Attendre que septembre ait ramené*  
l'automne,  
Et que Cérès contente *ait fait*  
place à Pomone. *Boileau.*

*Souffrez que* pour jamais le trem-  
blant Hippolyte  
*Disparaisse* des lieux que votre  
épouse habite. *Racine.*

*Je consens que* mes yeux soient  
toujours abusés. *The same.*

*Je consens* de bon cœur, pour finir  
ma folie,  
*Que* tous les vins pour moi de-  
viennent vins de Brie,  
*Qu'à* Paris le gibier *manque* tous  
les hivers,  
*Et qu'à* peine au mois d'août l'on  
*mange* des pois verts.

*Boileau.*

Tel qu'il est, tous les Grecs *de-*  
*mandent qu'il périsse.* *Racine.*

Mon père même, hélas ! puisqu'il  
faut te le dire,  
Mon père, en me sauvant, *ordonne*  
*que j'expire.* *The same.*

*Commandez qu'on* vous aime, et  
vous serez aimé. *The same.*

*Craignez, seigneur, craignez que* le  
ciel rigoureux  
Ne vous *haisse* assez pour exaucer  
vos vœux. *The same.*



I feared that heaven, by a cruel  
help,  
Might have offered you that death  
which you always sought.

I am fearful, to conceal nothing  
from you, that Athaliah,  
Having you torn from the altar,

Should wreak at last on you her  
fearful vengeance,  
And should cast off the remains  
of a forced respect.

I fear lest your just ire

Should soon pursue in him a hate-  
ful mother.

Be careful lest the sun that shines  
on us  
Should see thee set thy rash foot  
in this palace.

Take care lest a vowel too hasty  
in its course  
Should stumble on another vowel  
in its road.

It was little, that his hand guided  
by hell,  
Should have shaped the saltpetre,  
should have sharpened the iron.

*Je craignais que le ciel, par un  
cruel secours,  
Ne vous offrit la mort que vous  
cherchiez toujours. Racine.*

*Je tremble qu'Athalie, à ne vous  
rien cacher,  
Vous-même de l'autel vous faisant  
arracher,  
N'achève enfin sur vous ses ven-  
geances funestes,  
Et d'un respect forcé ne dépouille  
les restes. The same.*

*Je tremble que sur lui votre juste  
colère  
Ne poursuive bientôt une odieuse  
mère. The same.*

*Prends garde que jamais l'astre qui  
nous éclaire,  
Ne te voie en ces lieux mettre un  
pied téméraire. The same.*

*Gardez qu'une voyelle à courir  
trop hâtée  
Ne soit d'une voyelle en son che-  
min heurtée. Boileau.*

*C'était peu que sa main, conduite  
par l'enfer,  
Eût pétri le salpêtre, eût aiguisé  
le fer. The same.*

## EXERCISES.

### 240.

You must have patience, though you have no desire to have it; for I must also wait till I receive my money. Should I (*en cas que*) receive it to-day I will pay you all that I owe you. Do not believe that I have forgotten it; for I think of it every day. Or

do you believe, perhaps, that I have already received it?—I do not believe that you have already received it; but I fear that your other creditors (*le créancier*) may already have received it.—You wish you had more time to study, and your brothers wish they did not need to learn.—Would to God you had what I wish you, and that I had what I wish!—Though we have not had what we wish, yet we have almost always been contented; and Messieurs B. have almost always been discontented, though they have had every thing a reasonable man (*un homme raisonnable*) can be contented with.—Do not believe, Madam, that I have had your fan (*un éventail*).—Who tells you that I believe it?—My brother-in-law wishes he had not had what he has had.—Wherefore?—He has always had many creditors, and no money.—I wish you would always speak French to me; and you must obey if you wish to learn, and if you do not wish to lose your time uselessly (*inutilement*). I wish you were more industrious (*assidu*) and more attentive when I speak to you. If I were not your friend, and if you were not mine, I should not speak thus to you.—Do not trust (*méfiez-vous de*) Mr. N., for he flatters you. Do you think a flatterer (*un flatteur*) can be a friend?—You do not know him as well as I, though you see him every day.—Do not think that I am angry with him, because his father has offended me.—Oh! here he is coming (*le voilà qui vient*); you may tell him all yourself.

## 241.

What do you think of our king?—I say he is a great man, but I add, that though kings be ever so powerful (*puissant*) they die as well as the meanest (*vil*) of their subjects.—Have you been pleased with my sisters?—I have; for however plain (*laide*) they may be, they are still very amiable; and however learned (*savant*) our neighbours' daughters may be, they are still sometimes mistaken.—Is not their father rich?—However rich he may be he may lose all in an instant.—Whoever the enemy may be whose malice (*la malice*) you dread (*appréhender*), you ought to rely (*se reposer*) upon your innocence; but the laws (*la loi*) condemn (*condamner*) all criminals (*un criminel*) whatever they may be.—Whatever your intentions (*une intention*) may be, you should have

acted differently (*différemment*).—Whatever the reasons (*la raison*) be which you may allege (*alléguer*), they will not excuse your action, blamable in itself.—Whatever may happen to you in this world, never murmur (*murmurer*) against Divine Providence (*la divine providence*); for whatever we may suffer we deserve it.—Whatever I may do, you are never satisfied.—Whatever you may say, your sisters shall be punished if they deserve it, and if they do not endeavour to mend (*s'amender*).—Who has taken my gold watch?—I do not know. Do not believe that I have had it, or that Miss C. has had your silver snuff-box (*la tabatière*), for I saw both in the hands of your sister when we were playing at forfeits (*au gage touché*).—To-morrow I shall set out for Dover; but in a fortnight I shall be back again (*revenir* \*), and then I shall come and see you and your family.—Where is your sister at present?—She is at Paris, and my brother is at Berlin.—That little woman is said (*on dit*) to be going to marry General (*le général*) K., your friend; is it true?—I have not heard of it.—What news is there of our great army?—It is said to be lying (*être*) between the Weser (*le Véser*) and the Rhine (*le Rhin*).—All that the courier told me seeming (*paraître* \*) very probable (*vraisemblable*), I went home immediately, wrote some letters, and departed for London.

## EIGHTY-FIRST LESSON.

*Quatre-vingt-unième Leçon.**Just a little, ever so little.*

Will you do me the favour of giving me a piece of bread?

Do you wish a great deal?

No, just a little.

*Tant soit peu.*

Voulez-vous me faire le plaisir de me donner un morceau de pain?

En voulez-vous beaucoup?

Non, tant soit peu.

*To turn to account.**To make the best of.*} † *Faire valoir.*

That man does not know how to make the most of his talents.

† Cet homme ne sait pas faire valoir ses talents.

That man turns his money to account in trade.

† Cet homme fait valoir son argent dans le commerce.

How do you employ your money?

† Comment faites-vous valoir votre argent?

I employ it in the stocks.

I turn it to account in the stocks.

} † Je le fais valoir dans les fonds publics.

*To boast, to brag.*† *Se faire valoir.*

I do not like that man, because he boasts too much.

† Je n'aime pas cet homme, parcequ'il se fait trop valoir.

*Notwithstanding that.**For all that, although.*} *Ne laisser pas de.*

That man is a little bit of a rogue, but notwithstanding he passes for an honest man.

Cet homme est tant soit peu fripon, mais il ne laisse pas de passer pour honnête homme.

Although that man is not very well, he notwithstanding works a great deal.

Quoique cet homme ne soit pas bien portant, il ne laisse pas de travailler beaucoup.

Although that woman is not  
very pretty, still she is very  
amiable.

Although that man has not the  
least talent, yet for all that he  
boasts a great deal.

Although that tavern-keeper's  
wife is rather swarthy, yet for  
all that she turns the business  
to good account.

Quoique cette femme ne soit pas  
bien jolie, elle ne laisse pas d'être  
fort aimable.

Quoique cet homme n'ait aucun  
talent, il ne laisse pas de se faire  
beaucoup valoir.

Quoique la femme de cet auber-  
giste soit tant soit peu basanée,  
elle ne laisse pas de faire valoir  
le bouchon.

I received your letter on the fifth.  
On the sixth.

*To go back, to return.*

The top.

The bottom.

Up to the top.

J'ai reçu votre lettre le cinq.  
Le six.

*Retourner* 1.

Le haut.

Le bas.

Jusqu'en haut.

The eldest brother.

The eldest sister.

He is the eldest.

Le frère aîné.

La sœur aînée.

C'est l'aîné.

To appear, to seem.

I appear, thou appearest, he ap-  
pears.

To keep, to maintain.

My keeping or maintenance.

My keeping costs me six hundred  
francs a-year.

*To drive in, to sink.*

To converse with.

A conversation.

To spare.

Spare your money.

To get tired.

To be tired.

To handle.

Paraître 4 \*; pres. part. *paraissant*;  
past part. *paru*.

Je paraiss, tu paraiss, il paraît.

Entretenir 2 \*.

Mon entretien.

Mon entretien me coûte six cents  
francs par an.

*Enfoncer* 1.

S'entretenir \* avec.

Un entretien.

Épargner 1.

Épargnez votre argent.

Se lasser (*de* bef. inf.).

Être las; *fem.* lasse (*de* bef. inf.).

Manier 1.



To lean against.	S'appuyer 1.
Lean against me.	Appuyez-vous sur moi.
Lean against the wall.	Appuyez-vous contre la muraille.
To aim at.	Coucher en joue.
Short.	Court.
To stop short.	S'arrêter tout court.

Virtue is amiable.	La vertu est aimable.
Vice is odious.	Le vice est odieux.

*Obs. A.* The definite article is used in French before substantives taken in a general sense, and in the whole extent of their signification. In such instances no article is made use of in English. Ex.

Men are mortal.	Les hommes sont mortels.
Gold is precious.	L'or est précieux.
Corn is sold at a crown <i>a</i> bushel.	Le blé se vend un écu <i>le</i> boisseau.
Beef costs four pence <i>a</i> pound.	Le bœuf coûte quatre sous <i>la</i> livre.
The horror of vice, and the love of virtue, are the delights of the wise man.	L'horreur du vice et l'amour de la vertu sont les délices du sage.

England is a fine country. | L'Angleterre est un beau pays.

*Obs. B.* The definite article is used also before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces<sup>1</sup>. Ex.

Italy is the garden of Europe.	L'Italie est le jardin de l'Europe.
The dog is the friend and companion of man.	Le chien est <i>l'</i> ami et <i>le</i> compagnon de <i>l'</i> homme.

*Obs. C.* The articles are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with it in gender and number. Ex.

Thessaly produces wine, oranges, lemons, olives, and all sorts of fruit.	La Thessalie produit <i>du</i> vin, <i>des</i> oranges, <i>des</i> citrons, <i>des</i> olives et toutes sortes de fruits.
He ate the bread, meat, apples, and cakes; he drank the wine, beer, and cider.	Il a mangé le pain, la viande, les pommes et les gâteaux; il a bu le vin, la bière et le cidre.

<sup>1</sup> Except when preceded by *en* or *de*. Ex. *J'irai en Allemagne à mon retour de France*, I shall go to Germany on my return from France.

Beauty, gracefulness, and wit are valuable endowments when heightened by modesty.		<i>La beauté, les grâces et l'esprit sont des avantages bien pré- cieux, quand ils sont relevés par la modestie.</i>
---	--	--

## EXERCISE.

242.

Whither shall you go next year?—I shall go to England, for it is a fine kingdom (*le royaume*), where I intend spending the summer on (*à*) my return from France.—Whither shall you go in the winter?—I shall go to Italy, and thence (*de là*) to the West Indies (*aux Indes occidentales*); but before that I must go to Holland to take leave of my friends.—What country do these people inhabit (*habiter*)?—They inhabit the south (*le midi*) of Europe; their countries are called Italy, Spain, and Portugal, and they themselves are Italians, Spaniards, or Portuguese; but the people called Russians, Swedes, and Poles, inhabit the north (*le nord*) of Europe; and the names of their countries are Russia, Sweden, and Poland (*la Pologne*). France is separated (*séparer*) from Italy by (*par*) the Alps (*les Alpes*), and from Spain by the Pyrenees (*les Pyrénées*).—Though the Mahometans (*le Mahométan*) are forbidden the use of wine (*défendre quelque chose à quelqu'un*), yet for all that some of them drink it.—Has your brother eaten any thing this morning?—He has eaten a great deal; though he said he had no appetite, yet, for all that, he ate all the meat, bread, and vegetables (*les légumes*), and drank all the wine, beer, and cider.—Are eggs (*un œuf*) dear at present?—They are sold at six francs a hundred.—Do you like grapes (*le raisin*)?—I do not only like grapes, but also plums (*une prune*), almonds, nuts, and all sorts of fruit.—Though modesty, candour, and an amiable disposition (*l'amabilité*) are valuable endowments, yet, for all that, there are some ladies that are neither modest, nor candid (*candide*), nor amiable.—The fear of death, and the love of life, being natural to men, they ought to shun (*fuir* \*) vice (*le vice*), and adhere to (*s'attacher à*) virtue.

## EIGHTY-SECOND LESSON.

*Quatre-vingt-deuxième Leçon.*


---

<i>To give occasion.</i>	<i>Donner lieu (de before infin.).</i>
Do not give him cause to complain.	Ne lui donnez pas lieu de se plaindre.

---

<i>To leave it to one.</i>	† <i>S'en rapporter à quelqu'un.</i>
I leave it to you.	† Je m'en rapporte à vous.

---

A good bargain.	Un bon marché.
To stick or to abide by a thing.	† <i>S'en tenir à.</i>
I abide by the offer you have made me.	† Je m'en tiens à l'offre que vous m'avez faite.

---

I do not doubt but you are my friend.	Je ne doute pas que vous <i>ne</i> soyez mon ami.
---------------------------------------	---

*Obs.* When the verb *douter* is negatively used it requires *ne* before the subjunctive.

I do not doubt but he will do it.	Je ne doute pas qu'il <i>ne</i> le fuisse.
-----------------------------------	--

---

<i>To suffer, to bear.</i>	<i>Essuyer</i> 1.
They were exposed to the whole fire of the place.	Ils essuyèrent tout le feu de la place.

---

To examine one artfully, or to draw a secret from one.	Tirer les vers du nez à quelqu'un.
I examined him artfully, and by that means I have made myself acquainted with all his affairs.	Je lui ai tiré les vers du nez, et par ce moyen je me suis mis au fait de toutes ces affaires.

<i>To bear, or to put up with.</i>	<i>En passer par.</i>
You will be obliged to put up with all he wishes.	Vous serez obligé d'en passer par tout ce qu'il voudra.

Thick.	Épais ; <i>fem.</i> épaisse.
A thick cloud.	Un nuage épais.
A thick beard.	Une barbe épaisse.
A burst.	Un éclat.
A burst of laughter.	Un éclat de rire.
To burst out laughing.	Faire un éclat de rire.
To burst out.	Éclater 1.
To burst out a laughing.	Éclater de rire.
Splendour, brightness.	L'éclat.
To make a great show.	† Faire de l'éclat.
To light.	Éclairer 1.

To suffer one's self to be beaten.	Se laisser battre.
To let or to suffer one's self to fall.	Se laisser tomber.
To suffer one's self to be insulted.	Se laisser insulter.
To suffer one's self to die.	Se laisser mourir.
To let one's self be struck.	Se laisser frapper.
To send back, to send away.	Renvoyer 1.
To extol, to praise up.	Vanter 1.
To boast, to praise one's self.	Se vanter.

Go thither.	Allez-y.
Let us go thither.	Allons-y.
Go thou.	Va.
Go (thou) thither.	Vas-y. (See Lesson LXX.)

Go (thou) away.  
 Let him go thither.  
 Let them go thither.  
 Go away, begone.  
 Let us begone.  
 Let him go away, let him begone.  
                     Give me.

Give it to me.  
 Give it to him.  
 Give him some.  
 Get paid.  
 Let us set out.  
 Let us breakfast.  
 Let him give it me.  
 Let him be here at twelve o'clock.  
 Let him send it me.  
 He may believe it.  
 Make an end of it.  
 Let him finish.  
 Let him take it.  
 Let her say so.

Va-t'en.  
 Qu'il y aille.  
 Qu'ils y aillent.  
 Allez-vous en.  
 Allons-nous en.  
 Qu'il s'en aille.  
 Donnez-moi.  
 Donnez-le-moi.  
 Donnez-le-lui.  
 Donnez-lui-en.  
 Faites vous payer.  
 Partons.  
 Déjeunons.  
 Qu'il me le donne.  
 Qu'il soit ici à midi.  
 Qu'il me l'envoie.  
 Qu'il le croie.  
 Finissez.  
 Qu'il finisse.  
 Qu'il le prenne.  
 Qu'elle le dise.

#### The starling.

If I were to question you as I used to do at the beginning of our lessons, what would you answer?

We found these questions at first rather ridiculous, but full of confidence in your method, we answered as well as the small quantity of words and rules we then possessed allowed us.

We were not long in finding out that those questions were calculated to ground us in the rules,

#### Le sansonnet.

Si je vous posais maintenant des questions comme je vous en ai posé au commencement de nos leçons (comme j'avais d'abord l'habitude de le faire), que répondriez-vous?

Nous avons d'abord trouvé ces questions tant soit peu ridicules; mais pleins de confiance en votre méthode, nous y avons répondu aussi bien que la petite provision de mots et de principes que nous avions alors pouvait nous le permettre.

Nous n'avons pas tardé à nous apercevoir que ces questions étaient calculées pour nous in-



and to exercise us in conversation, by the contradictory answers we were obliged to make.

We can now almost keep up a conversation in French.

This phrase does not seem to us logically correct.

We should be ungrateful if we allowed such an opportunity to escape without expressing our liveliest gratitude to you.

In all cases, at all events.

The native.

The insurmountable difficulty.

culquer les principes et nous exercer à la conversation par les réponses contradictoires que nous étions forcés d'y faire.

Maintenant nous savons presque soutenir une conversation en français.

Cette phrase ne nous paraît pas logiquement correcte.

Nous serions des ingrats si nous laissions échapper une si belle occasion, sans vous témoigner la reconnaissance la plus vive.

En tout cas.

L'homme né dans le pays.

La difficulté insurmontable.

## A T A B L E

## OF FORMATION OF ALL THE TENSES IN THE FRENCH VERBS.

*Preliminary Obs.* This table holds good for the formation of the tenses of regular verbs; but in order to hold good also throughout all the irregular verbs, it is only necessary to know the three persons singular of the present tense of the indicative (Lesson XXIV.), and the present and past participles of the verb (Lessons XXXI. and LVII.). The knowledge of the three persons singular of the indicative may be facilitated by the following rules:

1. If the first person singular ends in *e* mute, the third has the same ending, and the second ends in *es* mute.

2. If the first person singular ends in *s* or *x*, the second is the same, and the third changes *s* or *x* into *t*; but if the final *s* of the first and second persons is preceded by *c*, *d*, or *t*, the third person singular is formed by dropping the letter *s*. Ex. Je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vaint; Je prends, tu prends, il prend; Je mets, tu mets, il met.

3. In all French verbs the imperfect indicative, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the conditional, have their first and second persons plural terminated in *ions* and *iez* (Nous parlions, vous parliez; que nous parlussions, que vous parlassiez; nous parlerions, vous parleriez); whilst all other simple tenses (except the perfect definite, which has a particular form, Lesson LXVIII.), have these persons terminated in *ons* and *ez*, except the following: *Dire*—vous dites<sup>1</sup>; *être*—nous sommes, vous êtes; *faire*—vous faites.

As to the formation of the present participle, we have, in Lesson LVII., when the pupils have become familiar with the terminations of the present tenses of almost all the irregular verbs, traced it to the first person plural, and mentioned the five exceptions. There remains, therefore, only the past participle to be known, which we have mentioned whenever it presented any irregularity.

---

<sup>1</sup> The compounds *interdire* and *prédire* follow the rule, as: Vous interdisez, vous prédisiez.

Present of the Indicative. (Lesson XXIV.)	A primitive tense.	<p>The first, second, and third persons plural are formed from the present participle by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>ons</i>, <i>ez</i>, <i>ent</i>.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Examples.</i></p> <table><tr><td><i>Parlant</i>,</td><td>Nous parlons.</td><td>Vous parlez.</td><td>Ils parlent.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Finissant</i>,</td><td>Nous finissons.</td><td>Vous finissez.</td><td>Ils finissent.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Recevant</i>,</td><td>Nous recevons.</td><td>Vous recevez.</td><td>Ils reçoivent.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Vendant</i>,</td><td>Nous vendons.</td><td>Vous vendez.</td><td>Ils vendent.</td></tr></table>	<i>Parlant</i> ,	Nous parlons.	Vous parlez.	Ils parlent.	<i>Finissant</i> ,	Nous finissons.	Vous finissez.	Ils finissent.	<i>Recevant</i> ,	Nous recevons.	Vous recevez.	Ils reçoivent.	<i>Vendant</i> ,	Nous vendons.	Vous vendez.	Ils vendent.																
<i>Parlant</i> ,	Nous parlons.	Vous parlez.	Ils parlent.																															
<i>Finissant</i> ,	Nous finissons.	Vous finissez.	Ils finissent.																															
<i>Recevant</i> ,	Nous recevons.	Vous recevez.	Ils reçoivent.																															
<i>Vendant</i> ,	Nous vendons.	Vous vendez.	Ils vendent.																															
Imperfect of the Indicative. (Lesson LIX.)	A derivative tense.	<p>Is formed from the present participle by changing <i>ant</i>, into       1       2       3       1       2       3           <i>ais</i>,   <i>ais</i>,   <i>ait</i>,   <i>ions</i>,   <i>iez</i>,   <i>aient</i>. Ex.</p> <table><tr><td>Je parlais.</td><td>Tu parlais.</td><td>Il parlait.</td></tr><tr><td>Nous parlions.</td><td>Vous parliez.</td><td>Ils parlaient.</td></tr><tr><td>Je finissais.</td><td>Tu finissais.</td><td>Il finissait.</td></tr><tr><td>Nous finissions.</td><td>Vous finissiez, &amp;c. &amp;c.</td><td></td></tr></table>	Je parlais.	Tu parlais.	Il parlait.	Nous parlions.	Vous parliez.	Ils parlaient.	Je finissais.	Tu finissais.	Il finissait.	Nous finissions.	Vous finissiez, &c. &c.																					
Je parlais.	Tu parlais.	Il parlait.																																
Nous parlions.	Vous parliez.	Ils parlaient.																																
Je finissais.	Tu finissais.	Il finissait.																																
Nous finissions.	Vous finissiez, &c. &c.																																	
Preterite Definite. (Lesson LXVIII.)	A primitive tense.	<p>Is formed from the past participle by changing, for the first conjugation,           <i>é</i> into   1       2       3       1       2       3                   <i>ai</i>,   <i>as</i>,   <i>a</i>,   <i>âmes</i>,   <i>âtes</i>,   <i>èrent</i>.</p> <p>For the second and fourth conjugations, <i>i</i> and <i>u</i> into   <i>is</i>,   <i>is</i>,   <i>it</i>,   <i>îmes</i>,   <i>îtes</i>,   <i>irent</i>.</p> <p>And for the third conjugation, <i>u</i> into   <i>us</i>,   <i>us</i>,   <i>ut</i>,   <i>ûmes</i>,   <i>ûtes</i>,   <i>urent</i>.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Examples.</i></p> <table><tr><td><i>Parlé</i></td><td>Je parlai.</td><td>Tu parlas.</td><td>Il parla.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Nous parlâmes.</td><td>Vous parlâtes.</td><td>Ils parlèrent.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Fin</i></td><td>Je finis.</td><td>Tu finis.</td><td>Il finit.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Nous finîmes.</td><td>Vous finîtes.</td><td>Ils finirent.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Vendu</i></td><td>Je vendis.</td><td>Tu vendis.</td><td>Il vendit.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Nous vendîmes.</td><td>Vous vendîtes.</td><td>Ils vendirent.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Reçu</i></td><td>Je reçus.</td><td>Tu reçus.</td><td>Il reçut.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Nous reçûmes.</td><td>Vous reçûtes.</td><td>Ils reçurent.</td></tr></table>	<i>Parlé</i>	Je parlai.	Tu parlas.	Il parla.		Nous parlâmes.	Vous parlâtes.	Ils parlèrent.	<i>Fin</i>	Je finis.	Tu finis.	Il finit.		Nous finîmes.	Vous finîtes.	Ils finirent.	<i>Vendu</i>	Je vendis.	Tu vendis.	Il vendit.		Nous vendîmes.	Vous vendîtes.	Ils vendirent.	<i>Reçu</i>	Je reçus.	Tu reçus.	Il reçut.		Nous reçûmes.	Vous reçûtes.	Ils reçurent.
<i>Parlé</i>	Je parlai.	Tu parlas.	Il parla.																															
	Nous parlâmes.	Vous parlâtes.	Ils parlèrent.																															
<i>Fin</i>	Je finis.	Tu finis.	Il finit.																															
	Nous finîmes.	Vous finîtes.	Ils finirent.																															
<i>Vendu</i>	Je vendis.	Tu vendis.	Il vendit.																															
	Nous vendîmes.	Vous vendîtes.	Ils vendirent.																															
<i>Reçu</i>	Je reçus.	Tu reçus.	Il reçut.																															
	Nous reçûmes.	Vous reçûtes.	Ils reçurent.																															

## EXCEPTIONS.

ÉTANT.	Nous sommes.	Vous êtes.	Ils sont.
AYANT.	Nous avons.	Vous avez.	Ils ont.
SACHANT.	Nous savons.	Vous savez.	Ils savent.
FAISANT.		Vous faites.	Ils font.
DISANT.		Vous dites.	
ALLANT.			Ils vont.
VENANT.			Ils viennent.
TENANT.			Ils tiennent.
ACQUÉRANT.			Ils acquièrent.
MOURANT.			Ils meurent.
RECEVANT.			Ils reçoivent.
DEVANT.			Ils doivent.
MOUVANT.			Ils meuvent.
POUVANT.			Ils peuvent.
VOULANT.			Ils veulent.
BUVANT.			Ils boivent.
PRENANT.			Ils prennent.

AYANT.	J'avais.	Tu avais.	Il avait.
	Nous avions.	Vous aviez.	Ils avaient.
SACHANT.	Je savais.	Tu savais.	Ils savait.
	Nous savions.	Vous saviez.	Ils savaient.

COUVERT,	Je couvris,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
OFFERT,	J'offris,	„	„	„	„	„
OUVERT,	J'ouvris,	„	„	„	„	„
SOUFFERT,	Je souffris,	„	„	„	„	„
TENU,	Je tins,	ins,	int,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
venu,	Je vins,	„	„	„	„	„
MORT,	Je mourus,	us,	ut,	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
VÊTU,	Je vêtis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
VU,	Je vis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
PRÉVU,	Je prévis,	is,	it,	„	„	„
CEINT,	Je ceignis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
ASTREINT,	J'astreignis,	„	„	„	„	„
CRAINT,	Je craignis,	„	„	„	„	„
EMPREINT,	J'empreignis,	„	„	„	„	„
ENFREINT,	J'enfreignis,	„	„	„	„	„
ÉPREINT,	J'épreignis,	„	„	„	„	„
FEINT,	Je feignis,	„	„	„	„	„
JOINT,	Je joignis,	„	„	„	„	„
OINT,	J'oignis,	„	„	„	„	„
PEINT,	Je peignis,	„	„	„	„	„

<i>Preterite Definite.</i> (Lesson LXVIII.)	A primitive tense.	(Continued.)
<i>Preterite Indefinite</i> (Lesson XXXIII.)	A compound tense.	<p>Is formed from the present indicative of the auxiliary, and the past participle. Ex.</p> <p>J'ai parlé, fini, reçu, vendu.</p>
<i>Preterite Anterior.</i> (Lesson LXVIII.)	A compound tense.	<p>Is formed from the preterite definite of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb. Ex.</p> <p>J'eus parlé. Tu eus fini. Il eut reçu.  Nous eûmes vendu. Vous eûtes travaillé. Ils eurent bâti.</p>
<i>Pluperfect.</i> (Obs. A. Less. LXXIX.)	A compound tense.	<p>Is formed from the imperfect of the auxiliary and the past participle. Ex.</p> <p>J'avais aimé, fini, reçu, vendu.</p>
<i>Simple Future</i> (Lesson XLVI.)	A derivative tense.	<p>Is formed from the infinitive by changing the letter <i>r</i> of the three first conjugations, and the ending <i>re</i> of the fourth into <i>rai</i>. Ex.</p> <p><i>Aimer.</i> J'aimerai. Tu aimeras. Il aimera.  Nous aimerons. Vous aimerez. Ils aimeront.</p>



## EXCEPTIONS.

PLAINT,	Je plains,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
RESTREINT,	Je restreignis,	„	„	„	„	„
TEINT,	Je teignis,	„	„	„	„	„
CUIT,	Je cuisis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
CONDUIT,	Je conduisis,	„	„	„	„	„
CONSTRUIT,	Je construisis,	„	„	„	„	„
DÉTRUIT,	Je détruisis	„	„	„	„	„
ENDUIT,	J'enduisis,	„	„	„	„	„
INDUIT,	J'induisis,	„	„	„	„	„
INSTRUIT,	J'instruisis,	„	„	„	„	„
INTRODUIT,	J'introduisis,	„	„	„	„	„
RÉDUIT,	Je réduisis,	„	„	„	„	„
SÉDUIT,	Je séduisis,	„	„	„	„	„
TRADUIT,	Je traduisis,	„	„	„	„	„
LUI,	Je luisis,	„	„	„	„	„
NUI,	Je nuisis,	„	„	„	„	„
COUSU,	Je cousis,	„	„	„	„	„
ÉCRIT,	J'écrivis,	„	„	„	„	„
ÉTÉ,	Je fus,	fus,	fut,	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
FAIT,	Je fis,	fis,	fit,	fîmes,	fîtes,	fîrent.
NÉ,	Je naquis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
VAINCU,	Je vainquis,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.

AVOIR,	J'aurai.	Tu auras.	Il aura, &c.
ÊTRE.	Je serai.	Tu seras.	Il sera, &c.
ALLER.	J'irai.	Tu iras, &c.	
ENVOYER.	J'enverrai, &c.		
TENIR.	Je tiendrai, &c.		
VENIR.	Je viendrai, &c.		
S'ASSEOIR.	Je m'asseierai	or je m'assiérai, &c.	

Simple Future. (Lesson XLVI.)	A derivative tense.	<p>(Continued)</p> <p><i>Finir.</i> Je finirai. Tu finiras. Il finira. Nous finirons. Vous finirez. Ils finiront.</p> <p><i>Prévoir.</i> Je prévoirai. Tu prévoiras. Il prévoira. Nous prévoirons. Vous prévoirez. Ils prévoiront.</p> <p><i>Rendre.</i> Je rendrai. Tu rendras. Il rendra. Nous rendrons. Vous rendrez. Ils rendront.</p>
Past or Compound Future. (Lesson LVIII.)	A compound tense.	<p>Is formed from the future of the auxiliary and the past participle of another verb. Ex.</p> <p>J'aurai aimé. Tu auras fini, &amp;c. &amp;c.</p>
Conditional Present. (Lesson LX.)	A derivative tense.	<p>Is formed from the simple future by changing <i>rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront</i>, into <i>rais, rais, rait, rions, riez, raient</i>. Ex.</p> <p>J'aimerai. J'aimerais, &amp;c. &amp;c.</p>
Conditional Past. (Lesson LX.)	A compound tense.	<p>Is formed from the conditional present of the auxiliary and the past participle. Ex.</p> <p>J'aurais parlé. Tu aurais fini, &amp;c. &amp;c.</p>
Imperative. (Less. LXX. & LXXXII.)	A derivative tense.	<p>Is formed from the first person of the indicative by throwing out the pronoun <i>je</i>. Ex.</p> <p>J'aime; imperat. aime.</p>
Present of the Subjunctive. (Lesson LXXVIII.)	A derivative tense.	<p>Is formed from the present participle by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>e</i> mute. Ex.</p> <p><i>Parlant.</i> Que je parle. <i>Finissant.</i> Que je finisse. <i>Sachant.</i> Que je sache. <i>Rendant.</i> Que je rende.</p>

## EXCEPTIONS.

DEVOIR.	Je devrai, &c.
FALLOIR.	Il faudra.
POUVOIR.	Je pourrai, &c.
RECEVOIR.	Je recevrai, &c.
SAVOIR.	Je saurai, &c.
VALOIR.	Je vaudrai, &c.
VOIR.	Je verrai, tu verras, &c.
VOULOIR.	Je voudrai, &c.
FAIRE.	Je ferai, &c.
APPUYER.	J'appuierai, &c.
EMPLOYER.	J'emploierai, &c.
ESSUYER.	J'essuierai, &c.
ACQUÉRIR.	J'acquerrai, &c.
COURIR.	Je courrai, &c.
CUEILLIR.	Je cueillerai, &c.
MOURIR.	Je mourrai, &c.
ÉCHOIR.	J'écherrai, &c.
PLEUVOIR.	Il pleuvra.

J'AI.	<i>Imperat.</i>	aie.
Je SUIS.	„	sois.
Je VAIS.	„	va.
Je SAIS.	„	sache.
Je VEUX.	„	veuille.

ALLANT.	Que j'aie.	MOUVANT.	Que je meuve.
TENANT.	Que je tienne.	AYANT.	Que j'aie.
VENANT.	Que je vienne.	VOULANT.	Que je veuille.
ACQUÉRANT.	Que j'acquière.	ÉTANT.	Que je sois.
MOURANT.	Que je meure.	BUVANT.	Que je boive.
RECEVANT.	Que je reçoive.	FAISANT.	Que je fasse.
POUVANT.	Que je puisse.	PRENANT.	Que je prenne.
VALANT.	Que je vaille.		

Imperfect of the Subjunctive. (Lessons LXXIX. and LXXX.)	A derivative tense.	Is formed from the preterite definite by changing for the first conjugation <i>ai</i> into <i>asse</i> , and adding <i>se</i> for the three other conjugations. Ex.  Je <i>parlai</i> .    Que je <i>parlasse</i> . Je <i>finis</i> .    Que je <i>finisse</i> . Je <i>reçus</i> .    Que je <i>reçusse</i> . Je <i>vendis</i> .    Que je <i>vendisse</i> .
Preterite of the Subjunctive. (Obs. A. Less. LXXIX.)	A compound tense.	Is formed from the present subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the past participle of another verb. Ex.  Que j' <i>aie aimé</i> .    Que tu <i>aies fini</i> , &c.
Pluperfect of the Subjunctive. (Obs A. Les. LXXIX.)	A compound tense.	Is formed from the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary and the past participle of another verb. Ex.  Que j' <i>eusse chanté</i> .    Que tu <i>eusses rempli</i> , &c.
Infinitive. (Less. XVII.)	A primitive tense.	<i>First Conjugation.</i> Parler. <i>Second</i> „    Finir. <i>Third</i> „    Recevoir. <i>Fourth</i> „    Vendre.
Infinitive Past. (Lessons XL. and LIV.)	A compound tense.	Is formed from the present infinitive of the auxiliary and the past participle of another verb. Ex.  Avoir <i>parlé</i> .    Être <i>venu</i> .
Present Participle. (Lesson LVII.)	A primitive tense.	May be formed from the first person plural of the present indicative by changing <i>ons</i> into <i>ant</i> . Ex.  Nous <i>parlons</i> .    Parlant. Nous <i>finissons</i> .    Finissant. Nous <i>recevons</i> .    Recevant. Nous <i>rendons</i> .    Rendant.
Past Participle. (Lesson XXXI.)	A primitive tense.	<i>First Conjugation.</i> Parlé. <i>Second</i> „    Fini. <i>Third</i> „    Reçu. <i>Fourth</i> „    Vendu.

## EXCEPTIONS.

NOUS AVONS.  
NOUS SOMMES.  
ÉCHOIR.  
NOUS SAVONS.  
SÉOIR.

Ayant.  
Étant.  
Échéant.  
Sachant.  
Séant.



## A TABLE OF CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARIES AND THE REGULAR VERBS.

AUXILIARIES.				REGULAR VERBS.			
				1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	4th Conj.
Inf. Pres.	Avoir.	Etre.	Parler.	Finir.	Recevoir.	Vendre.	
— Past.	Avoir eu.	Avoir été.	Avoir parlé.	Avoir fini.	Avoir reçu.	Avoir vendu.	
Part. Pres.	Ayant.	Étant.	Parlant.	Finissant.	Recevant.	Vendant.	
— Past.	Eu, eue.	Été.	Parlé.	Fini.	Reçu.	Vendu.	
Present.	J'ai.	Je suis.	Je parle.	Je finis.	Je reçois.	Je vends.	
	Tu as.	Tu es.	Tu parles.	Tu finis.	Tu reçois.	Tu vends.	
	Il (elle) a.	Il (elle) est.	Il (elle) parle.	Il (elle) finit.	Il (elle) reçoit.	Il (elle) vend.	
	Nous avons.	Nous sommes.	Nous parlons.	Nous finissons.	Nous recevons.	Nous vendons.	
	Vous avez.	Vous êtes.	Vous parlez.	Vous finissez.	Vous recevez.	Vous vendez.	
Imperfect.	Il (elles) ont.	Il (elles) sont.	Il (elles) parlent.	Il (elles) finissent.	Il (elles) reçoivent.	Il (elles) vendent.	
	J'avais.	J'étais.	Je parlais.	Je finissais.	Je recevais.	Je vendais.	
	Tu avais.	Tu étais.	Tu parlais.	Tu finissais.	Tu recevais.	Tu vendais.	
	Il (elle) avait.	Il (elle) était.	Il (elle) parlait.	Il (elle) finissait.	Il (elle) recevait.	Il (elle) vendait.	
	Nous avions.	Nous étions.	Nous parlions.	Nous finissions.	Nous recevions.	Nous vendions.	
Preterite.	Vous aviez.	Vous étiez.	Vous parliez.	Vous finissiez.	Vous receviez.	Vous vendiez.	
	Il (elles) avaient.	Il (elles) étaient.	Il (elles) parlaient.	Il (elles) finissaient.	Il (elles) recevaient.	Il (elles) vendaient.	
	J'eus.	Je fus.	Je parlai.	Je finis.	Je reçus.	Je vendis.	
	Tu eus.	Tu fus.	Tu parlais.	Tu finis.	Tu reçus.	Tu vendis.	
	Il (elle) eut.	Il (elle) fut.	Il (elle) parla.	Il (elle) finit.	Il (elle) reçut.	Il (elle) vendit.	
Preterite Indefinite.	Nous eûmes.	Nous fûmes.	Nous parlâmes.	Nous finîmes.	Nous reçûmes.	Nous vendîmes.	
	Vous eûtes.	Vous fûtes.	Vous parlâtes.	Vous finîtes.	Vous reçûtes.	Vous vendîtes.	
	Il (elles) eurent.	Il (elles) furent.	Il (elles) parlèrent.	Il (elles) finirent.	Il (elles) reçurent.	Il (elles) vendirent.	
	J'ai	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.	
	Il (elle) a	eu.					
Preterite Anterior.	Nous avons						
	Vous avez						
	Il (elles) ont						
	J'eus	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.	
	Tu eus						
Pluperfect.	Il (elle) eut	eu.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.	
	Nous eûmes						
	Vous eûtes						
	Il (elles) eurent						
	J'avais	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.	
Simple Future.	Tu avais						
	Il (elle) avait						
	Nous avions						
	Vous aviez						
	Il (elles) avaient						
	J'aurai.	Je serai.	Je parlerai.	Je finirai.	Je recevrai.	Je vendrai.	
	Tu auras.	Tu seras.	Tu parleras.	Tu finiras.	Tu recevras.	Tu vendras.	
	Il (elle) aura.	Il (elle) sera.	Il (elle) parlera.	Il (elle) finira.	Il (elle) recevra.	Il (elle) vendra.	
	Nous aurons.	Nous serons.	Nous parlerons.	Nous finirons.	Nous recevrons.	Nous vendrons.	
	Vous aurez.	Vous serez.	Vous parlerez.	Vous finirez.	Vous recevrez.	Vous vendrez.	
	Il (elles) auront.	Il (elles) seront.	Il (elles) parleront.	Il (elles) finiront.	Il (elles) recevront.	Il (elles) vendront.	

Indicative.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
				eu.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Present.	Present.	Past.	Imperfect.	Preterite.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.
Compound Futur.	Conditional.	Imperative.	Subjunctive.	Compound Futur.	été.	parlé.	fini.	reçu.	vendu.

## EXERCISES.

243.

Will you drink a cup of coffee?—I thank you, I do not like coffee.—Then you will drink a glass of wine?—I have just drunk some.—Let us take a walk.—Willingly (*je le veux bien*); but where shall we go to?—Come with me into my aunt's garden; we shall there find very agreeable society.—I believe it (*je le crois bien*); but the question is (*c'est à savoir*) whether this agreeable society will admit me (*voudra de moi*).—You are welcome every where.—What ails you (*qu'avez-vous*), my friend?—How do you like that wine?—I like it very well (*excellent*); but I have drunk enough of it (*suffisamment*).—Drink once more (*encore un coup*).—No, too much is unwholesome (*malsain*); I know my constitution (*le tempérament*).—Do not fall. What is the matter with you?—I do not know; but my head is giddy (*la tête me tourne*); I think I am fainting (*tomber en défaillance*).—I think so also, for you look almost like a dead person (*un mort*).—What countryman are you?—I am an Englishman.—You speak French so well that I took you for a Frenchman by birth (*Français de nation*).—You are jesting.—Pardon me; I do not jest at all. How long have you been in France?—A few days.—In earnest (*sérieusement*)?—You doubt it, perhaps, because I speak French; I knew it before I came to France.—How did you learn it so well?—I did like the prudent starling.

Tell me, why are you always on bad terms (*être toujours en discorde*) with your wife? and why do you engage in unprofitable trades (*s'occuper de métiers inutiles*)? It costs so much trouble (*avoir bien de la peine*) to get (*obtenir\**) a situation (*un emploi*); and you have a good one and neglect it. Do you not think of (*songer à*) the future?—Now allow me to speak also (*à mon tour*). All you have just said seems reasonable; but it is not my fault, if I have lost my reputation (*la réputation*); it is that of my wife: she has sold my finest clothes, my rings (*une bague*), and my gold watch. I am full of (*être chargé de*) debts, and I do not know what to do.—I will not excuse (*justifier*) your wife; but I know

that you have also contributed (*contribuer*) to your ruin (*la perte*). Women are generally good when they are left so (repeat the adjective).

244.

## DIALOGUE.

*The Master.*—If I were now to ask you such questions as I did in the beginning of our lessons, viz. (*telles que*): Have you the hat which my brother has? am I hungry? has he the tree of my brother's garden? &c. What would you answer?

*The Pupils.*—We are obliged (*être forcé*) to confess that we found these questions at first rather ridiculous; but full of confidence in your method, we answered as well as the small quantity of words and rules we then possessed allowed us. We were, in fact, not long in finding out that these questions were calculated to ground us in the rules, and to exercise us in conversation, by the contradictory answers we were obliged to make. But now that we can almost keep up a conversation in the beautiful language which you teach us, we should answer: It is impossible that we should have the same hat which your brother has, for two persons cannot have one and the same thing. To the second question we should answer, that it is impossible for us to know whether you are hungry or not. As to the last, we should say: that there is more than one tree in a garden; and in asking us whether he has the tree of the garden, the phrase does not seem to us logically correct. At all events we should be ungrateful (*ingrat*) if we allowed such an opportunity to escape, without expressing (*témoigner*) our liveliest gratitude to you for the trouble you have taken. In arranging those wise combinations (*la combinaison*), you have succeeded in grounding us almost imperceptibly (*imperceptiblement*) in the rules, and exercising us in the conversation, of a language which, taught in any other way, presents to foreigners, and even to natives, almost insurmountable difficulties. (See end of Lesson XXIV.)



## EIGHTY-THIRD LESSON.

*Quatre-vingt-troisième Leçon.*

It lacks (wants) a quarter.  
 It wants (lacks) a half.  
 How much does it want?  
 It does not want much.  
 It wants but a trifle.  
 It lacks but an inch of my being  
 as tall as you.  
 It lacked a great deal of my being  
 as rich as you.

The half.

The third part.

The fourth part.

You think you have returned me  
 all; a great deal is wanting.

† Il s'en faut d'un quart.  
 † Il s'en faut de la moitié.  
 Combien s'en faut-il?  
 Il ne s'en faut pas beaucoup.  
 Il s'en faut de peu de chose.  
 Il s'en faut d'un pouce que je sois  
 aussi grand que vous.  
 Il s'en fallait de beaucoup que je  
 fusse aussi riche que vous.

La moitié.

Le tiers.

Le quart.

Vous croyez m'avoir tout rendu;  
 il s'en faut de beaucoup.

(*The French Academy, edit. 1762.*

*Boiste and Laveaux, Diction-  
 naire des Difficultés.*)

*Obs. A.* *Il s'en faut* is followed by *de* when a quantity is spoken of, but when a difference between two things is spoken of it is not followed by *de*.

The younger is not so good as the  
 elder by far.

Le cadet n'est pas si sage que  
 l'aîné, il s'en faut beaucoup.—

*The French Academy, edit. 1762  
 and 1798.*

Our merchants are far from giving  
 us an idea of the virtue men-  
 tioned by our missionaries: they  
 may be consulted on the depre-  
 dations of the mandarins.

Il s'en faut beaucoup que nos com-  
 merçants nous donnent l'idée  
 de cette vertu dont nous parlent  
 nos missionnaires: on peut les  
 consulter sur les brigandages  
 des mandarins.—*Montesquieu,  
 de l'Esprit des Loix, ch. xxi.*



He is nearly as tall as his brother.

† Il *ne s'en faut* presque rien qu'il  
*ne* soit aussi grand que son frère.

*Le Dict. Crit. de Féraud.*

*Obs. B.* When *il s'en faut* is accompanied by a negation, or by a negative word, such as *peu*, little; *guère*, but little; *presque*, nearly; *rien*, nothing, &c. &c., or when the sentence is interrogative, the subordinate proposition takes the negative *ne*.

A discourse impeded or embarrassed by nothing goes on and flows from itself, and sometimes proceeds more rapidly than even the thought of the orator.

Un discours que rien ne lie et n'embarrasse, marche et coule de soi-même, et *il s'en faut peu* qu'il n'aille quelque fois plus vite que la pensée même de l'orateur.—*Boileau, Traité du Sublime*, ch. xvi.

*In a foolish manner, at random.*

† *'A tort et à travers.*

He talks at random like a crazy man.

Il parle à tort et à travers comme un fou.

To resort to violence.

En venir aux voies de fait.

A fact.

Un fait.

It is a fact.

C'est un fait.

*Else, or else.*

*Ou bien.*

To make fun of.

Se moquer de.

To contradict, to give one the lie.  
Should he say so, I would give him the lie.

Démentir quelqu'un.

S'il disait cela, je le démentirais.

His actions belie his words.

Ses actions démentent ses paroles.

*To scratch.*

*Égratigner* 1.

*To escape.*

† *En être quitte pour.*

I fell from the top of the tree to the bottom, but I did not hurt myself much.

J'ai tombé du haut de l'arbre en bas, mais je ne me suis pas fait beaucoup de mal.

I escaped with a scatch.

J'en ai été quitte pour une égratignure.

The thief has been taken, but he will escape with a few months' imprisonment.

Le voleur a été pris, mais il en sera quitte pour quelques mois de prison.

*By dint of.*

By dint of labour.

By too much weeping.

You will cry your eyes out.

† *'A force de.*

† *'A force de travail.*

† *'A force de pleurer.*

† *'A force de pleurer, vous perdrez les yeux.*

I obtained of him that favour by dint of entreaty.

† *J'obtins de lui cette faveur à force de prières.*

*That excepted.*

That fault excepted, he is a good man.

† *'A cela près.*

† *'A ce défaut près c'est un bon homme.*

*To vie with each other.*

Those men are trying to rival each other.

\* *'A l'envie (l'un de l'autre).*

† *Ces hommes travaillent à l'envie (l'un de l'autre.)*

Clean.

Clean linen.

*The more—as.*

*The less—as.*

I am *the more* discontented with his conduct, *as* he is under many obligations to me.

I am *the less* pleased with his conduct, *as* I had more right to his friendship.

Propre.

Du linge propre ou blanc.

*D'autant plus—que.*

*D'autant moins—que.*

Je suis *d'autant plus* mécontent de sa conduite, *qu'il* m'a beaucoup d'obligations.

Je suis *d'autant moins* satisfait de sa conduite, *que* j'avais plus de droits à son amitié.

*I wish that.*

I wish that house belonged to me.

† *Je voudrais que.*

† *Je voudrais que cette maison fût à moi.*

*To muse, to think.*

I thought a long time on that affair.

*Réver* 1 (*à* before noun).

J'ai rêvé long temps à cette affaire.

*To be naked.*

To have the head uncovered.

To have the feet uncovered.

*Être nu—nue.*

† Avoir la tête nue.

† Avoir les pieds nus.

*Obs. C.* When the adjective *nu*, naked, is construed with the verb *être*, to be, it remains invariable. *Ex.*

To be barefooted.

To be bareheaded.

To ride barebacked.

*Être nu-pieds.**Être nu-tête.*

† Aller à poil.

*To have like to, or to think to have.*† *Manquer* ou *penser*.*Obs. D.* *Manquer* takes *de* before the infinitive, but *penser* does not. *Ex.*

I had like to have lost my money.	{	J'ai manqué <i>de</i> perdre mon argent.
I thought I had lost my life.		J'ai pensé perdre mon argent.
We had like to have cut our fingers.	{	Je pensai perdre la vie.
He was very near falling.		Nous avons manqué de nous couper les doigts.
He was within a hair's breadth of being killed.	{	Il a manqué de tomber.
		Il a manqué d'être tué.
		Il a pensé être tué.
He had like to have died.		Peu s'en est fallu qu'il n'ait été tué.
		Il a pensé mourir.

At, on, or upon your heels  
The enemy is at our heels.

'A vos trousses.

L'ennemi est à nos trousses.

To strike (in speaking of lightning).

The lightning has struck.

The lightning struck the ship.

While my brother was on the open sea, a violent storm rose unexpectedly; the lightning struck the ship, which it set on fire, and the whole crew jumped into the sea to save themselves by swimming.

He was struck with fright when he saw that the fire was gaining on all sides.

He did not know what to do.

He hesitated no longer.

I have not heard of him yet.

An angel.

A masterpiece.

Masterpieces.

† Tomber.

La foudre est tombée.

La foudre tomba sur le vaisseau.

Mon frère étant en pleine mer, il survint une grande tempête; la foudre tomba sur le vaisseau qu'elle mit en feu, et tout l'équipage se jeta dans la mer pour se sauver à la nage.

Il fut saisi de frayeur, voyant que le feu gagnait de tous les côtés.

† Il ne savait quel parti prendre.

Il ne balançait plus.

† Je n'ai pas encore eu de ses nouvelles.

Un ange.

Un chef d'œuvre.

Des chefs d'œuvre.

*Obs. E.* Of a word compounded by means of a preposition, expressed or understood, the first word only takes the mark of the plural.

Four o'clock flowers. | Des belles *de* nuit.

His *or* her physiognomy.

His *or* her shape.

The expression.

The look.

Contentment.

Respect.

Admiration.

Grace, charm.

Delightfully.

Fascinating.

Thin (slender).

Uncommonly well.

His *or* her look inspires respect and admiration.

Sa physionomie.

Sa taille.

L'expression.

L'aspect.

Le contentement.

Le respect.

L'admiration.

Les grâces.

'A ravir.

Engageant.

Svelte.

Supérieurement bien.

Son aspect inspire du respect et de l'admiration.

## EXERCISES.

245.

Will you be my guest (*manger avec quelqu'un*)?—I thank you; a friend of mine has invited me to dinner: he has ordered (*faire préparer*) my favourite dish (*un mets favori*).—What is it?—It is a dish of milk (*du laitage*).—As for me, I do not like milk-meat: there is nothing like (*il n'y a rien tel qu'*) a good piece of roast beef or veal.—What has become of your younger brother?—He has suffered shipwreck (*faire naufrage*) in going to America.—You must give me an account of that (*raconter quelque chose*).—Very willingly (*volontiers*).—Being on the open sea, a great storm arose. The lightning struck the ship and set it on fire. The crew jumped into the sea to save themselves by swimming. My brother knew not what to do, having never learnt to swim. He reflected in vain; he found no means to save his life. He was struck with fright when he saw that the fire was gaining on all sides. He hesitated no longer, and jumped into the sea.—Well (*eh bien*), what has become of him?—I do not know, having not heard of him yet.—But who told you all that?—My nephew, who was there, and who saved himself.—As you are talking of your nephew (*à propos de*—) where is he at present?—He is in Italy.—Is it long since you heard of him?—I have received a letter from him to-day.—What does he write to you?—He writes to me that he is going to marry a young woman who brings him (*qui lui apporte*) a hundred thousand crowns.—Is she handsome?—Handsome as an angel; she is a master-piece of nature. Her physiognomy is mild and full of expression; her eyes are the finest in the (*du*) world, and her mouth is charming (*et sa bouche est mignonne*). She is neither too tall nor too short; her shape is slender; all her actions are full of grace, and her manners are engaging.—Her look inspires respect and admiration. She has also a great deal of wit; she speaks several languages, dances uncommonly well, and sings delightfully.—My nephew finds in her (*lui trouve*) but one defect (*un défaut*).—And what is that defect?—She is affected (*avoir des prétentions*).—There is nothing perfect in the world.—How happy you are! you are rich, you have a good wife, pretty children, a fine house, and all you wish.—Not all, my friend.—What do you desire more?—Contentment; for you know that he only is happy who is contented.



## EIGHTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Quatre-vingt-quatrième Leçon.*

<i>To unriddle, to disentangle.</i>	}	<i>Démêler 1.</i>
<i>To find out.</i>		
To disentangle the hair.		Démêler les cheveux.
To unriddle difficulties.		Démêler des difficultés.
I have not been able to find out the sense of that phrase.		Je n'ai pas pu démêler le sens de cette phrase.
A quarrel.		Un démêlé.
To have differences (a quarrel) with somebody.		Avoir des démêlés avec quelqu'un.

<i>To take good care, to shun, to beware.</i>	<i>Se garder de.</i>
I will take good care not to do it.	Je me garderai bien de le faire.
Mind you do not lend that man money.	Gardez-vous bien de prêter votre argent à cet homme.
He takes good care not to answer the question which I asked him.	Il se garde bien de répondre à la question que je lui ai faite.
To ask a question.	† Faire une question.
If you take it into your head to do that I will punish you.	Si vous vous avisez de le faire, je vous punirai.

<i>To become, to fit well.</i>	<i>Seoir 3* ; pres. part. seyant, or séant.</i>
--------------------------------	---

<i>Obs.</i> This verb is only used in the third person singular and plural.	
Does that become me ?	Cela me sied-il ?
That does not become you.	Cela ne vous sied pas.
It does not become you to do that.	Il ne vous sied pas de faire cela.
That fits you wonderfully well.	Cela vous sied à merveille.
Her head-dress did not become her.	Sa coiffure lui seyait mal.
It does not become you to reproach me with it.	Il vous sied bien de me le re- procher ( <i>an ironical expression</i> ).

*To follow from it.*

It follows from it that you should not do that.

How is it that you have come so late ?

I do not know how it is.

How is it that he had not his gun ?

I do not know how it happened.

*S'ensuivre 4\*.*

Il s'ensuit que vous ne devriez pas faire cela.

† Comment se fait-il que vous soyez venu si tard ?

† Je ne sais pas comment cela se fait.

† Comment se faisait-il qu'il n'eût pas son fusil ?

† Je ne sais pas comment cela se faisait.

*To fast.*

To be fasting.

To give notice to.

To let any body know.

To warn some one of something.

Give notice to that man of his brother's return.

*Jéûner 1.*

Être à jeun.

} Avertir quelqu'un de quelque chose.

| Avertissez cet homme du retour de son frère.

To clear, to elucidate, to clear up.

The weather is clearing up.

*Éclaircir 2.*

Le temps s'éclaircit.

*To refresh.*

Refresh yourself, and return to me immediately.

To whiten, to bleach.

To blacken.

To turn pale, to grow pale.

To grow old.

To grow young.

To blush, to redden.

*Rafrâchir 2.*

Rafrâchissez-vous, et revenez tout de suite.

Blanchir 2.

Noircir 2.

Pâlir 2.

Vieillir 2.

Rajeunir 2.

Rougir 2.

*To make merry.*

To make one's self merry.

He makes merry at my expense.

*Égayer 1.*

S'égayer.

Il s'égaie à mes dépens.

*To feign, to dissemble, to pretend.*

I feign, thou feignest, he feigns.  
He knows the art of dissembling.

*To procrastinate, to go slow about.*

I do not like to transact business  
with that man, for he always  
goes very slow about it.

*Feindre* \* 4; pres. part. *feignant*; past part. *feint*.

Je feins, tu feins, il feint.  
Il possède l'art de feindre.

† *Traîner les choses en longueur.*

Je n'aime pas à faire des affaires  
avec cet homme, parcequ'il traîne  
toujours les choses en longueur.

A proof.

This is a proof.

*To stray, to get lost, to lose  
one's self, to lose one's  
way.*

*Through.*

The cannon-ball went through the  
way.

I ran him through the body.

Une preuve.

C'est une preuve.

*S'égarer* 1.

*'A travers le, or  
Au travers de.*

Le boulet a passé à travers la mu-  
raille.

Je lui ai passé mon épée au travers  
du corps.

## EXERCISES.

246.

The Emperor Charles the Fifth (*Charles-Quint*) being one day out a hunting lost his way in the forest, and having come to a house entered it to refresh himself. There were in it four men, who pretended to sleep. One of them rose, and approaching the Emperor, told him he had dreamt he should take his watch, and took it. Then another rose and said he had dreamt that his *surtout* fitted him wonderfully, and took it. The third took his purse. At last the fourth came up, and said he hoped he would not take it ill if he searched him, and in doing it perceived around the emperor's neck a small gold chain to which a whistle was attached which he wished to rob him of. But the Emperor said: "My good friend, before depriving me (*priver quelqu'un de quel-*

*que chose*) of this trinket (*le bijou*), I must teach you its virtue." Saying this he whistled. His attendants (*ses gens*), who were seeking him, hastened to the house, and were thunderstruck (*frappé d'étonnement*) to behold his majesty in such a state. But the emperor seeing himself out of danger (*hors de danger*), said : "These men (*voici des hommes qui*) have dreamt all that they liked. I wish in my turn also to dream." And after having mused a few seconds, he said : "I have dreamt that you all four deserve to be hanged:" which was no sooner spoken than executed before the house.

A certain king making one day his entrance into a town at two o'clock in the afternoon (*après-midi*), the senate sent some deputies (*un député*) to compliment him. The one who was to speak (*porter la parole*) began thus : "Alexander the Great, the great Alexander," and stopped short (*demeurer court*).—The king, who was very hungry (*avoir grand' faim*) said : "Ah ! my friend, Alexander the Great had dined, and I am (*et moi je suis*) still fasting." Having said this, he proceeded to (*continuer son chemin vers*) the *hôtel de ville*, where a magnificent dinner had been prepared for him.

## 247.

A good old man, being very ill, sent for his wife, who was still very young, and said to her : "My dear, you see that my last hour is approaching, and that I am compelled to leave you. If, therefore, you wish me to die in peace you must do me a favour (*une grâce*). You are still young, and will, without doubt, marry again (*se remarier*): knowing this, I request of you not to wed (*prendre* \*) M. Louis ; for I confess that I have always been very jealous of him, and am so still. I should, therefore, die in despair (*désespéré*) if you did not promise me that." The wife answered : "My dear husband (*mon cœur*), I intreat you, let not this hinder you from dying peaceably ; for I assure you that, if even I wished to wed him I could not do so, being already promised to another."

It was customary with Frederick the Great, whenever a new soldier appeared in his guards, to ask him three questions ; viz.

“How old are you? How long have you been in my service? Are you satisfied with your pay and treatment?” It happened that a young soldier, born in France, who had served in his own country, desired to enlist in the Prussian service. His figure caused him to be immediately accepted; but he was totally ignorant of the German dialect; and his captain giving him notice that the king would question him in that tongue the first time he should see him, cautioned him at the same time to learn by heart the three answers that he was to make to the king. Accordingly he learnt them by the next day; and as soon as he appeared in the ranks Frederick came up to interrogate him: but he happened to begin upon him by the second question, and asked him, “How long have you been in my service?” “Twenty-one years,” answered the soldier. The king, struck with his youth, which plainly indicated that he had not borne a musket so long as that, said to him, much astonished, “How old are you?” “One year, an’t please your majesty (*n’en déplaît à Votre Majesté*).” Frederick, more astonished still, cried, “You or I must certainly be bereft of our senses.” The soldier, who took this for the third question, replied firmly (*avec aplomb*), “Both, an’t please your majesty.”



## EIGHTY-FIFTH LESSON.

*Quatre-vingt-cinquième Leçon.**To double.*

The double.

Your share, your part.

That merchant asks twice as much  
as he ought.You must bargain with him; he  
will give it you for the half.

You have twice your share.

You have three times your share.

*Doubler 1.*

Le double.

Votre part (*fem.*).

† Ce marchand surfait du double.

† Il faut que vous marchandiez  
avec lui; il vous rabattra la  
moitié.

Vous avez double part.

Vous avez triple part.

*To renew.*

To stun.

Wild, giddy.

Open, frank, real.

To shake somebody's hand.

I told him yes.

I told him no.

*To squeeze.**To lay up, to put by.*

Put your money by.

As soon as I have read my book I  
put it by.I do not care much about going  
to the play to-night.*Renouveler 1.*

Étourdir 2.

Étourdi—e.

Franc—franche.

Serrer la main à quelqu'un.

† Je lui dis qu'oui.

† Je lui dis que non.

*Serrer 1.*

Serrez votre argent.

Aussitôt que j'ai lu mon livre, je  
le serre.Je ne me soucie pas beaucoup  
d'aller à la comédie ce soir.*To satisfy one's self with a  
thing.*I have been eating an hour, and  
I cannot satisfy my hunger.† *Se rassasier 1.*† Il y a une heure que je mange et  
je ne puis me rassasier; *or*,† Je mange depuis une heure et  
je ne peux pas me rassasier.*To be satisfied.*| *Être rassasié.*

*To quench one's thirst.*

I have been drinking this half-hour, but I cannot quench my thirst.

To have one's thirst quenched.

*To thirst for, to be thirsty or dry.*

That is a blood-thirsty fellow.

On both sides, on every side.

On all sides.

† *Se désaltérer* 1.

Il y a une demi-heure que je bois, mais je ne puis me désaltérer.

Être désaltéré.

<sup>À</sup>*Être altéré.*

† C'est un homme altéré de sang.

De part et d'autre.

De toutes parts.

Allow me, my lady, to introduce to you Mr. G., an old friend of our family.

I am delighted to become acquainted with you.

I shall do all in my power to deserve your good opinion.

Allow me to introduce to you Mr. B., whose brother has rendered such eminent services to your cousin.

How happy we are to see you at our house !

Permettez, Madame, que je vous présente Monsieur de G. comme ancien ami de notre famille.

Je suis charmée, Monsieur, de faire votre connaissance.

Je ferai tout ce qui sera en mon pouvoir, pour me rendre digne de vos bonnes grâces.

Mesdames, permettez que je vous présente M. de B. dont le frère a rendu de si éminents services à votre cousin.

Ah ! Monsieur, que nous sommes enchantées de vous recevoir chez nous !

It is the prerogative of great men to conquer envy ; merit gives it birth, and merit destroys it.

C'est le privilège des grands hommes de vaincre l'envie ; *le* mérite la fait naître, *le* mérite la fait mourir.

## IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS DEPENDING

### 1st. *On the Use of a Noun.*

She does every thing gracefully.

Elle a *de la grâce* dans tout ce qu'elle fait.

These are very beautiful pictures.

Voilà des tableaux *d'une grande beauté.*

The German interest was contrary  
to the Russian.

Cheer up, soldiers, the day is ours.

To sleep very late.

To be on the brink of ruin.

To cast a mist before one's eyes.

To fret and fume.

To share the profit.

To put somebody to the sword.

To meet with one's match.

L'intérêt de l'Allemagne était op-  
posé à celui de la Russie.

Courage, soldats, la victoire est à  
nous.

Dormir la grasse matinée.

Être à deux doigts de sa perte.

Jeter de la poudre aux yeux.

Jeter feu et flamme.

Partager le gâteau.

Passer quelqu'un au fil de l'épée.

Trouver son maître.

## 2d. On the Use of a Pronoun.

What day of the month *is it*?

All blessings come from God.

Is that your opinion?—Do not  
question it.

Are those your servants?—Yes,  
they are.

Madam, are you the mother of  
that child?—Yes, I am.

Ladies, are you the strangers that  
have been announced to me?—  
Yes we are.

Ladies, are you pleased with that  
music?—Yes, we are.

Madam, are you a mother?—Yes,  
I am.

Madam, are you ill?—Yes, I am.

Madam, how long have you been  
married?—A year.

Is it long since you arrived?—A  
fortnight.

Although that woman shows more  
resolution than the others, she  
is nevertheless not the least  
afflicted.

Quel *quantième* du mois *avons-*  
*nous*?

Tous les biens *nous* viennent de  
Dieu.

Est-ce là votre *opinion*?—Ne  
doutez point que ce ne *la soit*.

Sont-ce là vos *domestiques*?—Oui,  
ce *les* sont.

Madame, êtes-vous *la mère* de cet  
enfant?—Oui, je *la* suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous *les étrangères*  
qu'on m'a annoncées?—Oui,  
nous *les* sommes.

Mesdames, êtes-vous *contentes* de  
cette musique?—Oui, nous *le*  
sommes.

Madame, êtes-vous *mère*?—Oui,  
je *le* suis.

Madame, êtes-vous *malade*?—  
Oui, je *le* suis.

Madame, depuis quel temps êtes-  
vous *mariée*?—Je *le* suis depuis  
un an.

Y a-t-il long-temps que vous êtes  
*arrivée*?—Je *le* suis depuis  
quinze jours.

Quoique cette femme montre plus  
de fermeté que les autres, *elle*  
n'est pas pour cela *la* moins  
affligée.

That woman has the art of shedding tears, even when she is least afflicted.

That woman proposed herself as a model *for her* children.

He (or she) has not succeeded in that stratagem.

Cette femme a l'art de répandre des larmes dans le temps même qu'elle est *le moins affligée*.

Cette femme s'est proposée pour modèle à *ses* enfants.

Cette ruse ne *lui* a pas réussi.

### 3rd. On the Use of a Verb, viz.

#### (a) AVOIR.

To be free and open.

To be full of business.

To take fire presently.

The dry weather *we had* in the spring has destroyed all the fruit.

*Avoir* le cœur sur les lèvres.

*Avoir* des affaires par-dessus les yeux.

*Avoir* la tête près du bonnet.

La sécheresse qu'il *y a eu* au printemps a fait périr tous les fruits.

#### (b) ALLER.

To put to the vote.

Life is at stake.

My honour is concerned in it.

That is understood.

To act deliberately.

To go full speed.

Shall you go to the opera this evening?—Yes, I shall.

Would you cheerfully go to Rome?—Yes, I would.

*Aller* aux voix.

Il y *va* de la vie.

Il y *va* de mon honneur.

Cela *va* sans dire.

*Aller* pas à pas.

*Aller* à bride abattue.

Irez-vous ce soir à l'opéra?—Oui, *j'irai*.

Iriez-vous avec plaisir à Rome?—Oui, *j'irais*.

#### (c) DONNER.

To pass one's time merrily.

To fall upon the enemy.

The sun is in my eyes.

To know not which way to turn.

To give full power.

To help.

To give largely.

Lucretia killed herself.

Se *donner* du bon temps.

*Donner* sur l'ennemi.

Le soleil me *donne* dans la vue.

Ne savoir où *donner* de la tête.

*Donner* carte blanche.

*Donner* un coup de main.

*Donner* à pleines mains.

Lucrèce s'est *donné* la mort.

#### (d) FAIRE.

Establish rules for yourself, and never deviate from them.

*Faites-vous* des principes dont vous ne vous *écartiez* jamais.

To forgive somebody.	<i>Faire grâce à quelqu'un.</i>
To prosper.	<i>Faire bien ses affaires.</i>
To fence.	<i>Faire des armes.</i>
To give a deaf ear.	<i>Faire la sourde oreille.</i>
To do something secretly.	<i>Faire quelque chose sous main.</i>

## (e) JOUER.

To run all chance.	<i>Jouer à quitte ou double.</i>
To perform a play.	<i>Jouer une pièce de théâtre.</i>
To throw one's last stake.	<i>Jouer de son reste.</i>

## (f) ALL SORTS OF VERBS.

I admit that it is so.	<i>Je n'en disconviens pas.</i>
I cannot accomplish it.	<i>Je ne puis en venir à bout.</i>
To fight.	<i>En venir aux mains.</i>
It is an endless business.	<i>C'est la mer à boire.</i>
To interrupt one who speaks.	<i>Couper la parole à quelqu'un.</i>
To allay one's passion.	<i>Mettre de l'eau dans son vin.</i>
To raise an army.	<i>Mettre une armée sur pied.</i>
That wine flies up to the head.	<i>Ce vin porte à la tête.</i>
Not to know which way to turn.	<i>Ne savoir sur quel pied danser.</i>

*Obs. A.* Let us in addition remark that there are in French a great many proverbs or proverbial forms of expression, of which the following are most in use.

Assiduity makes all things easy.	<i>'A force de forger, on devient forgeron.</i>
Evil be to him that evil thinks.	<i>'A qui veut mal, mal arrive.</i>
A desperate disease must have a desperate cure.	<i>Aux grands maux les grands remèdes.</i>
Fair words cost nothing.	<i>Beau parler n'écorche pas de langue.</i>
A good name is better than riches.	<i>Bonne renommée vaut mieux que ceinture dorée.</i>
It is not the cowl makes the friar.	<i>L'habit ne fait pas le moine.</i>
All is not lost that is delayed.	<i>Ce qui est différé n'est pas perdu.</i>
Charity begins at home.	<i>Charité bien ordonnée commence par soi-même.</i>
Barking dogs seldom bite.	<i>Chien qui aboie ne mord pas.</i>
To kill two birds with one stone.	<i>Faire d'une pierre deux coups.</i>
Strike the iron while it is hot.	<i>Il faut battre le fer quand il est chaud.</i>



Good stomach is the best sauce.  
Smooth water runs deep.  
It is better to be envied than  
pitied.

Better late than never.

All's well that ends well.

Ill gotten goods never prosper.

A word to the wise is enough.  
Short reckonings make long  
friends.

Opportunity makes the thief.  
No pleasure without pain.  
Where nothing is to be had the  
king loses his right.

Rome was not built in a day.  
No money, no pater-noster.  
It is one thing to promise, and  
another to perform.

Do well, and have well.  
Nothing venture, nothing have.  
Who makes himself a sheep, him  
the wolf eateth.

All is not gold that glitters  
Truth is not to be spoken at all  
times.

Cat after kind.

An honest man is as good as his  
word.

One misfortune comes on the  
neck of another.

A bird in the hand is worth two  
in the bush.

Il n'est sauce que d'appétit.  
Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort.  
Il vaut mieux faire envie que pitié.

Mieux vaut tard que jamais.

{ Le fin couronne l'œuvre.  
Qui veut la fin veut les moyens.  
Bien mal acquis ne profite ja-  
mais.

Le sage entend à demi-mot.  
Les bons comptes font les bons  
amis.

L'occasion fait le larron.  
Nul bien sans peine.  
Où il n'y a rien, le roi perd ses  
droits.

Paris n'a pas été fait dans un jour.  
Point d'argent, point de Suisse.  
Promettre et tenir sont deux.

Qui fera bien, bien trouvera.  
Qui ne hasarde rien n'a rien.  
Qui se fait brebis, le loup le  
mange.

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or.  
Toute vérité n'est pas bonne à  
dire.

Bon chien chasse de race.  
Un honnête homme n'a que sa  
parole.

Un malheur ne vient jamais seul.

Un tiens vaut mieux que deux tu  
l'auras.

It is the finest country *in* Europe.

C'est le plus beau pays *de* l'Eu-  
rope.

*Obs. B.* When a relative superlative is to be expressed, the English preposition *in* is rendered into French by the genitive case. *Ex.*

Candia is one of the most agree-  
able islands *in* the Mediterra-  
nean.

Candie est une des îles les plus  
agréables *de* la Méditerranée.

He lives in his retreat <i>like</i> a real philosopher.	Il vit dans sa retraite <i>en</i> vrai philosophe.
---	--

*Obs. C.* *Like* is rendered by *en* when it means *equal to*. Ex.

You live <i>like</i> a king.	Vous vivez <i>en</i> roi.
He acts <i>like</i> a madman.	Il agit <i>en</i> furieux.
To behave <i>like</i> a blunderbuss.	Se conduire <i>en</i> étourdi.
Who knocks as if he were master where I am ?	Qui frappe <i>en</i> maître où je suis ?

### EXERCISES.

248.

A man had two sons, one of whom liked to sleep very late in the morning (*la grasse matinée*) and the other was very industrious, and always rose very early. The latter (*celui-ci*) having one day gone out very early found a purse well filled with money. He ran to his brother to inform him (*faire part de quelque chose à quelqu'un*) of his good luck (*la bonne fortune*), and said to him : " See, Louis, what is got (*gagner*) by (*à*) rising early ?"—" Faith (*ma foi*) !" answered his brother, " if the person to whom it belongs had not risen earlier than I, he would not have lost it."

A lazy young fellow being asked, what made him lie (*rester*) in bed so long ?—" I am busied (*être occupé*)," says he, " in hearing counsel every morning. Industry (*le travail*) advises me to get up ; sloth (*la paresse*) to lie still ; and so they give me twenty reasons *pro* and *con* (*pour et contre*). It is my part (*c'est à moi*) to hear what is said on both sides ; and by the time the cause (*la cause*) is over (*entendue*) dinner is ready."

It was a beautiful turn given by a great lady, who, being (*on raconte un beau trait d'*—) asked where her husband was, when he lay concealed (*être caché*) for having been deeply concerned in a conspiracy (*pour avoir trempé dans une conspiration*), resolutely (*courageusement*) answered, she had hid him. This confession (*un aveu*) drew her before the king, who told her, nothing but her discovering where her lord was concealed could save her from the

torture (*qu'elle ne pouvait échapper à la torture qu'en découvrant la retraite de son époux*). "And will that do (*suffire* \*)?" said the lady. "Yes," says the king, "I give you my word for it." "Then," says she, "I have hid him in my heart, where you will find him." Which surprising answer (*cette réponse admirable*) charmed her enemies.

## 249.

Cornelia, the illustrious (*illustre*) mother of the Gracchi (*des Gracques*), after the death of her husband, who left her with twelve children, applied herself to (*se vouer à*) the care of her family, with a wisdom (*la sagesse*) and prudence that acquired for (*acquérir* \*) her universal esteem (*l'estime universelle*). Only three out of (*d'entre*) the twelve lived to years of maturity (*l'âge mûr*); one daughter, Sempronia, whom she married to the second Scipio Africanus; and two sons, Tiberius and Caius, whom she brought up (*élever*) with so much care, that, though they were generally acknowledged (*savoir généralement*) to have been born with the most happy dispositions (*la disposition*), it was judged that they were still more indebted (*être redevable*) to education than nature. The answer she gave (*faire* \*) a Campanian lady (*une dame de Campanie*) concerning them (*à leur sujet*) is very famous (*fameux—se*), and includes in it (*renfermer*) great instruction for ladies and mothers.

That lady, who was very rich, and fond of pomp and show (*être passionné pour le faste et l'éclat*) having displayed (*étaler*) her diamonds (*le diamant*), pearls (*la perle*), and richest jewels, earnestly desired Cornelia to let her see her jewels also. Cornelia dexterously (*adroitement*) turned the conversation to another subject to wait the return of her sons, who were gone to the public schools. When they returned and entered their mother's apartment, she said to the Campanian lady, pointing to them (*montrer*): "These are my jewels, and the only ornaments (*la parure*) I prize (*priser*)."

And such ornaments, which are the strength (*la force*) and support (*le soutien*) of society, add a brighter lustre (*un plus grand lustre*) to the fair (*la beauté*) than all the jewels of the East (*de l'Orient*).

## EIGHTY-SIXTH LESSON.

*Quatre-vingt-sixième Leçon.*


---

 RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES OF SYNTAX OR  
CONSTRUCTION.

1st. The adjectives, *beau*, fine; *vilain*, ugly; *bon*, good; *mauvais*, bad; *méchant*, wicked; *grand*, great; *gros*, big; *petit*, little; *jeune*, young; *vieux*, old; *meilleur*, better; *moindre*, less; and *saint*, holy; precede the substantive<sup>1</sup>; others, particularly those expressing the name of nations, and those denoting colour or shape, follow it. Also when two or more adjectives refer to the same noun, they are usually placed after it<sup>2</sup>. Ex. *Un bon enfant*, a good child; *un méchant garçon*, a naughty boy; *la langue française*, the French language; *un chapeau blanc*, a white hat; *un bas noir*, a black stocking; *une table ronde*, a round table; *un roi bon et généreux*, a good and generous king; *une femme jeune, riche et vertueuse*, a young, rich and virtuous woman. (See Obs. C. Less. XXVI.; Obs. B. Less. XXXVIII., and Note 1, Less. XXVI.; and many other examples in the foregoing lessons and exercises).

2nd. The adverb usually stands after the simple tense, and after the auxiliary in a compound tense of the verb. Ex. *Je sors plus tard que vous*, I go out later than you (Lesson XXX.). *Allez-vous quelquefois au bal?* Do you sometimes go to the ball? *J'y vais quelquefois*, I do

---

<sup>1</sup> The adjective, *cher*, dear, also stands before the noun, except when it denotes the price of a thing. Ex. *Mon cher ami*, my dear friend; *ma chère sœur*, my dear sister; but *un fusil cher*, a dear gun; *une table chère*, a dear table.

<sup>2</sup> The following particularities with respect to the place of the adjective, must be remarked: *Un grand homme* means a great man, and *un homme grand*, a tall man; *une grosse femme*, a fat woman, and *une femme grosse*, a woman with child; *une sage-femme*, a midwife; and *une femme sage*, a wise or modest woman; *un galant homme*, a man of honour, and *un homme galant*, a courtier.



go thither sometimes. (Lesson XXXII.) Votre sœur parle *bien*, your sister speaks well. Elle a *bien* parlé, she has spoken well. Votre frère a-t-il *bien écrit* son thème? Did your brother write his exercise well? Il l'a *bien écrit*, he did write it well. (Lesson XXXV.) Je n'ai *jamais* fait de mal à personne, I have never done harm to any body. (Lesson XLIV.) And numerous other examples in the preceding lessons.

*Obs. A.* In French the adverb is never put between the nominative and the verb, as it is in English. Ex. Je le vois *souvent*, I *often* see him. Je lui parle *souvent*, I *often* speak to him or her. Il n'a *jamais* eu tort ni raison, he *never* has been either right or wrong. And numerous other examples in the preceding lessons and exercises.

3rd. The prepositions always stand before the word which they govern, and never after, as is sometimes the case in English. Ex. De quoi avez-vous besoin? What are you in want *of*? (Lesson XXIII.) 'A qui écrivez-vous? Whom are you writing *to*? (Lesson XXIX.) De qui parlez-vous? Whom do you speak *of*? De quoi parlent-ils? What are they speaking *of*? (Lesson XLI.) De qui avons-nous été blâmés? Whom have we been blamed *by*? (Lesson XLIX.) And numerous other examples in the foregoing lessons and exercises.

4th. A sentence is (a) either affirmative, (b) or interrogative, (c) or negative, (d) or it is both interrogative and negative.

(a) In an affirmative sentence the nominative precedes the verb. Ex. L'homme a le crayon, the man has the pencil. (Lesson VII.) Il a le coffre, he has the trunk. (Lesson VII.) Ces enfants sont aimés parcequ'ils sont studieux et sages, these children are loved because they are studious and good. (Lesson XLII.) Nos enfants ont été loués et récompensés parcequ'ils ont été sages et assidus, our children have been praised and rewarded because they have been good and studious. (Lesson XLIX.) And numerous other examples in the preceding lessons and exercises.

(b) In an interrogative sentence two things are to be considered, *viz.*  
 1. If the nominative is a personal pronoun, or the indefinite pronoun *on*, it follows the simple tense, and stands after the auxiliary in a compound tense of the verb. Ex. Savez-vous écrire? Do you know how to write? Sait-il lire? Does he know how to read? (Lesson XXVII.) Entendez-vous le bruit du vent? Do you hear the roaring of the wind? (Lesson XXXV.) A-t-on apporté mes souliers? Have they brought my shoes? A-t-on pu trouver les livres? Have they been able to find the books? Peut-on les trouver à présent? Can they find them now? (Lesson XXXVII.) Est-il enfin arrivé? Has he arrived at last?



(Lesson XLII.) *Vient-il* enfin? Does he come at last? (Lesson XLII.) *Veut-il* se chauffer? Does he wish to warm himself? (Lesson XLIII.) And numerous other examples in what precedes.

2. But if the nominative is a substantive, or any other than the just-mentioned pronouns, it precedes the verb, and the personal pronoun (*il, elle, ils, elles*) follows the verb or its auxiliary. Ex. *L'homme a-t-il* mes beaux pistolets? Has the man my fine pistols? *Le garçon les a-t-il*? Has the boy them? *Les hommes les ont-ils*? Have the men them? (Lesson XI.) *Votre père aime-t-il* son fils? Does your father love his son? (Lesson XXIV.) *Votre père est-il* parti? Has your father set out? *Vos amis sont-ils* partis? Have your friends set out? (Lesson XXXIV.) *Le domestique revient-il* de bonne heure du magasin? Does the servant return early from the warehouse? (Lesson XXXVI.) *Votre sœur est-elle* arrivée? Has your sister arrived? *Votre mère est-elle* venue? Has your mother come? *Les femmes sont-elles* venues? Have the women come? *Quelqu'un est-il* venu en mon absence? Has any body called during my absence? *Mon chapeau est* sur la table; le vôtre est-il sur le banc et celui de ma sœur est-il sur la chaise? My hat is upon the table; is yours upon the bench, and is your sister's upon the chair? (Lesson LVII.) And a great many other examples in the preceding lessons and exercises.

*Obs. B.* If the personal pronoun be in any other case than the nominative, it precedes the verb in an interrogative sentence the same as in the affirmative sentence. See Rules 6 and 7 hereafter. Ex. *L'aimez-vous*? Do you love him? *Le vendez-vous*? Do you sell it? *Vous envoie-t-il* le billet? Does he send you the note? (Lesson XXIV.) *M'écoutez-vous*? Do you listen to me? (Lesson XXVI.) *Me faites-vous* voir votre fusil? Do you show your gun to me? (Lesson XXVII.) *M'avez-vous* dit le mot? Have you told me the word? *Vous a-t-il* dit cela? Has he told you that? *Lui avez-vous* dit cela? Have you told him that? *M'appellez-vous*? Do you call me? *Les avez-vous* jetés? Have you thrown them away? (Lesson XXXIII.) *Me promettez-vous* de venir? Do you promise me to come? (Lesson XXXV.) *Vous rend-il* votre livre? Does he return you your book? (Lesson XXXIX.) *Vous paie-t-il* le couteau? Does he pay you for the knife? (Lesson XL.) *Vous ai-je* fait du mal? Have I hurt you? And a great many other examples in what precedes.

*Obs C.* When there is an interrogative pronoun in the interrogative sentence it also stands at the head whatever may be its case. Ex. *Qui est* là? Who is there? *Qu'avez-vous* fait? What have you done? *Quel garçon a* acheté ces livres, et à *qui en a-t-il* fait présent? Which boy has bought those books, and to whom has he given them? 'A *qui*

*voulez-vous répondre?* To whom do you wish to answer? (Lesson XXI.) *'A qui est ce chapeau?* Whose hat is that? (Lesson XXIX.) *'A qui écrivez-vous?* To whom do you write? (Lesson XXIX.) *De quoi votre oncle se réjouit-il?* What does your uncle rejoice at? *'A quelle heure vous êtes-vous couché?* At what o'clock did you go to bed? *'A quelle heure s'est-il couché hier?* At what o'clock did he go to bed yesterday? (Lesson XLIV.) And numerous other examples in the preceding lessons and exercises.

(c) In a negative sentence *ne* follows immediately the nominative of the verb; and the other negative words, such as, *pas, point, jamais, &c.* follow the verb in a simple tense, and its auxiliary in a compound one. Ex. *Je ne l'ai pas,* I have it not. *Vous n'avez rien de bon,* you have nothing good. (Lesson VI.) *Il ne veut pas y rester,* he will not stay there. *Il ne va pas,* he does not go. *Il n'en a pas besoin,* he is not in want of it. (Lesson XXIII.) *Vous n'y avez jamais été,* you have never been there. (Lesson XXXI.) *Je n'ai jamais fait de mal à personne,* I have never done harm to any one. (Lesson XLIV.) *Il ne peut pas vous donner de pain, car il n'en a pas,* he cannot give you any bread, for he has none. (Lesson XLIV.) *Je ne les ai pas connus,* I have not been acquainted with them. (Lesson XXXIII.) *Je ne le crois pas,* I do not believe him. (Lesson XLIV.) *Je n'ai rien jeté,* I have thrown away nothing. (Lesson XLIX.) *Il n'a rien laissé tomber,* he has not dropt any thing. *Je ne me les suis pas rappelés,* I have not recollected them. *Je ne me suis pas sauvé,* I did not run away. (Lesson LI.) And numerous other examples in the foregoing lessons and exercises.

*Obs. D.* If the verb is in the infinitive both negations precede it. Ex. *Il m'aime trop pour ne pas le faire,* he is too fond of me not to do it. *Il faut être peu sensé pour ne pas voir cela,* one must be a fool not to perceive that. (Lesson LXXII.) And numerous other examples in the foregoing lessons and exercises.

(d) If the sentence is both interrogative and negative its construction is exactly the same as when it is interrogative, only the negative *ne* stands at the head of the sentence, and the other negative words follow the verb in a simple tense, and its auxiliary in a compound one. Ex. *Ne savez-vous pas écrire?* Do you not know how to write? *Ne sait-il pas lire?* Does he not know how to read? *N'entendez-vous pas le bruit du vent?* Do you not hear the roaring of the wind? &c. &c. *Ne pourriez-vous pas me dire quel est le chemin le plus court pour arriver à la porte de la ville?* Could you not tell me which is the nearest way to the city-gate? (Lesson LXXII.) And numerous other examples in this work.

5th. The personal pronouns stand immediately after the verb by which they are governed when it is in the imperative without a negation<sup>1</sup>. Ex. *Donnez-le-moi*, give it me. *Envoyez-le-lui*, send it to him. *Empruntez-le-lui*, borrow it of (or from) him. (Lesson LXX.)

6th. But when the verb is not in the imperative, or when it is in the negative imperative, or any other mood or tense, the pronouns which are governed by it are put immediately before it in a simple tense, and immediately before the auxiliary in a compound one. Ex. *Je vous l'ai dit*, I have told it you. *Il me l'a dit*, he has told it me. *Je le lui ai dit*, I have told it him. *Vous le lui avez dit*, you have told it him. *Il le lui a dit*, he has told it him. (Lesson XXIV. A, Lesson XXXII., and Lesson XXXIII.) *Je vous le promets*, I do promise you. (Lesson XXXV.) *Je les lui paie*, I pay him for them. *Je vous le demande*, I ask you for it. (Lesson XL.) *Ne le lui dites pas*, do not tell him. *Ne le leur rendez pas*, do not return it to them. (Lesson LXX.) *Il se le rappelle*, he does recollect it. *Je me les rappelle*, I do recollect them. *Il se les est rappelés*, he has recollected them. *Nous nous les sommes rappelés*, we have recollected them. *Il se les sont rappelés*, they have recollected them. (Lesson LI.) *Il vous l'enverra, s'il l'a fini*, he will send it you, if he has done with it. *Je le lui porte*, I carry it to him. (Lesson LVIII.) And numerous other examples in the foregoing lessons and exercises.

7th. According to Rule 6, when two or more pronouns are governed by the verb, they stand before it in the order presented (Lesson XX., which see). As to the words *y* and *en*, they always precede the verb, but the personal pronouns stand before them, and *y* always stands before *en*, as may be seen in Lesson XIX. Obs. Ex. *Je le leur ai dit*, I have told it them. (Lesson XXXIII.) *Je veux le lui envoyer*, I will send it to him. *Je veux vous en donner*, I am willing to give you some.

---

<sup>1</sup> As to the third person of the imperative, it cannot be considered as an exception to this rule, as it is in fact nothing but the present of the subjunctive with a verb, such as : *je veux, je souhaite, je consens, il faut*, understood, the conjunction *que* at the head of a sentence generally marking *order, wish, or consent*. Therefore, when we say (Lesson LXXXII.), *qu'il me l'envoie*, let him send it me ; *qu'il le croie*, he may believe it ; *qu'elle le dise*, let her say so ; *qu'il le prenne*, let him take it, it is as much as if we said : *je veux, je souhaite, il faut, je consens, qu'il me l'envoie, qu'il le croie, qu'elle le dise, &c.*

*Je veux lui en prêter*, I will lend some to him. (Lesson XX.) *Je veux l'y envoyer*, I will send him to him, or thither. (Lesson XIX.) *Je les y ai conduits*, I have conducted them thither. (Lesson XXXIV.) *Je vous le remettrai demain*, I will give it you to-morrow. *Ne lui en épargnez pas la peine*, do not save him the trouble. *Il vous les enverra*, he will send them you. *Il y en enverra*, he will send some thither. (Lesson XLVI.) And a good many other examples in the foregoing lessons and exercises.

---

EXERCISES.

250.

## POLITENESS.

When the Earl of Stair was at the court of Louis XIV., his manners, address, and conversation, gained much on the esteem and friendship of that monarch. One day, in a circle of his courtiers, talking of the advantage of good breeding and easy manners, the king offered to lay a wager he would name an English nobleman that should excel in those particulars any Frenchman of his court. The wager was jocularly accepted, and his majesty was to choose his own time and place for the experiment.

To avoid suspicion, the king let the subject drop for some months, till the courtiers thought he had forgotten it; he then chose the following stratagem: he appointed Lord Stair, and two of the most polished noblemen of his court to take an airing with him after the breaking up of the levee; the king accordingly came down the great staircase at Versailles, attended by those three lords, and coming up to the side of the coach, instead of going in first, as usual, he pointed to the French lords to enter; they, unaccustomed to the ceremony, shrunk back, and submissively declined the honour; he then pointed to Lord Stair, who made his bow, and instantly sprang into the coach: the king and the French lords followed.

When they were seated, the king exclaimed, "Well, gentlemen, I believe you will acknowledge I have won my wager." "How so, sire?" "Why," continued the king, "when I desired you both to go into the coach, you declined it: but this polite foreigner (pointing to Lord Stair) no sooner received the commands of a



king, though not his sovereign, than he instantly obeyed." The courtiers hung down their heads in confusion, and acknowledged the justice of his majesty's claim.

## 251.

## MILDNESS.

The mildness of Sir Isaac Newton's temper through the course of his life commanded admiration from all who knew him ; but in no one instance perhaps more than the following. Sir Isaac had a favourite little dog, which he called Diamond ; and being one day called out of his study into the next room, Diamond was left behind. When Sir Isaac returned, having been absent but a few minutes, he had the mortification to find that Diamond, having thrown down a lighted candle among some papers, the nearly finished labour of many years was in flames, and almost consumed to ashes. This loss, as Sir Isaac Newton was then very far advanced in years, was irretrievable ; yet, without once striking the dog, he only rebuked him with this exclamation : " O ! Diamond ! Diamond ! thou little knowest the mischief thou hast done."

---

Zeuxis entered into a contest of art with Parrhasius. The former painted grapes so truly, that birds came and pecked at them. The latter delineated a curtain so exactly, that Zeuxis coming in, said, " Take away the curtain that we may see this piece." And finding his error, said, " Parrhasius, thou hast conquered : I only deceived birds, thou an artist."

Zeuxis painted a boy carrying grapes ; the birds came again and pecked. Some applauding, Zeuxis flew to the picture in a passion, saying, " My boy must be very ill painted !"

The inhabitants of a great town offered to Marshal de Turenne one hundred thousand crowns upon condition he should take another road, and not march his troops their way. He answered them, " As your town is not on the road I intend to march, I cannot accept the money you offer me."



A corporal of the life-guards of Frederick the Great, who had a great deal of vanity, but at the same time was a brave fellow, wore a watch-chain, to which he affixed a musket-bullet instead of a watch, which he was unable to buy. The king, being inclined one day to rally him, said, "Apropos, corporal, you must have been very frugal to buy a watch: it is six o'clock by mine; tell me what it is by yours?" The soldier, who guessed the king's intention, instantly drew out the bullet from his fob, and said, "My watch neither marks five nor six o'clock; but it tells me every moment, that it is my duty to die for your majesty." "Here, my friend," said the king, quite affected, "take this watch, that you may be able to tell the hour also." And he gave him his watch, which was adorned with brilliants.

## 252.

THE HISTORY OF JOHN AND MARY (*Jean et Marie*).

There was a merchant who went to India with his wife. He made there a large fortune, and at the end of a few years he re-embarked for France, which was his native country. He had a son and a daughter. The former aged four was called John, and the latter, who was only three, was called Mary. When they had proceeded about half way, a violent storm came on, and the pilot said they were in great danger, because the wind drove (*pousser*) towards some islands, against which the wreck was unavoidable. The poor merchant having heard this, took a large plank, and firmly fastened on it his wife and both his children; he was going to fasten himself to it, but had not time; for the vessel having struck against a rock (*toucher contre un rocher*), split (*s'ouvrit*), and all the crew (*et tous ceux qui étaient dedans*) fell into the sea. The plank, on which were the woman and the children, was carried by the water like a small boat (*se soutint sur la mer comme un petit bateau*), and the wind sent it towards an island. The woman then undid (*détacher*) the cords, and advanced in the island with her children.

On finding herself in a place of safety her first act (*la première chose qu'elle fit*) was to throw herself on her knees, and thank God for her preservation (*de l'avoir sauvée*). She was sadly

grieved to have lost her husband. She also thought that she and her children would die of hunger on this island, or be devoured by wild beasts. She proceeded for some time full of these melancholy thoughts, and perceived some trees loaded with fruit; she took a stick, and knocked down (*faire tomber*) some of it, which she gave to her children, and ate some herself. She went on further to see if she could not discover some cottage, but she was sadly disappointed when she discovered (*reconnaître*\*) that she was on a desert island. She found on her way a large hollow tree (*un grand arbre qui était creux*), and resolved to pass the night in it. She slept (*coucher*) in it with her children, and proceeded the next day into the island as far as they could walk. She found also on her way some birds' nests (*des nids d'oiseaux*), from which she took the eggs. Seeing that she found neither man nor beast, she resolved to submit to the will of God, and to do all in her power (*faire son possible*) to bring her children up well. She had in her pocket a New Testament (*un évangile*) and a prayer-book (*un livre de prière*). She used them to teach her children to read, and to know God (*et pour leur enseigner à connaître le bon Dieu*). One day the little boy said to her: "Mother, where is my father?" "My poor child," answered this poor woman with tears (*en pleurant*), "your father is gone to heaven; but you have another father who is God (*le bon Dieu*). He is here, though you do not see him. It is he who sends us fruit and eggs; and he will take care of us so long as (*tant que*) we love him with all our heart, and serve him." When these little children were able to read, they read with great pleasure what was contained in their books, and talked about it all day. Besides, they were very good and obedient to their mother.

At the end (*au bout*) of two years this poor woman fell ill, and she felt her death was near (*approcher*): she was very uneasy about (*pour*) her poor children; but at last she thought that God, who is so good, would take care of them. She was lying in the hollow of the tree, and having called her children, she said to them: "My dear children, I am going to die, and you will soon be motherless (*n'avoir plus de mère*). Remember, however, that you will not be alone, and that God sees all you do. Never, miss (*manquer*) praying to him night and morning. My dear John,

take great care of your sister ; do not scold her ; never beat her : you are bigger and stronger than she ; you will go and seek fruit and eggs for her." She also wished to say a few words (*quelque chose*) to Mary, but she had not time, and died.

These poor children did not understand what their mother meant (*vouloir dire*), for they did not know what death was (*ce que c'était que de mourir*). When she was dead, they thought that she was asleep, and they feared to make a noise, lest they should wake her. John went to fetch some fruit, and having supped, they lay down by the side of the tree, and both fell asleep (*s'endormir\**). They were much astonished the next morning to find that their mother was yet asleep, and went to pull her by the arm to wake her. As they perceived that she did not answer, they thought they had offended her, and began to cry (*se mettre à pleurer*), begging her pardon, and promised to be very good. It was in vain (*ils eurent beau faire*) ; the poor woman could answer no more. They remained there several days until the body began to be corrupted (*se décomposer*). Mary exclaimed one morning to John (*Marie se mit à jeter de grands cris, et dit à Jean*) : " Ah, my brother, the worms are eating our poor mamma ; we must get them away (*arracher*) ; come and help me." John approached, but the body smelt so bad, that they could not remain there, and they were obliged (*être contraint*) to seek another tree to sleep in.

These two children never missed praying to God ; they read their books so often that they knew them by heart. When they had read they would walk, or else (*ou bien*) they sat down on the grass and talked (*et causaient entr'eux*). One day John said to his sister : " I remember, when I was very little, to have been in a place where there were many houses and many men ; my father had many servants ; we had also many nice frocks (*de beaux habits*). All at once papa put us in a house that went on the water, and then, on a sudden, he fastened us on to a plank (*attacher à une planche*), and has gone to the bottom (*le fond*) of the sea, whence he has not returned ; and our dear mother says he is now in heaven." " It is very strange (*singulier*)," answered Mary ; " but since it has happened, it is because it was the will of God ; for you know, brother (*mon frère*), that he is almighty (*tout-puissant*)."

John and Mary remained eleven years on this island. One day that they were sitting on the shore (*au bord de la mer*), they saw a boat with several black men come up to them. Mary was at first frightened, and wanted to run away ; but John said to her, " Let us remain, sister (*ma sœur*), do you not know that God our father (*que notre père le bon Dieu*) is here, and that he will prevent these men from hurting us ?" These blacks having landed (*descendre à terre*), were surprised to see these children, who were of a different colour to them (*d'une autre couleur qu'eux*). They surrounded them, and spoke to them : it was in vain, for these children did not understand their language. John took these savages to the place where his mother's bones were, and told them how she had died ; but they did not understand him either. The blacks at last showed them their little boat, and made signs to them to enter. " I dare not," said Mary, " these people frighten me." Her brother comforted (*rassurer*) her.

They therefore entered the boat, which led them to an island that was not far from thence, and whose inhabitants were savages. All these savages received them very well : their king could not take his eyes off (*ne pouvait se laisser de regarder*) Mary ; and he often put his hand to his heart, to show that he loved her. Mary and John soon learnt the language of these savages, and became acquainted with all that they were doing. John soon found that they made war on people who lived in the neighbouring islands, that they ate their prisoners, and that they worshipped (*adorer*) a great ugly monkey (*le singe*), that had several savages to attend on him (*pour le servir*), so that the two children were sorry to have come to live with these wicked people. However, the king was determined on marrying (*voulait absolument épouser*) Mary, who said to her brother : " I would rather die than be the wife of that man." " Is it because he is so ugly that you would not marry him ?" said John. " No, brother," said she, " it is because he is wicked : do you not perceive that he is unacquainted with God our Father ; and that, instead of praying to him, he kneels (*se mettre à genoux*) before that horrid monkey ? Besides, our book tells us that we must forgive our enemies, and do good to them ; and you see that, instead of that, this wicked man has his prisoners put to death (*faire mourir*) and eats them."



"A thought has struck me (*il me vient une pensée*)," said John ; "if we were to kill that horrid monkey, they would soon perceive that it is no God. Let us poison it." Mary agreed to it, and the monkey died. The savages who took care of it, and who were as its priests, told the king that Mary and her brother were the cause of the misfortune that had occurred, and that he could not be happy until these two whites were killed. It was immediately decided that a sacrifice should be made to the new monkey that had just been substituted for the last, that the two whites should be present, and that they should afterwards be burned alive (*brûler quelqu'un tout vif*). John having heard this resolution, said to them : "If your monkey had been a God, I could never have killed him ; have I not been stronger than he ? We must worship the great God, the Creator of heaven and earth, and not such an ugly beast." This speech irritated all the savages ; they fastened John and his sister to two trees, and were prepared to burn them, when intelligence came (*lorsqu'on leur apprit*) that a great number of their enemies had just landed (*aborder*) on the island. They ran to meet them (*pour les combattre*), and were defeated (*être vaincu*). The savages who remained the conquerors took off the chains of the two whites, and conveyed (*emmener*) them to their own island, where they became the slaves of the king.

These new savages, however, were often at war like their neighbours, and ate their prisoners. They one day took a great number ; for they were very powerful. Amongst the captives was a white man ; and as he was very thin (*fort maigre*), the savages determined on fattening him up (*de l'engraisser*) before they ate him. They chained him up in a hut, and commissioned Mary to take him his food (*de lui porter à manger*). As she knew that he was soon to be eaten she felt great compassion for him (*elle en avait grand' pitié*), and said, as she sadly gazed on him : "Oh God ! take pity on him !" This white man, who had felt great astonishment on seeing a girl of the same colour as himself, wondered still more (*le fut bien davantage*) when he heard her speak his own language. "Who taught you to speak French ?" inquired he (*lui dit-il*). "I do not know the name of the language I speak," answered she ; "it is my mother's language, and she it was who



taught it me. We have also two books in which we read every day." "My God!" exclaimed this man, as he raised his hands to heaven, "and can it be possible (*serait-il possible*)? But, my child, could you show me the books of which you speak?" "I have them not," said she, "but I will fetch my brother, who keeps them, and he will show them you." She went out, as she said this, and soon returned with John, who brought the two books. The white man opened them with emotion, and having read on the first leaf: "*This is John Morris' book*," he cried, "Ah, my dear children! and do I indeed see you? Come and embrace your father; oh, would to God! you could give me news of your mother!" At these words John and Mary threw themselves into the arms of the white man, and shed tears of joy. At last John said, "My heart tells me you are my father; and yet I know not how that can be, for my mother told me you had fallen into the sea." "I did in truth (*effectivement*) fall into the sea, when our vessel struck (*s'entr'ouvrit*)," answered this man; "but having seated myself on a plank, I landed on an island, and I thought you lost." John then told him all he remembered. The white man wept when he heard of the death of his wife. Mary also wept, but it was on another account (*pour un autre sujet*). "Alas!" cried she, "of what use is it (*à quoi sert-il*) that we should have found our father, since he is to be killed and eaten in a few days." "We must cut his chains," said John, "and then we will all three escape to the forest." "And what should we do there, my poor children?" said John Morris; "the savages will soon catch (*reprendre\**) us, or else we shall die of hunger." "Let me alone (*laissez-moi faire*)," said Mary, "I know an infallible method (*le moyen*) of saving you."

As she ended these words she went to the king. When she had entered his hut, she threw herself at his feet, and said: "My lord (*seigneur*), I have a great favour to beg of you; will you promise me to grant it?" "I swear it you," said the king, "for I am satisfied with you." "Well," continued Mary, "you must know that the white man, of whom you have desired me to take care is John's and my father: you have resolved to eat him, and I am come to represent to you, that he is old and thin, and that I am young and fat; so I hope you will be so kind as to eat me

instead ; I only ask a week, that I may have the pleasure of seeing him before I die." " Truly," said the king, " you are so good a girl, that I would on no account (*que je ne voudrais pas pour toutes choses*) put you to death ; you shall live, and your father also. I will even tell you that every year a ship with white men comes here, and we sell them the prisoners we do not eat. This ship will soon arrive, and then I will give you leave (*la permission*) to go."

Mary thanked the king, and in her heart returned thanks to God, who had inspired him with compassion towards her. She ran to carry these joyful tidings to her father ; and a few days after the vessel of which the black king had spoken, having arrived, she embarked on board with her father and brother. They landed on a large island inhabited by Spaniards. The governor of this island, having heard Mary's history, said to himself: " This girl has not a penny (*n'a pas le sou*), and is sadly sunburnt (*brulée du soleil*) ; but she is so good and virtuous that her husband will be a happier man (*qu'elle pourra rendre son mari plus heureux*) than if she were rich and handsome." He therefore requested Mary's father to give her to him for wife (*en mariage*) ; and John Morris having consented, the governor married her, and gave one of his relations to John. They lived very happy in this island, admiring the wisdom of Providence, that had only allowed Mary to be a slave, that she might thereby be the means of (*que pour lui donner occasion de*) saving her father's life.

# INDEX.

---

## LIST OF TABLES

### CONTAINED IN THIS VOLUME.

DECLENSION of the definite article in the singular masculine, 1 ; masculine and feminine before a vowel or an *h* mute, 8 ; in the plural, 24 ; in the singular and plural feminine, 294.

DECLENSION of the indefinite article masculine, 40 ; feminine, 298.

DECLENSION of the partitive article in the singular and plural masculine,

35 ; feminine, 297 ; before an adjective, 36.

DECLENSION of the personal pronouns, 82 ; of the interrogative pronouns, 86.

TABLE OF FORMATION of all the tenses in the French verbs, 481 et seqq.

TABLE OF CONJUGATION of the auxiliaries and regular verbs, 490, 491.

---

#### A.

*A*, to, Obs. B. 87. *A*, to or at, 183.

*'A la bourse*, to or at the exchange ; *à la cave*, to or at the cellar ; *à l'église*, to or at church ; *à l'école*, to or at school, 304. *'A droite* or *sur la droite*, to the right or on the right hand ; *à gauche* or *sur la gauche*, to the left or on the left hand, 413. *'A* between two substantives, the latter of which expresses the use of the former, Obs. A. 441. *'A l'avenir*, in future ; *à condition* (*sous condition*), on condition, or provided, 416. *'A mes, ses, nos, dépens*, at my, his, or her, our expense ; *aux dépens d'autrui*, at other people's expense, 409. *'A mon gré*, to my liking ; *au gré de tout le monde*, to every body's liking, 419. *'A ma portée*, within my reach ; *à la portée*

*du fusil*, within gun-shot, 436, 437. *L'homme à l'habit bleu*, the man with the blue coat ; *la femme à la robe rouge*, the woman with the red gown, 365. *'A toute force*, obstinately, by all means, 359.

*A* or *AN*, *un, une*, 40. 297. See ARTICLE.

ABLE (to be), *pouvoir*, Note 1, 78. 160 ; *être en état* or *être à même de*, 413.

ABOUT, *environ*, 167.

ABOVE, or UP STAIRS, *en haut*, 183.

ACCENT (the grave) in verbs having *e* mute in the last syllable but one of the infinitive, as : *je mène*, I lead, &c. Obs. A. 112.

—— (the acute) on the last syllable but one of the infinitive is changed into the grave accent ( ' ) when it is

followed by a consonant having *e* mute after it, *céder*, to yield ; *je cède*, I yield, Obs. A. 281.

ACCORDING to, *selon* ; according to circumstances, *selon les circonstances* ; that is according to circumstances it depends, *c'est selon*, 342.

ACCOURIR \*, to run up, 365.

ACCUSTOM (to), *accoutumer*. To be accustomed to a thing, *être accoutumé à quelque chose*, 403.

ACHE (the), *le mal* ; the ear-ache, *le mal d'oreille* ; the heart-ache, *le mal de cœur* ; &c. 305.

ACQUAINTED (to be) with, *connaître* \* ; been acquainted with *connu*, 156. Acquainted (to become) with somebody, to make some one's acquaintance, *faire connaissance avec quelqu'un* ; I have become acquainted with him or her, *j'ai fait sa connaissance*, 356. To be thoroughly acquainted with a thing, *être au fait de quelque chose*, 369. To make one's self thoroughly acquainted with a thing, *se mettre au fait de quelque chose*, 169.

ADIEU, adieu, farewell, God be with you, good-bye. *Au plaisir de vous revoir (au revoir)*, till I see you again, I hope to see you again soon, 416.

ADJECTIVE : agrees with its noun in number, Obs. 94 ; in gender, 296. Feminine adjectives, Remark, 297 ; their formation from masculine adjectives, Obs. G. H. 297. Obs. I. K. Notes 1, 3, 4, 298. Obs. L. Notes 299. 5, 6, 300. Adjectives that have no plural for the masculine gender, Obs. M. 301. Comparison of adjectives, Obs. A. 133. Adjectives that are irregular in the formation of the comparatives and superlatives, Obs. C. D. 134. Adjectives substantively used, Obs. 437. Place of the adjective with regard to the substantive, Obs. C. 119. Obs. B. 185. Notes 1, 2, 513. The adjective which in English follows *how*, stands in French after the verb, Obs. B. 363.

ADVERBS of quantity, 44. Obs. 45. Adverbs of place, 74. 183. 192. Adverbs of quality and manner, 166, 167. Adverbs of number, 150. 394. Adverbs of time, Notes 1, 2. 75. 93. 98. 124. 177. Comparative adverbs, 58, 59. 124. Comparison of adverbs,

Obs. A. 133. Obs. B. 134. Adverbs forming their comparatives and superlatives irregularly, Obs. C. D. 134. Place which the adverb is to occupy in the sentence, Rule 2. 513. Obs. A. 514.

ADVICE to professors, Note 1. 1 ; to pupils, Note 2. 2.

AFFORD (to), *avoir les moyens* ; can you afford to buy that horse ? *avez-vous les moyens d'acheter ce cheval ?* I can afford to buy it, *j'en ai les moyens*, 351.

AFRAID (to be), *avoir peur*, 8.

AFTER, *après*, is in French followed by the infinitive, whilst in English it is followed by the pres. participle, 195.

AFTERWARDS, *ensuite*, 211.

AGREE (to) to a thing, *convenir* \* *de quelque chose*, 288. To agree to a thing, *consentir* \* *à quelque chose*, 382.

AGAIN (anew), *de nouveau*, 371.

AIDE, meaning an assistant, is masculine ; in the signification of succour, help, it is feminine, Note 1. 350.

AIMER, to like, 202. *Aimer mieux*, to like better, to prefer, 267, 268.

AINSI, thus or so, 366 ; *ainsi que*, as, or as well as, 357.

AISE : *bien aise*, glad, (takes *de* bef. inf.), 342 : *être à son aise*, to be comfortable, to be at one's ease ; *être mal à son aise (être gêné)* to be uncomfortable, 430.

ALIGHT (to), from one's horse, to dismount, *descendre de cheval*, 277 ; to alight, to get out, *descendre de voiture*, 323.

ALL, every, *tout, tous, toute, toutes*, 98. 185. 305 ; all at once, *tout à coup*, *tout à la fois* ; all of a sudden, suddenly, *soudainement*, 305.

ALLER, to go ; *allé*, gone, 69, 150. Its conjugation in the present tense of the indicative, 97. *Été*, past part. of *être*, is in the French often used for *allé*, past part. of *aller*, to go, Obs. 145. *Aller en voiture*, to drive, to ride in a carriage ; *aller à cheval*, to ride (on horseback) ; *aller à pied*, to go on foot, 210. *Aller*, to travel to a place ; *où est-il allé ?* where has he travelled to ? 209. *Aller bien*, to fit ; *cet habit vous va bien*, that coat fits you well, 240. In French the verbs *aller* \*, to go, and *venir* \*, to come, are always



followed by the infinitive instead of another tense used in English, and the conjunction *and* is not rendered, Obs. A. 408. *S'en aller*, to go away, 217. 245. 248.

ALMOST, *presque*, 167.

ALONE, by one's self, *seul*, fem. *seule*, 397.

ALONG, *le long du, de la*; along the road, *le long du chemin*; along the street, *le long de la rue*; all along, *tout le long de*, Obs. A. 274. 413.

ALoud, *haut*, or *à haute voix*, 268.

ALREADY, *déjà*, 139.

ALWAYS, *toujours*, 283.

AMENER, to bring, must not be mistaken for *apporter*, Obs. B. 322.

AMONG, *parmi*, 282. Amongst or amidst, *parmi*, 356.

AMUSE (to) one's self, *s'amuser*, 216.

AMUSER (s'), to enjoy, to divert, to amuse one's self, takes *à* before inf., 216.

AN, ANNÉE, difference between these two words, Note 3. 305.

ANECDOTES: Witty answer of a young prince, 455. The French language, 455. A shopkeeper's answer, 455. The emperor Charles V. 502. The entrance of a king into a town, 503. The last request of an old man, 503. The three questions, 503. Answer of a lazy young man, 511. Hearing counsel, 511. Noble answer of a lady, 512. Cornelia, 512. Politeness, 518. Mildness, 519. The contest of art, 519. Zeuxis, 519. The corporal of Frederick the Great, 520. The history of John and Mary, 520, *et seqq.*

AND, *et*, 46. Obs. D. 404; and then, *puis*, 211. *And* is not rendered into French between the verbs *go*, *aller*\*, and *come*, *venir*\*, Obs. A. 408.

ANGRY (to be) with somebody, *être fâché contre quelqu'un*; about something, *de quelque chose*, 342.

ANSWER (to), *répondre*. To answer the man, *répondre à l'homme*, Obs. B. 87.

ANY or some (before a noun) *du, de la, des*, 35. 297; before an adjective, *de*, 36. 297. 299. See SOME.

ANY BODY or somebody, any one or some one, *quelqu'un*, 17.

ANY THING or something, *quelque chose*, 5. Any thing or something good, *quelque chose de bon*, 5. Obs. 6.

APOPLEXY (to be struck with), *être frappé d'apoplexie*, 348.

APOSTROPHE, its use, Obs. 2.

APPARTENIR, to belong, 238.

APPEAR (to), to look like, *avoir l'air, la mine*; she looks angry, appears to be angry, *elle a l'air fâché*, 358.

APPEL, to call, Obs. 157.

APPORTER, to bring, must not be mistaken for *amener*, Obs. D. 322.

APPRENDRE\*, to learn; *apprenant*, learning; *appris*, learnt, 113. 166. 117. 202. *Apprendre*\*, to hear, 259; to teach, 275.

APPROACH (to), to draw near, *s'approcher de*, 266. To approach (to have access to) one, *approcher quelqu'un*, 266.

APRÈS, after, is followed by the infinitive in French, 195.

AROUND, round, *autour*, 396; all around, *tout autour*, 396.

ARRIVER, to happen, 259.

ARTICLE (definite): its declension in the singular masculine, 1; masculine and feminine before a vowel or an *h* mute, 8; in the plural, 24. 79; in the singular and plural feminine, Obs. A. 294; used in French when omitted in English, Obs. A. B. Note 1. 475; when substituted for the English indefinite article, Obs. B. 118.—*Indefinite article*: its declension masculine, 40; feminine, 298; used in English and not in French, Obs. A. 117.—*Partitive article*: its declension in the singular and plur. masculine, 35; feminine, Obs. F. 297; before an adjective, 36.

As—as, *aussi—que*; as often as you, *aussi souvent que vous*, 124. Is your hat as large as mine? *Votre chapeau est-il aussi grand que le mien?* 133. As much—as, as many—as, *autant de—que de*, 58. As soon as, *aussitôt que*, 211. 390; as soon as, *dès que*, 384. 390. As to, as for, *quant à*, 348. As, or, as well as, *ainsi que*, 357.

ASHAMED (to be), *avoir honte*, 13.

ASK (to) a man for some money, *demander de l'argent à un homme*, 68.



196. To ask too much, to overcharge, *surfaire* \*, 371.

ASSEOIR \* (s') pres. part. *s'asseyant*; past, *assis*, to sit down, 267. 321.

ASSEZ *de*, enough, Obs. 45.

ASSIS, fem. *assise* (*être*) to sit, to be seated, 321.

AT, à, 183. At, *chez*, 69, 394. At translated by *de*, 409. At first, *d'abord*, 394. At home, *à la maison*, 69. At last, *enfin*, 211. At present, *à présent*, 93. At nine o'clock in the morning, *à neuf heures du matin*; at five o'clock in the evening, *à cinq heures du soir*, 173.

AUCUN, fem. *aucune*, none or not any, Obs. E. 465.

AUPRÈS *de*, by, by the side of, Obs. A. 274.

AUSSITÔT *que*, *sitôt que*, as soon as, 211. 390.

AUTANT *de—que de*, as much—as, as many—as, 58.

AUTOUR, around, round; *tout autour*, all around, 396. Obs. A. 274.

AUTRE, other; *un autre*, another; *d'autres*, some other, 49, 50.

AUTRUI, others, other people, (indeterminate pronoun without gender or plural,) 314.

AUXILIARY. Verbs which in English generally take *to have* for their auxiliary, whilst in French they take *être*, Obs. E. 315.

AVAIL (to), *servir* \*. What avails it you to cry? *'A quoi vous sert-il de pleurer?* it avails me nothing, *cela ne me sert à rien*, 420.

AVANT, before, takes *de* before the infinitive, 129; *pas avant*, not until, 334.

AVOIR, to have; *eu*, had, A. B. 148. C. 149. *Avoir beau*, in vain, 431. When speaking of dimension we use in French *avoir* when the English use *to be*, Note 1, Obs. C. 364.

IL Y A, there is, there are, 167. 239, 240. Obs. A. B. 251. Obs. C. D. E. Note 1, 252. 364. *Il y a* cannot be rendered into English by *there is*, *there are*, when it is used in reply to the question, How long is it since? Obs. A. 251; nor when it is used in reply to the question, How far? *Quelle distance?* Obs. 258.

AWAKE (to), *réveiller*, *se réveiller*, Obs. B. 277.

## B.

BE (to), *être*; been, *été*, Notes 2, 3. 143. Obs. 145. To be at home, *être à la maison*, 69. To be in the country, *être à la campagne*, 304.

To BE is rendered by *devoir* when it is used to express futurity with the infinitive of another verb. Ex. Where are you to go this morning? *Où devez-vous aller ce matin?* I am to go to the warehouse, *je dois aller au magasin*, 172, 173.

To BE translated by *avoir* \*; Are you hungry? *Avez-vous faim?* I am thirsty, *j'ai soif*; Are you sleepy? *Avez-vous sommeil?* 5. Are you warm? *Avez-vous chaud?* I am cold, *j'ai froid*; I am afraid, *j'ai peur*, 8. What is the matter with you? *Qu'avez-vous?* 11. Are you ashamed? *Avez-vous honte?* Am I wrong? *Ai-je tort?* You are right, *vous avez raison*, 13. How old are you? *Quel âge avez-vous?* I am twelve years old, *j'ai douze ans*, 167. Of what height is his or her house? *Combien sa maison a-t-elle de haut?* It is nearly fifty feet high, *elle a environ cinquante pieds de haut*, Obs. C. 364.

To BE under obligations to some one, *avoir des obligations à quelqu'un*, 363. My feet are cold, *j'ai froid aux pieds*; her hands are cold, *elle a froid aux mains*, 336.

To BE in want of, *avoir besoin de*, 99.

To BE translated by *se porter*, Obs. A. B. C. 287.

To BE translated by *FAIRE*. Is it windy? *Fait-il du vent?* It is stormy, *il fait de l'orage*. Is it foggy? *Fait-il du brouillard?* 201, 202. 210. 321. See WEATHER, WARM, COLD, DARK, &c. Is it good travelling? *Fait-il bon voyager?* 209, 210. 227, 228.

BEAU, *bel*, fine, handsome; how these two words must be employed, Note 2. 179. 299. *Avoir beau*, in vain, 431.

BEAUCOUP *de*, much, many, a good deal of, very much, 44. Obs. 45. Obs. C. 134. Obs. C. 410.

BECAUSE, *parceque*, 172.

BECOME (to), *devenir* \*. What has become of him? *Qu'est-il devenu?* 223. What will become of him?

*Que deviendra-t-il ?* 245. What has become of your aunt ? *Qu'est devenue votre tante ?* 341. To become ridiculous, *tomber dans le ridicule*, 421.

BEFORE, *avant de*. Do you speak before you listen ? *Parlez-vous avant d'écouter ?* 129. Before, *devant*, Obs. G. 254. The day before, *la veille* ; the day before Sunday, *la veille de dimanche*, 366.

BEG (to), *prier*, 323. To beg some one's pardon, *demander pardon à quelqu'un*, 415.

BEHAVE (to), *se comporter*, 277. 429.

BELIEVE (to), *croire* \*, 138. 160. See CROIRE \*.

BELOW, or down stairs, *en bas*, 183.

BESIDES, *outré* ; besides that, *outré cela* ; besides (moreover), *en outre*, 413.

BETTER—than, *mieux—que de*, 267, 268. To be better, *valoir mieux*, 191. Is it better ? *Vaut-il mieux ?* 278.

BETWEEN, *entre*, 356.

BIEN, well, 130. Obs. D. 134. 166. 343. *Bien*, well, a great deal, a great many, is always followed by the partitive article, but *beaucoup* is followed by the preposition *de*, Obs. C. 410.

BIENTÔT, soon, shortly, 173 ; soon, very soon, 265.

BLOW (a), *un coup*, 246.

BLOW (to), to blow out, *souffler*, 370 ; to blow out one's brains, *brûler la cervelle à quelqu'un* ; he has blown out his brains, *il s'est brûlé la cervelle*, 397.

BOARD (to) with any one, or any where, *être en pension, se mettre en pension*, 419.

BOARDING-HOUSE (a), a boarding school, *une pension* : to keep a boarding-house, *tenir \* pension*, 419.

BOAST (to), to brag, *se faire valoir*, 473.

BOIRE \*, to drink ; *bu*, drunk, 156.

BON, good, 3. Obs. G. 297 : *être bon à quelque chose*, to be good for something. *A quoi cela est-il bon ?* Of what use is that ? *Cela n'est bon à rien*, it is good for nothing, 254. *Fait-il bon vivre à Paris ?* Is it good living in Paris ? 210.

BORN (to be), *être né, née* ; Where were you born ? *Où êtes-vous né (née) ?* 21.

BRING, *apporter, amener* ; difference between these two verbs. Obs. B. 322.

BURST (a), *un éclat*. A burst of laughter, *un éclat de rire* ; to burst out, *éclater* ; to burst out laughing, *éclater de rire, faire un éclat de rire*, 478.

BUSINESS (a piece of), an affair, *une affaire*. To transact business, *faire des affaires*, 313.

BUT, *mais*, 21. But, *ne—que* ; I have but one friend ; *je n'ai qu'un ami*, 44. Nothing but, *ne—que*. He has nothing but enemies, *il n'a que des ennemis*, 223.

BUY (to), *acheter*, 64. Obs. A. 112. Note 1, 157. To buy (to purchase), *faire emplette de or faire des emplettes*, 261.

By, *par*, 208. By rendered by *de* in the use of the passive voice, 208. 253. By, *auprès de* ; to pass by a place, *passer auprès d'un endroit* ; by the side of, *à côté de*, Obs. A. 274.

## C.

CÀ ET LÀ, here and there, about ; *aller ça et là dans la maison*, to go about the house, 397.

CALL (to), *appeler*, Obs. 157. What do you call that in French ? *Comment cela s'appelle-t-il en français ?* 343.

CARRY (to), to take, *porter, mener* ; distinction between these two verbs, Obs. C. 322.

CASH (for), *comptant* ; to buy for cash, *acheter comptant*, 240.

CAST (to) down, *baissér* ; to cast down one's eyes, *baissér les yeux*, 382.

CE, before a vowel or an *h* mute, *cet*, fem. *cette*, plur. *ces*, this or that, these or those, 7. 20. 26. 296. *Ce que*, what, or the thing which. *Trouvez-vous ce que vous cherchez ?* Do you find what you are looking for ? 112. *C'est-à-dire (savoir)*, that is to say (i. e.), 378. *C'est pourquoi*, therefore, 409.

CECI, *cela*, this, that, 334. *Ce mois-ci*, this month ; *ce pays-ci*, this country ; *ce livre-là*, that book, 20. 234.

CEDILLA (the) ; its use to give the letter *c* the sound of *s* before the vowels, *a, o, u*, Obs. A. 104.

CELA, that (meaning that thing). *Vous a-t-il dit cela?* has he told you that? 149. 155. *Cela*, it. When the English pronoun *it* relates to a preceding circumstance, it is rendered by *cela*; when to a following, by *il*. Obs. D. 308.

CELUI, plur. *ceux*; fem. *celle*, plur. *celles*, that or the one, those, 7. 30. 298. *Celui que*, plur. *ceux que*, fem. *celle que*, *celles que*, that which, the one which, those which, 22. 30. 298. *Celui qui*, him who, 201.

CELUI-CI, *celui-là*; plur. *ceux-ci*, *ceux-là*; fem. *celle-ci*, *celle-là*, plur. *celles-ci*, *celles-là*, this one, that one, these, those, 20. 31. 298.

CENT, a hundred, takes no *s* when followed by another numeral, Obs. A. 172.

CHACUN, each one; *chacun s'amuse de son mieux*, each man amuses himself in the best way he can, 216.

CHANGE (to), meaning to put on other things, *changer*. Do you change your hat? *changez-vous de chapeau?* 281.

CHACQUE, each; *chaque homme*, each man, 216.

CHEZ, with, or at the house of, to, or to the house of, 69. 394.

COLD, *froid*. It is cold, *il fait froid*, 201. To have a cold, *être enrhumé*, 308. To catch a cold, *prendre froid*, *s'enrhumer*, 385. I have a cold, *j'ai un rhume de cerveau*, 308.

COMBIEN *de*? How much? How many? Note 1, 44. Obs. 45.

COME (to), *venir*\*, 160. See VENIR\*.

COMMISSION (a), *une commission*. To execute a commission, *faire une commission*, *s'acquitter d'une commission*, 376.

COMPARISON of adjectives, Obs. A. 133. Adjectives which are irregular in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives, Obs. C. D. 134. Comparison of adverbs, Obs. A. 133. Obs. B. 134. Adverbs forming their comparatives and superlatives irregularly, Obs. C. D. 134.

COMPASSION, *compassion*. To have compassion on some one, *avoir compassion de quelqu'un*, 404.

COMPLAIN (to), *se plaindre*\*, 260.

COMPRENDRE\*, to understand, 168.

COMPTANT, for cash; *acheter comptant*, to buy for cash, 240.

CONDITIONAL tenses; their formation, Obs. C. 333, 334; when they are used, Obs. D. 334.

CONDUCT (to), *conduire*\*, 124. 160; to conduct one's self, *se conduire*, 277.

CONDUIRE\*, to conduct; *conduit*, conducted, 160.

CONJUNCTIONS which govern the subjunctive, Remark D. Note 1, 458. Obs. C. 459. Obs. D. E. F. 460. Obs. A. B. 464. Obs. C. D. E. 465. Obs. H. Notes 1, 2, 467. 473, 474. Conjunctions with the preterite anterior, 390.

CONNAÎTRE, to be acquainted with (to know); *connaissant*, being acquainted with; *connu*, been acquainted with, 98. 129. 156. Note 1, 356.

CONSENT (to), *consentir*\*, takes *à* or *de* before the inf. and *à* before the noun, 288. To consent to a thing, *consentir à quelque chose*; I consent to it, *j'y consens*, 382.

CONSENTIR\*, to consent, 288. 382.

CONSTRUCTION (rules of), 512 & seqq.

CONSTRUIRE\*, to construct, 370.

CONVENIR\*, to suit, 238; *convenir de quelque chose*, to agree to a thing, 288.

CONVERSE (to) with, *s'entretenir*\* avec, 474.

CÔTÉ: '*À côté de*, by the side of, Obs. A. 274. *De ce côté-ci*, this side; *de ce côté-là*, that side, 184.

COUNTRYMAN (what) are you? *de quel pays êtes-vous?* 258. 342.

COUP (un), a blow, a kick, a knock, a stab, a clap, a slap; *Avez-vous donné un coup à cet homme?* have you given that man a blow? *un coup de pied*, a kick (with the foot); *un coup de couteau*, a stab of a knife; *un coup de fusil*, a shot, or the report of a gun; *un coup de pistolet*, the shot of a pistol; *un coup d'œil*, a glance of the eye; *un coup de tonnerre*, a clap of thunder, 246.

CRAINdre\*, to fear, to dread; *craignant*, fearing; *craint*, feared, 218. 269.

CREDIT (on), *à crédit*, 240.

CROIRE\*, to believe; *croyant*, believing; *cru*, believed, 138. 160; governs the accusative, Obs. B. 223. *Croire en Dieu*, to believe in God, 223.



CROÎTRE, to grow ; present part. *croissant*, past, *crû*, 383.

CUEILLIR \*, to gather ; pres. part. *cueillant* ; past, *cueilli* ; *cueillir du fruit*, to gather fruit, 375.

CURTAIN (the), *le rideau*, *la toile*. The curtain rises, falls, *la toile (le rideau) se lève, se baisse*, 382.

CUT (to), *couper*, 64 ; to cut one's self, *se couper*, 215. You cut your finger, *vous vous coupez le doigt* ; I cut my nails, *je me coupe les ongles* ; he cuts his hair, *il se coupe les cheveux*, 217. I have cut his finger, *je lui ai coupé le doigt*, 260.

# D.

DANS, in, 88. 92. 228. See IN.

DARK, *sombre*. It is dark in your warehouse, *il fait sombre dans votre magasin*, 202. It grows dark, *il se fait nuit*, 382.

DAVANTAGE, more. This adverb has the same signification as *plus*, with the only difference that it cannot precede a noun, Obs. D. 190.

DE (partitive article), some or any, 35. 297. See ARTICLE.

DE, of, between two nouns, the latter expresses the matter of the former, Obs. 4. Obs. A. 441. Nouns commonly used this preposition before the infinitive, 63. 99. 229. *De*, by, 208. *De*, with, 222. 260. *De*, from, 258. 342.

DEÇÀ. *Au deçà du chemin, en deçà du chemin*, on this side of the road ; *au delà du chemin*, on that side of the road, 184.

DECEIVE (to), *tromper*, 217.

DÉFAIRE \*, to undo ; *se défaire \** *de*, to get rid of, to part with, 276.

DÉJÀ, already, 139.

DELAY (to), to tarry, *tarder* ; do not be long before you return, *ne tardez pas à revenir*, 429.

DEMEURER, to dwell, to live, to reside, to remain. When does this verb take *avoir \** and when *être \** in its compound tenses ? Note 3, 174.

DEMI, feminine, *demie*, half. When this adjective precedes the noun, it does not agree with it in gender and number ; as, *une demi-heure*, half an

hour ; *une heure et demie*, half-past one, Note 2, 75.

DÉPIT (*en*) *de*, notwithstanding, 394.

DEPUIS, since or from, 370. *Depuis que*, since ; *depuis quand ?* how long (since when) ? When *que* means *depuis que*, *il y a* must be followed by the negative *ne*, Obs. E. 252.

DÈS, from, since ; *dès le matin*, from morning ; *dès le point du jour*, from the break of day ; *dès le berceau*, from the cradle, from a child ; *dès à présent*, from this time forwards, 384. *Dès*, from, since ; *dès que*, as soon as, 384 ; is employed to use the preterite anterior, 390.

DESCENDRE, to go down, to come down. When does this verb take *avoir \**, and when *être \**, in its compound tenses ? Note 1. 322.

DÉTRUIRE \*, to destroy, 370.

DEVENIR \*, to become, 223. 245. 341.

DIALOGUE between a master and his pupils, 491.

DIE (to), *mourir \**, 341. See this word.

DIRE \*, to tell, to say ; *dit*, said, told (*de* before inf.) ; *dire à quelqu'un*, to tell some one, to say to some one, 94. 107. 155.

DO (to), to make, *faire* ; done, made, *fait*, 154. To do one's best, *faire de son mieux*, 253. To do one's duty, *faire son devoir*, 376. To do good to somebody, *faire du bien à quelqu'un*, 222. 404. Have you done ? *avez-vous fini ?* shall you soon have done writing ? *aurez-vous bientôt fini d'écrire ?* I shall soon have done, *j'aurai bientôt fini* ; he has just done writing, *il vient d'écrire*, 228. 234. 253. To do without a thing, *se passer de quelque chose*, 376. To Do translated by *se porter*, Obs. A. B. C. 287.

DONT, of which, of whom, whose, (connective pronoun), 228. *Ce dont*, that of which, 228. The past participle preceded by *dont*, does not agree with its object in number, 229.

DORMIR \*, to sleep ; *dormant*, sleeping ; *dormi*, slept, 211.

DRESS (to), *habiller* ; to undress, *déshabiller*, 275. To be dressed in green, *être habillé de vert*, 365. This man always dresses well, *cet homme se met toujours bien*, 436.

DRINK (to), *boire* \*, 70. 107. 156. To drink to some one, *boire à quelqu'un*; to drink some one's health, *boire à la santé de quelqu'un*, 358. To drink coffee, *prendre le café*, *prendre du café*, 120.

DRIVE (to), to ride in a carriage, 210. See ALLER.

DRY, *sec*. It is dry weather, *il fait sec*, 202.

DUTY. To fulfil (to discharge, to do), one's duty, *remplir son devoir*, 376.

DYE (to), to colour, *teindre*; to dye black, *teindre en noir*, 185.

## E.

EACH, *chaque*; each one, *chacun*; each man, *chaque homme*; each man amuses himself as he likes, *chaque homme s'amuse comme il veut*; each one amuses himself in the best way he can, *chacun s'amuse de son mieux*, 216.

EACH OTHER, *l'un l'autre*, fem. *l'une l'autre*. Are you pleased with each other? *êtes-vous contents l'un de l'autre*? We are, *nous le sommes*, 357.

EARLY, *de bonne heure*; as early as you, *d'aussi bonne heure que vous*, 138; earlier, *plus tôt*, *de meilleure heure*, 139.

ÉCRIRE \*, to write; *écrit*, written, 75. 107. 156.

EN, some of it, any of it, of it, some of them, any of them, of them, is always placed before the verb, 39, 40. Y EN (before the verb). *Y en porter*, to carry some thither, 74, Obs. 75. Its place with regard to the personal pronoun, 81. *En* is used for the genitive of personal pronouns, 99. When preceded by *en*, the past participle does not agree with its object in number, 325 C. 149. *En*, from it, from there, thence, 173.

EN, in, Obs. B. 409, 410. See IN. *En plein jour*, at broad daylight, 445.

ENCORE, still, yet, some or any more, 54, see SOME. 55, see MORE.

ENDEAVOUR (to), *tâcher*, 369; *s'efforcer*, 442.

ENFUIR (s'), to fly, to run away; present part, *fuyant*; past, *fui*, 259. 269.

ENLIST (enrol), *se faire soldat*, *s'enrôler*, 223.

ENNUYER (s'), to want amusement, to get or be tired, 410.

ENTER (to), to go in, to come in, *entrer*, 321.

ENTRER, to go in, to come in, to enter. *Voulez-vous entrer dans ma chambre*? Will you go into my room? *Je veux y entrer*, I will go in, 321.

ENTRETEENIR \*, to keep, to maintain; *s'entretenir* \* *avec*, to converse with, 474.

Et, and, 46. Obs. A. 408. Obs. D. 404.

ÉTEINDRE \*, to extinguish; *éteint*, extinguished, 160.

ÊTRE \*, to be; *été*, been, 70. Notes 2, 3. 143. Obs. 145. *Où en étions-nous*? where did we stop? 416. Verbs which require *être*, to be, for their auxiliary, Obs. E. 315. The past participle of such verbs must agree in gender and number with the nominative of *être*, 325 316. C'EST. The impersonal *it is*, is rendered by *c'est* for the singular, and by *ce sont* for the plural. *A qui est ce livre*? whose book is this? *C'est le mien*, it is mine. *A qui sont ces souliers*? whose shoes are these? *Ce sont les nôtres*, they are ours, Obs. 241. *C'est moi*, it is I. *Ce n'est pas moi*, it is not I. *C'est lui*, it is he. *C'est elle*, it is she. *Ce sont eux*, *elles*, it is they, &c. 351, 352. *C'est vrai*, it is true. *N'est-ce pas (n'est-il pas vrai)*? is it not (or is it not true)? *A qui est cette maison*? whose house is that? *C'est la mienne*, or *elle est à moi*, it is mine. *A qui sont ces maisons*? whose houses are these? *Ce sont les miennes*, or *elles sont à moi*, they are mine, or they belong to me, 365, Obs. 241. *C'est-à-dire (savoir)*, that is to say (i. e.), 378.

EVER, *jamais*, 144.

EVERY, all, *tout*, *tous*, *toute*, *toutes*; every day, *tous les jours*; every morning, *tous les matins*; every time, *toutes les fois*, 98. 305. Every body, every one, *tout le monde*. Every body speaks of it, *tout le monde en parle*, every one is liable to error, *tout (or chaque) homme est sujet à se tromper*, 216. Every where, all over, throughout, *partout*; all over (throughout) the town, *par toute la ville*, 384.



## F.

**FAIRE** \*, to make, to do ; *faisant*, making, doing ; *fait*, made, done, 68. 107.154. Idioms with *faire*. *Vous ferez mieux de*, you had better, 240. *C'est fait de moi !* it is all over with me ! *C'en est fait*, it is all over, 358. *On fera chauffer la soupe*, they will warm the soup, 378. *Je ne sais qu'y faire*, *je ne saurais qu'y faire*, I cannot help it, 415. *Il se fait nuit*, it grows towards night, night comes on, 382. *Faire cas de quelqu'un*, to think much of one, to esteem one, 383.

**FALL** (to), *tomber*, 266. The day falls, *le jour baisse* ; the stocks have fallen, *le change a baissé*, 382. A fall, *une chute*. To have a fall, *faire une chute*, 425.

**FALLOIR** \*, to be necessary, must ; past part. *fallu* (an impersonal verb). All verbs expressing necessity, obligation, or want, are in French generally rendered by *falloir* \*, Obs. A. B. 189. Obs. C. 190. *IL S'EN FAUT* is followed by *de* when a quantity is spoken of ; but it is not followed by *de* when a difference between two things is spoken of, Obs. A. 494 ; when it is accompanied by a negation, or a negative word, or when the sentence is interrogative, the subordinate proposition takes the negation *ne*, Obs. B. 495.

**FAR**, *loin*. How far ? *quelle distance ?* Is it far from here to Paris ? *y a-t-il loin d'ici à Paris ?* Obs. 258. Far off, from afar, *de loin*, 341.

**FAULT** (the), *la faute*. Whose fault is it ? who can help it ? *à qui est la faute*, 415. To find fault with something, *trouver à redire à quelque chose*, 436.

**FAVOUR** (a), *un plaisir*. To do a favour, *faire un plaisir*, 97.

**FEAR** (to), *craindre* \*, 218. 269. For fear of, *de crainte de*, *de peur de*, 385. *De crainte*, or *de peur que*, governs the subjunctive, 458.

**FEEL** (to), *sentir* \*, 288. To feel a pain in one's head or foot, *souffrir de la tête*, *du pied* ; I felt a pain in my eye, *j'ai souffert de l'œil*, 359. To feel sleepy, *avoir envie de dormir*, 217.

**FEW** (a), *quelques-uns* ; a few books, *quelques livres*, 49.

**FILL** (to), with, *remplir de*, 321.

**FIRE** (to), *tirer* ; to fire a gun, *tirer un coup de fusil* ; to fire a pistol, *tirer un coup de pistolet* ; to fire at some one, *tirer un coup de fusil sur quelqu'un*, 247.

**FIRSTLY**, *premièrement*, *en premier lieu* ; secondly, *secondement*, *en second lieu* ; thirdly, *troisièmement*, *en troisième lieu*, 394.

**FIT** (to), *aller bien*, 240. See **ALLER**.

**FLEURIR**, to blossom, is regular ; *fleurir* \*, to flourish, is irregular ; Note 2, 383.

**FLUENTLY**, *couramment*, 344.

**FLY** (to), to run away, *s'enfuir*, 259. 269.

**FOR** (conjunction), *car*, 223. *For* (preposition), during, *pendant*, 173. *For* and *at*, when used in English to mark the price of a thing, are not rendered in French, Obs. D. 288. *For* rendered by *de*, 363. 364. *For* rendered by *pour* : for more bad luck, *pour surcroît de malheur* ; for more good luck, *pour surcroît de bonheur*, 359.

**FORMERLY**, *autrefois*, 150.

**FORTNIGHT** (a), *quinze jours* ; a fortnight ago, *il y a quinze jours*, Note 1, 252.

**FRIGHTEN** (to), *effrayer* ; to be frightened, *s'effrayer* ; the least thing frightens him or her, *la moindre chose l'effraie*, 408.

**FROM**, *de*, 258. 342. From, *dès*, 384. From time to time, *de temps en temps*, 431.

**FUTURE**, its formation ; first or simple future, Rule, Obs. A. Note 1, 232. Obs. B. 233. Obs. C. 235. Compound or past future ; its formation, Note 1, 319. The future is used in French when the present is employed in English, Obs. A. 320.

## G.

**GAME** (a) at chess, *une partie d'échecs* ; a game at billiards, *une partie de billard* ; a game at cards, *une partie de cartes*, 369. To play a game at billiards, *faire une partie de billard*, 425.

GÊNER (*se*), to inconvenience one's self, put one's self out of the way, 430.

GATHER (to), *cueillir* \*, 375.

GET (to) one's livelihood by, *gagner sa vie à*; I get my livelihood by working, *je gagne ma vie à travailler*, 329; to get made, *faire faire*; to get dyed, *faire teindre*, 162. 186; to get beaten (whipped), *se faire battre*; to get paid, *se faire payer*; to get one's self invited to dine, *se faire inviter à dîner*, 394; to get rid of something, *se défaire de quelque chose*; to get rid of some one, *se débarrasser de quelqu'un*, 276.

GIVE (to), *donner*, 81. To give birth to (meaning to raise, to cause) difficulties, quarrels, suspicions, *faire naître des difficultés, des querelles, des soupçons*, 442.

GO (to), *aller*, 69. 150. To go there or thither, *y aller*, 87. 150. To go around the house, *faire le tour de la maison*, 397. To go on foot, *aller à pied*, 210. To go on a journey, *faire un voyage*, 313. To go to bed (to lie down), *aller se coucher, se mettre au lit*, 221. To go to the country, *aller à campagne*, 304. To go to some one, or to some one's house, *aller chez quelqu'un*, 69. To go to see some one, *aller voir quelqu'un*, 358. To go a walking, *aller se promener*, 220. To go away, *s'en aller*. Are you going away? *vous en allez-vous?* 217. 245. 248. To go for (to fetch), *aller chercher*, 92. To go out, *sortir* \*, 97. 107. 138. 160. To be going to, *aller* \*, 97. See ALLER.

GROW (to), *croître*, 383. It grows towards night, it grows dark, *il se fait nuit*; it grows late, *il se fait tard*, 382.

## H.

HAIL (to), *grêler*. It hails much, *il fait beaucoup de grêle*, 227.

HAÏR \*, to hate; *haïssant*, hating; *haï*, hated, 209.

HALF, *demi, demie*; see this word.

HAPPEN (to), *arriver*. What has happened to you? *que vous est-il arrivé?* 259.

HARDLY, *à peine*, 167.

HAUT (*en*), above, up stairs; *en bas*, below, down stairs, 183.

HAVE (to), *avoir* \*; had, *eu*, 148. You have a cough, *vous avez un rhume de poitrine*, 308. Have you a sore finger? *avez-vous mal au doigt?* He has a sore eye, *il a mal à l'œil*. We have sore eyes, *nous avons mal aux yeux*, 113. I have a sore hand, *j'ai mal à la main*. Have you the tooth-ache? *avez-vous mal aux dents?* I have the head-ache, *j'ai mal à la tête*, Obs. E. 296. I have a sore throat, *j'ai mal à la gorge*, 313. He has a pain in his side, *il a mal au côté*, 336.

HEAR (to) of, *entendre parler*, 251. To hear, *apprendre* \*, 259.

HER or HIS, *son, sa, ses*, 17. 26. Obs. B. C. 295.

HERE, *ici, (y,)* 97. Here and there, *par-ci, par-là*, 431. Here is, *voici*, 336.

HIM WHO, *celui qui*, 201.

HIS or HER, *son, sa, ses*, 17. 26. Obs. B. C. 295.

HOME (at), *à la maison*, 69. Is he at home? *est-il à la maison? est-il chez lui?* 70.

HORS DE, out; *hors de la ville*, out of the city (the town); *dehors*, (adverb,) without or out of doors, 321. 329.

HOURLY (the), *l'heure*, Note 1, 75. At what o'clock? *à quelle heure?* At one o'clock, *à une heure*. At half-past one, *à une heure et demie*, Notes 1, 2, 75. At nine o'clock in the morning, *à neuf heures du matin*; at eleven o'clock at night, *à onze heures du soir*, 173. *De bonne heure*, early, 138. *De meilleure heure (plus tôt)*, earlier (sooner), 139. To ask the hour, Note 2, 98.

How, how much, how many, before an exclamation, are translated by *que*. How good you are! *que vous êtes bon!* *que de bonté vous avez!* Obs. A. 363. How far? *jusqu'où?* 183, Obs. 258. How long? *combien de temps?* 251. How long (since when)? *depuis quand?* Obs. E. 252. How long? *jusqu'à quand?* 177. How much? How many? *combien de?* 44. Obs. 45. How many times, how often? *combien de fois?* Once, *une fois*; twice, *deux fois*; thrice (three times), *trois fois*; several times, *plusieurs fois*, 150.

HOWEVER, *cependant*, 288. However, howsoever, *quelque*, Obs. A. 464.

HUNDRED, *cent*. When does this numeral take an *s*? Obs. A. 172.

HURT (to) somebody, *faire du mal à quelqu'un*, 221, 222. Her leg hurts her, *la jambe lui fait mal*, 336. To hurt some one's feelings, *faire de la peine à quelqu'un*, 358.

## I.

I, *je*, and before a vowel or *h* mute *j'*, 1. Obs. 2.

ICI (*y*), here, 97.

IDIOMS, 506, 507, 508, 509. Idioms depending on the use of a noun, 506; on the use of a pronoun, 507; on the use of a verb, 508; idiomatic expressions on *avoir*\*, 508; on *servir*, 274, 275. 260. 420. 378; on *aller*\* and on *donner*, 508; on *faire*\* and *jouer*, 509; on *mettre*\*, 377. 385. 413. 430. 436. 445. 419. 430. 366. 369; on all sorts of verbs, 509. Paris is a fine place to live in, *c'est un beau séjour que Paris*, 290. With tears in his, her, our, or my eyes, *les larmes aux yeux*, 349. If you please, *s'il vous plaît*; as you please, at your pleasure, as you like, *comme il vous plaira*, 350. I wonder why, *je voudrais bien savoir pourquoi*, 437. To draw a secret from one, to examine one carefully, *tirer les vers du nez à quelqu'un*, 478. To bear, to put up with, *en passer par*, 478.

IF, *si*, 204. Obs. C. D. 404. Obs. D. 334. See *Si*.

IMMEDIATELY, *tout de suite*, 239.

IMPART (to), something to somebody, *faire part de quelque chose à quelqu'un*, 431.

IMPERATIVE: its formation, and when it must be employed, Notes 1, 2, 3. 401. Obs. A. B. 402, 403. 480. Additional examples of the imperative, 408. 479.

IMPERFECT (the) of the Indicative: its formation, Note 1, 326. Obs. A. 327. When it must be employed, Obs. B. 327, 328. 332. All verbs whose present participle ends in *iant*; as *oublier*, *oubliant*; *rire*, *riant*, &c. do not drop the letter *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and present of the subjunctive; as, *nous oublions*, we forgot; *que nous oublions*, that we

may forget; *vous oubliez*, you forgot; *que vous oubliiez*, that you may forget, Obs. A. 332. All verbs whose present participle ends in *yant*, as *payer*, *payant*, &c. do not drop the letter *i* after *y* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect indicative and present subjunctive; as, *nous payions*, we paid; *que nous payions*, that we may pay; *vous payiez*, you paid; *que vous payiez*, that you may pay, Obs. B. 332. Imperfect of the Subjunctive: its formation, 457. When it must be employed, Remarks, 449 & *seqq.* Obs. B. Remark D. 458 & *seqq.* 464 & *seqq.*

IMPROVE (to), to profit, *faire des progrès*, 336.

IN, *dans*, 88. 92. 228; in, *dans*, *en*. When must *in* be rendered by *en*, and when by *dans*, Obs. B. 409, 410. IN translated by *à*, 246. 396. 304; by *de*, 365. IN is rendered into French by the genitive, when a relative superlative is to be expressed. It is the finest country in Europe, *c'est le plus beau pays de l'Europe*, Obs. B. 511. In this manner, *de cette manière*, 166. In a short time, *dans peu de temps*, Obs. B. 409.

INDIFFERENTLY (as good as bad), *tant bien que mal*, 431.

INFINITIVE, 63. Words which require it with the preposition *de*, 63. Means to distinguish the infinitive of each conjugation, Note 3, 103. Verbs which do not require a preposition when they are joined to an infinitive, Obs. A. 139. Obs. B. 140.

INQUIRE (to) after some one, *demandez quelqu'un*; after whom do you inquire? *qui demandez-vous?* 196.

INSTANTLY, this instant, *à l'instant*, *sur le champ*, 239.

INSTEAD of, *au lieu de*, is in English followed by the present participle, but in French it is followed by the infinitive, 112. Obs. B. 113.

INSTRUIRE\*, to instruct; present participle, *instruisant*; past, *instruit*. 275.

INTRODUIRE\*, to introduce, 370.

IT, *le*, 155. It, *cela*, *il*. When the English pronoun *it* relates to a preceding circumstance, it is translated by *cela*; when to a following circumstance by *il*, Obs. D. 308.



## J.

JAMAIS, ever ; *ne—jamais*, never, 144.

JE, I ; and before a vowel or *h* mute, *j'*, Obs. 2. *J'ai*, I have, Obs. 2.

JEST (to), *plaisanter*. Expressions about jesting : you are jesting, *vous badinez*, *vous vous moquez* ; he cannot take a joke, is no joker, *il n'entend pas raillerie*, 415.

JETER, to throw, to throw away, Obs. 157.

JOUR, JOURNÉE, difference between these two words, Note 2, 304.

JOUER, to play, 113. This verb governs the genitive when an instrument, and the dative when a game, is spoken of, Obs. 265 ; *jouer de la flûte*, to play upon the flute, 425.

JUDGE (to be a) of something, *se connaître en quelque chose*, 381.

JUSQUE, up to, as far as (adverb of place) ; *jusqu'ou* ? how far ? *jusqu'ici*, as far as here, hither ; *jusque-là*, as far as there, thither, 183. *Jusque*, till, until ; *jusqu'à quand* ? how long ? *jusqu'à demain*, till to-morrow, 177.

JUST (to have), *venir \* de*. He has just come, *il ne fait que d'arriver*, 253.

## K.

KEEP (to), *tenir \**, 283. 419. To keep warm, *se tenir chaud* ; to keep cool, *se tenir frais* ; to keep clean, *se tenir propre*, 395 ; to keep on one's guard against some one, *se tenir en garde contre quelqu'un*, 396. To keep, to maintain, *entretenir \**, 474.

KILL (to), *tuer*, 78 ; to kill by shooting, *tuer d'un coup d'arme à feu*, 397.

KNOW (to), *savoir \**. Do you know how to swim ? *savez-vous nager* ? 124. 160. When is this verb rendered by *savoir \**, and when by *connaître* ? Note 1, 356.

## L.

LÀ (y), there, 97.

LATE, *tard* ; too late, *trop tard*, 139.

LATELY, the other day, *l'autre jour* ; *dernièrement*, 409.

LAUGH (to), *rire \**, 350. See RIRE\*.

LAY (to) to one's charge, *imputer à*

*quelqu'un* ; do not lay it to my charge, *ne me l'imputez pas*, 415.

LE (definite article, masculine, singular), the, 1. *Le* before a vowel or *h* mute, *l'*, 1. Obs. 2, 3. *Le*, it, so ; *je vous l'ai dit*, I have told it you, 155, 156. *Le* is sometimes rendered by *so*, and more elegantly omitted in English : it may in French relate to a substantive, an adjective, or even a whole sentence, Obs. 155, 156.

LEAGUE (a), *une lieue*. To walk or travel a league, *faire une lieue*, 313.

LEARN (to), *apprendre \**, 113. 166 ; to learn French, *apprendre le français*, 117 ; to learn by heart, *apprendre par cœur*, 202.

LEFT : to the left, on the left side or hand, *à gauche*, *sur la gauche*, 413.

LEPT (to have), *rester* ; when I have paid for the horse I shall have only ten crowns left, *quand j'aurai payé le cheval, il ne me restera que dix écus* ; they have one louis left, *il leur reste un louis*, Obs. A. 320.

LEQUEL ? which one ? plur. *lesquels* ? 14. 26. 298. Obs. 229.

LESS, *moins* ; the least, *le moins*, Obs. A. 133. 134. Less, fewer, *moins*, Obs. B. 282. See MOINS.

LEUR, plur. *leurs*, their, 26. Obs. B. D. 295. *Le (la) leur, les leurs*, theirs, 30. 306.

LIEU (au) *de*, instead of, 112. Obs. B. 113.

LEVEL (on a) with, even with, *à fleur de*, 383.

LIGHTEN (to), *faire des éclairs*, 227.

LIKE (to), *aimer* ; I like fish, *j'aime le poisson* ; he likes fowl, *il aime le poulet* ; to like, *trouver* : How do you like that wine ? *Comment trouvez-vous ce vin* ? I like it well, *je le trouve bon*, 202. As you like, *comme il vous plaira*, 350.

Like better (to), to prefer, *aimer mieux* ; I like staying here better than going out, *j'aime mieux rester ici que de sortir*, 267, 268. To my liking, *à mon gré*, 419.

LIRE \*, to read ; *lisant*, reading ; *lu*, read, 98. 107. 135. 156.

LITTLE, *peu*, Obs. C. 134 ; little, *peu de* ; a little, *un peu de*, Obs. 45 ; but little, only a little, *ne—guère de*, 45 ; just a little, *tant soit peu* ; Do

you wish a great deal of bread? *Voulez-vous beaucoup de pain?* no, just a little, *non, tant soit peu*, 473.

<sup>o</sup> LIVE (to), *demeurer*, Note 3, 174.

LONG (to) for, *tarder*; I long to see my brother, *il me tarde de voir mon frère*, 429. Obs. 430.

LONG (so), as, *tant que*, 437. How long? *Combien de temps?* 251. How long (since when)? *Depuis quand?* Obs. E. 252. How long? *Jusqu'à quand?* 177.

LOOK (to), upon, *donner sur*; the window looks into the street, *la fenêtre donne sur la rue*; the window looks out upon the river, *la fenêtre donne sur la rivière*, 395. See APPEAR. To look pleased with somebody, *faire bonne mine à quelqu'un*; to look cross at some one, *faire mauvaise mine à quelqu'un*, 357. Look (to) *avoir l'air*; to look melancholy, *avoir l'air mélancolique*, 416.

LORSQUE, *quand*, when, 245; when they are used with the preterite anterior, 390.

LOSE (to), *perdre*: to lose one's wits, *perdre la tête*, 359; to lose sight of, *perdre de vue*, 424.

LUIRE \*, to shine, to glitter; pres. part. *luisant*; past, *lui*, 227.

## M.

MAIS, but, 21.

MAKE (to), do, *faire*; made, done, *fuit*, 154. To make a present of something to some one, *faire présent de quelque chose à quelqu'un*, 410. To make sick, *rendre malade*, 308. To make one's self understood, *se faire comprendre*, 403. To make one's self comfortable, *se mettre à son aise*, 430. To make entreaties, *faire des instances*, 431.

MAL, bad; worse, *pire*; the worst, *le pire*, Obs. C. D. 134. *Mal*, badly, 130. 166. *Mal*, wrong, bad, 343.

MANAGE (to), to go about a thing, *s'y prendre* \*, 381, 382. To manage, *faire en sorte de*, 395.

MANY, *beaucoup de*, 44. Not many, *ne—guère de*. Obs. 45.

MARCHER, to march, to walk, to step, must not be mistaken for *se promener*, Obs. C. 313.

MATIN, *matinée*, difference between these two words, Note 2. 304.

MEAN (to), *vouloir dire*. What do you mean? *Que voulez-vous dire?* I mean, *je veux dire*, 435.

MEDDLE (to) with a thing, *se mêler de quelque chose*; What are you meddling with? *De quoi vous mêlez-vous?* 314.

MÊME, *mêmes*, self, selves; *moi-même*, myself; *eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes*, themselves. Sometimes *même* is an adverb, and answers to the English word *even*, 370. Obs. 371.

MENER, to take, must not be mistaken for *porter*, Obs. C. 322.

MENTIR \*, to utter a falsehood, to lie; pres. part. *mentant*; past, *menti*, 224.

METTRE \*, to put, to put on; pres. part. *mettant*; past, *mis*, 138. 154. *Mettre au net*, to transcribe fairly, 385. *Mettre à même de*, to enable, 413. *Se mettre à table*, to sit down to dinner, 445. *Se mettre à quelque chose*, to set about something, 366. *Se mettre à l'abri de quelque chose*, to shelter one's self (to take shelter) from something, 384.

MILE (a), *un mille*. To walk or travel a mile, *faire un mille*, 313.

MIEN (*le*), *la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, mine, 7 33. 306.

MINE, *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, 7. 30. 306. A brother of mine, *un de mes frères*; a cousin of yours, *un de vos cousins*; a neighbour of theirs, *un de leurs voisins*, 197.

MISTAKE (to), to be mistaken, *se tromper*; you are mistaken, *vous vous trompez*, 217.

MOINS, less; serves to form the comparative of minority of adjectives and adverbs; *le moins*, the least, forms the superlative of minority, Obs. A. 133, 134. *Moins de*, less, fewer (before a noun), 59. *Moins*, less, fewer. When there is a comparison between two sentences, the verb which follows *plus*, or *moins*, requires the negative *ne*. *Cet homme a moins d'amis qu'il ne pense*, that man has fewer friends than he imagines, Obs. B. 282.

MON, *ma, mes, my*, 2. 26. Obs. B. 295.



MONTER, to go up, to mount, to ascend; when does this verb take *avoir*\*, and when *être* in its compound tenses? Note 2, 323.

MOONLIGHT, *clair de lune*. It is moonlight, *il fait clair de lune*, 202.

MORE, *plus*, Obs. B. 282. See PLUS. More, *plus de* (before a noun), 59. One more book, *encore un livre*; a few books more, *encore quelques livres*, 55. More, *plus*; the most, *le plus*, 134. More, *darantage*, Obs. D. 190.

MOURIR\*, to die (lose life); pres. part. *mourant*; past, *mort*; *L'homme est mort ce matin et sa femme est morte aussi*, the man died this morning, and his wife died also, 341; *mourir*\* *d'une maladie*, to die of a disease, 348.

MUCH, many, a good deal of, very much, *beaucoup*, 44. Obs. 45. Obs. C. 410. Not much, *ne—guère de*, Obs. 45. So much, *tant*, 203. 308.

MUST: the English nominative of this verb is rendered in French by the dative, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, together with the impersonal *il faut*, Obs. A. B. 189. The same when followed by have, Obs. C. 190. See FALLOIR\*.

MY, *mon, ma, mes*, 2. 26. Obs. B. C. 295.

## N.

NAME. What is your name? *Comment vous appelez-vous?* My name is Charles, *je m'appelle Charles*, 343.

NAMES. Proper names of persons, Obs. C. Note 1. 443. Obs. D. E. F. G. H. Note 2. 444; of kingdoms, provinces, and towns, Remark, 444.

NATIVE (a), *un homme né dans le pays*, 480.

NE is used without *pas* with the verbs, *cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; *pouvoir, savoir*, to be able, 412. *Ne—guère de* (*pas beaucoup de*), but little, only a little, not much, not many, but few; *je n'ai guère d'argent*, I have but little money, Obs. 45. *Ne—ni*, neither, *ni*, nor; *Je n'ai ni le bâton du marchand ni le mien*, I have neither the merchant's stick nor mine, 10. *Ne—nulle part*, nowhere, not any where, 75.

*Ne—pas, ne—point*, not; *Je n'ai pas*, I have not, 3. When these negations must be used, and which place they ought to occupy in the sentence, Obs. A. B. 412. Obs. C. 413. *Ne—pas encore*, not yet, 139. *Ne—plus*, no longer, 174. *Ne—plus de*, not any more, no more; *je n'ai plus de pain*, I have no more bread, 55. *Ne—plus guère de*, not much more, not many more; *je n'en ai plus guère*, I have not much (many) more, 55. *Ne—que*, only, but; *je n'ai qu'un ami*, I have but one friend; *je n'en ai qu'un*, I have but one, 44; *ne—que*, nothing but; *il n'a que des ennemis*, he has nothing but enemies, 223. *Ne—rien*, nothing, not any thing; *je n'ai rien*, I have nothing, 5. Requires *de* before an adjective, Obs. 6. 11.

NEAR, *près de*; near me, *près de moi*; near them, *près d'eux*; near going, *près d'aller*, 265.

NEARLY, *près de*, 167. Nearly, thereabouts, *à peu près*, 442.

NEGATION, Obs. B. 282. Place of the negation, Obs. A. B. 412. Obs. C. 413. 516.

NEITHER—nor, *ne—ni, ni*, 10.

NEUF, *nouveau, nouvel*, new; how these words must be distinguished from each other, Notes 1, 2. 179.

NEVER, *ne—jamais*, 144.

NEW, *neuf, nouveau* (before a vowel or *h* mute, *nouvel*), Notes 1, 2. 179.

No, or not any, *ne—pas de*, 35, 36.

NONE, not one, not any; *aucun, pas un* (indefinite pronouns), Obs. E. 465. No one, nobody, or not any body, *personne—ne*, 18. Nobody, *personne* (an indefinite pronoun), Obs. E. 465. No longer, *ne—plus*, 174. No sooner, *pas plutôt*, 390.

NOT, *ne—pas, ne—point*, place of the negation in the French sentence, Obs. A. B. 412. Obs. C. 413. 516. Not any more, no more, *ne—plus de*; not much more, not many more, *ne—plus guère de*, 55. Not quite, *pas tout à fait*, 167. Not until (meaning not before), *pas avant*, 334. Not yet, *ne—pas encore*, 139.

NOTHING, *rien* (an indefinite pronoun); *rien qui* or *que*, Obs. E. 465.

NOTHING, or not any thing, *ne—*

rien; nothing or not any thing bad, *ne rien de mauvais*, 5. Obs. 6. 11. Nothing but, *ne—que*, 223.

NOTRE, plur. *nos*, *our*, 26. Obs. B. 295.

NÔTRE (*le, la*), *les nôtres*, *ours*, Obs. A. 8. 30. Obs. A. 306.

NOTWITHSTANDING, *malgré*; notwithstanding that, *malgré cela*, 394. Notwithstanding that, for all that, although, *ne laisser pas de*; that man is a little bit of a rogue, but notwithstanding he passes for an honest man, *cet homme est tant soit peu fripon, mais il ne laisse pas de passer pour honnête homme*, 473.

Now, *maintenant*, 384. Now and then, *de loin en loin*, 431.

NUMBERS (cardinal), Note 1, 44; ordinal, Obs. A. B. 50. 51. The cardinal numbers are employed after the Christian name of a sovereign, Obs. A. B. 343. Distributive numbers, *premièrement, en premier lieu*, firstly; *secondement, en second lieu*, secondly, &c. 394. The English ordinal number rendered in French by the cardinal: I received your letter on the sixth, *J'ai reçu votre lettre le six*, 474.

## O.

OBLIGED (to be) or indebted to some one for something, *être obligé (redevable) à quelqu'un de quelque chose*, 363.

ŒIL (*l'*), the eye; plur. *les yeux*, 26.

OF, *de*, Obs. 4. 63. 99. 441. 229. 197. See DE.

OFFRIR \*, to offer; pres. part. *offrant*; past, *offert*, 261.

OFTEN, *souvent*; as often as, *aussi souvent que*, 124; not so often as, *moins souvent que*; oftener than, *plus souvent que*, 125.

OMBRE, a shadow, is feminine; meaning a fish or a game it is masculine; *à l'ombre*, under the shade, Note 2, 384.

ON or upon, *sur*; upon it, *dessus*, 161. On a small scale, *en petit*; on a large scale, *en grand*, 442.

ON, one, the people, they or any one, 178, 179. When it is used, Obs.

A. 222. The indefinite pronoun *on* takes *l'* (with an apostrophe) after the words *et, ou, où, or si*, Obs. D. 404.

ONCE, *une fois*; once a day, *une fois par jour*; twice a day, *deux fois par jour*, 203.

ONE (the people, they or any one), *on*, 178, 179. Obs. A. 222.

ONLY, but, *ne—que*, 44.

OPPOSITE to, *vis-à-vis de*; opposite that house, *vis-à-vis de cette maison*, 420.

OR, *ou*, 7. After this conjunction the indefinite pronoun *on* takes *l'* (with an apostrophe), Obs. D. 404.

OTHER, *autre*; another sou, *un autre sou*; some other sous, *d'autres sous*, 49. No other, *ne—pas d'autre*. I have no other, *je n'en ai pas d'autres*, 50. Others, other people, *autrui*, 314.

OU, or, 7. Obs. D. 404.

Où: after this adverb of place the indefinite pronoun *on* takes *l'* (with an apostrophe). Obs. D. 404. Où? Where? 70. Où, where, whither, whereto, 74. 173. D'où? whence? wherefrom? 192. 259.

OUGHT and SHOULD are rendered into French by the conditionals of the verb *devoir*, to be obliged, to owe, Obs. 424.

OUR, *notre, nos*, 26. Obs. B. 295.

OURS, *le (la) nôtre, les nôtres*, Obs. A. 8. 30. Obs. A. 306.

OUT, *hors de*; out of doors, *dehors*, 321. 329.

OUTRE, besides; *outre cela*, besides that; *en outre*, moreover, 413.

OUVRIR \*, to open; pres. part. *ouvrant*; past, *ouvert*, Note 6. 107. 160.

## P.

PAR, by, 208. *Par-ci, par-là*, here and there, 431.

PARAÎTRE \*, to appear, to seem, 474.

PARCEQUE, because, 172.

PARMI, among, 282.

PARTICIPLE past; its formation, Notes 1, 2, 3. 143. 488. It agrees with its object in number and gender, ~~Obs.~~ B. 148. ~~Obs.~~ 253. ~~Obs.~~ 298. ~~Obs.~~ 316; it does not agree with it when preceded by the relative pronoun *en*, or

the connective pronoun, *dont*, *§* C. 149. *§* 229. Serves to form the passive voice, 208. *§* 253. Participle present; its formation, 312. How is the English present participle to be translated into French? *§* 195. 290. Obs. A. B. 312.

PARTICULAR (to be), *y regarder de près*, 435.

PARTIR \*, to depart, to set out; pres. part. *partant*; past, *parti*, 130. 160.

PARVENIR \*, to succeed, 238.

PAY (to) for, *payer*; to pay a man for a horse, *payer un cheval à un homme*, *§* 196. To pay some one a visit, *faire une visite (rendre visite) à quelqu'un*, 358.

PEINE (à), scarcely; when it is employed in the use of the preterite anterior, 390.

PENDANT, during, for, 173.

PERMETTRE \*, to permit, to allow, 404.

PERSONNE, as a pronoun, is masculine, as a substantive it is feminine, Note 2, 298. *Personne*—*ne*, no one, nobody, or not any body; *personne n'a votre bâton*, nobody has your stick, 18.

*Personne qui* or *que*, nobody that or who, requires the next verb in the subjunctive, Obs. E. 465.

PEU, little, Obs. C. D. 134; *peu de*, little (before a noun), Obs. 45; *un peu*, a little, 45. *A peu près*, thereabouts, nearly, 442.

PLACE. *A ma place*, in my place; *à votre place*, in your place; *à sa place*, in his or her place, 396.

PLAINDRE \*, to pity; pres. part. *plaignant*; past, *plaint*; *se plaindre* \*, to complain, 260.

PLAIRE \*, to please, to be pleased; pres. part. *plaisant*; past, *plu*; *se plaire* \*, to please, 241.

PLAY (to), *jouer*, 113; to play upon an instrument, *jouer d'un instrument*; to play at cards, *jouer aux cartes*, Obs. 265. 425. To play a trick on some one, *jouer un tour à quelqu'un*, 436.

PLEASE (to), *plaire* \*, *se plaire* \*; to please some one, *plaire à quelqu'un*. How do you please yourself here? *Comment vous plaisez-vous ici?* 241; if you please, *s'il vous plaît*, 350.

PLEASED with, *content de*, 342.

PLEASURE. To give pleasure, *faire plaisir*, 97.

PLEUVOIR \*, to rain, 227.

PLUPERFECT (the) of the Indicative: its formation and its use, Obs. B. 389. Pluperfect of the Subjunctive: its formation, Obs. A. 457. Its use, Obs. B. 453.

PLURAL: its formation in nouns and adjectives, Rule 24. Obs. A. 25. Obs. B. C. 26. Obs. 94.

PLUS, more, serves to form the comparative of superiority of adjectives and adverbs; *le plus*, the most, serves to form the superlative of superiority, 133. Difference between *plus* and *davantage*, Obs. D. 190. *Plus de*, more (before a noun), 59. When there is a comparison between two sentences, the verb which follows *plus*, or *moins*, requires the negative *ne*. *J'ai plus de pain que je n'en puis manger*, I have more bread than I can eat, Obs. B. 282.

PLÙT à Dieu, *plût au ciel*, would to God, require the subjunctive, 467.

PLUTÔT—*que*, rather; *plutôt—que de*, rather—than, 344. *Pas plutôt*, no sooner, 390.

PORTER, to carry, to take, must not be mistaken for *mener*, Obs. C. 322.

POUR, to (meaning *in order to*), 78. Whenever *in order to* can be substituted for the preposition *to*, the latter is rendered in French by *pour*, to express the end, the design, or the cause for which a thing is done, Obs. A. 395.

POUR (to) out, *verser*; to pour out some drink for any one, *verser à boire à quelqu'un*, 349.

POURQUOI? why? 172.

POURSUIVRE \*, to pursue, 360.

POUVOIR \*, to be able (can), pres. part. *pouvant*; past, *pu*, Note 1, 78. 160.

PRENDRE \*, to take; pres. part. *prenant*; past, *pris*, 119. 160. 385. 396. *Prendre* \*, to drink, 120. *Prendre* \* *soin*, take-care, 261. *Prendre* \* *la fuite*, to make one's escape, to run away, to flee, to take to one's heels, 372. *S'y prendre* \*, to manage or to go about a thing, 381, 382.

PREPOSITIONS, which in French



are followed by the infinitive, whilst in English they are followed by the present participle, *Obs.* 195. *Obs.* 211. The English preposition *for* with the verbs, *to ask, demander; to pay, payer*, is not rendered in French, *Obs.* 196; *at* and *for* are not rendered in French when used to mark the price of a thing, *Obs.* D. 288. Prepositions formed with *à, au, or aux*, and a noun, require the genitive after them; almost all others require the accusative, *Obs.* A. 274. Use of the preposition *à*, *Obs.* B. 87. 183. *Obs.* A. 441. *Obs.* B. 443. Use of the preposition *de*, *Obs.* 4. *Obs.* A. 441. Place of the preposition in the sentence, Rule 3. 514.

*PRÈS de*, near, 265.

**PRESENT** (the) tense Indicative. Its formation, Notes 1, 2, 3. 103. Note 4. 104. The English have three present tenses, whilst the French have but one, *Obs.* B. 105. In verbs where the ending *er* is preceded by *g*, the letter *e* is, for the softening of the sound, retained in all those tenses where *g* is followed by *a* or *o*. Ex. *Nous mangeons*, we eat; *nous jugeons*, we judge, *Obs.* C. 106. In verbs ending in *ayer, oyer, uyer*, the letter *y* is changed into *i* in all persons and tenses where it is followed by *e* mute. Ex. *J'envoie*, I send; *tu envoies*, thou sendest, &c. *Obs.* D. 106. Exceptions to the formation of the present tense indicative, *Obs.* E. 106, 107. In verbs having *e* mute in the last syllable but one of the infinitive, the letter *e* has the grave accent ( ` ) in all persons and tenses where the consonant immediately after it is followed by *e* mute: as in *mener*, to guide; *je mène*, I guide; *achever*, to finish; *j'achève*, I finish, &c. *Obs.* A. 112. In verbs ending in *eler* and *eter*, as *appeler*, to call; *jeter*, to throw; the letter *l* or *t* is doubled in all persons and tenses where it is followed by *e* mute. Ex. *Qui m'appelle?* Who calls me? *Obs.* B. 157. In verbs having the acute accent ( ´ ) on the last syllable but one of the infinitive, the letter *e* takes the grave accent in all persons and tenses where it is followed by a consonant having *e* mute after it, as: *céder*, to yield; *je cède*, I yield, *Obs.* A. 281. *Do* or *Am*, when used to interrogate

for all persons and tenses may be rendered by *est-ce que*. In some verbs they cannot be rendered otherwise, *Obs.* Note 1, 128. Present of the Subjunctive: its formation, 447. *Obs.* A. Note 1, 448. *Obs.* B. 449. When it must be employed, 449, & *seqq.* In English the state of existence or of action, when in its duration, is always expressed by the preterperfect tense, whilst in French it is expressed by the present tense: He has been in Paris these ten years, *il y a trois ans qu'il est à Paris*, *Obs.* C. 252.

**PRESENTLY**, *tout à l'heure*, 239.

**PRETEND** (to), *faire semblant de*, 384.

**PRETERITE** (the) *definite*. Its formation, *Obs.* A. 387, 388. When it is used, 389. Preterite anterior: its formation and its use, Note 1, 390. *The Preterite indefinite*: its formation, and when it is employed, 154. Preterite of the subjunctive: its formation, *Obs.* A. 457. When it is employed, *Obs.* B. 459, & *seqq.*

**PRIER**, to desire, to beg, to pray, to request, takes *de* before the infinitive, 323.

**PRODUIRE** \*, to produce, 370.

**PROMENER** (*se*), to talk a walk; *aller se promener*, to go a-walking; *se promener en carrosse*, to take an airing in a carriage; *se promener à cheval*, to take a ride, 220.

**PROMETTRE** \*, to promise (*de* before inf.), 166.

**PRONOUN**. Personal pronouns, 82. The personal pronoun *le*, him, it, plur. *les*, stands before the verb, and before the adverb *y*, 74. *Obs.* 75. Use of the pronouns *me, moi* and *à moi, le, lui* and *à lui, nous* and *à nous, vous* and *à vous, leur* and *à eux, les* and *eux*, *Obs.* 80. *Obs.* D. 295. Of the second person singular, *tu*, thou, Note 1, 93. The personal pronoun must be repeated before the verb when it has two or more different nominatives, *Obs.* B. 352. Insertion of the letter *t* between the verb and the pronoun *il*, when the former is interrogative, *Obs.* A. 16. B. 17. Possessive pronouns, 26. 94. *Obs.* B. C. 295. Absolute possessive pronouns, 7. *Obs.* A. 8. 17. 30. *Obs.* A. 306. In French the qualifications *monsieur, madame*,

*mademoiselle*, usually precede the possessive pronouns, Obs. A. B. C. 287. Demonstrative pronouns, 7. 26. 296. 298. 20. 31. Determinative pronouns, 22. 30. 298. 201. 112. Interrogative pronouns, Obs. A. 86. 298. Relative pronouns, 21, Obs. 229. Indefinite pronouns, 17. Indefinite pronouns governing the subjunctive, Obs. A. B. 464. Obs. C. D. E. 465. Obs. A. 222. All objective pronouns, *i. e.* which are not in the nominative, stand in French before the verb, and in compound tenses before the auxiliary, Obs. A. 148. Rule. 6, 517. Pronouns of reflective verbs, Obs. A. 215.

PROPERLY, *comme il faut*, 197.

PROPOSER (*se*), *de* before inf., to propose; *je me propose de faire ce voyage*, I propose going on that journey, 369.

PROVERBIAL forms of expression, 509, 510.

PULL (to), *tirer*, 247. To pull out, *arracher*; he pulls out his hair, *il s'arrache les cheveux*, 217.

PURCHASE (to) any thing, *faire emplette de quelque chose, faire des emplettes*, 261, 262.

PUT (to), to put on, *mettre*\*, 154. To put off, to postpone, *remettre*\*, (à), 431. To put one's self out of the way, to inconvenience one's self, *se gêner*, 430.

## Q.

QUAND, *lorsque*, when, 245; when they are used with the preterite anterior, 390. *Quand même*, though, requires the conditional, Notes 1, 2, 467.

QUANT À, as to, as for; *quant à moi*, as to me, 348.

QUATRE-VINGT, eighty, takes no *s* when followed by another numeral, Obs. A. 172.

QUE, that or which (relative pronoun), 21; *que de*, than (before a noun), 59. *Que* and *qui* have sometimes *l'on* after them, when the harmony of the sentence requires it, Obs. E. F. 405. *Que* used to avoid the repetition of the conjunction, *si*, governs the subjunctive, Obs. E. 460. *Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?* what is

that? *je ne sais pas ce que c'est que cela*, I do not know what that is, 343. *Qu'est-ce que cela peut être?* what can that be? 430.

QUEL? *quels? quelle? quelles?* which or what? 2, 3. 26, 27. 296. 298.

QUEL *que*, QUELLE *que*, in two words, followed by a substantive, and the verb *être*, agrees with the substantive in gender and number, and governs the subjunctive, Obs. C. 465.

QUELQUE (indeclinable), however, howsoever, whatever, whatsoever, before an adjective, governs the subjunctive, Obs. A. 464. Followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *être*, it is invariable before a noun singular, and takes an *s* only before a noun plural, without regard to its gender: it always governs the subjunctive, Obs. B. 464.

QUELQUE CHOSE, something, any thing, 5. *Quelque chose de bon*, something or any thing good, 5. Requires *de* before an adjective, Obs. 6. *Quelque chose que*, whatever or whatsoever, stands at the beginning of a sentence, and governs the next verb in the subjunctive, Obs. D. 465.

QUELQUE PART, some where or whither, any where or whither, 75.

QUELQU'UN, somebody or any body, some one or any one. *Quelqu'un a-t-il mon livre?* has any body my book? 17.

QUELQUES-UNS, a few, 49.

QUESTION (to be the), to turn upon, *s'agir de*. It is the question, it turns upon, *il s'agit de*, 426.

QUI? who? its declension, 86. Obs. 229. *'A qui?* whose? 86. 184. *'A qui*, to whom, Obs. 229.

QUI QUE CE SOIT, whoever, whosoever, requires the next verb in the subjunctive, Obs. E. 465.

QUICK, fast, *cite*, 268.

QUITE (or just) as much, as many, *tout autant*, 59.

QUOI? *que?* what? 6. Its declension, Obs. A. 86.

QUOIQUE, whatever, whatsoever, requires the next verb in the subjunctive, Obs. D. 465. *Quoique*, though, governs the subjunctive, Remark D. 458.



## R.

RAIN (to), *pleuvoir*\*. Does it rain ? *fait-il de la pluie* ? 321. It rains very hard, *il pleut à verse*, 227.

RAPPELER (se), to recollect. *Vous rappelez-vous cela* ? do you recollect that ? *Je me le rappelle*, I do recollect it, 266.

RATHER THAN, *plutôt que de*, 344.

READ (to) *lire*\* ; read, *lu*, 156.

RECOLLECT (to), *se rappeler*, 266 ; *se souvenir*\*, *se ressouvenir*, 267.

RECONNAÎTRE, to recognize, to acknowledge, 282.

RÉDUIRE\*, to reduce ; pres. part. *réduisant* ; past, *réduit*, 370.

RÉJOUIR (se) *de quelque chose*, to rejoice at something, 221.

RELY (to) : you may rely upon him, *vous pouvez vous fier à lui*, *vous pouvez vous y fier*, *vous pouvez compter sur lui*, 377.

REMAIN (to), *rester*, Note 1, 169 ; *demeurer*, Note 3, 174.

REMETTRE\*, to postpone, to put off (*à*), 431.

RESTER, to remain, to stay, 97. When does this verb take *avoir*\*, and when *être*\*, in its compound tenses ? Note 1, 169. *Rester*, to have left, Obs. A. 320.

RETENIR\*, to retain, to hold back, 266.

RÉUSSIR, to succeed (*à* bef. inf.), 369.

REVENIR\*, to return, to come back, 173.

RIDE (to) on horseback, *aller à cheval*, 210. To take a ride, *se promener à cheval*, 220. See ALLER.

RIEN *qui* or *que*, nothing that, requires the next verb in the subjunctive, Obs. E. 465.

RIGHT : to the right, on the right side or hand, *à droite*, *sur la droite*, 413. Right, *raison*. See TO BE.

RIRE\*, to laugh ; pres. part. *riant* ; past, *ri*, 350 ; *se rire*, *ou se moquer de quelqu'un*, to laugh at, to deride one ; *rire au nez de quelqu'un*, to laugh in a person's face, 351.

Room (the), *la chambre* ; the front room, *la chambre du devant*, or *sur le devant* ; the back room, *la chambre sur le derrière*, or *la chambre du derrière* ; the upper room, *la chambre du haut*, 297.

## S.

SAIL (a), *une voile*. To set sail, *mettre à la voile*, Note 2, 377. To set sail for, *faire voile pour* ; to sail under full sail, *marcher à pleines voiles*, 378.

SAME : the same thing, *la même chose* ; the same man, *le même homme* ; it is all one (the same), *c'est égal*, 328.

SANS, without, is in French followed by the infinitive, whilst in English it requires the present participle, Obs. 211.

SAVOIR\*, to know ; pres. part. *sachant* ; past, *su*. The infinitive joined to this verb is not preceded by a preposition, Obs. 124. 160.

SATISFIED (to be) with some one or something, *être content de quelqu'un*, or *de quelque chose*, 203.

SCARCELY, *à peine*, 390.

SEE (to), *voir*\* ; seen, *vu*, 156.

SELF, *selves*, *même*, *mêmes* ; myself, *moi-même* ; himself, *lui-même* ; herself, *elle-même* ; themselves, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes* ; one's self, *soi-même*, 370. Obs. 371.

SELON, according to ; *selon les circonstances*, according to circumstances ; *c'est selon*, it depends, that is according to circumstances, 342.

SENTIR\*, to feel ; pres. part. *sentant* ; past, *sent*, 288 ; *sentir*\*, to smell, 382.

SERVIR\*, to serve, to wait upon ; pres. part. *servant* ; past, *servi*, 260 ; *se servir de*, to make use of, to use, 274 ; *servir la soupe*, to serve up the soup ; *servir le dessert*, to bring in the dessert, 375. *Servir*, to be of use : *à quoi cela vous sert-il* ? of what use is that to you ? *Servir de*, to stand instead, to be as : *mon fusil me sert de bâton*, I use my gun as a stick ; *servir* (de bef. inf.) to avail ; *à quoi vous sert-il de pleurer* ? what avails it to you to cry ? *cela ne me sert à rien*, it avails me nothing, 420. *On a servi*, dinner or supper is on the table (is served up) ; *vous servirai-je de la soupe* ? do you choose any soup ? shall I help you to some soup ? 378.

SET (to) out, to depart, to leave, *partir*\*, 130. 160.

SEUL, fem. *seule*, alone, by one's self, 397.

SHORTLY (soon), *bientôt*, 173. 265.

SHOW (to), *faire voir*, *montrer*, 123. To show a disposition to, *faire mine de*, 357. The show (splendour, brightness), *l'éclat*; to make a great show, *faire de l'éclat*, 478.

SI, if, 204. If before the personal pronouns, *il*, he; *ils*, they; the letter *i* of this conjunction suffers elision, Obs. C. 404: after it the indefinite pronoun *on* takes *l'* (with an apostrophe), Obs. D. 404. In the use of the conditional this conjunction is always expressed or understood, Obs. D. 334; *que*, used to avoid the repetition of this conjunction, governs the subjunctive, Obs. E. 460.

SIEN (*le*), *la sienne*, *les siens*, *les siennes*, his or hers, 17. 30. 306.

SIDE: by the side of, *à côté de*, Obs. A. 274. This side, *de ce côté-ci*; that side, *de ce côté-là*; on this side of the road, *au deçà* (*en deçà*) *du chemin*; on that side of the road, *au delà du chemin*, 184.

SILENT (to be), to stop speaking, *se taire\**, 426.

SINCE OR FROM, *depuis*; from that time, *depuis ce moment*; from my childhood, *depuis ma jeunesse*; from here to there, *depuis ici jusque là*, 370. See DEPUIS. Since (considering), *puisque*, 369.

SIT (to) down, *s'asseoir\**, 267; to sit, to be seated, *être assis*; fem. *assise*, 321.

SLEEP (to), *dormir\**, 211. Are you sleepy? *avez-vous sommeil?* 5. To feel sleepy, *avoir envie de dormir*, 217.

SLOW, slowly, *lentement*, 268.

SNOW (to), *neiger*, 227. It snows, *il fait de la neige*, 321.

So (it), *le*, Obs. A. 155. So, thus, *ainsi*; so so, *comme cela*, 166. So that (conjunction), *de sorte que*, 230.

SOIR, *soirée*; difference between these two words, Note 2, 304.

SOME OR ANY (before a noun), *du*, *de la*, *des*, 35. 297; before an adjective, *de*, 36. 297. 299. Some of it, any of it, of it, some of them, any of them, of them, *en*; is always placed before the verb, 39, 40. Some, or any more, *encore*; some more wine, *encore du vin*; some more buttons, *encore des boutons*, 54. Somebody or any body, *quelqu'un*, 17. Something

or any thing, *quelque chose*: something or any thing good, *quelque chose de bon*, 5. Obs. 6, 179. Sometimes, *quelquefois*, 150. Somewhere or whither, any where or whither, *quelque part*, 75. Nowhere, not any where, *ne—nulle part*, 75.

SON, *sa*, *ses*, his or her, 17. 26. Obs. B. C. 295.

SOON, *bientôt*, 173. 265. As soon as, *aussitôt que*, 211. No sooner, *pas plutôt*, when it is employed in the use of the preterite anterior, 390.

SORTIR\*, to go out; pres. part. *sortant*; past, *sorti*, 97. 107. 138. 160.

SOUDAINEMENT, suddenly, all of a sudden, 305.

SOUFFRIR\*, to suffer; pres. part. *souffrant*; past, *souffert*, 359.

SOUS (preposition), under; *dessous* (adverb), under it, 161.

SOUVENIR\* (*se*), *se ressouvenir\**, to remember, to recollect, governs the genitive, 267.

SOUVENT, often, 124. *Aussi souvent que*, as often as, 124. *Plus souvent que*, oftener than, 125. *Moins souvent que*, not so often as, 125.

SPEECH (a), *un discours*. To make a speech, *faire un discours*, 313.

SPEND (to) time in something, *passer le temps à quelque chose*, 254.

SPITE: in spite of, *en dépit de*, 394.

STEP (a), *un pas*. To walk a step, *faire un pas*; to take a step (meaning to take measures), *faire une démarche*, 313.

STRIKE (to), *frapper*, 348. To be struck with a thought, *venir en pensée*, *à l'idée*, *à l'esprit*. A thought strikes me, *il me vient une idée*, 396.

SUBJUNCTIVE, 449 *seqq.* See PRESENT, IMPERFECT, &c.

SUBSTANTIVE: formation of the plural, Rule 24. Obs. A. Notes 1, 2, 3. 25. Obs. B. C. 26. 294. Feminine substantives, 294. Gender of substantives, Obs. A. 184. Obs. 437. Obs. D. 314. Note 1, 336. Obs. B. 174. Note 1, 304. Note 1, 384. Remark 297. Compound substantives: a substantive composed of a noun and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural, Obs. B. 169; of two nouns by means of a preposition, expressed or understood, the first only takes the

mark of the plural, Obs. E. 498. An English compound is rendered in French by two words, and the preposition *de* is put between when the latter expresses the matter of which the former is made, Obs. 4. Obs. A. 441; but when the latter expresses the use of the former, the preposition *à* is put between, 441. Obs. B. 443. Substantives having a distinct form for individuals of the female sex, Obs. B. 307; used for both sexes, Obs. C. 307.

SUCCEED (to), *parvenir*\*. Do you succeed in learning French? *parvenez-vous à apprendre le français?* 238. To succeed, *réussir*. Do you succeed in doing that? *réussissez-vous à faire cela?* 369.

SUCH, *un tel, une telle; pareil, pareille*, 328.

SUFFER (to), *souffrir*\*, 359; to suffer one's self to be beaten, *se laisser battre*; to let or suffer one's self to fall, *se laisser tomber*; to suffer one's self to be insulted, *se laisser insulter*, &c. 478.

SUFFIRE\*, to suffice, to be sufficient; pres. part. *suffisant*; past, *suffi*, 377.

SUIT (to), *convenir*\*, 238.

SUIVRE\*, to follow; pres. part. *suivant*; past, *suivi*, 359; *suivre*\* *un conseil*, to follow advice (counsel), 416.

SUN (the), *le soleil*. We have too much sun, *il fait trop de soleil*, 202.

SUPERLATIVE, Obs. A. 133. Obs. B. C. 134.

SUR, upon (preposition); *dessus*, upon it (adverb), 161.

SURFAIRE\*, to overcharge, to ask too much, 371.

SURPRENDRE\*, to surprise, 409.

SURPRISE (to), *étonner*. To be surprised at something, *être étonné de quelque chose*, 409.

## T.

TAIRE\* (*se*), to hold one's tongue, to stop speaking, to be silent; pres. part. *taisant*; past, *tu*, 426.

TAKE (to) place, *avoir lieu*, 149. To take care of something, *prendre (avoir\*) soin de quelque chose*, 261; to take care of some one, to beware, *prendre garde à quelqu'un*, 396; to take an airing in a carriage, *se promener en carrosse*, 220.

TANT, so much; *tant par an*, so much a year; *tant par tête*, so much a head, 203. 308; *tant que*, so long as, 437; *tant soit peu*, just a little, ever so little, 473.

TASTE (to), *goûter*, 202; the taste, *le goût*; each man has his taste, *chaque homme a son goût*, 216.

TEACH (to), *enseigner*; to teach some one something, *enseigner quelque chose à quelqu'un*; to teach some one to do something, *apprendre à quelqu'un à faire quelque chose*, 275.

TEAR (a), *une larme*; to shed tears, *verser des larmes*; with tears in his, her, our, or my eyes, *les larmes aux yeux*, 349.

TEINDRE\*, to dye, or to colour; pres. part. *teignant*; past, *teint*; *teindre en noir, en rouge*, to dye black, red, 185.

TEL, such; *un tel homme*, such a man; *de tels hommes*, such men; *une telle femme*, such a woman; *de telles femmes*, such women, 328.

TELL (to), to say, *dire*\*; told, said, *dit*, 155.

TENIR\*, to hold; pres. part. *tenant*; past, *tenu*, 197. *Se tenir*\* *prêt*, to keep one's self ready, 283. *Tenir*\* *pension*, to keep a boarding-house, 419. *Tenir*\* *lieu de*, to take the place of, to be instead of, 442. See To KEEP.

THAN, *que de* (before a noun), 59. Than, before a number, is rendered by *de*, and not by *que*: more than nine, *plus de neuf*, Obs. B. 251.

THAT or which, *que*, relative pronoun, 21. That (meaning that thing), *cela*, 149. 155. That, or the one, *celui*, plur. *ceux*; *celle*, plur. *celles*, 7. 30. 298. *That which*, the one which, those which, *celui que, ceux que; celle que, celles que*, 22. 30. 298. *That which*, or the thing which, *ce que*, 112.

THE, definite article, *le, la, les*, 1. 24. 294. See ARTICLE.

THEIR, *leur, leurs*, 26. Obs. B. D. 295.

THEIRS, *le (la) leur, les leurs*, 30. 306.

THEN, *alors*; until then, *jusqu'alors*, 177.

THERE, thither, to it, at it, in it, *y*, 74, Obs. 75. 87. 88. To go thither, *y aller*; to be there, *y être*, 74.



There, *là*, *y*, 97. *There is*, behold, *voilà*; here is my book, *voici mon livre*; there it is, *le voilà*, fem. *la voilà*; there they are, *les voilà*, 336.

THINE, *le tien*, *la tienne*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*, 94. 306.

THIS or THAT, these or those, *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*, 7. 20. 26. 296. This one, that one, these, those, *celui-ci*, *celui-là*; *ceux-ci*, *ceux-là*; *celle-ci*, *celle-là*; *celles-ci*, *celles-là*, 20. 31. 298.

THOU, *tu*, Note 1, 93.

THUNDER, *le tonnerre*. It thunders very much, *il fait beaucoup de tonnerre*, 210.

THUS or So, *ainsi*, 366.

THY, *ton*, *ta*, *tes*, 94, Obs. B. C. 295.

TIEN (*le*), *la tienne*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*, thine, 94. 306.

TILL, until, *jusque*; till twelve o'clock (till noon), *jusqu'à midi*, 177. Not until, *pas avant*, takes *de* before the infinitive, 334.

TIRED (to be), *être las*, *lasse*, 474. To get (or to be) tired, *s'ennuyer*, 410.

TIRER, to pull, to draw, to shoot, to fire, 247.

To, *à*, Obs. B. 87. To (meaning in order to), *pour*, 78. Obs. A. 395.

TON, *ta*, *tes*, 94. Obs. B. C. 295.

Too, *trop*, 139. Too much, too many, *trop*, Obs. 45; too late, *trop tard*; too soon, too early, *trop tôt*; too large, too great, *trop grand*; too little, *trop peu*; too small, *trop petit*, 139.

TOUR À TOUR, alternately, turn by turn, 442.

TOUT, all; plur. *tous*. *Tout le vin*, all the wine; *tous les livres*, all the books, 185. *Tout autant*, quite (or just) as much, as many, 59.

TOWARDS, *enters* or *vers*, 277. 429.

TRAVEL (to), *voyager*, 184. See ALLER. To travel through Europe, *faire le tour de l'Europe*, 436.

TREAT (to) or to use somebody well, *en user bien avec quelqu'un*; to use somebody ill, *en user mal avec quelqu'un*, 429.

TROMPER, to deceive, to cheat, 217. *Tromper (se)*, to mistake, to be mistaken, 217.

TROP, too, 139. *Trop*, too much, too many, Obs. 45. 139.

TRUST (to) some one, *se fier à quel-*

*qu'un*; to distrust one, *se défier de quelqu'un*, 350.

TU, thou; use of the pronoun of address, Note 1, 93.

TURN (to) a soldier, a merchant, a lawyer, *se faire soldat*, *marchand*, *avocat*, 223. To turn to account (to make the best of), *faire valoir*, 473. To turn some one into ridicule, *tourner quelqu'un en ridicule*, 421. Turn (the), *le tour*. To take a turn (a walk), *faire un tour*, 245, 246. 436.

## U.

UN, *une*, a or au, 40. 298. Obs. A. 117. *Pas un qui* or *que*, not one that, requires the next verb in the subjunctive, Obs. E. 465. *L'un l'autre*, *l'une l'autre*, each other; *êtes-vous contents l'un de l'autre?* are you pleased with each other? *Nous le sommes*, we are, 357.

UNDER, *sous*; under it, *dessous*, 161.

UNDERSTAND (to), *comprendre\**; understood, *compris*, 168. To make one's self understood, *se faire comprendre*, 403.

UP: to get up (to rise), *se lever*, 221. To go up, *monter*, Note 2. 323. To stand up, *être debout*; to remain up, *rester debout*, 408. Up stairs, *en haut*, 183. Up to the top, *jusqu'en haut*, 474.

UPON, *sur*; upon it, *dessus*, 161.

USER, to wear out, 166. *En user bien avec quelqu'un*, to treat or to use somebody well; *en user mal avec quelqu'un*, to use somebody ill, 429.

## V.

VALOIR\*, to be worth; pres. part. *valant*; past, *valu*, 191; *valoir\** mieux, to be better, 191; *valoir\** la peine, to be worth while. *Cela vaut-il la peine?* Is it worth while? 277, 278.

VENIR\*, to come; pres. part. *venant*, coming; past, *venu*, 75. 107. 160. Followed by the preposition *de* and the infinitive this verb expresses an action recently past, Obs. F. 253. *Venir\** en pensée (à l'idée, à l'esprit), to be struck with a thought, 396. *Venir\** and *aller\** are in French followed by the infinitive, and the con-

junction *and* is not rendered, Obs. A. 408.

VERB: the four conjugations, 63. Means to distinguish each of them, 63. Note 3, 103. Verbs which do not require a preposition before the infinitive, Obs. A. 139. Obs. B. 140. Table of formation of all the tenses in the French verbs, 481, & *seqq.* Compound and derivative verbs are conjugated like their primitives, Obs. A. 166. Auxiliary verbs: see AVOIR\*, ÊTRE\*. Verbs which require *être*\*, to be, for their auxiliary, Obs. D. 315. The past participle of such verbs must agree in gender and number with the nominative of *être*, 316. All objective pronouns, *i. e.* which are not in the nominative, stand in French before the verb, and in compound tenses before the auxiliary, 316. A. 148. Active verbs, 154. Neuter verbs, 160. Passive verbs, 208. The passive participle agrees with the nominative in number and gender, 253. Reflective verbs, 215. In French all reflective verbs, without exception, take in their compound tenses the auxiliary *être*\*, whilst in English they take to *have*, 220. In reflective verbs the pronoun of the object is the same person as that of the subject; each person is therefore conjugated with a double personal pronoun, Obs. A. 215. Impersonal verbs, 227. Impersonal verbs governing the subjunctive, Remark A. 449. Obs. C. 450. Other verbs governing the subjunctive, Remark B. 451. Obs. D. 452. Obs. E. 453. *Do* or *am* when used to interrogate for all persons and tenses may be rendered by *est-ce que*. In some verbs they cannot be rendered otherwise, Obs. Note 1. 128. Verbs with which the negation *ne* is used without *pas*, Obs. B. 412. Position of the verb in the sentence, Rule 4, 514, & *seqq.*

VERS, *enters*, towards, 277; the former is used physically, the latter morally, 429.

VIS-À-VIS *de*, opposite to, 420.

VIVRE\*, to live; pres. part. *vivant*; past, *vécu*, 210. *Fait-il bon vivre à Paris?* Is it good living in Paris? Is the living good in Paris? 210.

VOILÀ, there is; *voici*, here is; *voilà pourquoi*, that is the reason why;

*voilà pourquoi je le dis*, therefore I say so, 336.

VOILE, a veil, is masculine; meaning a sail it is feminine, Note 2, 377. *A pleines voiles (à toutes voiles)*, under full sail, 378.

VOIR\*, to see; pres. part. *voyant*; past, *vu*, 78. 107. 156.

VOTRE, plur. *vos*, your, 2. 26. Obs. B. 295.

VÔTRE (*le, la*), *les vôtres*, yours, 7. Obs. A. 8. Obs. A. 306.

VOULOIR\*, to be willing, to wish; pres. part. *voulant*; past, *voulu*, 68. 160.

# W.

WAKE (to), *éveiller, s'éveiller*, Obs. B. 277.

WALK (to), *marcher*, Obs. C. 313. To take a walk, *se promener*; to go a walking, *aller se promener*, 220. To walk or travel a league, *faire une lieue*, 313.

WANT (to), to be in want of, *avoir besoin de*, 99.

WARM, *chaud*. Is it warm? *Fait-il chaud?* 201.

WAY: expressions about asking one's way, 413, 414.

WELCOME (to be), *être le bienvenu*, 411.

WELL, *bien*, 130. Obs. D. 134. 166. 343. To be well, *être bien portant, portante*; *être en bonne santé*; she is well, *elle est bien portante, elle se porte bien, elle est en bonne santé*, 357. See BIEN.

WET (damp), *humide*. Is the weather damp? *Fait-il humide?* 202.

WHAT? *quoi? que?* 6. Its declension, Obs. A. 86. What or the thing which. Do you find *what* you are looking for? *Trouvez-vous ce que vous cherchez?* 112. What, *que*, before an infinitive is translated by *que*, and if the sentence is negative *pas* is not used. I do not know what to do, *Je ne sais que faire*, Obs. A. 348.

WHATEVER, whatsoever, *quelque, quel que, quelle que, quelque chose que, quoi que, quoi que ce soit*, Obs. B. 464. Obs. C. D. 465.

WEATHER (the), *le temps*. How is the weather? What kind of weather is it? *Quel temps fait-il?* 201, 202.

WHEN, *quand, lorsque*, 245. 390.



WHERE ? *où ?* 70. Where ? Whither ? Where to ? *où ?* 74. Where from ? Whence ? *d'où ?* 192. 259. Where did we stop ? *Où en étions-nous ?* Somewhere or whither, any where or whither, *quelque part* ; nowhere, not any where, *nulle part*, 79.

WHICH OR WHAT ? *Quel ? Quels ? Quelle ? Quelles ?* 2, 3. 26. 27. 298. Of which, *dont*, 228, 229. Which one ? *lequel ?* plur. *lesquels ? laquelle ?* plur. *lesquelles ?* 14. 26. 298.

WHO ? *qui ?* its declension, 86 ; Whose ? *à qui ?* 86. 134 ; whose, *dont* (connective pronoun), 228. To whom, *à qui, aux quels*. Obs. 229.

WHOEVER, whosoever, *qui que ce soit*, Obs. E. 465.

WHY ? *pourquoi ?* 172.

WIPE (to), *essuyer*, Obs. D. 106. 162.

WITH, *avec*, 169. With rendered by *de*, 222. 260. 203. 321. With, rendered by *chez*, 69.

WITHDRAW (to), to go away from, *s'éloigner* (takes *de* before the substantive) ; I go away (withdraw) from the fire, *je m'éloigne du feu*, 266.

WITHOUT, *sans* ; without speaking, *sans parler*, Obs. 211.

WORD (the), *le mot*, 155. Words commonly used with the preposition *de*, of, before the infinitive, 63. A word composed of a noun and an adjective both take the mark of the plural, Obs. B. 169.

WORTH (to be), *valoir\**, 191. To be worth while, *valoir la peine*, 277, 278.

WOULD TO GOD ! *Plût à Dieu ! Plût au Ciel !* 467.

WRITE (to), *écrire\** ; written, *écrit*, 75. 107. 156.

WRONG, *tort*. See To BE.

# Y.

Y, to it, at it, in it, 74. Y, there, thither (stands always before the verb). *Y aller*, to go thither ; *y être*, to be there. Its place with regard to the personal pronouns, and *en*, 74. Obs. 75. 97. 88. Y (*ici*), here ; y (*là*), there, 97 ; *y regarder de près*, to be particular, 435.

YESTERDAY, *hier* ; the day before yesterday, *avant-hier*, 150.

YOUR, *votre, vos*, 2. 26. Obs. B. 295.

YOURS, *le (la) vôtre, les vôtres*, 7. Obs. A. 8. Obs. A. 306.

# OLLENDORFF'S METHOD, FRENCH—GERMAN—ITALIAN.

---

A METHOD of LEARNING to READ, WRITE, and  
SPEAK a LANGUAGE in Six Months.

1. ADAPTED TO THE FRENCH. Written expressly for the English Student. Second Edition. By H. G. OLLENDORFF, Ph. D. 8vo. Price 16s. cloth.

2. ADAPTED TO THE GERMAN. Written expressly for the English Student. By H. G. OLLENDORFF, Ph. D. In Two Parts. The Parts sold separately.

Part I. contains 105 Progressive Lessons, and 249 Exercises, together with Tables and Index, teaching the Practice of the Language. Price 16s. Cloth lettered.

Part II. contains Lessons and Exercises on the Principles of the Language, and Exercises from the best German Authors, for translation and re-translation, progressively arranged, thus perfecting the Student in the Theory as well as the Practice of the Language. Second Edition. Price 12s.

3. KEYS to both FRENCH and GERMAN SYSTEMS, prepared by the Author. Price 7s. each. Cloth lettered.

4. ADAPTED TO THE ITALIAN. This work has been long in preparation by DR. OLLENDORFF, and is now just ready. 8vo.

5. KEY to ditto, by the Author. 8vo.

---

It is necessary, for those who desire to avail themselves of the present method, to notice, that *these are the only English Editions sanctioned by Mr. Ollendorff*, and he deems any other totally inadequate for the purposes of English instruction, and for the elucidation of the method, so strongly recommended by Captain Basil Hall, and other eminent writers.

"After six months' close application, I can venture to pronounce, that by M. Ollendorff's Method alone, so far as I have been able to understand the subject, can this very difficult, but very charming language, be taught without confusion. By it the scholar advances step by step, understands clearly and thoroughly every thing he reads, and as he goes on, he becomes sensible that all he learns he retains, and all that he retains is useful and practically applicable. At the same time, he scarcely knows how he has got hold of it, so slightly marked are the shades of daily progression; and so gentle is the rise, that he feels no unpleasant fatigue on the journey. Of course, the student is called upon to exert no small degree of patient application, and he must consent to devote a considerable portion of his time to this pursuit; but he will have the encouraging conviction, that every particle of effort is well bestowed."—*Captain Basil Hall in "Schloss Hainfeld."*

# FLÜGEL'S COMPLETE DICTIONARY OF THE GERMAN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.

ENGLISH-GERMAN, AND GERMAN-ENGLISH.

With great Additions and Improvements, particularly adapting it to the English Student, by C. A. FEILING, German Master at the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, and the City of London School; A. HEIMANN, Ph. D. University, Berlin, and Professor of German at Winchester College; and an ENGLISH SCHOLAR of eminence.

In Two thick Volumes. Large 8vo. Price 36s. Cloth lettered.

THIRD EDITION.

The following improvements have been made in this the only English Edition:—

Some thousands of New German words, with many phrases, have been added; and more accurate English significations substituted. Numerous indelicate expressions, utterly useless, have been eradicated. The genitive case singular is given; and the idea of rendering the Dictionary of grammatical utility, has also been pursued with the German Verbs. Their regimen is given, and the preposition which should follow them, when it does not exactly correspond with the English idiom. The auxiliaries with which neuter verbs should be used are also pointed out. The arrangement of the several significations, and their distribution into classes, have also been carefully revised and improved, and many other improvements introduced, which will be evident to those hitherto accustomed only to the foreign work.

"The present Dictionary is adapted to English students, and contains many additions to and improvements on the original work. The volumes are very elegantly printed, and, as far as our leisure has enabled us to examine, remarkable for their extreme accuracy."

—*Times*.

"This is one of the most acceptable benefits that could have been conferred on modern English literature. Even in the present rage for German literature, there was not any dictionary in the languages that could satisfy the want of the student; and although the foreign editions were very copiously introduced, being compiled by foreigners, they were found to be but ill adapted for our use, the choice and meaning of the words being very injudiciously made and imperfectly expressed. The present work, compiled as it is by two Germans long resident in England, and a very elegant English scholar, will greatly facilitate the study of German."—*Monthly Magazine*.

## AN ABRIDGEMENT

OF

# FLÜGEL'S COMPLETE DICTIONARY OF THE GERMAN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES,

For the Use of Schools and Travellers; English-German and German-English. Abridged especially for the English Student, by C. A. FEILING, and JOHN OXENFORD.

12mo. Price 9s. Bound and lettered.

The great success which has attended the publication of the English Edition of Flügel's Dictionary, has induced the Proprietors to undertake the present abridgement of it, which they trust will be found adapted to the wants of the large number of persons who study German chiefly that they may be enabled to travel on the Continent without inconvenience, as well as of younger students, for whom the larger work may be found too expensive.

Though the original Dictionary has been, of course, much abridged to reduce it to the required compass, all words of immediate practical utility have been retained. The plan also of giving the genitive case as well as the plural of all *simple* German substantives, which is such an advantageous feature in the English "Flügel," has been adopted in this abridgement.

"This is a very neat little volume, compiled from the English Edition of this well-known German and English Dictionary. While a great number of the phrases that appear in the larger work are omitted, all the significations in ordinary use have been retained. It has, with the larger 'Flügel,' the great advantage of giving the genitive case singular of all the simple nouns, as well as the plural."—*Times*.









RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library  
or to the  
NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

---

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

- 2-month loans may be renewed by calling (510) 642-6753
- 1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books to NRLF
- Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date.

---

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

---

JUL 19 2000

---

AUG 07 2002

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

12.000 (11/95)

OCT 21 1988

LD 21A-40m-11,'63  
(E1602s10)476B

University of California  
General Library  
Berkeley



